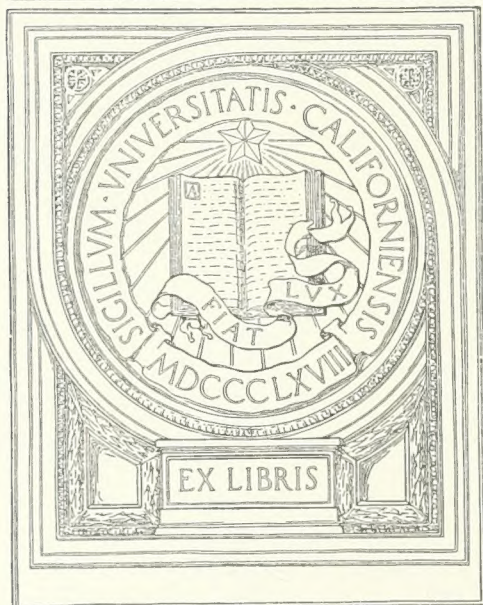






UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA  
AT LOS ANGELES



















A  
HISTORY  
OF  
E N G L A N D

FROM THE  
FIRST INVASION BY THE ROMANS

TO  
THE ACCESSION OF HENRY VIII.

---

BY THE REV. JOHN LINGARD.

---

IN THREE VOLUMES.

VOL. I.

---

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR J. MAWMAN 39 LUDGATE STREET.

---

1819.

5260 11



HISTORY

OF

ENGLAND

FROM THE

FIRST INVASION BY THE ROMANS

TO

THE ACCESSION OF HENRY VII.

BY THE REV. JOHN LINGARD.

IN THREE VOLUMES.

VOL. I.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR J. MANNING, 20, FLEET STREET.

BARNARD AND FARLEY, SKINNER STREET, LONDON.

1810.



\*DA  
30  
L642  
1819  
v.1

## ADVERTISEMENT.

---

**THIS** Work contains the History of the Southern Division of this Island, from its first Invasion by the Romans to the Accession of Henry VIII. To render it worthy the patronage of the public, the author has spared no pains in consulting the most ancient historians, and comparing their narratives with such authentic documents as are known to exist. Anxious, at the same time, to avoid the two extremes of prolixity on the one hand, and of brevity on the other, he has been careful to introduce nothing which he deemed trivial or irrelevant, and to exclude nothing which appeared to him important in its consequences, or illustrative of the character of the times.

The historian ought not to confine himself to the barren recital of facts. It is his duty to trace the silent progress of nations from barbarism to refinement; and to mark their successive improvements in the arts of legislation and government. But in the performance of this duty he must keep a steady rein on the imagination; or he will mistake fiction for truth, and write a romance in the place of a history.



Guided by these principles, the author of the present work has endeavoured to point out to the attention of his readers whatever he could discover of importance in the manners, polity, and institutions, of our ancestors. From the scattered notices in the classical writers, it was easy to glean a sufficiently correct account of the state of Britain when it was first visited by the Romans, and of the condition of the natives as long as it remained under their dominion. The Saxons presented a subject of more interesting though more toilsome investigation. They were the original stock from which the English nation has sprung. We still speak their language, still retain many of their institutions. On this account, the writer considered it a duty to study the genius and manners of that people; and to describe, with accuracy, their ranks and services, their courts of law and judicial proceedings, their system of government and spirit of legislation.

But it is the period after the conquest which has the strongest claim on our attention. The Normans found in the island institutions of a similar origin with their own, and easily grafted upon them the improvements, with which they had been familiarized on the continent. Of these improvements, the most important are carefully detailed in the following pages, together with the causes, which, in the course of a few reigns, served to render the sovereign dependent on the bounty of his vassals, and led to the introduction of the representatives of the people into the great council of the nation. The distinction of the



## ADVERTISEMENT.

v

three estates, their forms and constitution, and the successive steps by which the house of commons continued to rise in dignity and consequence, cannot fail to interest the curiosity of the reader ; and each reign, in the latter part of this period, will offer to his attention some valuable improvement in the laws, in the administration of justice, or in the internal polity of the kingdom.

It may perhaps be thought a recommendation to this work, that it was, in the first instance, composed without any reference to modern historians. The author religiously confined his researches to the original, and, whenever it was possible, to contemporary writers. This resolution rendered his task more laborious ; but it rendered it also more satisfactory. It preserved him from imbibing the prejudices, or copying the mistakes, of others : it left him to the unbiassed exercise of his own judgment ; and it has enabled him to place in a new, and, he trusts, a more interesting light, some of the most important occurrences in our history.

In conclusion it may be proper to add, that this is only a portion of a more extensive work, which will conduct the history to the great era of the Revolution, and will, if the present attempt meet with encouragement, be published in three additional volumes, with as much expedition as possible.

*Hornby, Lancashire,*  
*May 1, 1819.*





# CONTENTS

TO

## THE FIRST VOLUME.

---

---

\* \* \* GENEALOGICAL TABLE, William I. to Henry II. page 378.

---

---

### CHAP. I.

#### ROMAN BRITAIN.

*CÆSAR twice invades Britain—The British Tribes—Their Manners—Religion—Government—Gradual Conquest of Britain by the Romans—Its State under the Emperors—Conversion of the Natives to Christianity—The Romans abandon the Island.*

	PAGE		PAGE
Cæsar's first invasion of Britain .....	1	Defeat of Boadicea .....	28
His return to Gaul .....	2	Victories of Agricola .....	30
The second invasion .....	4	He invades Caledonia .....	32
Resistance of Cassibelan .....	5	The Government established in Britain ..	33
And his submission .....	7	The Prefect .....	33
Origin of the Britons .....	7	Procurator and taxes .....	34
British tribes .....	9	Army .....	35
Their manners .....	10	Provinces .....	36
Discovery of the tin islands .....	11	Colonies .....	37
Exports and imports .....	13	Municipia .....	38
Custom of dyeing the body .....	14	Latian cities .....	38
Religion .....	15	Stipendiary towns .....	39
Sacrifices .....	16	Roman walls .....	39
Doctrines .....	16	Vallum of Hadrian .....	40
Authority of the Druids .....	19	Vallum of Antoninus .....	40
The Bards .....	19	Ulpian Marcellus .....	40
Government of the Britons .....	20	Clodius Albinus .....	41
Augustus .....	21	Virius Lupus .....	42
Caligula .....	22	Severus in Britain .....	42
Claudius .....	22	Grants peace to the Caledonians .....	43
Ostorius .....	23	Builds his celebrated wall .....	44
Fate of Caractacus .....	24	He dies .....	45
Reduction of Anglesey .....	26	Usurpation of Carausius .....	45
Rebellion of Boadicea .....	27	His death .....	46

CONTENTS.

	PAGE		PAGE
Reign of Allectus .....	47	Origin of the Picts and Scots .....	54
His death .....	47	Theodosius .....	56
Introduction of christianity .....	48	Usurpation of Maximus .....	57
Conversion of Lucius .....	49	He is slain .....	58
Persecution .....	50	Marcus, Gratian, and Constantine em-	
Constantine emperor .....	51	perors .....	59
Government of Britain .....	52	Britain abandoned by the Romans ....	60
Tyranny of Paulus .....	53	The natives invite the Saxons .....	61
Export of corn from Britain .....	53	Theological disputes .....	62

CHAP. II.

ANGLO-SAXONS.

*Origin and Character of the Anglo-Saxons—Their repeated Descents in Britain—  
They found Eight distinct Kingdoms—The Natives retire to the Western Coast  
—Reigns of the Saxon Bretwaldas—Ælla—Ceawlin—Ethelbert—Redwald—  
Edwin—Oswald—Oswio.*

	PAGE	REDWALD, BRETWALDA IV.	PAGE
Original country of the Saxons .....	64	Reign of Redwald .....	86
Their manners .....	65	Conquests of Edilfrid .....	87
Arms .....	65	Adventures of Edwin .....	87
Ships .....	66	Death of Edilfrid .....	89
Foundation of the kingdom of Kent ...	68		
British fictions .....	69	EDWIN, BRETWALDA V.	
Sussex .....	70	Reign of Edwin .....	90
Wessex .....	71	His marriage .....	90
Essex .....	72	Attempt to assassinate Edwin .....	90
East Anglia .....	72	His revenge and conversion .....	91
Bernicia .....	73	Edwin's power .....	94
Deira .....	73	His death .....	94
Mercia .....	73	Sufferings of the Northumbrians .....	95
Conduct of the Britons .....	75		
Their chieftains .....	76	OSWALD, BRETWALDA VI.	
Effects of the Saxon conquests .....	77	Murder of the Northumbrian kings ....	96
Octarchy established .....	78	Accession of Oswald .....	97
		Conversion of the Northumbrians .....	97
ÆLLA, BRETWALDA I.		Death of Oswald .....	99
Reign of Ælla .....	79		
		OSWIO, BRETWALDA VII.	
CEAWLIN, BRETWALDA II.		Reign of Oswio .....	100
Reign of Ceawlin .....	79	Murder of Oswio .....	100
		Enmity of Penda .....	101
ETHELBERT, BRETWALDA III.		Defeat and death of Penda .....	103
Reign of Ethelbert .....	80	Dedication of Ælfeda .....	104
Conversion of the men of Kent .....	81	Power of Oswio .....	105
Ethelbert baptized .....	81	Religious disputes .....	106
Conversion of Essex .....	83	Uniformity established .....	107
Controversy with the Britons .....	83	Yellow plague .....	108
Laws of Ethelbert .....	84	Theodore archbishop of Canterbury ....	109
Reign of Eadbald .....	86	Death of Oswio .....	110



# CONTENTS.

ix

## CHAP. III.

### ANGLO-SAXONS.

*Kings of Northumbria—Of Mercia—Ethelbald—Offa—Cenulf—Of Wessex—  
Cæadwalla—Ina—Cynewulf—Egbert—Ethelwulf—Ethelbald—Ethelbert—  
Ethelred.*

NORTHUMBRIA.	PAGE		PAGE
Northumbrian kings.....	111	Resigns the crown .....	148
Egfrid's wars and death .....	114	Goes to Rome .....	148
Aldfrid.....	115	Dies .....	148
Succession of Northumbrian kings .....	116	Æthelheard.....	149
Notice of Bede.....	121	Cuthred .....	149
Of Alcuin.....	122	Sigebyrht .....	150
		Is deposed .....	150
		Cynewulf.....	150
MERCIA.		Is murdered .....	150
Mercian kings. Wulphere .....	123	Punishment of the murderers.....	151
Ethelred.....	124	Brihtric .....	152
Cænred .....	125	Is poisoned by his queen .....	153
Ceolred .....	125	Her fate .....	153
Ethelbald.....	126		
Offa .....	128	EGBERT.	
His victories.....	128	Subdues the Britons.....	154
Archbishopric of Lichfield.....	129	The Mercians .....	154
Offa and Charlemagne.....	130	The Northumbrians.....	155
Murder of Ethelbert, of East-Anglia... 132		The Danes and Northmen .....	156
Offa's death .....	133	Their descents .....	157
Egferth.....	134	Death of Egbert .....	157
Cenulf deposes Eadbert of Kent .....	134		
Restores the prerogatives of Canterbury 135		ETHELWULF.	
Persecutes archbishop Wulfrid .....	136	Succession of Ethelwulf .....	158
Kenelm murdered.....	137	Danish invasions .....	159
Ceolwulf .....	137	Ethelwulf assists the Mercians .....	161
		Grants a liberal donation to the church.. 161	
		Visits Rome .....	162
WESSEX.		Ethelbald rebels.....	163
Kings of Wessex .....	138	Pacification .....	163
Ceolwulf .....	138	Ethelwulf dies .....	164
Death of Tewdric of Wales.....	138		
Cynegils and Cuichelm .....	139	ETHELBALD.	
Coinwalch expelled and restored .....	140	Ethelbald marries his mother-in-law ... 164	
Sexburga .....	140	His death.....	165
Cæadwalla in Sussex.....	142		
Made king of Wessex .....	142	ETHELBERT.	
Conquers the isle of Wight .....	143	Ethelbert .....	165
Puts to death the brothers of Arvald... 144		Adventures of Ragnar Lodbrog .....	166
Loses his brother in Kent.....	144	His death by Ælla.....	167
Goes to Rome .....	144		
Is baptized.....	145	ETHELRED.	
Dies .....	145	Invasion by the sons of Ragnar .....	167
Ina .....	145	They conquer Northumbria.....	167
Publishes a code of laws .....	145	Invade Mercia .....	168
Invades Kent and Cornwall.....	146	Plunder and destroy the churches..... 169	
Is opposed by pretenders to the crown 146		Enter East-Anglia .....	170
Founds monasteries .....	147	Murder king Edmund .....	171
		Invade Wessex.....	171
		Death of Ethelred .....	172

## CONTENTS.

## CHAP. IV.

## ANGLO-SAXONS.

*Birth, Education, and Accession of Alfred—Successes of the Danes—Alfred opposes them by Sea—His Victories, Laws, and Improvements—Reigns of Edward—Athelstan—Edmund—and Edred.*

ALFRED THE GREAT.	PAGE		PAGE
Birth of Alfred .....	173	Edward fortified the burghs.....	208
His education.....	174	Ecclesiastical affairs .....	209
His malady .....	175		
His succession to the crown .....	176	ATHELSTAN, THE FIRST MONARCH OF ENGLAND.	
He purchases peace .....	176	Succession of Athelstan.....	210
Danes conquer Mercia.....	176	Tale about the mother of Athelstan....	210
Pillage north of the Tyne.....	178	Alfred aspires to the crown .....	211
Invade Wessex.....	179	Athelstan takes possession of Northumbria	211
Alfred builds a fleet.....	180	Extends his authority over the Britons..	212
Faults in the character of Alfred .....	180	Death of his brother Edwin.....	213
He is driven from his throne .....	181	Scots rebel and submit.....	214
Submission of Wessex.....	183	Invasion of Anlaff .....	214
A party of Danes defeated.....	184	Victory of Brunanburgh .....	216
Alfred reappears .....	185	Power of Athelstan .....	216
Fights the Danes .....	186	He protects foreign princes .....	217
Is victorious.....	186	Haco of Norway.....	217
Alfred's improvements in the army ...	188	Alan of Bretagne .....	218
The fortifications .....	188	Louis of France.....	218
The navy .....	189	Marriages of his sisters .....	220
The administration of justice .....	190	Ethilda.....	220
He encourages learning .....	192	Editha .....	220
His translations .....	193	Adiva.....	221
Arrangement of his time .....	193	Elgiva .....	221
Of his finances.....	194	Athelstan's death .....	221
His power.....	195	Manners .....	221
Invasion by Hastings .....	195	Charities .....	221
Who retires to France .....	198	Laws .....	221
The war continues .....	198		
Its termination .....	200	EDMUND.	
Battles by sea .....	200	Northumbrian princes .....	222
Death of Alfred .....	201	Anlaff's success .....	223
		His death.....	224
EDWARD.		Edmund conquers Northumbria .....	224
Ethelwald aspires to the crown.....	203	And Cumbria .....	224
And perishes in battle.....	204	Edmund's death.....	225
Edward takes possession of Mercia....	204	Edred succeeds .....	226
Attacks the northern Danes .....	205		
Success of Edward and Ethelfleda.....	206	EDRED.	
Edward pursues his success .....	206	Final subjection of the Northumbrians..	226
Dies .....	207	Account of Turketul .....	227
His family .....	207	And of Dunstan .....	229
Eadburga .....	207	Edred's death .....	230



# CONTENTS.

xi

## CHAP. V.

### ANGLO-SAXONS.

*Reigns of Edwy—Edgar—Edward the Martyr—Ethelred—and Edmund, surnamed Ironside.*

EDWY.	PAGE	ETHELRED.	PAGE
Edwy .....	231	Ethelred succeeds.....	251
His misconduct.....	232	Invasions and ravages of the Northmen .	252
His amour with Ethelgiva .....	233	Treason of Elfric.....	253
Her banishment .....	234	Sweyn and Olave.....	254
Revolt of the Mercians.....	235	Other invasions.....	255
Edwy's death .....	235	Ethelred marries Emma.....	256
EDGAR.		Massacre of the Danes.....	257
Edgar's infancy .....	236	Revenge by Sweyn .....	259
He recalls Dunstan .....	237	Exertions of Ethelred .....	260
Becomes king of Wessex .....	237	Invasion by Thurchil.....	260
Surnamed the peaceful.....	238	Distress of the English .....	262
Pleases the Northumbrians .....	238	Taxation .....	263
Divides their territory .....	239	Last invasion by Sweyn .....	264
Permits them to make their own laws..	239	Flight of Ethelred .....	266
His naval expeditions .....	240	Death of Sweyn .....	266
His power .....	240	Return of Ethelred.....	267
Administration of justice.....	241	Invasion by Canute .....	268
The restoration of the monks .....	242	Death of Ethelred .....	270
The reform of the clergy .....	244	EDMUND.	
Edgar's magnificence .....	245	Siege of London .....	271
His courage .....	246	Battles between Edmund and Canute ..	272
His death .....	246	Pacification .....	274
EDWARD, THE MARTYR.		Death of Edmund .....	275
Succession of Edward .....	248		
His murder .....	249		

## CHAP. VI.

### DANES.

*Danish Sovereigns—Canute—Harold—Hardecanute—Saxon Line restored—Edward the Confessor—Harold—Victory of William the Conqueror.*

CANUTE.	PAGE		PAGE
Canute succeeds .....	276	Conquers Norway .....	283
Sends away the children of Edmund...	276	Subdues the Scots.....	283
Kills Edwy .....	277	He rebukes his flatterers.....	284
Marries Emma .....	277	His pilgrimage to Rome .....	284
Punishes Edric.....	278	His letter .....	285
Rewards the Danes .....	279	His death.....	287
Establishes guards .....	279	HAROLD, SURNAMED HAREFOOT.	
Pleases the English .....	280	Succession of Harold.....	288
Publishes laws .....	281	Invasion by Edward .....	289
Visits Denmark .....	282		

## CONTENTS.

	PAGE		PAGE
Another by Alfred.....	289	Death of Godwin .....	308
Flight of Emma .....	292	Edward's humanity .....	310
Death of Harold .....	292	War with Macbeth .....	311
HARDECANUTE.		Civil war .....	312
Succession of Hardecanute.....	293	Conquest of Wales .....	313
His revenge .....	294	Edward sends for his nephew from Ger-	
His magnificence .....	295	many .....	314
His death.....	296	Harold in Normandy .....	316
EDWARD THE CONFESSOR.		Insurrection of the Northumbrians ....	318
Succession of Edward .....	296	Death of Edward.....	320
His character .....	297	HAROLD.	
Punishes his mother.....	298	Succession of Harold.....	323
Is opposed by the king of Norway ....	299	William claims the crown .....	324
Marries Editha .....	300	Invasion by the king of Norway .....	324
History of Sweyn.....	301	Who falls in battle .....	325
Rebellion of the Godwins .....	302	William prepares to invade England...	328
Their banishment .....	304	Lands in England .....	330
Visit from William of Normandy.....	305	Conduct of Harold .....	330
Restoration of the Godwins.....	306	Battle of Hastings .....	332
Promotion of Stigand .....	307	Death of Harold .....	335

## CHAP. VII.

## APPENDIX.

*Polity of the Anglo-Saxons—Feudal Customs—Ranks in Society—Courts of Law—Crimes—Slaves.*

	PAGE		PAGE
Manners of Anglo-Saxons.....	337	Tythings.....	358
Feudal customs .....	338	King's court.....	358
Lord and vassal .....	339	Witenagemot .....	359
Homage .....	339	Its members.....	359
Division of lands .....	341	Its authority.....	360
Military service .....	342	Judicial proceedings.....	361
Firdwite .....	344	In civil actions.....	362
Purveyance .....	345	In criminal prosecutions .....	363
Heriots.....	345	Purgation by oath .....	364
Marriage licences.....	346	Purgation by ordeal.....	365
Ranks.—The eorl .....	347	Obstacles to the administration of justice	366
King .....	348	Crimes of the Anglo-Saxons .....	367
Queen .....	350	Homicide.....	367
Ealdorman .....	350	Punished by fine .....	368
Gesith .....	351	Weres .....	368
Thane .....	352	Mode of payment.....	369
Gerela .....	353	Theft and robbery .....	370
The ceorl .....	353	Their punishment.....	371
Administration of justice .....	354	Number of slaves.....	371
Hundred-motes .....	355	Their different classes.. ..	372
Shire-motes .....	356	Manumission .....	374
Origin of shires .....	357	Trade in slaves.....	375
Of hundreds.....	357	Burghers .....	376



# CONTENTS.

xi

## CHAP. VIII.

### WILLIAM I. SURNAMED THE CONQUEROR.

*William is crowned—Returns to Normandy—Insurrections—Total Subjugation of the Kingdom—Depression of the Natives—Knights Fees—Incidents of Military Tenures—Innovations in Judicial Proceedings—Domesday—King's Revenue—Insurrection of Norman Barons—Rebellion of Robert, the King's Son—War with France—William's Death—and Character.*

	PAGE		PAGE
GENEALOGICAL TABLE .....	378	Ingulf.....	412
Settlement of the Normans in Gaul....	379	Death of Edwin.....	413
Birth of William .....	381	Opposition of Hereward .....	413
William marches to Dover .....	382	He plunders Peterborough .....	414
And to London .....	382	Makes Turolf prisoner .....	414
Edgar appointed king .....	383	William besieges Hereward .....	415
But submits to William .....	384	Gets possession of Ely.....	416
Tumult at the king's coronation .....	385	Subdues Scotland.....	416
Its cause .....	386	Edgar submits .....	418
His kind behaviour to the English ....	387	Consequences of the Norman conquest..	419
And rewards to his officers .....	388	Depression of the natives.....	419
The king returns to Normandy .....	390	William's riches .....	420
The regents, Odo .....	392	Elevation of the foreigners .....	421
And Fitz-Osbern.....	393	Their retainers .....	422
Insurrections .....	393	Establishment of knight's fees .....	423
Murder of earl Copsi.....	394	Faalty and homage .....	426
Edric ravages Hereford .....	395	Attendance at the king's court.....	427
Eustace attacks Dover .....	395	Escheats .....	428
English exiles at Constantinople .....	395	Reliefs .....	429
The king returns .....	396	Aids.....	430
Reduces Exeter .....	397	Descents .....	431
Edwin rebels .....	398	Wardships .....	431
Submits .....	398	Marriages.....	432
Githa escapes .....	399	Changes in judicial proceedings.....	433
Edgar in Scotland .....	399	Use of the Norman language .....	433
Massacre at Durham .....	400	Excessive mullets .....	434
Siege of York .....	401	Penalty for murder .....	434
Arrival of the Danes .....	401	Wager of battle .....	435
York taken .....	402	Separation of the secular and spiritual	
William in the north .....	402	courts .....	435
Defeats the insurgents .....	403	Much of the Anglo-Saxon polity pre-	
Lays waste Yorkshire and Durham....	404	served.....	436
Submission of insurgents.....	405	Compilation of Domesday .....	437
Ravages of Malcolm.....	407	The king's revenue.....	438
All places of trust given to Normans ..	408	Rebellion of Norman barons .....	440
English prelates deposed .....	409	Their fate.....	441
Norman prelates .....	410	Execution of Waltheof .....	441
Lanfranc .....	410	The murder of Walcher .....	442
Guitmond.....	411	Imprisonment of Odo .....	443

## CONTENTS.

	PAGE		PAGE
Projected invasion of Canute .....	444	His burial .....	449
War between William and his son Robert .....	445	The king's character .....	450
William invades France .....	447	His conduct with respect to ecclesiastical concerns .....	454
His last illness .....	447	Famine and pestilence during his reign ..	456
His death .....	449		

## CHAP. IX.

## WILLIAM II.

*William succeeds—His Wars with his Brother Robert—He obtains Normandy while Robert goes to the Holy Land—Invades Scotland—and Wales—His Rapacity—He persecutes Archbishop Anselm—Is killed in the New Forest—His Character.*

	PAGE		PAGE
Robert succeeds to Normandy .....	457	Submission of Malcolm .....	469
William hastens to England .....	458	The war renewed .....	470
He is crowned .....	459	Succession to the crown of Scotland ..	471
Henry lives in privacy .....	459	Incursions of the Welsh .....	472
Fate of the captives .....	459	Rebellion of Robert Mowbray .....	473
Conspiracy against William .....	459	The king's rapacity .....	475
Banishment of Odo .....	460	Character of Ralph Flambard .....	475
Insurgents reduced .....	461	Conspiracy against him .....	476
State of Normandy .....	462	The king keeps the bishoprics vacant ..	477
William invades the dutchy .....	462	Names Anselm to Canterbury .....	478
Attempt to take Rouen .....	463	Persecutes Anselm .....	480
Peace between the two brothers .....	464	Dispute about the succession to the pa- pacy .....	481
Expulsion of Henry .....	464	The king is reconciled with Anselm .....	483
War renewed in Normandy .....	465	Archbishop goes to Rome .....	484
Robert mortgages his dominions .....	466	The king's death in the New Forest ..	485
William opposed in Maine .....	468	His character .....	486
Hastens to that province .....	468	His buildings .....	487
War with Scotland .....	469		

## CHAP. X.

## HENRY I., SURNAMED BEAUCLERK, OR THE SCHOLAR.

*Accession of Henry—Invasion by Duke Robert—Henry in Normandy—Makes Robert prisoner—Dispute concerning Investitures—War in Normandy—Story of Juliana, the King's Daughter—Shipwreck of his Son William—Settlement of the Crown on Matilda—His Administration of Justice—Relief to the Tenants of the Crown Lands—Extortion of Money—Dispute respecting Legates—Death and Character of Henry—His Ministers—State of Learning.*

	PAGE		PAGE
Robert in Palestine .....	488	And marriage .....	492
Coronation of Henry .....	489	Confinement and escape of Flambard ..	493
His charter .....	490	Robert claims the crown .....	494
His reformation .....	492	Henry's preparations .....	494



# CONTENTS.

xv

	PAGE		PAGE
Pacification .....	495	His administration of justice .....	518
Henry punishes his enemies.....	496	He punishes the coiners .....	519
Revolt of Robert de Belesme .....	496	And the followers of the court.....	520
Duke Robert in England.....	498	Relieves his own tenants .....	522
Henry invades Normandy .....	498	His method of raising money .....	522
Robert taken prisoner .....	499	From ecclesiastical benefices .....	524
Dispute about investitures.....	500	And the canonical transgressions of the	
Origin of that claim .....	500	clergy .....	524
Its abuses.....	501	Dispute respecting papal legates .....	526
Anselm opposes it .....	501	Death of duke Robert.....	530
Final settlement.....	502	Death of Henry .....	530
War in Normandy .....	503	His character .....	531
It is concluded.....	504	His administration of justice .....	531
And renewed.....	504	Policy .....	531
Battle of Brenville.....	505	Suspensions .....	533
Mediation of the pope .....	506	Revenge .....	533
Treaty of peace .....	507	Dissimulation .....	534
Remarks.....	507	Incontinence .....	534
Story of Juliana .....	507	His ministers .....	535
Shipwreck of prince William .....	509	The bishop of Sarum .....	535
Projects of William of Normandy.....	511	The earl of Mellent.....	535
War in Normandy .....	512	Henry's prejudices against the English	536
William made earl of Flanders .....	513	His riches.....	536
Death of queen Matilda .....	513	And buildings .....	537
King's second marriage .....	514	State of learning .....	538
Crown settled on Matilda.....	515	The logic of the schools .....	538
She is married to the earl of Anjou ....	516	Course of studies.....	540
Death of the earl of Flanders .....	517	Gallo-Norman poets .....	540
Quarrel between Henry and his son-in-		Origin of Romance .....	541
law .....	517	NOTES .....	543



# HISTORY

OF

# ENGLAND.

---

## CHAP. I.

### ROMAN BRITAIN.

CÆSAR TWICE INVADES BRITAIN—THE BRITISH TRIBES—THEIR MANNERS—RELIGION—GOVERNMENT—GRADUAL CONQUEST OF BRITAIN BY THE ROMANS—ITS STATE UNDER THE EMPERORS—CONVERSION OF THE NATIVES TO CHRISTIANITY—THE ROMANS ABANDON THE ISLAND.

FOR our first acquaintance with the history of Britain, we are indebted to the pen of a Roman general. Julius Cæsar, in the short space of three years, had conducted his victorious legions from the foot of the Alps to the mouth of the Rhine. From the coast of the Morini he could descry the white cliffs of the neighbouring island : and the conqueror of Gaul aspired to the glory of adding Britain to the dominions of Rome. The refusal of the Gallic mariners to acquaint him with the number of the inhabitants, their manner of warfare, and their

CHAP.  
I.

---

Cæsar's first  
Invasion of  
Britain.

A. C.  
55.



CHAP.  
I.

---

political institutions; and the timidity of Volusenus, who, though he had been sent to procure information, had returned without venturing to approach the island, served only to irritate his curiosity and inflame his ambition. The Britons, by lending aid to his enemies, the Veneti, had supplied him with a decent pretext for hostilities: and on the twenty-sixth of August, in the fifty-fifth year before the Christian era, Cæsar sailed from Calais, with the infantry of two legions. To cross the strait was only the work of a few hours: but when he saw the opposite heights crowned with multitudes of armed men, he altered his course, and steering along the shore, cast anchor before the spot which is now occupied by the town of Deal. The natives carefully followed the motions of the fleet, urging their horses into the waves, and, by their gestures and shouts, bidding defiance to the invaders. The appearance of the naked barbarians, and a superstitious fear of offending the gods of this unknown world, spread a temporary alarm among the Romans: but after a short pause it was dispelled, by the intrepidity of the standard-bearer of the tenth legion. Calling on his comrades to follow him, he leaped with his eagle into the sea: detachments instantly poured from the nearest boats: the beach, after a short struggle, was gained; and the untaught valour of the natives yielded to the arms and discipline of their enemies.

His return to  
Gaul.

The Romans were not more pre-eminent in the art of war, than they were deficient in nautical science. On the fourth night after their arrival the violence of the wind augmented the usual swell of the waves at a spring tide: the ships, that had been hauled on shore, were filled with water: those which rode at anchor, were driven out to sea; and a squadron, which was employed to bring the cavalry from Gaul, was entirely dispersed. The British chieftains, who had come to the camp to solicit

peace, observed the consternation excited by these untoward events; and having retired separately, under different pretexts, concealed themselves, with their forces, in the neighbouring woods. Cæsar was not aware of their design, till he heard that the seventh legion, which had been sent out to forage, was surrounded and overwhelmed by a hostile multitude. The timely arrival of the rest of the army rescued the survivors from utter destruction: but the Britons, steady in their plan, dispatched messengers to the neighbouring tribes, to represent the small number of the invaders, and inculcate the necessity of intimidating future adventurers, by exterminating the present. A general assault was soon made on the Roman camp: and, though it proved unsuccessful, it taught Cæsar to reflect on the evident danger of his situation, if the inclemency of the weather should interrupt his communication with Gaul, and confine him, during the winter, to a foreign shore, without supplies or provisions. To save his reputation, he gladly accepted an illusory promise of submission from a few of the natives, and then hastened back with his army to Gaul, after a short absence of three weeks. It is manifest that he had little reason to boast of the success of this expedition: and on that account he affects, in his Commentaries, to represent it as undertaken for the sole purpose of discovery. But at Rome it was hailed as the forerunner of the most splendid victories: the mere invasion of Britain was magnified into the conquest of a new world: and a thanksgiving of twenty days was decreed by the senate to the immortal gods<sup>1</sup>.

The ensuing winter was spent by each party in the most

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. de Bel. Gal. iv. 20—36. Dio, xxxix. 120. Cæsar, in his letters, described the island as of immense extent, another world: alium orbem terrarum. Eumen.

paneg. p. 174. Of his success, Lucan says plainly:

Territa quæsitis ostendit terga Britannis.  
Luc. ii. 572.



CHAP.  
I.

---

The second  
invasion.  
A. C.  
54.

active preparations. In spring the Roman army, consisting of five legions and two thousand cavalry, sailed from the coast of Gaul in a fleet of more than eight hundred ships. At the sight of this immense armament stretching across the channel, the Britons retired with precipitation to the woods: and the invaders landed without opposition on the very same spot which they had occupied the preceding year. Cæsar immediately marched in pursuit of the natives, but was recalled the next day by the news of the disaster which had again befallen his fleet. A storm had arisen in the night, in which forty vessels were totally lost, and many of the others driven on shore. To guard against similar accidents he ordered the remainder to be dragged above the reach of the tide, and to be surrounded with a fortification of earth. In this laborious task ten days were employed, after which the invaders resumed their march towards the interior of the country. Each day was marked by some partial rencounter in which the natives appear to have frequently obtained the advantage. It was their policy to shun a general engagement. Divided into small bodies, but stationed within hail of each other, they watched the march of the enemy, cut off the stragglers, and diligently improved every opportunity of annoyance. Their principal warriors, who fought from chariots, extorted by their skill and intrepidity the applause of the Romans. On the brink of a precipice, or on the rapidity of a descent, they guided their vehicles with as much safety as in the level plain. No danger appalled them. They drove fearlessly along the Roman line, espied every opportunity of breaking the ranks of the enemy: and during the heat of the action would run along the pole, leap on the ground, or regain their seats, as the events of the moment seemed to demand. If they despaired of success, they retired with rapidity: if they were pursued, they abandoned

their chariots, and with their pikes resisted on foot the charge of the cavalry. It required all the art of Cæsar to inflict any serious injury on a foe so vigilant, alert, and unassailable. At length three of the legions with all the horsemen were sent out to forage, and their apparent disorder invited the Britons to attack them with their whole force. Descending from the hills, they poured through every opening, and penetrated as far as the eagles: but the veterans received them with coolness; their return was closed up: and but few were able to regain the mountains and woods. Dispirited by this check, many of the confederate tribes retired to their homes: and Cassibelan, king of the Cassii, the chief of the allies, was left to support the whole pressure of the war.

By repeated victories over his neighbours, Cassibelan had acquired high renown among the natives. By the tribes on the right bank of the Thames he had been invited to place himself at their head: and his conduct during the war seems to have justified the selection. Deserted by his confederates, he retreated into his own territories, and attempted to place the Thames between him and his pursuers. At the only ford he ordered sharp stakes to be fixed in the bed of the river; lined the left bank with palisades; and stationed behind these the principal part of his army. But the advance of the Romans was not to be retarded by artificial difficulties. The cavalry without hesitation plunged into the river: the infantry followed, though the water reached to their shoulders: and the Britons, intimidated by the intrepid aspect of the invaders, fled to the woods. Such is the account of this transaction which has been given by Cæsar: but Polyænus attributes his success to the panic caused by the sight of an elephant, which was driven before the Romans. At the approach of this unknown animal, of enormous magnitude,

Resistance of  
Cassibelan.



CHAP.  
I.

---

covered with scales of polished steel, and carrying on his back a turret filled with armed men, the Britons abandoned their defences, and sought for safety in a precipitate flight<sup>2</sup>.

The king of the Cassii was not, however, discouraged. To impede the progress of the enemy, he laid waste his own territories. By his orders the habitations were burnt, the cattle driven away, and the provisions destroyed: and as the Romans marched through this desert, Cassibelan himself, with four thousand chariots, carefully watched all their motions. But the unfortunate chieftain, besides his foreign enemies, had to contend against the jealousy and resentment of his own countrymen. He had formerly subdued the Trinobantes, a contiguous nation. In the contest their king Immanuentius had been slain: and his son Mandrubatius was now an exile, and served in the army of the invaders. The Trinobantes offered to submit to the Romans on condition that they should be governed by the son of Immanuentius: and several tribes, which bore with impatience the yoke of the Cassii, following their example, solicited the protection of Cæsar. By these he was conducted to the capital or principal fortress of Cassibelan, situated on the spot where afterwards Verulam was built, and near to the present town of St. Albans. It was surrounded by a rampart and a ditch, and covered on every side by extensive marshes and forests. Even Cæsar admired the judgment with which the position had been selected, and the art with which it was fortified. Its defences, however, were easily forced by the Romans: and the cattle of Cassibelan, his principal treasure, became the prey of the conquerors.

The British king still waited the issue of his plans in another

<sup>2</sup> Polyæn. viii. 737. Lug. Bat. 1691.

quarter. He had instructed the four chieftains of Kent to assemble their forces, assault the Roman camp, and set fire to the ships. If this attempt had been successful, the Romans would have been involved in inextricable difficulties. But the men of Kent were defeated: and Cassibelan condescended to sue for peace. Cæsar, who feared the approach of the equinox, willingly prescribed the following conditions, that he should give hostages, should live in amity with the Trinobantes, and should furnish his share to the annual tribute, which was to be imposed on Britain. The Romans immediately marched back to the coast, and as the fleet had been refitted, returned to Gaul in the month of September<sup>3</sup>.

CHAP.  
I.

And his submission.

Such were the petty results of this mighty expedition. The citizens of Rome celebrated with joy the victories of their favourite general: but the conqueror of Britain was not the master of one foot of British ground. The inhabitants, however, and the productions of "the new world," now became objects of interest to the more civilized nations of Greece and Italy; and the industry of writers was eagerly employed to satisfy the curiosity of the public. Of their works, many have undoubtedly perished: from those which remain, has been gleaned the following account of ancient Britain, such as it is described to have been about the commencement of the Christian era.

The principal nations of Europe are shewn, from the radical difference in their languages, to be descended from the three great families of the Celtæ, Gothi, and Sarmatæ: and from the countries which they have successively occupied, it appears that the Celtæ were the first who crossed the limits of Asia into Europe; that, as the tide of population continued to roll towards

Origin of the Britons.

CHAP.  
I.

---

the west, they were pushed forward by the advance of the Gothic nations; and that these in their turn yielded to the pressure of the tribes of the Sarmatæ. At the dawn of history we find the Celtæ dispersed over a great part of Europe: in the time of Cæsar they occupied the principal portion of Spain, of Gaul, and of the British isles<sup>4</sup>. That conqueror, in describing the inhabitants of Britain, could speak from personal knowledge of none but the tribes, that dwelt near the mouth of the Thames. These he informs us were of Belgic descent. Their ancestors had, at no very distant period, invaded the island, expelled the original inhabitants from the coast, and in their new settlements still retained the names of the parent states<sup>5</sup>.—Beyond them dwelt other tribes less familiarized with the habits of civilized life. When he inquired after *their* origin, he was told that their ancestors were the spontaneous production of the soil: later discoveries shewed that *they* were Celtæ, the descendants of the first colonists of Britain<sup>6</sup>.

The number of the inhabitants in the districts which fell under his observation, astonished the Roman general: and there is reason to believe that many other districts were equally well

<sup>4</sup> It is doubtful whether the Belgic tribes should be considered as of Celtic or Gothic origin.

<sup>5</sup> Cæs. ii. 3. v. 12.

<sup>6</sup> I shall not notice the fable of Brutus, the great grandson of Æneas, who gave his name to the island, and whose descendants are said to have swayed the sceptre for many generations (Nennius says he extracted it ex veteribus scriptis veterum nostrorum. Edit. Bert. 104. which makes it older than Geoffry or Tyssilio): nor the dreams of more recent antiquaries, who have sought out the patriarch of the Cymri in the ark of Noah, and conducted him and his children through a thousand perils to Britain.—The triads have given us

the names, and, in some instances, the origin of the three primeval tribes that settled in Britain, of the three foreign tribes, that were peaceably admitted, and of the three usurping tribes, that obtained possession of the greater part of the island. But whatever may be the antiquity of the triads, their testimony must be doubtful as being founded either on oral tradition, or on fictions framed originally to solve appearances. For Gildas informs us that in his time there did not exist among his countrymen any historical documents: quippe quæ, si qua fuerint, aut ignibus hostium deleta, aut civium exilii classe longius deportata, non compareant. Gild. edit. Bert. p. 69.



peopled<sup>7</sup>. The population of the whole island comprised above forty tribes, of whom several, while they retained their former appellations, had been deprived of their independence, at the same time that others, amid the revolutions of two or three centuries, had risen to a high pre-eminence of power. The long tract of land to the south of the Severn and the Thames was unequally portioned between ten nations, of whom the principal were the Cantii, or men of Kent; the Belgæ, or inhabitants of the present counties of Hampshire and Wilts, and the Damnonii, who, from the river Ex, had gradually extended themselves to the western promontory. Across the arm of the sea, now called the Bristol channel, the most powerful was the tribe of the Silures. From the banks of the Wye, their original seat, they had carried their arms to the Dee, and the ocean: and their authority was acknowledged by the Ordovices and the Dimetæ, the inhabitants of the northern mountains, and of the western district of Wales. On the eastern coast of the island between the Thames and the Stour, lay the Trinobantes, whose capital was London: and from the Stour to the Humber stretched the two kindred nations of the Iceni, called Cenimagni, and Coitanni. The Dobuni and Cassii, confederate tribes under the rule of Cassibelan, extended along the left bank of the Thames, from the Severn to the Trinobantes: and above them dwelt the Carnabii and several clans of minor consequence. The Brigantes were the most powerful of all the British nations. They were bounded by the Humber on the south, and by the Tyne on the north; and had subdued the Volantii and Sistentii of the western coast. To the north of the Brigantes were five tribes, known by the general appellation of Maætæ: and beyond these

<sup>7</sup> Hominum est infinita multitudo. Cæs. v. Brigantes, civitas numerosissima. Tac. Agric.  
12. Πολυανθρωπος νησος. Dio. Sic. v. 347. c. 17.

CHAP.  
I.

---

Their man-  
ners.

wandered amid the lakes and mountains various clans, among which the Caledonians claimed the praise of superior courage, or superior ferocity<sup>8</sup>.

By the Roman writers all the natives of Britain are indiscriminately denominated *barbarians*, a term of indefinite import, which must vary its signification with the subject to which it is applied. Though far removed from the elegance and refinement of their invaders, the Belgic tribes of the south might almost claim the praise of civilization in comparison with their northern brethren. Their dress was of their own manufacture. A square mantle covered a vest and trowsers, or a deeply plaited tunic of braided cloth: the waist was encircled with a belt: rings adorned the second finger of each hand: and a chain of iron or brass was suspended from the neck<sup>9</sup>. Their huts resembled those of their Gallic neighbours. A foundation of stone supported a circular wall of timber and reeds; over which was thrown a conical roof, pierced in the centre for the twofold purpose of admitting light, and discharging the smoke<sup>10</sup>. In husbandry they possessed considerable skill. They had discovered the use of marl as a manure: they raised more corn than was necessary for their own consumption: and to preserve it till the following harvest, they generally stored it in the cavities of rocks<sup>11</sup>. But beyond the borders of the southern tribes, these faint traces of civilization gradually disappeared. The midland and western nations were unacquainted with either agriculture or manufactures. Their riches consisted in the extent of their pastures, and the number of their flocks.

<sup>8</sup> Ptolem. viii. 2. Ricard. Conn. i. 6. Whitaker's Manch. i. 91. ii. 201.

<sup>9</sup> Plin. viii. 48. xxxiii. 1. Dio Nic. in Nerone, p. 169. Whitaker's Manchester, vii. 5.

<sup>10</sup> Cæsar, v. 12. Diod. Sic. v. p. 347. Strabo, iv. 197.

<sup>11</sup> Plin. Hist. Nat. xvii. 6. 8. Diod. Sic. v. p. 347.

With milk and flesh they satisfied the cravings of hunger ; and, clothed in skins, they bade defiance to the inclemency of the elements<sup>12</sup>. But even sheep were scarcely known in the more northern parts ; and the hordes of savages, who roamed through the wilds of Caledonia, often depended for support on the casual produce of the chase. They went almost naked : and sheltered themselves from the weather under the cover of the woods, or in the caverns of the mountains. Their situation had hardened both their minds and bodies. If it had made them patient of fatigue and privation, it had also taught them to be rapacious, bloody, and revengeful. When Severus invaded their country, the Roman legions were appalled at the strength, the activity, the hardihood, and ferocity of these northern Britons<sup>13</sup>.

The superior civilization of the southern tribes was attributed by historians to their intercourse with the strangers, whom the pursuits of commerce attracted to their coast<sup>14</sup>. When the Spanish ores began to be exhausted, the principal supply of tin was sought from the mines of Britain. The first who exported this metal from the island, and conveyed it to the different ports in the Mediterranean, were certain Phenician adventurers from Cadiz. To monopolize so valuable a branch of commerce, they carefully concealed the place from the knowledge of their neighbours : and about five centuries before the birth of Christ, Herodotus, the father of profane history, candidly acknowledged that he had been unable to discover the real position of the "Cassiterides, or Tin-islands<sup>15</sup>." The Phenicians of Carthage were more successful. Anxious to share in the trade with their brethren of Cadiz, Hanno and Himilco undertook separate

Discovery of  
the tin islands

<sup>12</sup> Cæs. v. 14.

<sup>14</sup> Cæs. v. 14. Diod. Sic. v. 347.

<sup>13</sup> Mela, iii. p. 264. Dio Nic. in Severo, p. 340. Herodian, iii. 47.

<sup>15</sup> Strab. iii. 175. Plin. vii. 56. Herod. iii. 203. Lug. Bat. 1715.



CHAP.  
I.

voyages of discovery. Having passed the straits, Hanno turned to the left, and explored the coast of Africa : Himilco, shaping his course to the north, crept along the shore of Spain, stretched, by accident or design, across the ocean, and in the fourth month discovered the object of his voyage. The *Æstryrnides* (so the tin islands are called in his journal, which was extant as late as the fifth century), were distant two days sail from “ the “ sacred isle of the Hibernians,” and that isle lay near to the isle of the Albions<sup>16</sup>. The success of the Carthaginians awakened the hopes of the Grecian colonists of Marseilles ; and Pytheas, their most celebrated navigator, during his voyage in the northern seas, had also the good fortune to discover the *Cassiterides*<sup>17</sup>. They were ten in number, abounding in mines of tin and lead, and divided by a narrow but boisterous strait from the coast of the *Damnonii*. The largest was called *Silura* or *Sigdelis*, a name in which may be discovered the origin of their present appellation, “ the Scilly isles.” Nine out of the ten were inhabited : and the natives are described as a peaceful and industrious race, much addicted to habits of religious worship and divination. They wore long tunics of a dark colour ; were unacquainted with the use of money ; had no fixed places of habitation, and crossed from isle to isle in boats of wicker-work covered with leather<sup>18</sup>.

<sup>16</sup> Fest. Avien. *Ora marit.* v. 117. 410.  
Ast hinc duobus in *sacram* (sic insulam  
Dixere prisci), solibus cursus rati est,  
Eamque late gens *Hibernorum* colit.

Ibid. v. 108.

Why *Sacram* ? Diodorus says it was called *Irin*, the very name by which it is known to the natives at this day : *την ονομαζομενην ιριν*. Diod. Sic. v. 355. May not the resemblance between *ιριν* and *ιερα* have given rise to the epithet “ sacred” ?

<sup>17</sup> Plin. ii. 75. Voss. de Hist. Græc. iv.

The Romans also, after several fruitless attempts, discovered the *Cassiterides*. A story is told of a Phenician merchant, who seeing himself closely watched by a Roman vessel, ran his ship ashore, that he might not disclose the secret to a rival. He was recompensed for his loss out of the public treasury.—Strab. iii. 175.

<sup>18</sup> Sol. xxii. 42. Fest. Avien. v. 95. Strab. iii. 175. The encroachments of the sea, by gradually inundating the low lands, have multiplied the number of islets.

By these successive discoveries the trade was at last thrown open to different nations. Lucius Crassus, a Roman, taught the natives to work their mines to greater advantage; and so abundant was the annual exportation, that the surplus of the tin was bought up by factors on the coast of the Mediterranean, and conveyed over land to the remote provinces of India<sup>19</sup>. But the navigation by the pillars of Hercules was now abandoned as too expensive and dangerous. The British miners having cast their tin into square blocks, conveyed it to the Isle of Wight, the general deposit. Thence it was exported by Gallic traders to the mouths of the Seine, the Loire, or the Garonne; and ascending these rivers, was carried across the land on the backs of horses, till it could be conveyed by water carriage to the great commercial cities of Marseilles or Narbonne<sup>20</sup>. In return for this metal, so highly prized by the ancient nations, the Britons received articles of inferior value to the importers, but of high estimation to an uncivilized people, salt for the preservation of provisions, earthen ware for domestic use, and brass for the manufacture of arms and ornaments<sup>21</sup>.

CHAP.  
I.  

---

---

Exports and imports.

The enterprise and researches of the foreigners quickened the industry of the southern tribes. Tin had originally formed the sole article of their commerce; to tin was soon added the exportation of hides, which were procured in immense numbers from the natives of the interior; lead was next extracted from veins open to the day; and then followed a most valuable acquisition, the discovery and use of iron<sup>22</sup>. But report had exaggerated the productions of the country far beyond their real

<sup>19</sup> Strab. *ibid.* Plin. xxxiv. 17.

<sup>20</sup> The whole journey was performed in about thirty days. See Dio. Sic. v. 346, 347. 361. Strab. iii. 147.

<sup>21</sup> Strab. iii. 175.

<sup>22</sup> Plin. iv. 22. xxxiv. 17. Cas. v. 12

## CHAP.

## I.

value: and at the time of the invasion, the Romans flattered themselves with the hope of conquering an island, of which the shores abounded with pearls, and the soil with ores of the more precious metals. Their avarice was, however, defeated. Of gold or silver not the smallest trace was discovered<sup>23</sup>; nor were the British pearls of a size or colour which could reward the labour of the collector<sup>24</sup>. Yet the invasion produced one advantage to the natives. They sought, and at last discovered ores of the very metals, after which Roman avarice had so anxiously but fruitlessly inquired: and the British exports, at the commencement of the Christian era, comprised, if we may credit a contemporary and well-informed writer, corn and cattle, gold and silver, tin, lead and iron, skins, slaves and dogs<sup>25</sup>.

Custom of  
dyeing the  
body.

Of the peculiar customs of the Britons but few and imperfect notices have been transmitted to posterity. One strange and disgusting practice, that of painting the body, seems to have prevailed in many parts of the island. For this purpose the southern tribes employed a blue dye, extracted from woad, which gave to them, in the eyes of foreigners, the appearance of Ethiopians. It was adopted equally by both sexes: and was consecrated in their estimation by ceremonies of religion<sup>26</sup>. Connected with this was the still more barbarous practice of tattooing, so long in use among the more northern Britons. At an early age, the outlines of animals were impressed with pointed

<sup>23</sup> Illud cognitum est, neque auri neque argenti semper, ullum esse ab eis in illa insula. Cic. ep. ad fam. vii. 7. ad Att. iv. 16.

<sup>24</sup> Parvos atque decolores. Plin. ix. 35. Origen says they were cloudy, and less bright than those of India. Com. in Matth. 211. Yet Cæsar ascribed to Venus a breastplate ornamented with pearls, which he pretended to have found in Britain. Plin. *ibid*.

<sup>25</sup> Tac. vit. Agric. xii. Strab. iv. 199.

<sup>26</sup> Plin. xxii. 1. Mela, iii. 6. Cæsar (v. 14.) says: omnes vero se Britanni vitro inficiunt. As, however, he had not seen any of the more remote tribes, it is uncertain whether his observation should be applied to them.



instruments in the skin : a strong infusion of woad was rubbed into the punctures ; and the figures, expanding with the growth of the body, retained their original appearance through life. The Briton was vain of this hideous ornament : and to exhibit it in the eyes of his enemies, he was always careful to throw off his clothes in the day of battle<sup>27</sup>.

The religion of the natives was that of the druids, whether it had been brought by them from Gaul, as is the more natural supposition, or, as Cæsar asserts, had been invented in the island. The druids adored, under different appellations, the same gods as the Greeks and Romans. Pluto they considered as their progenitor : Apollo, Mars, Jupiter, and Minerva were severally worshipped : but to Mercury, as the inventor of the useful arts, they paid a more particular veneration<sup>28</sup>. To these, the superior gods, they added, like other polytheists, a multitude of local deities, the genii of the woods, rivers, and mountains<sup>29</sup>. Some fanciful writers have pretended that they rejected the use of temples through a sublime notion of the divine immensity : though the absence of such structures may, with more probability, be referred to their want of architectural skill. On the oak they looked with peculiar reverence. This monarch of the forest, from its strength and durability, was considered as the most appropriate emblem of the divinity<sup>30</sup>. The tree and its productions were deemed holy : to its trunk was bound the victim destined for slaughter ; and of its leaves were formed the chaplets worn at the time of sacrifice. If it chanced to produce

<sup>27</sup> Solin. xxii. 43. Herod. iii. 47. It was practised by the Picts as late as the fifth century.

Perlegit exangues Picto moriente figuras.  
*Claud. de Bel. Get.* v. 165.

<sup>28</sup> Cæs. vi. 15, 16.

<sup>29</sup> Gild. ii. Many of these local deities are named in inscriptions which still exist.

<sup>30</sup> Ἀγῶμα δὲ Διὸς καὶ Περσεύος ἐφ' αὐτῷ θύει.  
Max. Tyr. Dissert. xxxviii. p. 87.

CHAP.  
I.

---

the misletoe, the whole tribe was summoned : two white heifers were immolated under its branches : the principal druid cut the sacred plant with a knife of gold ; and a religious feast terminated the ceremonies of the day <sup>31</sup>.

Sacrifices.

The druids were accustomed to dwell at a distance from the profane, in huts or caverns, amid the silence and gloom of the forest. There, at the hours of noon or midnight, when the deity was supposed to honour the sacred spot with his presence, the trembling votary was admitted within a circle of lofty oaks, to prefer his prayer, and listen to the responses of the minister <sup>32</sup>. In peace they offered the fruits of the earth : in war they devoted to the god of battles the spoils of the enemy. The cattle were slaughtered in his honour : a pile was formed of the rest of the booty, and was consecrated as a monument of his powerful assistance <sup>33</sup>. But in the hour of danger or distress human sacrifices were deemed the most efficacious. Impelled by a superstition, which had steeled all the feelings of humanity, the officiating priest plunged his dagger into the breast of his victim, whether captive or malefactor ; and from the rapidity with which the blood issued from the wound, and the convulsions in which the sufferer expired, presumed to announce the future happiness or calamity of his country <sup>34</sup>.

Doctrines.

To the veneration, which the British druids derived from their sacerdotal character, must be added the respect, which the reputation of knowledge never fails to extort from the ignorant. They professed to be the depositaries of a mysterious science,

<sup>31</sup> Plin. xvi. 44.

<sup>32</sup> Mela, iii. 243. Luc. i. v. 453. iii. v. 399. 423. Tac. Ann. xiv. 30. I have not noticed the circles of unhewn stones, the remains of which still exist at Stonehenge, Abury, &c. because I do not find that such

stones are ever mentioned by ancient writers, as appendages to places of worship among the Celtæ.

<sup>33</sup> Cæs. iv. 16.

<sup>34</sup> Dio. Sic. v. 354. Tac. Ann. xiv. 30. Cæs. vi. 15. Plin. xxx. 1. Strab. iv. 198.

far above the comprehension of the vulgar : and their schools were opened to none but the sons of illustrious families. Such was their fame, that the druids of Gaul, to attain the perfection of the institute, did not disdain to study under their British brethren<sup>35</sup>. With them, as with similar orders of priests among the ancients, a long course of preparatory discipline was required : and we are told that many had the patience to spend no less than twenty years in this state of probation. To the initiated they enjoined the most inviolable secrecy : and that the profane might not become acquainted with their doctrines, the use of letters was prohibited, and each precept was delivered in verse by the teacher, and committed to memory by the disciple<sup>36</sup>.

Of tenets thus anxiously concealed, it is not to be expected that much should be distinctly known : the following particulars have been collected from the few notices contained in the ancient historians, compared with the doctrines peculiar to the bards. The druids professed to be acquainted with the nature, the power, and the providence of the divinity ; with the figure, size, formation, and final destruction of the earth : with the stars, their position and motions, and their supposed influence over human affairs<sup>37</sup>. They practised the art of divination with eager assiduity. Three of their ancient astrologers were able, it is said, to foretel whatever should happen before the day of doom ; and their skill in magic was so great, that, according to Pliny, the Persians themselves might be thought to be their disciples<sup>38</sup>. To medicine also they had pretensions :

<sup>35</sup> Cæs. vi. 12.

<sup>36</sup> Cæs. vi. 13. *Αινιγματωδως*. Diog. Laert. in proem. p. 5. Amstel. apud West.

<sup>37</sup> Cæs. vi. 13. Mela, iii. 243. Amm.

Mar. xv. 427.

<sup>38</sup> Mela, iii. 243. Plin. xxx. 1. Solin. xxii. 42. Dio. Sic. v. 354. Cic. de div. i. 41. Triad. 89.



CHAP.  
I.

but their knowledge was principally confined to the use of the misletoe, vervain, savin, and trefoil; and even the efficacy of these simples was attributed not to the nature of the plants, but to the influence of prayers and incantations<sup>39</sup>. The great objects of the order were, according to themselves, “to reform morals, to secure peace, and to encourage goodness:” and the following lesson, which they inculcated to the people, was certainly conducive to those ends: “the three first principles of wisdom are, obedience to the laws of God, concern for the good of man, and fortitude under the accidents of life<sup>40</sup>.” They also taught the immortality of the human soul: but to this great truth they added the absurd fiction of metempsychosis<sup>41</sup>. Man is placed, according to their doctrine, in the circle of *courses*: good and evil are placed before him for his selection. If he prefer the former, death transmits him from the earth into the circle of *felicity*: but if he prefer the latter, death returns him into the circle of *courses*: he is made to do penance for a time in the body of a beast or reptile; and then permitted to reas-

<sup>39</sup> Plin. xvi. 44. xxiv. 11. xxv. 9. xxx. 1.

<sup>40</sup> These two triads may be seen in Davis (Celt. Researches, 171. 182). It is remarkable that the latter had been translated by Diogenes Laertius many centuries ago. Σέβειν θεῶς, καὶ μὴδεν κακὸν δοῦν, καὶ ἀνδρείαν ἀσκεῖν. (Dio. Laert. in proem p. 5.)

<sup>41</sup> Cæs. vi. 13. Mel. iii. 243. Dio. Sic. v. 352. Strabo, iv. 197. I have added an explanation of the metempsychosis from the writings of the bards. It is so improbable that such a system should have been invented after the introduction of christianity, that I think it may fairly be considered as a relic of the druidical doctrine. For the same reason I would attribute to these ancient priests the

rhÿn or mysterious language, so often mentioned by the bards. To every tree and shrub, to their leaves, flowers, and branches, they seem to have affixed a fanciful and symbolical meaning: and these allegorical substitutes for the real names of beings and their properties, must have formed, in their numerous combinations, a species of jargon perfectly unintelligible to any but the adepts. This acquirement appears to have been prized for many centuries in proportion to its difficulty and folly. Taliessin boasts with complacency, that he is acquainted with every *sprig* in the cave of the diviner: that he knows the intent of the *trees* in the memorial of compacts, that he knows both good and evil. See Davis, Celtic Researches, 245—253.

sume the form of man. According to the predominance of vice or virtue in his disposition, a repetition of his probation may be necessary : but after a certain number of transmigrations his offences will be expiated, his passions subdued, and the circle of felicity will receive him among its inhabitants<sup>42</sup>. It was to this doctrine that the Romans attributed that contempt of death which was so conspicuous in the Celtic nations<sup>43</sup>.

It will not excite surprise that men, whose office and pretended attainments raised them so much above the vulgar, should acquire and exercise the most absolute dominion over the minds of their countrymen. In public and private deliberations of any moment, their opinion was always asked, and was generally obeyed. By their authority peace was preserved : in their presence passion and revenge were silenced ; and at their mandate contending armies consented to sheathe their swords. Civil controversies were submitted to their decision : and the punishment of crimes was reserved to their justice. Religion supplied them with the power to enforce submission. Disobedience was followed by excommunication : and from that instant the culprit was banished from their sacrifices, cut off from the protection of the laws, and stigmatized as a disgrace to his family and country<sup>44</sup>.

Authority of  
the Druids.

As the Druids delivered their instructions in verse, they must have had some notion of poetry, and we find among them a particular class distinguished by the title of bards. By the triads their origin is ascribed to certain personages, who from

The Bards.

<sup>42</sup> See the triads in William's Poems, ii. 227, or the epitome of them in Davis, p. 185.

<sup>43</sup> Cæs. vi. 13. Mela, iii. 243.

Inde ruendi

In ferrum mens prona viris, animæque capaces

Mortis, et ignavum *redituræ* parcere vitæ.

Lucan. i. 460.

<sup>44</sup> Cæs. vi. 12. Diod. Sic. v. 354. Strabo, iv. 197. Dio. Chrys. orat. xlix. p. 538.

CHAP.  
I.

---

their names appear to be enigmatical, rather than real, characters<sup>45</sup>. The bard was a musician as well as a poet: and he constantly accompanied with his voice the sounds of his harp. Every chieftain retained one or more of them in his service. They attended in his hall; eulogised his bounty and his valour: and sang the praises and the history of their country. At the festive board, in the hour of merriment and intoxication, the bard struck his harp: and every bosom glowed with admiration of the heroes whom he celebrated, and of the sentiments which he aimed to inspire. He accompanied the chief and his clan to the field of battle: to the sound of his harp they marched against the enemy: and in the heat of the contest animated themselves with the hope that their actions would be renowned in song, and transmitted to the admiration of posterity<sup>46</sup>.

Government  
of the Britons.

The form of government adopted by the British tribes has scarcely been noticed in history. In some, the supreme authority appears to have been divided among several chieftains; in most, it had been intrusted to a single individual: but in all, the people continued to possess considerable influence. With respect to the succession there are instances in which the father had portioned his dominions among his children, and others in which the reigning prince left his crown to his widow, who both exercised the more peaceful duties of royalty, and with arms in her hands, conducted her subjects to the field of battle<sup>47</sup>. But in the absence of any fixed notions of succession, it is probable that power would frequently supply the place of right:

<sup>45</sup> Triad, 58.

<sup>46</sup> Diod. Sic. v. p. 354. Athenæus, vi. p. 246. Ammian. Mar. xv. 24. Strabo, iv. 197.

Vos quoque, qui fortes animas, belloque peremptas

Laudibus in longum vates dimittitis ævum,  
Plurima securi fudistis carmina Bardi.

Lucan. i. v. 447.

<sup>47</sup> Cæs. v. 11. 20. 22. Diod. Sic. v. p. 347. Mela, iii. p. 264. Tac. Agric. xvi. Dio. Cass. lx. p. 779. Dio. in Sever. p. 339.



and the weaker state fall a victim to the ambition of a more warlike neighbour. We are told that the Britons were quarrelsome, rapacious, and revengeful: that every nation was torn by intestine factions: and that pretexts were never wanting to justify oppression, when it could be committed with impunity<sup>48</sup>. It was this rancorous hostility among themselves which accelerated their subjugation to the power of Rome. "There is not," says Tacitus, "a more fortunate circumstance, than that these powerful nations make not one common cause. They fight single, and unsupported: and each in its turn is compelled to receive the Roman yoke"<sup>49</sup>.

Such were the Britons, who by their bravery and perseverance baffled the attempts of the first, and the most warlike, of the Cæsars. From that period to the reign of Claudius, during the lapse of ninety-seven years, they retained their original independence. During the civil wars, the attention of the Romans was too actively occupied at home, to think of foreign conquest. Augustus thrice announced his intention of annexing Britain to the empire: but the danger was averted, on one occasion by a submissive embassy from the natives, on the others by the intervention of more important concerns<sup>50</sup>. Instead of exacting the tribute imposed by Cæsar, he contented himself with levying duties on the trade between Gaul and Britain, a measure which brought a larger sum into the imperial treasury, and was borne without murmuring by the inhabitants<sup>51</sup>. Yet this financial experiment has been magnified, by the flattery of a courtier, into the conquest of the whole island<sup>52</sup>.

Augustus  
A. D. 21

<sup>48</sup> Maxime imperitandi cupidine, et studio prolatandi ea quæ possident. Mela, iii. 265. Tacit. Agric. xii.

<sup>49</sup> Ibid.

<sup>50</sup> Dio. xlix. p. 472. liii. 586. Hor. l. i.

Ode, 29. iv. 12.

<sup>51</sup> Strabo, iv. p. 200.

<sup>52</sup> Præsens divus habebitur Augustus, adjectis Britannis Imperio.

Hor. iii. 5.

CHAP.  
I.Caligula.  
A. D. 40.

Tiberius pretended that the empire was already too extensive; and sought to justify his own indolence, by the policy of Augustus<sup>53</sup>. In opposition to his conduct, his nephew and successor Caligula exhibited to the world a farce, worthy of the childish prince by whom it was planned. Cunobeline, the most powerful of the successors of Cassibelan, had banished his son Adminius. The exile repaired to the emperor, and, as if Britain had been his patrimony, made a surrender of the island into the hands of Caligula. The glorious intelligence was immediately transmitted to the senate: and an army of two hundred thousand men was ordered to assemble on the coast of Gesoriacum<sup>54</sup>. As soon as the emperor arrived, he arrayed the legions on the shore, rowed out to sea in the imperial galley, returned precipitately, and gave the signal of battle. The soldiers, in suspense and astonishment, inquired for the enemy: when Caligula informed them, that they had that day conquered the ocean, and commanded them to collect its spoils, the shells on the beach, as a proof of their victory. To perpetuate the memory of his folly, he laid the foundation of a lofty beacon, and returned to Rome to give himself the honours of a triumph<sup>55</sup>.

Claudius.  
A. D. 43.

But the empty pageantry of Caligula was soon succeeded by the real horrors of invasion. Instigated by Beric, a British chieftain, whom domestic feuds had expelled from his native country, the emperor Claudius commanded Aulus Plautius to transport four legions with their auxiliaries into Britain. It was with difficulty that the troops could be induced to engage in

<sup>53</sup> Tac. Agric. xiii.<sup>54</sup> Boulogne.<sup>55</sup> Suet. in Calig. 46, 47. Dio. lix. 754.  
The ruins of Britenhuis on the coast of Hol-

land have been supposed to be the remains of this beacon. Camd. p. liv. Gibson's version. But in all probability it would be raised at Boulogne.

the expedition: but as they crossed the channel, a meteor was seen moving in the direction of the fleet, and was hailed as a certain omen of victory. The Britons were under the command of Caractacus and Togidumnus, the two sons of Cunobeline: who adopted the policy of their ancestors, and endeavoured to harass, rather than to repel, the invaders. But the German auxiliaries, better fitted for such warfare than the legionary soldiers, followed them across rivers and morasses; and, though the natives made a gallant resistance, drove them, with the loss of Togidumnus, to the north bank of the Thames. The emperor himself now took the command, penetrated to Camalodunum<sup>56</sup>, and received the submission of the Britons in the vicinity. At his departure, he divided the Roman forces between the legate Plautius, and Vespasian, an officer whose merit afterwards invested him with the purple. To the care of Plautius was assigned the left, to that of Vespasian the right bank of the Thames. Both experienced from the natives the most determined resistance. Vespasian fought no less than thirty battles, before he could subdue the Belgæ and natives of the Isle of Wight: Plautius, during the five remaining years of his government, was opposed by Caractacus at the head of the Cassii and Silures, who, though frequently beaten, as often renewed the contest. Claudius had entered Rome in triumph: to Plautius, for his services, was decreed the inferior honour of an ovation<sup>57</sup>.

Ostorius Scapula was the successor of Plautius. To repress the inroads of the unsubdued Britons, he erected two chains of forts, one in the north along the river Avon, the other in the

Ostorius.  
A. D. 50.

<sup>56</sup> Malden or Colchester.

<sup>57</sup> Dio. lx. 779—781. Suet. in Claud. xvii. xxiv. Tac. Agric. xiii. The Roman army was attended by several elephants, probably to terrify the natives. Dio. *ibid.* The ex-

ploits of Plautius are mentioned in an inscription in his honour, which is still extant, on the mausoleum of the Plautian family, near Ponte Lucano, on the road from Rome to Tivoli.



CHAP.  
I.

west along the left bank of the Severn. The reduced tribes were gradually moulded into the form of a Roman province: and, when the Icenî dared to refuse the yoke, their rebellion was severely punished, and a colony of veterans was planted at Camalodunum to insure their obedience. The freedom of Britain now sought an asylum among the Silures. The enthusiastic attachment of that people to their independence, had caused them to be compared to the ancient Sicambri: and their hatred of the Roman name had been envenomed by an incautious expression of Ostorius, that their existence as a people was incompatible with his projects. In Shropshire, at the confluence of the Coln and Teme, stands a lofty hill called Caer-Caradoc, still retaining the vestiges of ancient fortifications. There Caractacus and the Silures determined to defend the liberty of their country. The bank of the river was lined with troops, and the ascent of the hill was fortified with ramparts of loose stones. At the approach of the Romans, the Britons bound themselves by an oath to conquer or die: and with loud exclamations defied the attack of the enemy. Ostorius himself hesitated: but at the demand of the legions the signal of battle was given: the passage of the river was forced: and the Romans, under showers of darts, mounted the hill; burst over the ramparts, and drove the Silures from the summit. The wife and daughter of Caractacus fell into the hands of the victors: his brothers soon after surrendered: and the king himself was delivered in chains to Ostorius by his step-mother Cartismandua, queen of the Brigantes, under whose protection he had hoped to elude the vigilance of his pursuers.

Fate of Caractacus.  
A. D. 52.

The fame of Caractacus had already crossed the seas; and the natives of Italy were anxious to behold the man who had braved for nine years the power of Rome. As he passed

through the imperial city, he expressed his surprise that men, who possessed such palaces at home, should deem it worth their while to fight for the wretched hovels of Britain. Claudius and the empress Agrippina were seated on two lofty tribunals; the pretorian guards stood on each side; and the senate and people had been invited to witness the spectacle. First were borne the arms and the ornaments of the British prince: next followed his wife, daughter, and brothers, bewailing with tears their unhappy fate: lastly came Caractacus himself, neither dispirited by his misfortunes, nor dismayed at the new and imposing spectacle. Claudius, to his own honour, received him graciously, restored him to liberty, and, if we may credit a plausible conjecture, invested him with princely authority over a portion of conquered Britain<sup>58</sup>. The event was celebrated at Rome with extraordinary joy. By the senate the captivity of Caractacus was compared to the captivity of Perses and Syphax; by the poets Claudius was said to have united the two worlds, and to have brought the ocean within the limits of the empire<sup>59</sup>.

The Silures, however, did not abandon themselves to despair. Taught by experience that uninstructed valour was not a match for the discipline and defensive armour of the legions, they adopted a more desultory but sanguinary mode of warfare; and contented themselves with harassing the Romans in their quarters, interrupting their communications, and surprising their detachments. If they sometimes received, they often

<sup>58</sup> Quædam civitates Cogiduno regi donatæ: (is ad nostram usque memoriam fidissimus mansit.) Tac. Agric. xiv. Though great authorities conceive Cogidunus to have been the same person as Caractacus, I entertain a

suspicion that he was the very Togidumnus, whom Dio supposed to have fallen in battle.

<sup>59</sup> Tacit. Ann. xii. 31—38.

At nunc oceanus geminos interluit orbes:

Pars est imperii; terminus ante fuit.

*E catalect. Scalig. apud Camd. lix.*

CHAP.

I.

A. D. 53.

inflicted, considerable injury : and Ostorius was so exhausted by labour and vexation, that his death was attributed to his chagrin. His successor, Aulus Didius, found himself involved in a new war. Venusius, a chieftain of the Jugantes, had married Cartismandua. Both had been faithful allies to the Romans : but the queen after a short interval separated from her husband, and took to her bed a Briton, named Vellocatus. Hostilities were the immediate consequence. Cartismandua, for her ancient services, claimed the aid of the Romans : the Brigantes, through hatred of the adultress, fought for Venusius. After several battles, the queen was compelled to leave the throne to her husband, and to lead a degraded life under the protection of her allies<sup>60</sup>.

Reduction of  
Anglesey.

A. D. 57.

To Didius succeeded Veranius, whose early death made way for Suetonius Paulinus, a general of consummate skill and distinguished reputation. The isle of Anglesey, the nursery and principal residence of the druids, had hitherto offered a secure retreat to those priests ; to whose influence and invectives was attributed the obstinate resistance of the Britons.

A. D. 61.

To reduce it, Suetonius ordered his cavalry to swim across the strait, while the infantry should pass over in boats. On their approach to the sacred isle, they beheld the shore lined not only with warriors, but with bands of both male and female druids. The former, with their arms outstretched to heaven, devoted the invaders to the God of war : the latter, in habits of mourning, with their hair floating in the wind, and lighted torches in their hands, ran in all directions along the beach.

<sup>60</sup> Tac. Ann. xii. 40. Hist. iii. 45. This fact is sufficient to induce a doubt of the accuracy of Caesar (v. 14), and of Dio Nicæus (in Sev. p. 339), who represent a community of wives as a national institution among

the Britons. Perhaps the story might have arisen from the circumstance, that several families were accustomed to dwell in the same hut.



The Romans were seized with a superstitious horror. For a moment they refused to advance: shame and the reproaches of their leader urged them to the attack. The victory was easy and bloodless. On that day the power of the druids received a shock from which it never recovered. Their altars were overturned; their sacred groves fell beneath the axe of the legionaries: and their priests and priestesses were consumed in the flames, which they had kindled for the destruction of their captives<sup>61</sup>.

The absence of Suetonius in Anglesey, was the signal of a most formidable insurrection. Prasutagus, king of the Iceni, who had long been the faithful ally of Rome, to secure the disposition of his property, had made the emperor joint heir with his own daughters. But Roman avarice was not easily defeated. The whole succession was immediately seized by Catus, the imperial procurator. Boadicea, the widow of the late king, who ventured to remonstrate, was scourged as a slave: and the chastity of her daughters was violated by the Roman officers. The unhappy princess grasped the first favourable opportunity of revenge. The history of her wrongs reminded each individual of his own sufferings; and in a few days almost all the conquered tribes were in arms. To account for this general disaffection we are told, that the insults and oppression of the conquerors were beyond endurance; that the British youth had been forcibly conveyed to foreign countries to serve among the cohorts of auxiliaries; that, to pay the contributions, their chieftains had been compelled to borrow ten millions of drachmas<sup>62</sup> from the philosopher Seneca, by whom they were harassed with the most vexatious prosecutions; that their estates

Rebellion of  
Boadicea.

<sup>61</sup> Tacit. Ann. xiv. 29, 30.    <sup>62</sup> About £480,000.

CHAP.  
I.

---

had been lately registered, and loaded with imposts; and that many of their most noble families had been reduced to indigence and slavery<sup>63</sup>. All these causes contributed to swell the torrent, which now burst on the Roman establishments. Cana-lodunum was the first to experience its fury. Within the walls of the colony had been erected a temple to the divinity of Claudius, the subjugator of Britain, and the natives were eager to demolish this monument of their servitude. At the first assault the town was reduced to ashes: the walls of the temple protracted the fate of the garrison only two days. Petilius marched with the ninth legion to their assistance. It was trodden under foot by the multitude of the insurgents.

By this time Suetonius had returned to London, already a populous and opulent mart<sup>64</sup>. Unable to protect the town, he retired, taking with him such of the inhabitants as were willing to share his fortunes. London was soon consumed by the flames; and shortly afterwards the municipal town of Verulam experienced the same fate. The fury of the Britons treated as enemies all who had not joined in the insurrection: and those who fell not by the sword, were immolated with still greater cruelty to Andraste the goddess of victory. The slaughter of seventy thousand victims, without distinction of sex or age, of rank or country, attests both the violence of their revenge, and the extent of country through which they followed the Romans<sup>65</sup>.

Defeat of Bo-  
adicea.

Suetonius was at last compelled to turn his face to the enemy.

<sup>63</sup> Compare Tac. Ann. xiv. 31. with Dio Nicaeus apud Xiphil in Ner. p. 169.

<sup>64</sup> *Copia negociatorum et conmeatum maxime celebre.* Tac. 33.

<sup>65</sup> Tac. *ibid.* Dio Nic. *ibid.* Their rejoicings were celebrated in the woods sacred to An-

draste. Some of the victims were crucified, others were burnt. The female captives they hanged on the branches of trees, cut off their breasts and drove stakes through their bodies. *Ibid*

Though fear had prevented the second legion from joining his little army, he had collected from the different garrisons ten thousand men, and had chosen a position, in which he could be attacked only in front. The Britons were collected in masses around their different chieftains: their wives and children occupied a long line of carriages in the rear: and the air resounded with their cries and imprecations. The Romans, motionless and silent, permitted them to approach: then rushing forward in the form of a wedge, overturned every thing within their reach. The battle, however, was long and fiercely maintained. Numbers on the part of the natives, supplied the want of discipline; and a succession of conflicts almost exhausted the patience of the legionaries. Victorious at last, the Romans took a severe revenge. They granted no quarter: and the women and children were involved in the same carnage with the combatants. Were success to be estimated by the multitude of the slain, Tacitus was justified in comparing this with the most glorious victories of ancient Rome. He estimates the loss of the Britons at eighty thousand men. The fugitives, however, who escaped, offered to try again the fortune of war: but Boadicea, who had led them to the field, and shared the dangers of the day, refused to survive this defeat, and terminated her misfortunes by a voluntary death<sup>66</sup>.

If this splendid action preserved the ascendancy of the Roman arms, it did not put an end to the war. A notion prevailed in the imperial court, that the obstinacy of the Britons arose from the dread which the severity of Suetonius had inspired. He was recalled: and under the milder administration of his three succes-

A. D. 62.

<sup>66</sup> Tac. 34—37. Dio Nic. apud Xiphil. in Ner. p. 176. Dio has described this British heroine as a woman of lofty stature, and severe countenance. Her yellow hair

reached almost to the ground. She wore a plaited tunic of various colours, round her waist a chain of gold, and over these a long mantle. p. 173.



CHAP.  
I.

---

sors Turpilianus, Trebellius, and Bolanus, the natives within the Roman pale were gradually induced to submit to the yoke. But the task of tranquillizing the province, the mutinous spirit of the army, and the rival claims of competitors for the empire, prevented these governors from making any attempts against the independent portion of Britain. As soon as Vespasian had assumed the purple, a new era commenced. Petilius Cerealis was ordered to reduce the Brigantes: and in the space of five years that powerful tribe was added to the subjects of the empire. Julius Frontinus was his successor: and during the three years of his government he nearly subdued the warlike nation of the Silures<sup>67</sup>.

A. D. 70.

A. D. 75.

Victories of  
Agricola.  
A. D. 78.

But the reputation of preceding governors was obscured by the more splendid, and more lasting, fame of Cneius Julius Agricola. When that commander arrived, the army had been dismissed into winter quarters. He immediately summoned it again to the field, marched into the territory of the Ordovices, who had surprised a squadron of Roman horse; and put to the sword the greater part of that nation. Preceded by the terror of his name he crossed over to Anglesey: but the natives offered no resistance, and the sacred isle was a second time added to the empire. In the two next campaigns he gradually extended the limits of his government to the Tay. Tribe after tribe saw itself compelled to submit: garrisons were stationed in every commanding situation: and with the prospect of success was removed the principal incentive to rebellion. The fourth summer was employed in securing a strong frontier to the Roman conquests: and a line of forts from the frith of Forth to that of Clyde, bade defiance to the inroads of the more northern Britons<sup>68</sup>.

<sup>67</sup> Tac. Ann. xiv. 37.-39. Hist. i. 9. 60. ii. 97. Vii. Agric. 8. 16, 17.

<sup>68</sup> Agricola seems to have proceeded across the Dee, through Lancashire, Westmoreland,

Cumberland, Annandale, to the narrow isthmus between the friths of Forth and Clyde Gordon's Itiner. Septent.

But Agricola aspired to more solid praise than that of conquest, and devoted his winters to the less ostentatious, but more useful, arts of peace. Sensible of the errors of his predecessors, he reformed the civil administration in all its branches, established a more equitable system of taxation; listened with kindness to the complaints of the natives; and severely punished the tyranny of inferior officers. The Britons were charmed with the mildness and justice of his government, and publicly pronounced him their benefactor. At his instigation the chieftains left their habitations in the forests, and repaired into the vicinity of the Roman stations. There they learned to admire the refinements of civilization, and acquired a taste for improvement. The use of the Roman toga began to supersede that of the British mantle: houses, baths, temples, were built in the Roman fashion: children were instructed in the Roman language; and with the manners were adopted the vices of the Romans. In these new pursuits the spirit of independence speedily evaporated: and those hardy warriors, who had so long braved the power of the emperors, insensibly dwindled into soft and effeminate provincials <sup>69</sup>.

Ambition and curiosity now induced Agricola to transgress the boundary, which he had fixed to his conquests. An Irish chieftain, expelled from his native country, had sought protection in the camp of the Romans. From him it was understood that the sister island possessed a climate and soil like that of Britain, and was inhabited by tribes of similar manners, and similar dispositions. Agricola was not insensible to the glory of adding this unknown country to the provinces of the empire: but prudence forbade him to engage in a second conquest before he had completed the first, and he contented himself with

<sup>69</sup> Tac. Agric. 18—24.

CHAP.  
I.

obtaining possession of the western coasts, that he might be prepared to take advantage of the first opportunity, which the course of events might offer.

The next year, having received the submission of the tribes, in the neighbourhood of the Forth, he pushed his advances along the eastern coast. The operations of the army on land were combined with those of a numerous fleet at sea. If the sight of the shipping alarmed the natives, the Romans were also terrified by reports of the multitude and ferocity of their enemies. In the darkness of the night the Britons attacked the quarters of the ninth legion, burst into the camp, and maintained a doubtful fight within the intrenchments until the break of day disclosed the eagles of the other legions, which were advancing to the support of their comrades. This campaign seems to have conferred little honour on the imperial arms.

He invades  
Caledonia.

Resolved to distinguish the eighth and last year of his government, Agricola had assembled all his forces, and added to their number several cohorts of Britons raised among the tribes of the south. The Caledonians were apprized of their danger: and thirty thousand warriors under the command of Galgacus had undertaken to defend the passage of the Grampian mountains. They were discovered, divided into clans, posted one below the other on the declivity of a hill. The plain at its foot was covered with horsemen and armed chariots. Agricola drew up his army in two lines, in the first of which he placed the auxiliaries, in the other the legions. As long as they fought with missile weapons, the Britons, from their numbers, retained the advantage: but their unwieldy and unpointed swords were of little use in close action, and they were gradually driven up the hill by the steady pressure of the auxiliaries<sup>70</sup>. An attempt to

<sup>70</sup> They had osier targets covered with skins: and long heavy swords without points, with which they were accustomed to cut but not to push. Tac. Agric. xxxvi.



surprise the rear of the Romans was defeated by the vigilance of the general; who charged in return the flank of the Britons, and threw them into disorder. The courage or despair of a few detached bodies protracted the conflict till night. The next morning presented a very different scene. A vast and dreary solitude had succeeded to the noise and turmoil of the preceding day: and columns of smoke rising on the verge of the horizon, proved that the Britons had burnt their cottages in their flight. Ten thousand Caledonians, about four hundred Romans, are said to have fallen in the battle<sup>71</sup>.

After this victory the army returned to winter quarters: the fleet pursued its voyage, and sailing along the eastern coast, arrived at the port of Sandwich, from which it had commenced the expedition. By the jealousy of Domitian the ornaments, but not the parade, of a triumph were granted to Agricola, who, having surrendered the command to his successor Lucullus, returned to Rome, waited on his imperial master, and was graciously permitted to withdraw into the obscurity of private life<sup>72</sup>.

The Roman power was now firmly established in the island. The tribes, which had submitted, attempted no more to recover their independence: and the Caledonians, humbled by their last defeat, were content to roam without molestation in their native forests. The successors of Agricola, instead of conducting the legions in the field, were employed in protecting the public tranquillity, in settling the details of the provincial government, and in assimilating the state of Britain to that of the other countries, which had been incorporated in the empire. A short sketch of this system will not be unacceptable to the reader.

The Govern-  
ment estab-  
lished in Bri-  
tain.

1. The governor was denominated the Prefect or Propretor The prefect

<sup>71</sup> Tac. Agric. 24—38.

<sup>72</sup> Tac. Agric. 40.

CHAP.  
I.

---

of Britain. His power was supreme within the island, but precarious in its duration, and dependent on the will of the emperor. He united in his own person every species of authority, which was exercised by the different magistrates within the city of Rome. He commanded the army: he was invested with the administration of justice; and he possessed the power of substituting his own notions of equity in the place of the strict letter of the law. An authority so extensive and irresistible would frequently give birth to acts of injustice: and though the imperial court and the senate house were open to the complaints of the natives, yet the distance of the capital, and the influence of friends, promised, or rather insured, impunity to the oppressor. In a few years, however, the exorbitant power of the prefects was confined by the emperor Hadrian, who, in his "perpetual edict," laid down a system of rules for the regulation of their conduct, and established an uniform administration of justice through all the provinces of the empire<sup>73</sup>.

Procurator  
and taxes.

2. Subordinate to the prefect, but appointed by the emperor, was the procurator or quæstor. It was his duty to collect the taxes, and to administer the revenue of the province. That revenue arose from a variety of imposts: a poll-tax, which was not confined to the living, but extended to the funerals of the dead: a tax on legacies, the sale of slaves, and purchases at auctions; the tenth part of the produce of mines; and a certain proportion of corn, hay, and cattle, which was paid either in kind or in money, at the option of the procurator<sup>74</sup>. He was

<sup>73</sup> Tillem. Emp. ii. 51.

<sup>74</sup> In provinces which submitted voluntarily, a tenth of the corn was exacted (*frumentum decumanum*): in those, which were conquered, an arbitrary quantity (*frumentum stipendiarium*). Besides this the natives supplied

the corn wanted for the army at a fixed price (*frumentum emptum*): and a certain quantity for the use of the governor, for which a composition was usually paid in money (*frumentum æstimatum*). See Murphy's Tacitus from La Bletiere, vol. iv. p. 402.

also employed occasionally in the dishonourable office of a spy : and his reports were frequently swelled with exaggerated accounts of the riches, the power, and the ambition of the prefect. For the distance of that officer from the seat of government, and the natural strength of the island were constant sources of suspicion to the emperors : and in the course of this history we shall see that suspicion justified by the conduct of the usurpers, who at the head of the British legions, will assume the purple, and contend for the empire of Rome.

3. The amount of the army maintained in Britain must have varied according to circumstances. When Plautius undertook the reduction of the island, he was at the head of four legions with their auxiliaries, a force, which, at a moderate calculation, would exceed fifty thousand men<sup>75</sup>. If the different military stations, which were so thickly scattered over the country, had all been garrisoned at the same time, they would have required a still greater number<sup>76</sup> : but it is probable that, in proportion as the Roman power was established, many of them were abandoned ; and during the decline of the empire so large a force could not be spared from the defence of the other provinces. Into the ranks of the *legions* none but Roman citizens could claim the privilege of admittance : but the *auxiliaries* were composed of provincials who had not obtained the freedom of the city, or of barbarians, whom the fate of war, or the prospect of wealth, had drawn into the imperial service. These auxiliaries nearly equalled the legionaries in number : and from the

<sup>75</sup> At that period a legion consisted of 6100 infantry, 726 cavalry, and nearly the same number of auxiliaries (Veget. ii. 6. Tac. Ann. iv. 5). Under the successors of Constantine the number of the legions had increased from twenty-five to one hundred and thirty-two :

but their bulk had dwindled from nearly 7000 to 1200 men (Pancir. ad Notit. Imp. f. 23).

<sup>76</sup> There were in all one hundred and sixty-six stations, besides several smaller forts. Ric. Corin. i. p. 17. 33. Whitaker's Manches. iii. 2. xi. 2.



## CHAP.

## I.

notices of ancient writers, and the inscriptions on ancient monuments, have been discovered the names of three-and-thirty cohorts of auxiliary foot, and of eleven squadrons of auxiliary horse, which were stationed in Britain<sup>77</sup>. All these were foreigners; for, though by the law of conscription the natives were compelled to serve, they were not permitted to remain in the island. At home they might have employed their swords in asserting the independence of their country: but on the continent they were unconnected with the inhabitants: for their subsistence, they depended on the bounty of the emperor; and far from combining to subvert, were always prepared to support, the throne of their benefactor. What their number might be, is uncertain: but there exists evidence to shew, that they amounted to at least six-and-twenty cohorts; that they were dispersed as far as Egypt and Armenia; and that some of them had acquired the surname of “invincible” from their valour<sup>78</sup>.

## Provinces.

When the Roman conquests in Britain had reached their utmost extent, they were irregularly divided into six provinces under the government of pretors appointed by the prefect. The long tract of land which runs from the western extremity of Cornwall to the South Foreland in Kent, is almost separated from the rest of the island by the arm of the sea, now called the Bristol channel, and by the course of the river Thames. This formed the most wealthy of the British provinces; and from priority of conquest or proximity of situation was distinguished by the name of *Britannia prima*. *Britannia secunda* comprised the present principality of Wales with the addition of that tract which is included by the Severn in its circuitous course towards St. George's channel. Flavia

<sup>77</sup> It is not, however, improbable that the same cohort or squadron may be sometimes designated under two different names.

<sup>78</sup> Apud Camd. introd. p. cvii.

Cæsariensis was the next in order, but the first in extent. It was bounded on two sides by the former provinces, and on the two others by the Humber, the Don, and the German ocean. To the north of the Humber lay the province of Maxima. It reached to the Eden and Tyne, and its opposite shores were washed by the western and eastern seas. Valentia followed, including the Scottish lowlands as far as the friths of Clyde and Forth. The tribes beyond the friths formed the sixth government of Vespasiana, divided from the independent Caledonians by the long chain of mountains, which rising near Dumbarton, crosses the two counties of Athol and Badenoch, and stretches beyond the frith of Murray. But the greater part of this province was wrested at so early a period from the dominion of Rome, that it is seldom mentioned by writers, and the pretentura of Agricola has been generally considered as the northern limit of the empire in Britain<sup>79</sup>. To each of these divisions was allotted a separate government under the general superintendence of the prefect: but the interests of the rulers were most jealously separated from those of the provincials. Every Briton by his birth was excluded from all offices of trust and authority in his own country: and every holder of such office was prohibited by law from marrying a native, or purchasing property within the island<sup>80</sup>.

Throughout these provinces were thickly scattered a great number of inhabited towns and military posts, the names of which are still preserved in the itineraries of Richard and Antoninus. They were partly of British, and partly of Roman,

<sup>79</sup> Ric. Corin. i. p. 15. Not. Imp. occid. f. 155. The capitals of these provinces were Richborough, Caerleon, London, York, Whithern, and Inverness. The existence of the last province of Vespasiana has been questioned: but the authority of Richard is cor-

roborated by the testimony of Ptolemy, who mentions the military station of Pterotone or Inverness. Ptol. viii. 2. apud Gale. Whit. Manch. i. 8. iii. 2. xi. 2.

<sup>80</sup> See the Pandects xxiii. tit. ii. n. 38. 57. 63. Cod. Theod. viii. tit. xv. leg. 1.

CHAP.  
I.

---

origin; and were divided into four classes, gradually descending in the scale of privilege and importance. 1. The first rank was claimed by the colonies. It had long been the policy of Rome to reward her veterans with a portion of the lands of the conquered nations; and for this purpose those situations were generally selected, which combined the double advantage of a fruitful soil, and a military position. Each colony was a miniature representation of the parent city. It adopted the same customs, was governed by the same laws, and with similar titles conferred on its magistrates a similar authority. In Britain there were nine of these establishments, two of a civil, seven of a military description<sup>81</sup>. In the constitution of the latter, we discover a striking similitude to the feudal tenures of later ages. The veteran received his land from the bounty of the emperor; and was obliged to enrol his sons in the army, as soon as they should attain the years of manhood. Disgrace, imprisonment, or sometimes death, was the punishment of the youth, who refused to serve the benefactor of his father and family. 2. The advantages enjoyed by the colonies were nearly equalled, in some respects surpassed by the privileges of the municipal cities; the inhabitants of which were exempted from the operation of the imperial statutes, and with the title of Roman citizens, possessed the right of choosing their own decuriones or magistrates, and of enacting their own laws. Privileges so valuable were reserved for the reward of extraordinary merit, and Britain could boast of only two municipia, Verulam and York<sup>82</sup>. But the *jus Latii*, or Latian right, as it conferred more partial advantages, was bestowed with greater

Municipia.

Latian cities.

<sup>81</sup> Richborough, London, Colchester, Bath, Chesterfield. Ric. Corin. i. p. 36.  
Gloucester, Caerleon, Chester, Lincoln, and

<sup>82</sup> Ibid.



liberality. Ten of the British towns had obtained it from the favour of different emperors, and were indulged with the choice of their own magistrates, who, at the expiration of the year, resigned their offices, and claimed the freedom of Rome<sup>83</sup>. That freedom was the great object of provincial ambition; and by the expedient of annual elections, it was successively conferred on almost all the members of each Latin corporation. 4. The remaining towns were stipendiary, compelled, as the term imports, to pay tribute, and governed by Roman officers, who received their appointment from the pretor. These distinctions were, however, gradually abolished. Antoninus granted to every provincial of rank and opulence the freedom of the city: Caracalla extended the indulgence to the whole body of the natives<sup>84</sup>.

Stipendiary towns.

Though Agricola had defeated, he had not been able to subdue, the Caledonians. After his departure they continued to insult the Roman power; frequently crossed the line of forts between the two friths; and by their successful example, rekindled the flame of independence in the breasts of many among their countrymen. In less than thirty years the state of Britain had become so precarious, as to require the presence of the emperor Hadrian. Of his exploits history is silent; but on the testimony of medals and inscriptions, we may believe that he expelled the barbarians, and recovered the provinces which had been lost<sup>85</sup>. If, however, his victories have been forgotten, his memory has been preserved by a military work, which was executed under his direction, and has hitherto defied the ravages of time. Convinced by experience that the preten-

Roman walls.

A. D. 120.

<sup>83</sup> Inverness, Perth, Dunbarton, Carlisle, Catterick, Blackrode, Cirencester, Salisbury, Caister in Lincolnshire, and Slack in Longwood. Ric. *ibid*.

<sup>84</sup> Tillem. Emp. ii. 103. Hence he is thus addressed by Rutilius:

Urbem fecisti quod prius orbis erat.  
*Ru. il. Itin.* v. 66.

<sup>85</sup> See Speed, 96. Camden. introd. lxxix

CHAP.  
I.Vallum of  
Hadrian.

tura thrown up by Agricola could not confine the northern tribes, he resolved to oppose a second barrier to their incursions, by drawing a ditch and rampart across the island, from the Solway frith on the western, to the mouth of the Tyne on the eastern, coast. This mighty fortification measured in length more than sixty of our miles; and strong bodies of troops were permanently stationed at short intervals on the whole extent of the line<sup>86</sup>.

Vallum of  
Antoninus.  
A. D. 146.

But the tranquillity, which had been established by Hadrian, was repeatedly disturbed during the reign of his successor, Antoninus. On the north of the vallum the six tribes of the Maætæ reasserted their independence; on the south the Brigantes took up arms, and invaded the territory of the Ordovices. Lollius Urbicus was appointed proprætor of Britain. He chastised the Brigantes, subdued the Maætæ, and, in imitation of Hadrian, carried a similar fortification across the isthmus, from Cæcriden on the Forth to Alchuid on the Clyde, a distance of more than thirty-six miles. In honour of the emperor, it was called the vallum of Antoninus; and from numerous inscriptions which have been preserved, we learn the names of the different corps by which it was raised, and the different portions of work which were respectively allotted to each<sup>87</sup>.

Ulpius Mar-  
cellus.  
A. D. 180.

Hostilities were now become habitual between the Caledonians

<sup>86</sup> Spartian. in Hadrian, p. 290. The vallum may be traced from Burgh on the sands to the town of Newcastle, avoiding the mountains, and winding along the vallies. The ditch appears to have been eleven feet in breadth, and nine in depth; the rampart, at the present day, rises in some parts six feet above the original surface. Besides this, two aggeres or mounds of earth, one on the north, the other on the south, run the whole length in lines parallel to the ditch at the distance of nearly twenty feet. It is probable,

that the mound to the south was a military road; and that the original work of Hadrian, like that of Antoninus between the friths, consisted of no more than the ditch, the rampart, and the road. The aggere on the north might be afterwards added as a military way for the wall of Severus, when the vallum could be no longer considered as a work of defence.

<sup>87</sup> Pausan. in Arcad. l. viii. p. 698. Capitol. in Anton. p. 297. Horsley, Brit. Rom. p. 160. Henry, ii. App. ix. 476.

and the Romans. Urged by national animosity and the love of plunder, these intractable barbarians annually assaulted the vallum of Antoninus; often eluded the vigilance, or overpowered the opposition, of the guards; and spread devastation over the province. But in the reign of Commodus their incursions assumed a more formidable appearance; and the discontent of the legions alarmed the emperor for the safety of Britain. Ulpus Marcellus, a soldier of approved valour and unsullied integrity, was made proprætor. He restored the discipline of the army, and drove the Caledonians back to their native mountains. But his services were requited with ingratitude. By his severity he incurred the hatred of a seditious soldiery; while his glory excited the jealousy of a dissolute prince. From the swords of the former he escaped with difficulty; Commodus recalled him from his command, and reluctantly abstained from depriving him of life<sup>88</sup>.

But the British legions soon made a trial of the resolution, or the weakness, of the emperor. They sent a deputation of fifteen hundred men to demand the head of the minister Perennis. Without opposition these dangerous petitioners marched through Gaul and Italy, and were met at the gates of Rome by Commodus himself. To that prince, immersed in pleasure, and reckless of blood, the life of a favourite was a trivial object.—He surrendered Perennis to their revenge, and the unhappy victim was scourged and beheaded. His wife and daughters were immolated on his remains<sup>89</sup>.

The government of Britain was soon after conferred on Clodius Albinus, an officer whose birth and abilities were feared and

Clodius  
Albinus.  
A. D.  
190—197.

<sup>88</sup> Dio apud Xiphil. in Commodo, p. 286, 287.

<sup>89</sup> Ibid. p. 287. Lamprid. in Com. p. 311. Zonar. p. 209.



CHAP.  
I.

honoured by his imperial master, who, either with the view of securing his fidelity, or, as is more probable, of trying his ambition, offered him the rank and authority of Cæsar. Albinus had the prudence to decline the insidious present: but after the death of Commodus, and the ephemeral reigns of Pertinax and Julian, he willingly accepted the same dignity from the emperor Severus. It soon, however, appeared, that with all the parade of friendship, Severus was a secret and mortal enemy: and Albinus, by the advice of his friends, assumed the imperial purple, and led the British legions into Gaul. The two armies, amounting to one hundred thousand men, fought in the plain of Trevoux, near Lyons. At first the cause of Albinus was seen to triumph. Severus disappeared from the field: but he soon returned with a fresh body of men, renewed the battle, and obtained the victory. The British Cæsar paid with his head the forfeit of his ambition<sup>90</sup>.

Virius Lupus.  
A. D. 198.

Severus was now undisputed master of the empire. To abolish the exorbitant power of the prefect of Britain, he divided the island into two governments, bestowing the one on Heraclianus, and the other on Virius Lupus<sup>91</sup>. The latter with an army of new levies was unable to withstand the united efforts of the Maæte and Caledonians, and was compelled to purchase with money a precarious respite from their incursions. The expedient, though it procured a temporary forbearance, invited them to a repetition of the attempt: and Lupus, wearied with continued hostilities, solicited the presence of the emperor, and the aid of a numerous army<sup>92</sup>.

Severus in  
Britain.  
207—211.

Though Severus was advanced in years, and declining in

<sup>90</sup> Herodian iii. 10—23. Dioapud Nipbil.  
in Sever. p. 322—324.

<sup>91</sup> The *dux* *regimentum*. Herod. iii. 24.

Spartan. in Sever. p. 320. Inscriptions in  
Speed, p. 139. by mistake for 111.

<sup>92</sup> Herod. iii. 46.

health, he cheerfully obeyed the summons of his lieutenant. He was accompanied by his two sons, Caracalla and Geta : to the younger he committed the civil government of the province : to Caracalla he assigned a part in the projected expedition. When the army moved from York, the selection of the commanders, the number of the legions and auxiliary cohorts, and the long train of carriages loaden with provisions and implements of war, proclaimed the determination of the emperor to subdue, if not to exterminate, all the rebellious tribes in the north. The Britons were but ill provided against so formidable an invasion. They possessed no other defensive armour than a narrow target. Their weapons were a dirk, an unwieldy sword hanging from the waist by an iron chain, and a short lance, from one extremity of which was suspended a bell. But they were aided by the nature of the country, abounding in mountains, lakes, and forests ; by constitutions inured to fatigue, hunger, and every privation ; by habits of running, swimming, and wading through rivers and morasses ; and above all by a contempt of danger, and an unconquerable love of freedom. The progress of the Romans was constantly interrupted by the necessity of opening roads through the woods, of throwing bridges over the rivers, and of erecting causeways across the marshes. It was in vain that Severus sought for an enemy in front. The natives had wisely divided themselves into detachments, which hung on the flanks of the Romans, watched every opportunity of annoyance, and often inflicted a sudden and severe wound on the long and encumbered line of their enemies. Still the emperor, regardless of his losses, and unappalled by difficulties, pressed forward till he reached the frith of Cromarty, where he condescended to accept the offers of submission which he had formerly refused ; and to punish the obstinacy of the natives, exacted the nominal

Grants peace  
to the Cale-  
donians.

CHAP.  
I.

---

surrender of a part of their territory. But this trivial advantage had been dearly purchased: and the number of the Romans, who perished by fatigue, by disease, and by the sword, has been estimated at fifty thousand <sup>93</sup>.

Builds his celebrated wall.

When Severus returned to York, he had leisure to devise means for the future security of the southern provinces. From what he had seen, he was convinced that no rampart of turf could resist the assaults of these active and persevering barbarians: and he determined to confine their incursions by raising a solid wall of stone a few paces to the north of the vallum of Hadrian. In the neighbourhood of the sea it preserved a parallel direction: but as it approached the higher ground, leaving the work of that emperor to wind its circuitous course along the vallies, it boldly ascended the most lofty eminences, and ran along the margin of the most abrupt precipices. Its height was twelve feet <sup>94</sup>; its breadth at the foundation varied from two to three yards. In front was sunk a ditch of the same dimensions with that of Hadrian: and for its protection were assigned four squadrons and fourteen cohorts, composing an army of ten thousand men, quartered in eighteen stations along the line of the wall. By the historian of Severus, this stupendous erection is pronounced the principal glory of his reign: by the traveler of the present day its remains are viewed with emotions of astonishment and delight <sup>95</sup>.

Scarcely had the Romans evacuated the territory of the Caledonians and Maetae, when information was brought to Severus, that the barbarians had recommenced hostilities. His infirmities had been so much increased by the fatigue of the late

<sup>93</sup> Dio. cap. d. Xiphin. in Severo, p. 340.  
Hecul. in. 49. 49.

<sup>94</sup> Bede. H. t. i. 12.

<sup>95</sup> Notit. Imp. Panciol. f. 176. 177.  
Maximum decus. Spart. in Severo, p. 321.



campaign, that he was no longer able to join the army. He gave the command to Caracalla, with an injunction to extirpate the whole race without mercy. But that prince had a far different object in view, to exclude his brother Geta from the succession. Instead of marching against the Britons, he endeavoured to gain the affection of the troops, by indulgence and donatives: and as soon as his father had expired at York, renewed the peace, disbanded the army, and returned to Rome<sup>96</sup>.

He dies, Feb.  
4, 211.

History is little more than a record of the miseries inflicted on the many by the passions of a few. If then, for more than seventy years from the death of Severus, Britain has escaped the notice of the ancient annalists, we may infer that they were years of comparative tranquillity and happiness. The northern tribes respected the strength of the new fortification, and the valour of the army by which it was guarded: and the natives of the south, habituated from their infancy to submission, bore without impatience the yoke, which had pressed so heavily on their free-born fathers. The rest of the empire was convulsed by the claims of the numerous competitors, known by the name of the thirty tyrants: and from coins, which have been occasionally discovered in the island, it is supposed that Posthumus, Lollianus, Victorinus, Tetricus, Bonosus, and Albianus were successively acknowledged in Britain. If the inference be accurate, the silence of history shews, that their authority was admitted without opposition, and not established at the point of the sword, as it was in the other provinces. Probably Britain constantly followed the fortune of Gaul.

A. D.  
211—284.

This distracted state of the empire had emboldened the barbarians, who, under the appellations of Franks and Saxons,

Usurpation of  
Carausius.  
A. D. 284.

<sup>96</sup> Dio, p. 342. Herod. *ibid*.

CHAP.  
I.

possessed the coast from the mouth of the Rhine to the extremity of the Cimbrican Chersonesus. They swept into their own ports the commerce of the narrow seas, and insulted by their predatory expeditions the shores of Gaul and Britain. To chastise or restrain their insolence, the command of a powerful fleet, with the title of Count of the Saxon shore, was given by the emperors Dioclesian and Maximian to Carausius, an experienced officer, and a Menapian by birth. His conduct soon awakened suspicion. The pirates continued their depredations with impunity; a portion of their spoil was regularly surrendered to Carausius: and the money was employed in debauching the loyalty of the mariners. Maximian prepared to punish his perfidy. But the Menapian unexpectedly fortified Boulogne, concluded an alliance with the barbarians, sailed to Britain, induced the army and fleet to espouse his cause, and assuming, with the imperial purple, the name of Augustus, set at defiance the whole power of Rome.

His death.  
A. D. 293.

The reign of this adventurer was fortunate and glorious. The Caledonians were compelled to flee before his arms; his authority was acknowledged on the western coast of Gaul; and a numerous fleet carried the terror of his name to the entrance of the Mediterranean. It was not, however, to be expected, that the emperors should tamely acquiesce in his usurpation. At first indeed they thought it more prudent to admit him as their colleague: but when they had adopted the two Cæsars Galerius and Constantius, they assigned to the latter the task of wresting Britain from his dominion. Constantius began the attempt with the siege of Boulogne. By his orders the mouth of the harbour was obstructed by a mound of stones: and the garrison, cut off from any assistance from Britain, was, after an obstinate resistance, compelled to surrender. This loss might grieve, but

did not dishearten, Carausius. He was still master of the sea, and at the head of a numerous army. But while he was employed in providing against a distant danger, he fell a victim to domestic treachery : and in the eighth year of his reign was murdered at York by Allectus, a minister, who had abused his confidence, and dreaded his resentment.

Allectus enjoyed during three years the reward of his treachery. The time was spent by Constantius in preparing a fleet which might safely transport his troops to the island. To distract the attention of the enemy, it was divided into two squadrons, of which one under his own command was stationed at Boulogne, the other, under that of the prefect Asclepiodotus, in the mouth of the Seine. The latter, owing to the impatience of the mariners, was the first which put to sea : and sailing under the cover of a fog, passed unobserved by the British fleet near the Isle of Wight, and reached without opposition the adjacent coast. The Cæsar himself with a still more powerful armament directed his course to the shore of Kent : and at his landing received the pleasing intelligence that Allectus was dead. On the first news of the arrival of Asclepiodotus, the usurper had hastened towards the spot : but the greater part of his forces was unable to equal his speed : and with his guard, a band of Franks, he was speedily overwhelmed by the Romans. Nor was this the only instance of the good fortune of the Cæsar. A division of his fleet, which had separated in the dark, entered the Thames, and advanced without meeting an enemy to the neighbourhood of London. At that moment a body of auxiliaries in the pay of Allectus, hearing of his death, began to plunder the city. It was saved from destruction by the accidental arrival of the Romans : and Constantius himself was soon after hailed by the inhabitants as their sovereign and deliverer. He immediately

Reign of  
Allectus.

His death.  
A. D. 260.



CHAP.  
I.

restored the imperial authority: Britain became his favourite residence: and the natives enjoyed the benefit of a mild and equitable administration, till their happiness was disturbed by the horrors of religious persecution<sup>97</sup>.

Introduction  
of christianity.

At the distance of so many ages it is impossible to discover, by whom christianity was first preached in the island. There have been writers who have ascribed that province to St. Peter; others have preferred the rival claim of St. Paul: but both opinions, improbable as they are in themselves, rest on the most slender evidence; on testimonies, which are many of them irrelevant, all ambiguous, and unsatisfactory. It is however certain that at a very early period there were christians in Britain: nor is it difficult to account for the circumstance, from the intercourse which had long subsisted between the island and Rome. Within a very few years from the ascension of Christ, the church of Rome had attained great celebrity: soon afterwards it attracted the notice and was honoured with the enmity of Claudius and Nero<sup>98</sup>. Of the Romans, whom at that period choice or necessity conducted to Britain, and of the Britons who were induced to visit Rome, some would of course become acquainted with the professors of the gospel, and yield to the exertions of their zeal. Both Pomponia Græcina, the wife of the proconsul Plautius, the first who made any permanent conquest in the island, and Claudia, a British lady, who had married the senator Pudens, are, on very probable grounds, believed to have been christians<sup>99</sup>. Whether it was by the piety of these ladies, or of other individuals<sup>100</sup>, that the doctrine of christianity

<sup>97</sup> Panegyr. vet. p. 177. 180, Eutrop. ix. p. 659. Aurel. Vict. in Constan.

<sup>98</sup> Epist. to Romans, i. 8. Suet. in Claud. xxv. Tac. Ann. xv. 44.

<sup>99</sup> For Pomponia see Tacitus, Ann. xiii.

32. for Claudia compare St. Paul. 2 Tim. iv. 21 with Martial, epig. ii. 54. iv. 13.

<sup>100</sup> Nothing can be less probable in itself, nor less supported by ancient testimony, than the opinion that Britain was converted by

was first introduced among the Britons, it proceeded with a silent but steady pace towards the extremity of the island. The attention of the Roman officers was absorbed in the civil and military duties of their stations: and while the flames of persecution blazed in the other provinces of the empire, the British christians were suffered to practise their religion without molestation. There is even evidence that the knowledge of the gospel was not confined to the subjects of Rome. Before the close of the second century, it had penetrated among the independent tribes of the north<sup>101</sup>.

It might have been expected that the British writers would have preserved the memory of an event so important in their eyes as the conversion of their fathers. But their traditions have been so embellished or disfigured by the fictions of the bards, that without collateral evidence, it is hardly possible to distinguish in them what is real from that which is imaginary. After deducting from the account of Nennius and his brethren every improbable circumstance, we may believe that the authority conferred by the emperor Claudius on Cogidunus, was continued in his family; that Lucius, surnamed *Lever maur* or the great light, one of his near descendants, was a believer in the gospel; that he sent to Rome Fagan and Dervan to be more perfectly instructed in the christian faith: that these envoys were ordained by the pope, Evaristus or Eleutherius, and at their return, under the influence of their patron, increased the number of the proselytes by their preaching, and established the British, after the model of the

Conversion of  
Lucius.

oriental missionaries. The only foundation on which it rests, is that in the seventh century the Britons did not keep Easter on the same day as the church of Rome. That, however, they did so in the beginning of the fourth century, is plain from Eusebius (*Vit. Con.*

iii. 19). Socrates (*Hist. v. 22*). and the council of Arles (*Spelman, p. 40. 42*).

<sup>101</sup> *Brittannorum inaccessa Romanis loca, Christo vero subdita. Tertul. adver. Jud. c. vii. p. 189. Ed. Rigalt.*

CHAP.  
I.

---

continental churches. But independently of their authority, we have undoubted proof that the believers were numerous, and that a regular hierarchy had been instituted before the close of the third century. For by contemporary writers the church of Britain is always put on an equality with the churches of Spain and Gaul; and in one of the most early of the western councils, that of Arles in 314, we meet with the names of three British bishops, of Eborius of York for the province of Maxima, of Restitutus of London for that of Flavia, and of Adelphius of Richborough for that of Britannia prima<sup>102</sup>.

Persecution.  
303—305.

It has been observed that the British christians had hitherto escaped the persecutions to which their continental brethren were repeatedly exposed. But in the beginning of the fourth century, Dioclesian and Maximian determined to avenge the disasters of the empire on the professors of the gospel; and edicts were published by which the churches in every province were ordered to be demolished, and the refusal to worship the gods of paganism was made a crime punishable with death. Though Constantius might condemn, he dared not forbid the execution of the imperial mandate: but at the same time, he proved by his own conduct how much he abhorred the idea of religious persecution. Assembling around him the christian officers of his household, he communicated to them the will of the emperors, and added that they must determine to resign their employments, or abjure the worship of Christ. If some among them preferred their interest to their religion, they received the reward which their perfidy deserved. The Cæsar dismissed them from his service, observing that he would never trust the fidelity of men, who had proved themselves traitors to their God<sup>103</sup>.

<sup>102</sup> Spelm. conc. 42. 45. Labbe, conc. i. 1430. Eusebius, v. 23. Socrates, v. 21. <sup>103</sup> Euseb. Vit. Cons. i. 16. Sozom. i. 6. Lact. de mort. Persec. 15, 16.



But the moderation of Constantius did not restrain the zeal of the inferior magistrates. The churches in almost every district were levelled with the ground : and of the christians many fled for safety to the forests and mountains, many suffered with constancy both torture and death. Gildas has preserved the names of Julius and Aaron, citizens of Caerleon upon Usk ; and the memory of Alban, the protomartyr of Britain, was long celebrated both in his own country and among the neighbouring nations. But within less than two years Dioclesian and Maximian resigned the purple : Constantius and Galerius assumed the title of emperors ; and the freedom of religious worship was restored to the christian inhabitants of the island <sup>104</sup>.

Constantius, while he was yet in an inferior situation, had married Helena, a native of Bithynia according to some writers, the daughter of a British prince, if we may believe our national historians. When he was raised to the dignity of Cæsar, he was compelled to repudiate Helena for Theodora, the daughter-in-law of Maximian ; but not till she had already borne him a son in Britain <sup>105</sup>, the celebrated Constantine, on whom posterity has bestowed the epithet of the “great.” The young prince was educated an honourable hostage in the court, first of Dioclesian, and then of Galerius : but on the report that his father’s health was rapidly declining, he snatched a favourable moment to escape, and maiming at every post the horses, which were not necessary for his flight, contrived to retard the speed of his pursuers. He reached York a few days before Constantius expired : was recommended by him to the affection of the soldiery : and assumed with their approbation the titles of Cæsar

Constantine  
emperor.  
306

<sup>104</sup> Gild. vii. viii. Bed. i. vii.

<sup>105</sup> Tu nobiles illic oriendo fecisti. Paneg. veter. p. 192. Item. p. 207.

CHAP.  
I.

---

and Augustus. The sequel of his story, and the long course of victories by which he united the whole empire under his own authority, are subjects foreign from these sheets: but it will be necessary to notice an important alteration which he made in the government of Britain<sup>106</sup>.

Government  
of Britain.

Dioclesian had divided the whole empire into four parts, under himself, Maximian, and the two Cæsars. When Constantine became sole emperor, he adopted a similar partition under four pretorian prefects. At the same time new titles and employments were devised; and throughout the whole gradation of office, the military was jealously separated from the civil administration. By this arrangement Britain was placed under the jurisdiction of the prefect of the Gauls, whose authority extended from the wall of Antoninus to the southern limits of Mauritania Tingitana. His deputy with the title of vicar of Britain resided at York: while the subordinate charge of the provinces was entrusted to the two consulars of Valentia and Maxima, and the three presidents of Flavia, Britannia prima, and Britannia secunda. The administration of justice, and of the finances, was continued in the hands of these ministers: but the command of the army was divided among three military officers, who acknowledged for their superior the master of the cavalry or infantry stationed on the banks of the Rhine. They were distinguished by the titles of the duke of Britain, whose command reached from the northern boundary to the Humber; the count of the Saxon shore, whose duty it was to guard the coast, from the Humber to the Land's End in Cornwall; and the count of Britain, to whom were subject all the other garrisons in the island<sup>107</sup>.

<sup>106</sup> Zosim. ii. 78, 79.  
p. 477.

Philostorg. i.

<sup>107</sup> Zosim. ii. 109, 110. Tillem. iv. 117.  
Not. Imp. f. 155. 161, 162. 176, 177.

Under Constantine and his sons Britain enjoyed more than fifty years of tranquillity. The aggressions of the barbarians were repressed : and industry and commerce were encouraged. The first check was given to the public prosperity by the cruelty and avarice of Paulus, a Spanish notary. He had been sent to the island with a commission from the emperor Constantius to inquire into the conduct of the officers, who, during the general defection of the western armies, had adhered to the usurper Magnentius. Paulus was eminently skilled in all the arts of rapacity and chicanery ; with him wealth was a sufficient presumption of guilt ; and no man, whose possessions might fill the coffers of the notary and his imperial master, was ever acquitted at his tribunal. Martin, the vicar of Britain, had lamented, and sometimes interposed to prevent, these iniquitous proceedings. But he was informed that a deep scheme had been laid to involve him in the common delinquency : and, impelled by despair, he made an attempt on the life of the notary. The stroke was parried : and Martin instantly plunged his sword into his own heart. His real or pretended accomplices were punished with torture, confiscation, exile and death : and Paulus continued his career regardless of the hatred and imprecations of the natives. By Constantius he was applauded for his fidelity : Julian, the succeeding emperor, commanded him to be burnt alive<sup>108</sup>.

While Julian held with the title of Cæsar the prefecture of Gaul, an event occurred which proves the great resources of Britain at this period. The Franks, Saxons and Allemanni had previously crossed to the left bank of the Rhine, laid waste an extensive tract of country, reduced to ashes forty cities, and carried the inhabitants into captivity. By repeated victories

Export of corn  
from Britain.

<sup>108</sup> Ann. Marcel. xiv. 12. xx. 2.



CHAP.  
I.

the Cæsar compelled the barbarians to restore their prisoners : his next object was to provide the multitude with food in a country, which for years had been desolate. The granaries of Britain offered an immediate and plentiful supply. A fleet of eight hundred small vessels was collected in the mouths of the Rhine : repeated voyages were made to the British coasts : the cargoes were conveyed in lighters up the river : and the almost famished inhabitants received an ample provision of corn both to sow their lands, and to support themselves till the following harvest<sup>109</sup>. Nor was the island equal only to a temporary supply. It exported annually great quantities of corn to the continent<sup>110</sup>.

Origin of the  
Picts and  
Scots.

It is remarkable that from this period, the Caledonians and Maætæ, tribes which for two centuries had been the terror of the civilized Britons, disappear without any ostensible cause from the page of history : and their places are supplied by the Picts and Scots, who, though differing from them in name, are described as barbarians equally savage in disposition and equally addicted to invasion and rapine<sup>111</sup>. Of the origin of these two nations, which appear to start suddenly into existence in the course of the fourth century, many learned but fanciful theories have been invented. 1. To me it seems manifest that the Picts were under a new denomination the very same people, whom we have hitherto called Maætæ and Caledonians<sup>112</sup>. The name

<sup>109</sup> Zosim. iii. 145.

<sup>110</sup> Amm. Marcel. xviii. 2. p. 204. (Edit. Gronov. Liban. orat. x. tom. ii. p. 281.

<sup>111</sup> See Gild. c. 25.

<sup>112</sup> This appears, 1°. because we have no evidence of the extirpation or emigration of the ancient tribes : 2°. because the character of the Picts is the same as that given of the Caledonians by Herodian, Dio, and Solinus. They lived by rapine : they went almost naked (Gild. 15) : they punctured the figures

of animals on their bodies (Claud. de bello Get. 165) : 3°. because Eumenius, the first who mentions them, numbers the Caledonians with the other Picts (Eum. paneg. Constan. p. 235) : 4°. because Ammianus Marcellinus (lib. xxvii. p. 520), about eighty years after Eumenius, divides the Picts into the Dicæledones, confessedly the Caledonians, and the Vecturiones, who dwelt in the vicinity of the river Tay (Ptol. viii. 3. Ric. Cor. i. 6). The territory of the Picts extended from the

of Caledonians properly belonged to the natives of that long but narrow strip of land, which stretches from Loch Finn on the western, to the frith of Tayne on the eastern, coast : but it had been extended by the Romans to all the kindred and independent clans which lay between them and the northern extremity of the island. In the fourth century the mistake was discovered and rectified : and from that time not only the Caledonians, but their southern neighbours, the five tribes of the Maætæ, began to be known by the generic appellation of Picts, a word derived perhaps from the national custom of painting the body <sup>113</sup>, more probably from the name which they bore in their own language. 2. The Scots came undoubtedly from Ireland, which, like its sister island, appears to have been colonized by adventurers from different countries. Thus we meet with tribes of Damnii, Volantii, Brigantes, and Cangii, names which point out a British origin ; of Menapii and Cauci, descended from the parent tribes in Belgium and Germany, and of Ibernii and Concani, who seem to have emigrated from Spain <sup>114</sup>. These were scattered on different points of the coast ; while the interior was held by numerous clans of the Scoti <sup>115</sup>, many of whom in the fourth

northern ocean as far as the south of Gallo-  
way (Bed. iii. 4).

<sup>113</sup> Nec falso nomine Pictos  
Edomuit.

*Claud. in iii. consul. Honor. 54.*

<sup>114</sup> Ptol. viii. 2. Ric. Corin. i. 8. Diony-  
sius places a Spanish colony also in the  
Scilly islands.

Τοῖσι κακσιτεροῖσι γενεθλῇ,

Ἀφνειοὶ ναυσὶν ἀγατοὶ παῖδες Ἰβηρων.

*Dion. Perierg. v. 563.*

As the Roman arms never penetrated into  
Ireland, the ancients may have entertained  
very false notions of its inhabitants. By  
Diodorus (iv. 355), Strabo (iv. 201), Mela  
(iii. 266), and Solinus (xxii. 42), they are

described as cannibals, and the most barba-  
rous of the human race. But from Tacitus  
we learn that the ports of Ireland were fre-  
quented by merchants, and that in manners  
and disposition the natives resembled the Bri-  
tons (Vit. Agric. xxiv.).

<sup>115</sup> In the fourth century, they were univer-  
sally known by the name of Scots (Scoticæ  
gentes Porphy. apud S. Hieron. ad Ctesiph.  
iv. 481). Thus Claudian speaking of their  
depredations, says :

Me juvit Stilicho, totam cum Scotus Iernen  
Movit, et infesto spumavit remige Tethys.

*De Laud. Stil. ii. v. 249.*

Scotorum cumulos flevit glacialis Ierne.

*In consul. iv. Honor. v. 33.*

CHAP.  
I.

century, united with the Attacotti, a kindred clan in the neighbourhood of Loch Lomond, to plunder the rich provinces of the Roman Britons. But the Scots soon aspired to something more permanent than plunder. From the north of Ireland the passage was short and inviting: hordes of adventurers followed each other; settlements were obtained from the friendship, or extorted from the weakness, of the Picts: and at last the strangers acquired so marked a superiority over the indigenous tribes, as to impart the name of Scotland to the northern division of Britain<sup>116</sup>. It was long, however, before the two nations were blended in one people. We find the Picts distinguished from the Scots as late as the twelfth century<sup>117</sup>.

Theodosius.  
360.

In the reign of Constantius the Picts and Scots entered the Roman province in considerable numbers. The Cæsar Julian could not be spared from Gaul: and Lupicinus, whom he sent as his deputy, did not venture to meet the invaders. This confession of weakness incited them to repeat their inroads; and at each repetition they penetrated farther into the country. They maintained spies in the Roman army; they tempted the fidelity of the garrisons; and they seduced many of the foreign auxiliaries to join them in the pursuit of plunder. At length the emperor Valentinian was alarmed for the safety of the island.

The island itself was called *Scotia*. *Scotia eadem et Hibernia—cujus partes priores Iberiam intendunt, unde et Ibernica dicta: Scotia, autem quod ab Scotorum gentibus colitur, appellata*. Isid. Orig. xiv. 123. See also Orosius (i. 2), Æthicus (Cosmog. 507), *Ravennas Geographus* (Gale. i. 748), and Bede (*Hæc autem proprie patria Scotorum est*. Hist. i. 1). It is not improbable that the Scoti were the most numerous tribe in the interior of the island, and a division of the great Celtic family of the Cotti. The language

of the Waldenses, the natives of the valleys amid the *Coltian* Alps, bears to this day a great affinity to the vernacular tongues of Ireland and Scotland. See Chamberlayne's *Oratio Domin.* and Pinkerton's *Dissert.* p. 84.

<sup>116</sup> Loarn, Fergus, and Angus, the sons of Erc, a chieftain of Dalraida in Ulster, settled in the isthmus of Cantire in 503. From them the Scottish kings claimed their descent. See Dr. O'Connor, *Proleg.* i. 126. ii. 83.

<sup>117</sup> Ric. Hagul. 291. 316.



Fallofaudes, the Roman general, had been slain by treachery: Nectarides, the count of the Saxon shore, had fallen in battle: and the flames of devastation were spread along the right bank of the Thames. First the steward of the imperial household, then Jovinus, and lastly Theodosius were appointed to the command. That celebrated officer, with the flower of the Gallic army, landed at Richborough, and, having divided his troops into several corps, attacked and defeated the marauding parties of the barbarians. He entered London in triumph, and spent a few weeks in making preparations for new victories. The deserters were induced by an act of amnesty to rejoin their standards; the ancient discipline of the army was revived; supplies and reinforcements were provided; and, on the recommencement of hostilities, the invaders were taught in several bloody encounters to respect the bravery of the troops, and the talents of the general. They sullenly retired beyond the ancient limits of the empire: and Theodosius applied himself to reestablish the former system of government. The political and financial departments he confided to the vicar Civilis: and as commander of the army, repaired the fortifications, placed garrisons in the military stations, and restored the province of Valentia, which had long been abandoned. When he left the island, his services were attested by the gratitude of the natives, who accompanied him in crowds to the sea shore; and by the acknowledgment of his sovereign, who loaded him with distinguished honours <sup>118</sup>.

369.

Gratian succeeded his father Valentinian in the empire, and invested with the purple Theodosius the younger, the son of the deliverer of Britain. There was at the time in the island an

Usurpation of  
Maximus.

<sup>118</sup> Aem. Mar. xxvii. c. 8. xxviii. c. 3. Claud. in iv. Hon. v. 26.

CHAP.  
I.

officer, named Maximus, of great abilities, and of greater ambition<sup>119</sup>. Inflamed with jealousy by the promotion of one who had been his equal, he began to intrigue with the soldiery; and artfully extorted from their gratitude or their credulity an offer of the title of Augustus. It was not without apparent reluctance that he yielded to their entreaties: but his subsequent conduct betrayed his real sentiments. Not content with the possession of Britain, he aspired to the whole of the western empire. At the head of the British army he sailed to the mouth of the Rhine; the murder of Gratian gave him possession of Gaul; and, by the precipitate flight of Valentinian, the greater part of Italy was compelled to submit to his authority. He reigned with dignity, and severely chastised the Picts and Scots, who attempted to renew their inroads. Theodosius received his image, and acknowledged his title: but roused at last by shame and apprehension, he took the field against the usurper. On the banks of the Save in Pannonia the first shock was given to the power of Maximus: the city of Aquileia soon after saw him stripped of the imperial ornaments, and beheaded by order of his victorious opponent. The Britons, who had followed his standard, never revisited their country: and the native writers lament the defenceless state in which it was left, exposed to the insults of its inveterate enemies<sup>120</sup>.

He is slain.  
388.

388—400.

This favourable opportunity did not escape the vigilance of the Picts and Scots. They experienced only a feeble resistance from the small force that had been left in the island, and returned home laden with the plunder of the provinces. Their repeated

<sup>119</sup> Maximus is called a Spaniard by Zosimus (iv. 217), a Briton by Socrates (v. 11) and Gildas (c. x.), the robber of Richborough by Ausonius (Latin Rhythmicus. De clar.

Urb. vii. p. 1301. apud. Poet. vet.).

<sup>120</sup> Prosper, in Chron. an. 387. Sozom. Hist. vii. p. 721. Gild. c. 11. Nenn. xxiii.

inroads impelled the Britons to lay their distressed situation before the imperial court, probably through the means of Chrysantus the vicar, whose administration is mentioned with applause: and Stilicho, the master of the infantry and cavalry, dispatched to their assistance a body of troops, which repelled the invaders, and confined them within their own territories<sup>121</sup>.

But the great fabric of the Roman power was now shaken to its basis. Hordes of barbarians, under different denominations, issuing from the unknown regions of the east and the north, had depopulated the fairest of the provinces; and a torrent of Goths, Vandals, and Alans, under the celebrated Alaric, had rushed from the summit of the Julian Alps into the flourishing plains of Italy. It now became necessary to recall the troops from the extremities to defend the heart of the empire; and the cohorts which had been stationed along the walls in Britain, fought and triumphed under the command of Stilicho in the bloody battle of Pollentia<sup>122</sup>. After the retreat of Alaric the British forces seem to have returned to the island, and to have driven back the Picts, who had taken advantage of their absence to plunder the neighbouring province. But within two or three years the German nations bursting into Gaul, spread devastation from one extremity to the other; and the legions in Britain, cut off from all communication with the emperor Honorius, determined to elect an emperor for themselves. The purple was bestowed on Marcus, one of their officers, who soon lost his life in a sedition of the soldiery. The next object of their choice was Gratian, a native of one of the British municipia: who, at the end of four months, experienced the fate of his predecessor. This dangerous

Marcus, Gratian and Constantine emperors.

403.

406.

<sup>121</sup> Compare Gildas (c. 12) and Bede (i. 12) with Claudian (De laud. Stilic. ii. ver. 247).  
<sup>122</sup> Claudian De bello Get. v. 416.



CHAP.  
I.

---

pre-eminence was, however, still the object of ambitious competition. Constantine, a soldier in the ranks, with no other pretensions than his name, offered himself to their suffrages. He was proclaimed Augustus, led them to Boulogne, and with the assistance of some Roman corps, which lay dispersed in the neighbourhood, cleared the province of the barbarians. His son Constans, who is said to have worn the monastic habit at Winchester, was named Cæsar, and hastened to take possession of Spain. But their prosperity was of very short duration. 411. The son was put to death at Vienne by Gerontius, one of his own officers; and the father was beheaded at Arles by the order of Constantius, who commanded the forces of Honorius<sup>123</sup>.

Britain abandoned by the Romans.

While Constantine was thus hastening to his ruin, Britain had been the theatre of an important revolution. The natives, left without a military force, and exposed to the inroads of their enemies, determined to reject an authority which was unable to afford them protection. They deposed the Roman magistrates, proclaimed their own independence, took up arms, and with the spirit of freemen, drove the barbarians out of their territories<sup>124</sup>. When the intelligence reached Ravenna, Honorius, the legitimate emperor, wrote to the states of Britain, “to provide for their “own defence.” By this ambiguous expression he has been thought to have released them from their allegiance: perhaps his only object was to authorize their present efforts, that he might thus reserve a claim to their future obedience<sup>125</sup>.

It would be interesting to delineate the conduct of the natives on this memorable occasion, and accurately to exhibit the causes which transferred the greater part of this island from the milder dominion of the Romans to the exterminating sword of the

<sup>122</sup> Zosim. vi. p. 371—375.

<sup>121</sup> Zosim. vi. 376.

<sup>123</sup> Id. 381.

Saxons. But Britain, after its separation from the empire, ceased to attract the notice of foreign historians : and our national writers lived at so distant a period, and have interwoven so much fable in their narratives, that they possess but little claim to our confidence. From Zosimus we learn, that, on the extinction of the imperial authority in the island, the British *States* established domestic governments according to circumstances. These states were undoubtedly the different cities, which have been previously enumerated, and to which Honorius had directed his letters. As the colonies, municipia, and Latin towns, had always formed so many separate commonwealths under the superintendence of the provincial presidents, they would probably wish to retain the forms of government to which they had so long been habituated. It is, however, easy to conceive, that during the anarchy that must have been produced by the sudden removal of the Roman magistrates, and the confusion occasioned by the repeated incursions of the Picts and Scots, many a fortunate leader would abuse his own power and the confidence of his fellow-citizens to usurp the sovereign authority. In a few years every trace of popular government had vanished : and all the provinces, which had belonged to the empire, were divided among a multitude of petty chieftains, principally of British, but partly of Roman origin. They were dignified with the title of kings, though the dominions of many were confined within narrower limits than most of our present counties : and their ambition, their wars, and their vices, inflicted on the country more permanent and extensive injuries than had ever been suffered from the incursions of foreign enemies<sup>126</sup>.

Soon after the Britons asserted their independence, the greater

The natives  
invite the  
Saxons.

<sup>126</sup> Gild. c. xix. xxiii. xxv. Epist. p. 10. 12. Nen. c. lxi. Procop. Hist. Vand. l. 1. p. 8, 9.

CHAP.  
I

part of Europe was depopulated by the two dreadful scourges of pestilence and famine. This island did not escape the general calamity: and the Scots and Picts seized the favourable moment for the renewal of their inroads. The dissensions of the native chieftains facilitated their attempts: district after district became the scene of devastation: till the approach of danger admonished the more southern Britons to provide for their own safety. Some solicited, but in vain, the protection of Ælius, the Roman general in Gaul<sup>127</sup>: others, under the guidance of Vortigern, the most powerful of the British kings, had recourse to an expedient, which, however promising it might appear in the outset, proved in the result most fatal to the liberty of their country. The emperors had long been accustomed to purchase the services of the barbarians; and the Armoricans, who, like the Britons, had thrown off the Roman yoke, had, with the assistance of the Saxons, successfully maintained their independence<sup>128</sup>. Vortigern resolved to pursue the same policy. A Saxon squadron of three chiules, or long ships, was cruising in the channel in quest of adventures: and its two commanders, the brothers Hengist and Horsa, eagerly accepted the overtures of the British prince, to aid in fighting his battles, and to depend for their reward on his gratitude. They landed at Ebbsfleet, and were cantoned in the isle of Thanet<sup>129</sup>.

A. D. 449.

Theological  
disputes.

Amidst these calamities, the Britons found leisure to attend to theological disputes. About the commencement of the fifth century, Pelagius a Briton, and Celestius a Scot, had advanced several new and heterodox opinions respecting the nature of original sin, and divine grace. Agricola, one of their disciples, made an attempt to diffuse their doctrine among their country-

<sup>127</sup> Gild. c. xvi. xvii. xxi.<sup>128</sup> Sid. Apol. Paneg. Avit. v. 369.<sup>129</sup> Gild. c. xxiii. Nen. xxviii.



men : and the British prelates, unaccustomed to the subtleties of controversy, solicited the assistance of their neighbours, the bishops of Gaul. With the concurrence of Pope Celestine, Germanus of Auxerre twice visited Britain, once in 429 in company with Lupus of Troyes, and again in 446 with Severus of Treves. By his authority the new doctrines were condemned and suppressed ; and schools for the education of the clergy were opened in several dioceses. On one occasion the Gallic prelate resumed a character, in which he had distinguished himself during his youth. A party of Picts and Saxons were plundering the coast. Germanus put himself at the head of the Britons, led them against the enemy, and inflicted a severe punishment on the invaders. This was afterwards called the Hallelujah victory ; because the Britons repeatedly shouted that word, as they rushed upon their adversaries <sup>130</sup>.

<sup>130</sup> Prosp. in Chron. p. 630. ad ann. 429. Constan. vit. S. Ger. c. l. 28. Bed. i. 17. Hunt. 178

## CHAP. II.

## ANGLO-SAXONS.

ORIGIN AND CHARACTER OF THE ANGLO-SAXONS—THEIR REPEATED DESCENTS IN BRITAIN—THEY FOUND EIGHT DISTINCT KINGDOMS—THE NATIVES RETIRE TO THE WESTERN COAST—REIGNS OF THE SAXON BRETWALDAS—ÆLLA—CEAWLIN—ETHELBERT—REDWALD—EDWIN—OSWALD—OSWIO.

CHAP.  
II.

---

Original  
country of  
the Saxons.

**A**BOUT the middle of the second century the Saxons, an obscure tribe of barbarians, occupied the district between the Elbe and the Eyder on the neck of the Cimbrican Chersonesus<sup>1</sup>; in the course of two hundred years the same appellation had become common to all the nations from the extremity of the peninsula to the Weser, the Ems, and the Rhine<sup>2</sup>. They formed a kind of voluntary association, which was loosely held together by similar interests, and congenial pursuits. Pillage by land, piracy by sea, was their only profession: and though the imperial fleet had often been employed to check, it could never subdue, their dauntless and enterprising spirit. But as the power of Rome declined, the audacity of the Saxons increased: their expeditions became more frequent, their descents more destruc-

<sup>1</sup> Ptol. in 4<sup>o</sup> Europæ tab.

<sup>2</sup> Eutrop. ix. p. 659.

tive: from plunder they proceeded to colonization: and the men who had depopulated, afterwards re-peopled the better portion of Britain. Adventurers from each of the associated tribes were among the colonists; but the majority consisted of Jutes, Angles, and Saxons properly so called<sup>2</sup>. The original seat of the Saxons has already been mentioned: the Angles were their neighbours on the north as far as the site of the present town of Flensburg: and beyond the Angles dwelt the nation of the Jutes, with no other boundary than the ocean<sup>3</sup>.

CHAP.  
II.

From the language of the Saxons, their gigantic stature, and national institutions, it is evident that they were of Gothic descent. Their whole time was alternately devoted to indolence and to rapine. To earn by labour what might be acquired by force, they deemed unworthy the spirit of a freeman, and consigned the culture of their lands with the care of their flocks to the meaner labour of women and slaves. Every warrior attached himself to the fortunes of some favourite chieftain, whom he followed in his piratical expeditions. These chieftains guided the councils of the tribe: and from them, in times of danger, was selected a leader, who exercised the supreme command, and was dignified with the title of conyng or king. His authority, however, was but temporary. It expired with the exigency to which it owed its existence<sup>5</sup>.

Their man-  
ners.

The warlike exertions of these tribes were at first checked by their want of arms: but during three centuries of intercourse or hostility with the Romans, they had learned to supply

Arms.

<sup>2</sup> Bed. 1. 15. Ethelwerd, Chron. 1. p. 476.

<sup>4</sup> Bede mentions also the Frisians, Boructuari or people of Berg, the Rugini, Danai, and Hunni. v. 9. Alfred, in his Orosius, distinguishes Angle-land, Sealand and Denmark: but afterwards observes that Jutland, Sealand and the

other islands were originally inhabited by the Angles. "On thæm landum eardodon Engle ær hi hider on land comon." Barrington's Orosius, p. 20.

<sup>5</sup> Bed. v. 10. Wittich. i. p. 7.



CHAP.  
II.

the deficiency. They bore a target on the left arm, and employed for offence the spear, the sword, and the battle-axe. The two latter were long and ponderous; and to their destructive effects is attributed the havoc, which the Saxons never failed to make in the broken ranks of an enemy<sup>6</sup>. As their ships were not fitted for the transportation of cavalry, they usually fought on foot in one compact body; after their settlement in Britain, the chieftains, with the most wealthy of their retainers, came mounted into the field. Their esteem for the war horse rose to a species of veneration: but previously to his initiation in the military conflict, his nostrils were slit, his ears were stitched up, and his sense of hearing was entirely destroyed. From that moment he became sacred to the God of war, and was conceived on important occasions to announce the will of the deity<sup>7</sup>.

## Ships.

In the infancy of their naval power the Saxon boats resembled those of the other northern tribes: and a few planks, surmounted with works of osier and covered with skins, bore the fearless barbarian across the ocean, in the search of adventures and of spoil<sup>8</sup>. But in the fifth century their chiules or war-ships had assumed a more formidable appearance<sup>9</sup>: and from the number of warriors whom they carried, and the length of the voyages which they made, we may conclude that they were formed of more solid and lasting materials. In these the Saxons repeatedly issued from their ports, sometimes steering for a particular point, sometimes trusting entirely to the guidance of the winds: but whether they were conducted by chance or design, their object

<sup>6</sup> Huntingd. 178. 181.<sup>7</sup> Wilk. Con. i. 150.<sup>8</sup> Cui pelle salum sulcare Britannum  
Ludus, et assuto glaucum mare findere lembo.  
*Apol. Pan. Avit. v. 370.*<sup>9</sup> The word is still employed on the rivers Tyne and Were. By ancient writers it is translated a long or a large ship. See Bede. 1. 15. Alfred's Version, *ibid.* Chron. Sax. 12. Gildas, c. xxiii.

was invariably the same, to surprise and pillage the unoffending inhabitants on some part of the British or Gallic coasts. Sidonius, the eloquent bishop of Clermont, has described in animated language the terrors of the provincials and the ravages of the barbarians. "We have not," he says, "a more cruel and more dangerous enemy than the Saxons. They overcome all who have the courage to oppose them. They surprise all, who are so imprudent as not to be prepared for their attack. When they pursue, they infallibly overtake: when they are pursued, their escape is certain. They despise danger: they are inured to shipwreck: they are eager to purchase booty with the peril of their lives. Tempests, which to others are so dreadful, to them are subjects of joy. The storm is their protection when they are pressed by the enemy, and a cover for their operations when they meditate an attack. Before they quit their own shores, they devote to the altars of their gods, the tenth part of the principal captives: and when they are on the point of returning, the lots are cast with an affectation of equity, and the impious vow is fulfilled <sup>10</sup>." The character which is thus given of them by Sidonius, is confirmed by every ancient authority. Marcellinus has recorded the terror excited by their sudden and unexpected aggressions: Zosimus allots to them the superiority in courage, strength of body, and patience of fatigue: and by the emperor Julian they are pronounced the most formidable of all the nations that dwelt beyond the Rhine, on the shores of the western ocean <sup>11</sup>.

<sup>10</sup> Sidon. viii. 6.

<sup>11</sup> Saxones præ cæteris hostibus timentur. Amm. Mar. xxviii. p. 526. Καρβερωταῖσι θυμῷ καὶ ρώμῃ καὶ καρτερικῇ τῇ περὶ τὰς μάχας. Zos. iii. p. 147. Τῶν ὑπὲρ τὴν Ῥηνὸν καὶ τὴν ἐσπερίαν θαλάσσην ἐθνῶν τὰ

μαχιμώτατα. Jul. orat. i. in laud. Const. p. 34. Angli, homines omnium quos novimus barbarorum ad bella acerrimi. Procop. Hist. Got. iv. p. 469. Gentem virtute atque agilitate terribilem. Oros. vii. p. 549.

CHAP.

II.

---

Foundation of  
the kingdom  
of Kent, 449.

455.

Such was the terror of the Saxon name, when Hengist and Horsa, in 449, were invited by Vortigern to fight his battles. For six years they served him with fidelity. The Picts were taught to respect, the Britons were eager to reward, their valour. Hengist, whether he had already formed designs of conquest, or was willing to render more service to his employers, obtained permission to solicit reinforcements from his own country. The messengers, whom he sent, were received with welcome: chieftain after chieftain led his followers to Thanet: and the isle was crowded with strangers, till their number became an object of jealous apprehension to the Britons. An increased supply of provisions was demanded; and the refusal was to both parties the signal for war. The Saxons marched to the Medway, and at Aylesford were opposed by the natives. The passage of the river was fiercely disputed: Vortigern lost a son, and Hengist his brother: but the issue appears to have been favourable to the foreigners. After the death of Horsa, Æsca, the son of Hengist, was associated with his father in the command, and a second battle was fought more to the west on the banks of the Cray. It proved most disastrous to the interests of the Britons. Four of their leaders were left on the field: their troops fled with precipitation to London: and Kent was abandoned to the possession of the invaders. It was at this time that Hengist ventured, if ever he ventured, beyond the limits of that county. We are told by Gildas that the Saxons traversed the island without opposition, that they spread on every side the flames of devastation: but that on their return the natives collected in considerable numbers, and inflicted a signal vengeance on the plunderers. Some such event may perhaps have happened: but the Saxon writers are silent, and the hyberbolical declamation of Gildas must not be literally received. Eight years



later was fought a most bloody battle, in which twelve of the British chieftains were slain; and the Saxons lost a renowned leader called Wypped, from whom the spot was named Wyp-pedsfleet. The last victory of Hengist was obtained in 473. The Britons are said to have fled from their enemies as “from a devouring conflagration,” and to have left behind them spoils of incalculable value. The conqueror survived fifteen years, and dying in 488, left the peaceable possession of Kent to his son Æsca<sup>12</sup>.

A very different tale is told by the British writers, whose vanity has attributed the loss of Kent to the infatuation of Vortigern, and the treacherous policy of Hengist. That chieftain, if we may credit their relation, had a daughter, Rowena, of transcendent beauty. It was so contrived, that at a banquet given to the British nobles, she waited on Vortigern, who of course was captivated by her charms, took her to his bed, and bestowed on his father-in-law the kingdom of Kent. But his attachment to the Saxons deprived him of the affections of the Britons. His son Vortemir was placed on the throne, fought three battles with the strangers, and ultimately expelled them from Kent. During five years Hengist wandered an adventurer on the ocean: but at the death of Vortemir the father recovered his crown, and the son-in-law demanded the restoration of the possessions which he had lost. Three hundred deputies from each nation assembled in council to determine the question: but during the conference each Saxon singled out his victim: at the proper moment Hengist exclaimed, “Nemeth yure scax, “draw your daggers:” and the ground was covered with the dead bodies of two hundred and ninety-nine Britons. The one, who had been spared, was Vortigern himself: and to free from

British fic-  
tions.

<sup>12</sup> Chron. Sax. 13, 14. Bed. i. 15

CHAP.  
II.

---

captivity a prince, whom they hated, the natives yielded to Hengist the territory which has since been divided into the counties of Kent, Essex, Sussex, and Middlesex. Can it be necessary to say that many of these pretended events are contradicted by undeniable evidence, and that all escaped the notice of Gildas, a British, and almost a contemporary, writer? The whole appears to be a fable invented by the natives, to account for the first settlement of the Saxons without the admission of conquest<sup>13</sup>.

Sussex. 477.

Hengist and his successors were content with the possession of Kent. On the north, east, and south, their small domain was protected by the Thames and the sea: on the west they were removed from the hostility of the natives by the interposition of a new band of adventurers, under the command of Ælla and his three sons. In 477, these marauders landed at Cymensore, near Withering, in the isle of Selsey. The Britons made an obstinate resistance: but were defeated with considerable loss, and compelled to shelter themselves in the Andredswold, a forest of one hundred and twenty miles in length, and thirty in breadth. The progress of Ælla was slow. In 485 he fought a great battle, the result of which is unknown: and it was not till 490 that he could penetrate as far as the city of Anderid, which gave its name to the tract, and was deemed an impregnable fortress. Its fate is celebrated in our annals. While the Saxons besieged the city, they were besieged in their turn by a numerous army of Britons, who allowed them no rest either by day or night. As often as they began the assault, the natives

<sup>13</sup> Nen. c. 36. 44—47. I should not have noticed these fictions had it not been thought that the account of Hengist's expulsion is favoured by a passage in Gildas (*aliquanto cum recessissent domum*, c. 25): but it is evident that by *domum* he means their settlement in

Kent, as he adds that the Britons attacked and defeated them *there*. Perhaps he may allude to the battle of Wyppedsfleet. There is a place of that name in the isle of Thanet: but it is very uncertain that it was the scene of combat.

attacked them in the rear : and if they turned on the assailants, these immediately found an asylum in the woods ; from which they issued again, the moment that the Saxons moved to their former position. This harassing species of warfare suggested to the barbarian the obvious expedient of dividing his force into two armies : of which one conducted the siege, while the other watched the motions of the enemy without the walls. At last the Saxons forced their way into the place ; Anderid was reduced to ashes ; and every inhabitant was put to the sword <sup>14</sup>. This conquest secured to Ælla the possession of his former acquisitions, and he became the founder of the kingdom of Sussex.

Five years after the destruction of Anderid, a more powerful armament of five chiules appeared in the channel. This was under the command of Cerdic, who sailing past the previous conquests of his countrymen, landed more to the west, at a place which, from the circumstance, received the name of Cerdicsora <sup>15</sup>. Natanleod, the king of the district, opposed the foreigners with intrepidity and perseverance : and Cerdic was repeatedly compelled to solicit the co-operation of other adventurers. In 501, Porta, with two chiules, arrived at Portsmouth, and slew a British prince, who opposed his landing. Still Natanleod retarded the advance of the invaders : in 508 he routed Cerdic, but was attacked during the pursuit by Kenric, and perished in the field with five thousand Britons. Even this important victory did not give to the Saxon quiet possession of the country. In 514 he received a great accession of strength by the arrival of his nephews Stuffa and Whitgar with three chiules at Cerdicsora : repeated victories gradually extended

Wessex.  
495.

<sup>14</sup> Chron. Sax. 14, 15. Hunt. 179. Sussex was computed to contain 7000 hides of land. Bed. iv. 13.

<sup>15</sup> Higden tells us that this "shore of Cerdic" is Yarmouth (Gale, p. 224). He probably means Yarmouth in the isle of Wight.



CHAP.  
II.

the conquests of the strangers: and in 519 the great battle of Charford on the Avon finally established the kingdom of Wessex, or of the West-Saxons. Cerdic, having associated his son Kenric in the regal dignity, and bestowed upon his nephews the subordinate sovereignty of the isle of Wight, died in 534<sup>16</sup>.

The success of these adventurers had given a new direction to the policy of the Saxons. Their object, which had formerly been plunder, was now converted into that of colonization. In pursuit of new settlements in a more opulent country and under a more genial sun, the most enterprising chieftains abandoned their homes, and were followed by thousands anxious to share their fortunes. There was no part of the eastern shore from the frith of Forth to the mouth of the Thames, which was not visited by hordes of barbarians. While Cerdic was struggling with the southern Britons, several independent chieftains had pushed their conquests along the left bank of the Thames: and in 530 Erkenwin had assumed the sovereignty of Essex, or of the East-Saxons<sup>17</sup>. The enterprising spirit of the Angles had led them to desert entirely their native country<sup>18</sup>. Several divisions landed to the north of the East-Saxons: Uffa, from whom his successors were called Uffingas, was chosen for their monarch: and so great was their power, that even while they were making conquests on the Britons, they could furnish men for a foreign expedition<sup>19</sup>. The daughter of one of their chiefs had been betrothed to Radigis, prince of the Varni, a people on the north bank of the Rhine. But on the death of his father, Radigis married his step-mother, the daughter of Theodobert the Frank, and the East-Angles resolved to revenge the insult. An expedition

Essex. 530.

East Anglia.

<sup>16</sup> Chron. Sax. 15—19. Hunt. 179. Whitgar and Stufra put to the sword every Briton in the island. Asser, p. 5.

<sup>17</sup> Mat. West. ad an. 586.

<sup>18</sup> Bed. i. 15. Chron. Sax. 12.

<sup>19</sup> Hunting. 313. Bed. ii. 15.

sailed up the Rhine : the Varni were defeated : and the country was pillaged. When the victors returned to the disappointed princess, whom they had left with a sufficient guard, she loaded them with reproaches for having permitted the escape of Radigis. They returned to the pursuit ; discovered the fugitive in a wood, and laid him in chains at her feet. His punishment was probably less severe than the reader will have anticipated. He was compelled to dismiss the sister of Theodobert, and take the East-Anglian lady to his bed. The conquerors returned in triumph to Britain<sup>20</sup>.

But the majority of the Angles had spread themselves more to the northward. Ida, who commanded a fleet of forty chiules, after many severe conflicts succeeded in removing the Bernician Britons from the vicinity of the coast ; and fixed his residence at Bebbanburgh, a castle which he had built on a lofty promontory, and to which he had given that name in honour of his consort, Bebba<sup>21</sup>. He obtained the regal title in 547, and reigned twelve years. His states were called the kingdom of Bernicia, and were bounded on the south by the river Tees. Bernicia. 547

The Britons, who lived on the right bank of the Tees were called Deiri. The first of the Anglian chieftains, by whom they had been assailed and defeated was Scmil. Sella, one of his descendants, in 560, obtained the undisputed possession of the country, and formed a new kingdom, which preserved its British appellation<sup>22</sup>. Deira. 560.

The Saxons of Deira stretched themselves as far as the Humber. In 586 a colony under the command of Cridda Mercia. 586.

<sup>20</sup> Procop. Hist. Goth. iv. 468.

<sup>21</sup> Chron. Sax. p. 19. Bed. iii. 6. Nen. 63, 64.

<sup>22</sup> Nen. 64. When Bernicia was afterwards

united with Deira under one sovereign, the whole was called the kingdom of Northumbria, from its comprising the Saxon conquests north of the Humber.

CHAP.  
II.

---

passed that river, and after clearing the coast of the Britons, pushed their conquests behind the East-Angles, till they had reached the very centre of the island. They were in general called Mercians, perhaps from the marshy district in which they first settled; some of them took the name of Middle-Angles, from their central position<sup>23</sup>.

From the arrival of Hengist to the last successes of Cridda, a period had intervened of more than one hundred and fifty years. The natives had gradually retired before their enemies from the coast to the mountains, and had left about one half of the southern division of the island in the possession of the invaders. Eight new kingdoms had been formed. Kent and Sussex were comprised within the small extent of the counties still known by those names. The East Saxons possessed Essex, Middlesex, and the south of Hertfordshire. East Anglia comprehended Norfolk, Suffolk, Cambridge and the isle of Ely. These states were prevented from extending their territories by their position on the coast, and the contiguity of other Saxon adventurers. But the remaining kingdoms bordered on the Britons, and were successively augmented by conquest. When they had attained their full growth, Bernicia on the north, and Deira on the south of the Tees, extended from the Forth to the Humber, and from the eastern sea to the western. Wessex was bounded by the Thames and the Severn on the north, and stretched from the borders of Kent and Sussex to the Land's-end in Cornwall. Mercia comprised all the interior of the island as far as the mountains of Wales.—It is easy to point out the continental origin of these different peoples. The nations of the Saxons discover themselves by their very name. The conquerors of

<sup>23</sup> Mercia was divided by the river Trent into north and south. North Mercia was computed to contain 7000, south Mercia 5000 hides of land. Bed. iii. 24.



Kent, of the isle of Wight and the coast of Hampshire opposite to that island, were Jutes. All the remaining kingdoms were founded by the Angles<sup>24</sup>.

CHAP.  
II.

During this long and eventful period, the Britons, though finally unsuccessful, had displayed a considerable share of courage and resolution. In the other provinces of the empire the natives had remained tame spectators of the contest between the imperial forces and the barbarians: and whenever the fortune of war declared in favour of the latter, had patiently submitted to the rule of the conquerors. The Britons alone, with the exception of the natives of Armorica, had ventured to unsheath the sword in the defence of their liberty. If during the struggle they lost the fairer portion of the island, the origin of their misfortunes will be found in the want of union among their chieftains. Like their fathers of old, they were vanquished in detail. Their national writers talk of kings who at this period wielded the whole power of Britain: but of the existence of any such authority no trace can be discovered in genuine history. The population of the country was divided among a multitude of chieftains, whose crimes and dissensions had rendered them too attentive to objects of personal jealousy or aggrandizement, to act with any combined efforts against the common enemy. The only opposition made to the Saxons seems to have proceeded from the inhabitants of the places in which they successively landed: and so unconscious were the other tribes of the danger which threatened them, or so indifferent to the fate of their more distant countrymen, that at the very time, when the barbarians were establishing kingdoms in the south-west of the island, an army of twelve thousand Britons, under the command

<sup>24</sup> Bede, i. 15. Chron. Sax. 12.

CHAP.  
II.

Their chief-  
tains.

of Riethamus, sailed from the coast of Cornwall to the mouth of the Loire, and ascending that river fought against the Visigoths in the neighbourhood of Bourges<sup>25</sup>.

Of the chieftains, who signalized their valour against the Saxons, we possess only an imperfect catalogue. 1. The first is Aurelius Ambrosius, who is described as of Roman origin; the son of parents that had worn the purple; a brave, faithful, and unassuming warrior. He seems to have fought against Hengist, and to have perished in a domestic quarrel with Guto-  
lin<sup>26</sup>. 2. The fame of Natanleod has been preserved by the Saxon chronicle. He was the opponent of Cerdic, and falling in battle, left his name to a considerable district in Hampshire<sup>27</sup>. 3. The territory of Urien, and the scene of his prowess lay in the north. Ida and his Angles experienced in Urien a formidable antagonist: but the Briton, after a long, and in some instances successful, struggle, was deprived of life by the jealousy of a confederate chieftain, named Morcant<sup>28</sup>. 4. The fame of Arthur has eclipsed that of all his contemporaries. Yet if we divest his memory of that fictitious glory, which has been thrown round it by the imagination of the bards, he will sink into equal obscurity with his fellows. We know neither the period when he lived, nor the district over which he reigned. He is said to have fought and to have gained twelve battles. In most of these, from the names of the places, he seems to have been opposed to the Angles in Lincolnshire, from the last at mount Badon, to the Saxons under Cerdic or Kenric<sup>29</sup>. This, whether it were fought under Arthur or not, was a splendid and useful victory, which for forty years checked the advance of the

<sup>25</sup> Jornand. cxlv. p. 678. Sid. Apol. iii. ep. 9.

<sup>26</sup> Gild. c. 25. Nenn. c. 1.

<sup>27</sup> Chron. Sax. p. 17.

<sup>28</sup> Nenn. c. 64.

<sup>29</sup> Id. c. 61, 62. cum not. Gale, p. 131.

strangers<sup>30</sup>. Perhaps, when the reader has been told that Arthur was a British chieftain, that he fought many battles, that he was murdered by his nephew, and was buried at Glastonbury, where his remains were discovered in the reign of Henry II., he will have learned all, that can be ascertained at the present day, respecting that celebrated warrior<sup>31</sup>.

By the conquests of the Saxons the island was replunged into that state of barbarism from which it had been extricated by the Romans. The victors had long been inured to pillage and slaughter. On many occasions the towns and villages were with their inhabitants involved in the same ruin. A mighty conflagration, says Gildas, was lighted up by the barbarians on the eastern coast, which gradually pervaded the whole surface of the island<sup>32</sup>. To escape from the exterminating sword of their enemies, the natives, as soon as opposition appeared fruitless, fled with their most valuable effects to the hills and forests. Multitudes found a secure asylum among the mountains which cover the west of the island: where, struggling with poverty, and engaged in constant warfare, they rapidly lost the faint polish of provincial civilization, and relapsed into many of the habits of savage life. Others under the conduct of their prelates and chieftains abandoned their native country altogether. Crossing the ocean they seized the desolate lands on the western extremity of Armorica; subdued the independence of the neighbouring cities; and gave to the tract which they subdued the appellation of their parent country. It is still known by the name of Bretagne<sup>33</sup>.

Effects of the  
Saxon con-  
quests.

But the work of devastation was at last checked by views of

<sup>30</sup> Gild. c. 26.

<sup>31</sup> Girald. apud Langhorn, p. 91. Lel. Coll. v. 8, 9.

<sup>32</sup> Gild. c. 24. Chron. Sax. p. 15.

<sup>33</sup> Gild. c. 25. and the testimonies in Usher,

Antiq. p. 225—227. Also Bouquet's Rerum Gallic. tom. v. p. 149. vii. 298, and in tom. vi. Eginhard. annal. ad an. 786. and Ermold. Nigel. de reb. Ludov. l. iii.



CHAP.  
II.

---

personal interest. The habitations of the Britons were wanted for the use of the conquerors; and the labours of the captives were found necessary for the cultivation of the soil. Hence it was that, as the Saxons extended their conquests, the buildings were suffered to stand; and the lives of the Britons were spared, unless the thirst of vengeance had been excited by the obstinacy of their resistance. The captives, without distinction of rank or profession, of sex or age, were divided, together with the land, among the conquerors: they became the property, the chattels, of their lord, subject to his caprice and transferable at his will. The same fate attended their descendants for many generations: and from the authentic record of Doomsday it appears, that as late as the eleventh century a majority of the population of England remained in a state of slavery.

Octarchy  
established.

The conquerors had established eight independent kingdoms in the island, though from the frequent union of Bernicia and Deira under the same head, they have generally been considered as only seven. The history of their different dynasties, were they to be arranged either collaterally or in succession, would perplex and fatigue both the writer and the reader. A sufficiently accurate notion of the period, which precedes the preponderance of the West-Saxon kings, may be obtained by attending to the reigns of the more powerful monarchs. For there frequently was one among the number, whose authority was acknowledged by all or by most of his contemporaries. The title by which he was designated, was that of Bretwalda, the wielder or sovereign of Britain. Whether he obtained it by the influence of his power, or received it from the spontaneous suffrage of his equals, is doubtful; nor do we know whether any duties or prerogatives were attached to his dignity. By Bede the title is given to seven of the Saxon princes; other historians add an eighth. To

their reigns may with propriety be referred the principal events which occurred in the kingdoms not immediately subject to their control<sup>34</sup>.

CHAP.  
II.

---

ÆLLA, BRETWALDA I.

The descent of Ælla on the southern coast, and his subsequent success, have been previously noticed. It is difficult to conjecture, by what means he acquired the precedency among the confederate chieftains. The kingdom of Sussex, which he founded, was the smallest, and the least powerful of all the new principalities. This distinction may perhaps have been conceded to some pre-eminence, which he enjoyed in his native country, or to some exploits of which the memory has perished. He has scarcely obtained the notice of our ancient chroniclers<sup>35</sup>.

Reign of  
Ælla.

480.

CEAWLIN, BRETWALDA II.

Ethelbert, the fourth king of Kent, was the first to disturb the harmony, which had united the Saxon princes. At the age of sixteen, he was taught to believe that the dignity of Bretwalda belonged to him as the representative of Hengist<sup>36</sup>. Under this impression he led an army against Ceawlin, king of Wessex, the grandson of Cerdic. At Wimbledon his temerity was severely chastised. Oslac and Cnebba, his two ealdormen, fell in the conflict, and Ethelbert himself escaped with difficulty from the pursuit of the enemy. Ceawlin, content with the humiliation of the king of Kent, directed his arms against the Britons. The

Reign of  
Ceawlin.  
508.

<sup>34</sup> See Bede, ii. 5. and the Saxon chronicle, p. 71. From the strong expressions of Bede, it would not be rash to infer that the inferior

kings acknowledged themselves the vassals of the Bretwalda.

<sup>35</sup> Bed. et Chron. Sax. ibid.

<sup>36</sup> Malms. p. 12. Hunt. p. 315.

CHAP.  
II.

571.

577.

584.

591.

battle of Bedford, which was fought under the direction of his brother Cuthwin, added to his dominions the towns of Leighton, Ailesbury, Bensington, and Eynsham : and six years afterwards the victory of Derham in Gloucestershire was marked by the fall of three British kings, Conmail, Condidan, and Farinmail, and was followed by the surrender of the important cities of Gloucester, Cirencester, and Bath. When Ceawlin had settled his new conquests, he resumed offensive operations against the Britons. At Frithern on the left bank of the Severn he lost his son Cutha : but victory declared for the Saxons, the neighbouring towns were plundered, and the army returned home laden with booty. A few years after, on the death of Cissa, the son of Ælla, Ceawlin added Sussex to his other dominions. But fortune deserted him in the zenith of his power. A bloody battle was fought at Wodensburg in Wiltshire, his disaffected subjects called to their aid the Scots and Britons : the king was defeated, and forced to seek for safety in concealment : and Ceolric his nephew ascended the throne. Ceawlin died in 593<sup>37</sup>.

## ETHELBERT, BRETWALDA III.

Reign of  
Ethelbert.

The disgrace, which had clouded the first years of Ethelbert, king of Kent, was afterwards dispersed by the glory of a long and prosperous reign. At the death of Ceawlin he had acquired (by what means we are not informed) the dignity of Bretwalda, and his authority was admitted by all the Saxon princes south of the Humber. While in possession of this dignity, he received intelligence that forty strangers had landed on the isle of Thanet.

<sup>37</sup> Chron. Sax. 20--23. Ethelwerd, 834. Hunt. 315. In writing the name of this king, Bede (ii. 5) observes that the Angles and

Saxons spoke different dialects: Cælin, qui *lingua eorum* Ceaulin vocabatur.



These were Augustine and his associates, partly Gauls, partly Italians, whom Pope Gregory the great had sent for the benevolent purpose of converting the pagans. Ethelbert could not be unacquainted with the christian religion. It was probably the religion of the majority of the British slaves in his dominions: it was certainly professed by his queen Bertha, the daughter of Charibert, king of Paris. The Saxon prince received the missionaries, under an oak, in an open field, at the suggestion of his priests, who had told him that in such a situation the spells of the foreign magicians would lose their influence. At the appointed time, Augustine was introduced to the king. Before him were borne a silver cross, and a banner representing the Redeemer: behind him his companions walked in procession: and the air resounded with the anthems which they sang in alternate choirs. As soon as the interpreter had explained the object and motives of their mission, Ethelbert replied, that he had no wish to abandon the gods of his fathers for a new and uncertain worship: but that, as the intention of the strangers was benevolent, and their promises were inviting, they might preach without molestation, and should be supported at his expense. This favourable answer filled them with joy: and they proceeded to Canterbury chanting, as they went, the following prayer: "By thy great mercy, O Lord, turn away, we beseech thee, thy anger from this city and thy holy temple, for we are sinners. Hallelujah <sup>38</sup>."

The care of the queen had already prepared a residence for the new apostles. They were lodged in the ancient church of St. Martin, which had originally belonged to the Britons, and had lately been repaired for the use of bishop Liudhard, a pre-

CHAP.  
II.

596.  
Conversion of  
the men of  
Kent.

Ethelbert  
baptized

<sup>38</sup> Bed. i. 25.

CHAP.  
II.

---

late who accompanied Bertha from Gaul. Curiosity led the Saxons to visit the strangers: they admired the ceremonies of their worship, compared their lives with those of the pagan priests, and learned to approve a religion, which could inspire so much piety, austerity, and disinterestedness. With secret pleasure Ethelbert viewed the alteration in the sentiments of his subjects: on the feast of Pentecost in the year 597, he professed himself a christian, and received the sacrament of baptism; and on the following Christmas ten thousand of his subjects followed the example of their sovereign<sup>39</sup>.

The willing mind of the royal proselyte was now quickened by the letters and presents of the pontiff. He exerted all his influence to second the efforts of the missionaries; not indeed by violence (which he had learned to be repugnant to the mild spirit of the gospel), but by his exhortations, and by distinguishing the converts with marks of the royal favour. As soon as Augustine had received the episcopal consecration from the archbishop of Arles, the king retired to the city of Reculver, and gave to the missionaries Canterbury with the surrounding country. By his munificence the church of St. Saviour, originally built by the Britons, was repaired and allotted for the residence of the bishop and his clergy: while a new monastery was raised without the walls, for the use of the monks, and dedicated in honour of the apostles Peter and Paul. At the same time the number of the missionaries was augmented by the care of Gregory; and their success was rapidly extended to the boundaries of the kingdom. As each canton embraced the new doctrine, the heathen temple was converted into a christian church: and in order to wean the proselytes from their idolatrous practices,

<sup>39</sup> Id. 26. Greg. Epist. vii. 30.

they were permitted, instead of the feasts which they had formerly celebrated around the altars of their gods, to assemble upon the more solemn festivals in the neighbourhood of the church, and to partake of a sober repast. To preside over the more distant christians, Augustine conferred the episcopal dignity on his disciple Justus. The new prelate fixed his residence in Rochester, in which the church of St. Andrew was built and endowed by the piety of Ethelbert.

The kingdom of Essex was, at this period, governed by Saberct, the son of its founder, and the nephew of Ethelbert. The influence of the uncle introduced a missionary, the abbot Mellitus, to the notice of Saberct, who soon consented to receive the sacrament of baptism. The episcopal consecration was conferred on Mellitus: and London, which is represented as a populous and commercial city, was selected for the see of the new bishop. The cathedral was built, and endowed at the joint expense of Ethelbert and Saberct <sup>40</sup>.

604.  
Conversion of  
Essex.

From the conversion of the Saxons the zeal of Augustine was directed to the reformation of the Britons. During one hundred and fifty years of unsuccessful warfare, the ancient discipline of their church had been nearly abolished, and the lives of their clergy were disgraced by vices the most repugnant to their profession <sup>41</sup>. To which of the British sees the archiepiscopal jurisdiction had been originally attached, is at present unknown; but Gregory had written to Augustine, that he had subjected all the bishops of Britain to his authority. The missionary, with the aid of Ethelbert, prevailed on the British prelates to meet him at a place, which has since been called Augustine's oak in Worcestershire. After

Controversy  
with the Bri-  
tons.

<sup>40</sup> Bed. i. 26. 30. iii. 3.

<sup>41</sup> Their character has been drawn in odious

but faithful colours by Gildas, a countryman and contemporary. Gild. ep. p. 23.



CHAP.  
II.

a long and unavailing debate, the conference was adjourned to another day. In the interval the Britons consulted a neighbouring hermit, who advised them to watch the behaviour of Augustine; if he rose to meet them, they were to consider him as a man of unassuming disposition, and to listen to his demands: but if he kept his seat, they should condemn him of pride, and reject his authority. With this sapient admonition, which left the decision of the controversy to accident, seven bishops, with Dinoh, abbot of Bangor, repaired to the place of conference. Augustine happened to be seated; and did not rise at their arrival. Both his reasons and his authority were consequently despised. In points of doctrine there had been no difference between them: and to facilitate their compliance in other matters, the archbishop had reduced his demands to three heads: that they should observe the catholic computation of Easter, should adopt the Roman rite in the administration of baptism; and should join with the missionaries in preaching to the Saxons<sup>12</sup>. Each of these requests, in obedience to the advice of the hermit, was pertinaciously refused. "Know then," exclaimed the missionary with the tone of a prophet, "that if you will not assist me in pointing out to the Saxons the way of life, they, by the just judgment of God, will prove to you the ministers of death." He did not live to see the prediction verified<sup>13</sup>.

Reign of  
Ethelbert

The reign of Ethelbert lasted fifty-six years. Before his death

\* It is surprising that so many modern historians should have represented the Britons as holding different doctrines from those professed by the Roman missionaries, though these writers have never yet produced a single instance of such difference. Would Augustine have required the British clergy to join in the conversion of the Saxons, if they had taught

doctrines, which he condemned? Bede has related with great minuteness all the controversies between the two parties. They all regard points of discipline. No where does the remotest hint occur of any difference respecting doctrine.

<sup>1</sup> Bed. ii. 2

he published a code of laws to regulate the administration of justice. For this improvement he was indebted to the suggestions of the missionaries, who, though they had been accustomed to the forms and decisions of the Roman jurisprudence, did not, in legislating for the Saxons, attempt to abolish the national notions of equity, but wisely retained the principle of pecuniary compensation, a principle universally prevalent in the northern nations. Those crimes, which appeared the most repugnant to the well-being of society, were scrupulously enumerated, theft in its different branches, murder, sacrilege, insults offered to female chastity, and infractions of the peace of the king and of the church: and to each was attached a proportionate fine, which rose in amount according to the dignity of the person against whom the offence was committed. From these laws it appears that all freemen were classed according to their property, and the offices which they held. To each class was allotted its peculiar *mund* and *were*. The *mund* was the pecuniary mulct, which was intended to provide for the security of each individual, and of those under his roof. Thus the *mund* of a widow, if she were of the highest rank, was fifty shillings; of the second, twenty; of the third, twelve; and of the fourth, six. The *were* was the sum at which the life of each person was rated. If he was killed, the murderer paid it as a compensation to his family: if he himself transgressed the laws, he forfeited it, in lieu of his head, to the king. But murder was not only an offence against individuals, it was also considered as an injury to the community: and the criminal was compelled to make what was esteemed a compensation to the violated justice of his country as well as the family of the deceased. For this purpose, besides the *were*, he paid an additional fine, called the *wite*, which was received by the king or the chief magistrate of the district.

CHAP.  
II.

---

The same distinctions, and the same punishments, with a few variations arising out of times and circumstances, were retained in all the laws of succeeding legislators <sup>44</sup>.

616.  
Reign of  
Eadbald.

Ethelbert died in 616. The crown devolved upon his son Eadbald, the violence of whose passions nearly replunged the nation into that idolatry from which it had just emerged. The youth and beauty of his step-mother, the relict of Ethelbert, induced him to take her to his bed: and when the missionaries admonished him to break the unnatural connexion, he abandoned a religion, which forbade the gratification of his appetites. At the same time the three sons of Saberct, (their father was dead), restored the altars of the gods, and banished from their territory the bishop Mellitus. With Justus of Rochester he retired into Gaul: and Laurentius, the successor of Augustine in the see of Canterbury, had determined to follow their footsteps. On the morning of his intended departure, he made a last attempt on the mind of Eadbald. His representations were successful. The king dismissed his step-mother and recalled the fugitive prelates. The sincerity of his conversion was proved by his subsequent conduct: and christianity, supported by his influence, assumed an ascendancy, which it ever afterwards preserved <sup>45</sup>.

### REDWALD, BRETWALDA IV.

Reign of Red-  
wald.

The Saxon princes refused that obedience to Eadbald which they had paid to his father: and the dignity of Bretwalda passed from the Jutes to the more powerful nations of the Angles. The East-Anglian throne was now filled by Redwald,

<sup>44</sup> Leg. Sax. p. 1.

<sup>45</sup> Bed. ii. 5.



the second Uffinga. He had formerly paid a visit to Ethelbert, and at his persuasion had professed himself a christian. But on his return home the new convert found himself assailed by the importunities of his wife, and the opposition of his people. His resolution was at last subdued: but to silence his conscience, he endeavoured to unite the two worships, and in the same temple, by the side of the statue of Woden, dedicated an altar to the God of the christians <sup>46</sup>.

We cannot appreciate his subsequent conduct, without reverting to the history of Northumbria. Edilfrid, the grandson of Ida, was a restless and sanguinary prince, who for several years had directed all his efforts against the neighbouring Britons. In many districts they had been entirely exterminated by his arms: in others they were happy to purchase his forbearance by the payment of an annual tribute. Aidan, king of the Scots, jealous of so formidable a neighbour, assembled all his forces, and marched as far as the stone of Degsa, a spot long celebrated in the traditions of the country. Though Theodbald, the brother of Edilfrid, was slain with his followers, victory declared for the Northumbrians. The greater part of the Scots were immolated to their vengeance; and the narrow escape of Aidan with a handful of attendants proved an instructive lesson to him and his successors. For more than a century no king of the Scots dared to meet the Northumbrians in battle <sup>47</sup>.

Conquests of  
Edilfrid.

603.

At the death of Ælla, the founder of the kingdom of Deira, Edilfrid, who had married his daughter, took possession of his dominions. Ælla had left a male child of the name of Edwin,

Adventures of  
Edwin.

<sup>46</sup> Bed. ii. 15.

<sup>47</sup> Id. i. 34. The stone of Degsa is thought to be either Dalston near Carlisle, or Dawston

near Jedburgh. Aidan was the seventh of the Scottish kings, reckoning Loarn for the first. O'Connor Proleg. i. p. cxxvi. ii. p. lxxx. i.

CHAP.  
II.

about three years old, who was conveyed beyond the reach of the tyrant, and intrusted to the protection of Cadvan, the king of North Wales. The hospitality of the British prince drew on him the vengeance of the Northumbrian: and the two armies met in the vicinity of Chester. On the summit of a neighbouring hill Edilfrid espied an unarmed crowd, the monks of Bangor, who, like Moses in the wilderness, had hoped by their prayers to determine the fate of the battle. "If they pray," exclaimed the pagan, "they also fight against us:" and ordered a detachment of his army to put them to the sword. Victory was, as usual, true to his standard. Chester was taken and Bangor demolished. Its scattered ruins demonstrated to subsequent generations the extent of that celebrated monastery<sup>18</sup>.

The son of Ælla, who was incessantly harassed by the jealousy of Edilfrid, wandered from the hospitable mansion of Cadvan through the different principalities of the Britons and Saxons. At last he found an asylum in the court of Redwald. The fidelity of that prince was immediately attempted to be shaken by the threats and promises of Edilfrid: and after a long struggle he preferred the friendship of a powerful monarch to the danger of protecting a solitary exile. On the very evening, while the council deliberated on his fate, Edwin was sitting alone in the dark at the gate of the palace, when a friendly voice whispered in his ear that it was time to fly, for the king had given his assent to the demands of his enemy. "I have known too much misery," replied the prince, "to be anxious for life. If I must die, no death can be more acceptable than that which is inflicted by royal treachery." He remained in the

<sup>18</sup> Bed. ii. 2. The number of the monks slain on the hill is generally said to have been 1200, but Bede observes that others besides

the monks had assembled to pray. He supposes that the victory of Edilfrid fulfilled the prediction of Augustine.

same place musing on his melancholy situation, when a favourable dream, which had considerable influence on his subsequent conduct, afforded him a faint gleam of hope, and his friend, stealing to him a second time, informed him that he was safe. The solicitations of the queen had overcome the perfidious resolve of her husband <sup>49</sup>.

The moment Redwald determined to reject the proposals of Edilfrid, he saw the necessity of anticipating his resentment. The Northumbrian with a small body of followers was hastening to surprise his enemy, when he was met by the whole of the East-Anglian forces on the right bank of the Idel in Nottinghamshire. They were skilfully (so we are told) arrayed in three bodies: and their helmets, spears, and banners gave them a martial and formidable appearance. Edilfrid, though disconcerted, scorned to retire; and rushing on the first division, destroyed it with its leader, Rægenheri or Rainer, the son of Redwald. But the Northumbrians were quickly trampled under foot by the multitude of the East-Anglians: and the king, having opened with his sword a way into the midst of his enemies, fell on the bodies of those whom he had slain. The conquerors hastened to improve their advantage. By the men of Deira Edwin was received with acclamations of joy: the children of Edilfrid fled into the north of the island; and the Bernicians submitted cheerfully to the good fortune of the son of Ælla. Redwald, having placed his friend on the united throne of the two kingdoms, returned in triumph to his dominions <sup>50</sup>.

616.  
Death of  
Edilfrid

<sup>49</sup> Bed. ii. 12.

<sup>50</sup> Ibid. Chron. Sax. p. 27. Hunt. 181.



CHAP.  
II.

## EDWIN, BRETWALDA V.

Reign of Edwin. 616.

The martial genius of Edilfrid had raised Northumbria to an equality with the most powerful of the Anglo-Saxon states : under the government of Edwin it assumed a marked superiority, and conferred the title of Bretwalda on him, and his immediate successors. The steps by which he ascended to this pre-eminence, are not recorded : but the history of his conversion to christianity has been preserved by the pen of the venerable Bede.

His marriage. 625.

In the ninth year of his reign Edwin had married Edilberga, the daughter of Ethelbert, the deceased king of Kent. The zeal of Eadbald had previously stipulated that his sister should enjoy the free exercise of her religion : and had obtained from Edwin a promise that he would himself examine the evidences of the christian faith. The queen was accompanied by Paulinus, a Roman missionary, who had lately received the episcopal consecration. The king faithfully observed his word : but, though he made no attempt to alter the faith of Edilberga, he shewed no inclination to embrace it himself. It was in vain that Paulinus preached ; that the queen entreated, that pope Boniface sent letters and presents. Edwin appeared immovably attached to the worship of his fathers.

Attempt to assassinate Edwin. 626.

The kingdom of Wessex was now governed by two princes, Cuichelm and Cynegils, the successors of Ceolwulf. They bore with impatience the superiority assumed by Edwin ; and, unable to contend with him in the field, attempted to remove him by assassination. Eumer, in quality of an envoy from Cuichelm, demanded an audience of Edwin. He had concealed under his

clothes a two-edged dagger, which had been previously dipped in poison : and while the king earnestly listened to his discourse, the assassin aimed a desperate stroke at his breast. His design did not escape the eye of the faithful Lilla, who threw himself between Edwin and the dagger, and fell dead at the feet of his master. So great was the force of the stroke, that the king was wounded through the body of his attendant. Every sword was instantly drawn : but Eumer defended himself with such desperate courage, that he killed Frodheri, another thane, before he was overpowered by numbers.

The preceding night Edilberga had been delivered of a daughter, and Edwin publicly returned thanks to the gods for his own preservation, and the health of his consort. Paulinus did not omit the opportunity of ascribing both events to the protection of Christ, whose resurrection from the grave had been that very day celebrated by the queen. His discourse made impression on the mind of the king, who permitted him to baptize his daughter, and promised to become a christian, if he returned victorious from his meditated expedition against the perfidious king of Wessex <sup>51</sup>.

At the head of a powerful army, Edwin marched against his enemies. The two brothers were defeated ; five of the West-Saxon chieftains fell in the battle ; and the country was pillaged by the victors. Having satisfied his resentment, the king returned to Northumbria, and was reminded of his promise by Paulinus. From that moment he abstained from the worship of his gods : though he still hesitated to embrace christianity. He consulted alternately his priests and the missionary, and revolved in solitude their opposite arguments. His mind was

His revenge.

and conversion.

<sup>51</sup> Bed. ii. 9. Chron. Sax. 27.

CHAP.  
II.

---

strongly influenced by the recollection of his dream in East-Anglia; and as it had been fulfilled in every other particular, it became his duty to accomplish it by becoming a christian. Having taken his resolution, he called an assembly of his witan or counsellors, and required each to state his sentiments on the subject. The first, who ventured to speak, was Coiffi, the high-priest, who, instead of opposing, advised the adoption of the foreign worship. His motive was singular. No one, he said, had served the gods more assiduously than himself, and yet few had been less fortunate. He was weary of deities, who were so indifferent or so ungrateful, and would willingly try his fortune under the new religion. To this profound theologian succeeded a thane, whose discourse, while it proves the good sense of the speaker, exhibits a striking picture of national manners. He sought for information respecting the origin and the destiny of man. "Often," said he, "O king, in the depth  
" of winter, while you are feasting with your thanes, and the  
" fire is blazing on the hearth in the midst of the hall, you have  
" seen a bird, pelted by the storm, enter at one door, and  
" escape at the other. During its passage it was visible: but  
" whence it came, or whither it went, you knew not. Such to  
" me appears the life of man. He walks the earth for a few  
" years: but what precedes his birth, or what is to follow after  
" his death, we cannot tell. Undoubtedly, if the new religion  
" can unfold these important secrets, it must be worthy our  
" attention." At the common request Paulinus was introduced, and explained the principal doctrines of christianity. Coiffi declared himself a convert, and to prove his sincerity, offered to set fire to the neighbouring temple of Godmundham. With the permission of Edwin, he called for a horse and arms, both of which were forbidden to the priests of the Angles. As



he rode along, he was followed by crowds, who attributed his conduct to a temporary insanity. To their astonishment, bidding defiance to the gods of his fathers, he struck his spear into the wall of the temple. They had expected that the fires of heaven would have revenged the sacrilege. The impunity of the apostate dissipated their alarms: and urged by his example and exhortations they united in kindling the flames, which with the fane consumed the deities, that had been so long the objects of their terror and veneration<sup>52</sup>.

When Gregory the Great arranged the future economy of the Anglo-Saxon church, he directed that the northern metropolitan should fix his residence at York. Edwin accordingly bestowed on Paulinus a house and possessions in that city, and was baptized in a church hastily erected for the ceremony. Pope Honorius was immediately informed of the event; and at his request granted the use of the pallium to the archbishops of Canterbury and York, with the permission, that when one of these prelates died, the survivor should consecrate his successor, without waiting to consult the Roman pontiff. To Paulinus Edwin continued to prove himself a patron and assistant: and his mansions at Yeverin in Glendale, and at Catterick in Yorkshire, were long respected by posterity, as the places where their fathers had been instructed in the doctrine of the gospel, and had received the sacrament of baptism. Nor could his zeal be satisfied with the conversion of his own subjects. At the death of Redwald, the thanes of East-Anglia, who had witnessed his virtues and abilities, offered him the regal dignity. His gratitude declined it in favour of Eorpwald, the son of his benefactor: and his piety prompted him to explain to the young

627.

<sup>52</sup> Bed. ii. 13.

CHAP.  
II.

631.

Edwin's  
power.

king the principles of christianity. But Eorpwald was slain after a short reign of three years: and the conversion of the East-Angles was reserved for the united efforts of Sigebert, his brother and successor, and of Felix, a Burgundian prelate, who received his mission from Honorius, archbishop of Canterbury <sup>53</sup>.

The empire of Edwin was more extensive than that of any preceding Bretwalda. The islands of Anglesey and Man were subject to his authority <sup>54</sup>; all the princes of the Britons paid him tribute; and if among the Saxon kings, Eadbald of Kent retained a nominal independence, he owed the benefit, not to his own power, but to the influence of his sister Edilberga. As a token of his authority, the Northumbrian assumed a distinction unknown to the Saxons; and the Tufa, a military ensign of Roman origin, was always borne before him, when he appeared in public. Anxious to enforce the observance of the laws, he severely punished every act of theft or rapacity: and the advantages resulting from his inflexible administration of justice were long preserved in the recollection of posterity by a proverb, the truth of which is attested by Bede: "that in the days of Edwin a woman with a babe at her breast might have travelled over the island without suffering an insult." On the highways, at convenient intervals, he placed cisterns of stone to collect water from the nearest fountains, and attached to them cups of brass for the refreshment of passengers; an improvement which in the seventh century excited applause and gratitude <sup>55</sup>.

His death.

After the death of Ceorl of Mercia, Penda, the son of his predecessor, possessed the power, without the title, of

<sup>54</sup> Bed. ii. 14, 15.

<sup>54</sup> Anglesey was computed at 960 hides, Man at something more than 300. Bed. ii. 9.

<sup>55</sup> Id. ii. 5. 9. 16. The tufa is supposed by some to have been a globe, by others a tuft of feathers, fixed on a spear.

king <sup>56</sup>. He was then advanced in age, a brave and experienced warrior, and of insatiable ambition. For seven years he bore with impatience the superiority of the Northumbrian: at last he found in Ceadwalla, king of Gwynnez or North Wales, an associate of equal daring and of similar views. They united their armies, unturled the standard of rebellion, and marched into Yorkshire. The battle was fought at Hatfield between the Don and the Torre. The Northumbrian army was routed; and Edwin perished with great part of his followers. Of his sons by his first wife Quoenburga, the daughter of Ceorl, Osfrid was slain with his father, Eadfrid implored the protection of his relation Penda, and was afterwards murdered by him in violation of his oath. Ethelburga with her children and Paulinus escaped by sea to the court of her brother in Kent <sup>57</sup>.

633.

The confederates exercised without mercy the licence of victory. They differed in religion; for the Britons were christians, the Mercians idolaters: but both were equally solicitous to wreak their resentment on the vanquished, the one that they might revenge the injuries formerly inflicted on their country, the other that they might punish these apostates from the worship of their fathers. Of the two the Britons were the more savage. They spared neither age nor sex: and their cruelty, instead of being appeased by the death, exulted in the torture of their captives. Having spread devastation from one end of the country to the other, they separated. Ceadwalla remained to accomplish his boast of utterly exterminating the Northumbrians; Penda marched with his Mercians into the territory of the East-Angles. Sigebert their king had lately

Sufferings of  
the Northum-  
brians.

634.

<sup>56</sup> By the Saxon chronicle (p. 28), and most other writers, he is said to have begun his reign in 626, and to have reigned 30 years: but Bede expressly says that he reigned but

22, which places the first year of his reign at the period of the battle of Hatfield.

<sup>57</sup> Bed. ii. 20. Chron. Sax. p. 29.



CHAP.  
II.

retired into a monastery, and had resigned the honours and cares of royalty to his cousin Egeric: but the East-Angles were alarmed at the approaching danger, and clamorously demanded the aged monarch, who had so often led them to victory.—With reluctance he left the tranquillity of his cell, to mix in the tumult of the combat. But arms were refused by the royal monk as repugnant to his profession, and he directed with a wand the operations of the army. The fortune of the Mercians prevailed: and both Sigebert and Egeric fell in the service of their country<sup>58</sup>.

## OSWALD, BRETWALDA VI.

Murder of the  
Northumbrian  
kings.

634.

The unfortunate death of Edwin dissolved for a short period the union of the Northumbrian kingdoms. Among the Deiri the family of Ælla retained the ascendancy; and the scepter was placed in the hands, not indeed of the children of Edwin, but of their cousin Osric, a prince mature in age, and experienced in battle. In Bernicia the memory of Ida was still cherished with gratitude, and Eanfrid, the eldest of the sons of Edilfrid, returning from his retreat in the mountains of Caledonia, ascended the throne of his ancestors. Each of these princes had formerly received baptism, Osric from Paulinus, Eanfrid from the monks of St. Columba: and each with equal facility relapsed into the errors of paganism. If their ambition was satisfied with the possession of royalty, they quickly paid the price of it with their blood. Ceadwalla still continued his ravages. He was in the city of York, when Osric hastening to surprise him, was attacked unexpectedly himself, and

<sup>58</sup> Bed. ii. 20. iii. 18.

perished on the spot. Eanfrid, terrified by the fate of Osric and the fame of Ceadwalla, visited the Briton with only twelve attendants, solicited for peace, and was perfidiously put to death. The indignant piety of the Northumbrians expunged the names of these apostate princes from the catalogue of their kings: and the time in which they reigned was distinguished in their annals by this expressive term, “the unhappy year”<sup>59</sup>.

By the deaths of Osric and Eanfrid the duty of revenging his family and country devolved on Oswald, the younger of the sons of Edilfrid. Impelled by despair, he sought with a small but resolute band, the army of the Britons, and at the dawn of day discovered them negligently encamped in the neighbourhood of Hexham. Oswald had not imitated the apostacy of his brother. By his orders a cross of wood was hastily formed, and fixed in the ground: when turning to his army he exclaimed: “Soldiers, let us bend our knees, and beg of the true and living God to protect us from the insolence and ferocity of our enemies: for he knows that our cause is just, and that we fight for the salvation of our country.” They obeyed his orders, and knelt down to pray: from prayer they rose to battle: and victory was the reward of their piety and valour. Ceadwalla was slain: and his invincible army was annihilated. By the common consent of the Bernicii and Deiri Oswald assumed the government of the two nations. He was allied to each: for, if he was descended by his father from Ida, by his mother Acha he numbered Ælla among his progenitors<sup>60</sup>.

Accession of  
Oswald.

The piety of Oswald, which ascribed his success to the interposition of Heaven, prompted him to solicit from his former teachers, a supply of missionaries, who might instruct his

Conversion of  
the Northum-  
brians.

<sup>59</sup> Bed. iii. 1. 9.

<sup>60</sup> Id. iii. 2. 6.

CHAP.  
II.

people in the doctrines of the gospel. The first who was sent, Cormán, a monk of a morose and rigid disposition, soon returned in disgust to his monastery: but when in presence of the community he accused the ignorance and barbarism of the Northumbrians, he received a severe and sensible rebuke. "Brother," exclaimed a voice, "the fault was your's. You exacted from the pagans more than their weakness would bear. You should have first stooped to them, and gradually have raised their minds to the sublime truths of the gospel." At the sound every eye was fixed on the speaker, a private monk of the name of Aidan, who was chosen as the successor of Cormán by the unanimous suffrage of his brethren. Having received the episcopal consecration he repaired to the court of Oswald, who condescended to explain in English the instructions, which the bishop delivered in his native language. Aidan received from the king the donation of the isle of Lindisfarne, since called Holy Island, in which he built a monastery, long an object of veneration to the Northumbrians. With unwearied perseverance he traversed every part of the kingdom; and his efforts were seconded by the industry of several zealous monks, who had abandoned their native country to partake in his labours. The austerity of his life, his contempt of riches, his charity to the poor, and his attachment to the duties of his profession, gained the hearts, while his arguments convinced the understanding, of his proselytes. Christianity soon became the predominant religion in Northumbria<sup>61</sup>.

Oswald not only claimed that pre-eminence over the Saxons which had been possessed by his predecessor, but also compelled the princes of the Picts and Scots to number themselves among his vassals<sup>62</sup>. Like Edwin he also contributed to add a royal

<sup>61</sup> Id. iii. 3. 5.

<sup>62</sup> Bed. iii. 6. By Cuminus, a contemporary Scottish monk, he is called, totius Bri-

tannia: imperator. Cum. Vit. St. Colum. p. 44.



proselyte to the number of Saxon christians. At the time when Birinus, a foreign bishop, commissioned by pope Honorius, landed on the coast of Wessex, Oswald visited the same kingdom to demand the daughter of Cynegils in marriage. Their united efforts induced the monarch, his family, and principal thanes to receive the sacrament of baptism. Even the obstinacy of Cuichelm was subdued: and on his death-bed that prince professed himself a christian. Cynegils bestowed the city of Dorchester, near the conflux of the Tame and the Isis, on the apostle: Oswald in quality of Bretwalda, confirmed the donation<sup>63</sup>.

But the fate of Edwin awaited Oswald, and the same prince was destined to be the minister of his death. In the eighth year of his reign, and the thirty-eighth of his age, the king of Northumbria fought with Penda and his Mercians in the field of Maser<sup>64</sup>. The pagans were victorious. Oswald, surrounded by enemies, was slain. His last words were repeated by the gratitude of the Northumbrians, and a proverb preserved them in the remembrance of their posterity. "Lord have mercy on the souls of my people," said Oswald, as he fell. The ferocity of Penda did not spare the dead body of his adversary: but severed the head and arms from the trunk, and fixed them on high poles driven into the ground. The body of Oswald was buried at Bardney, and his standard of purple and gold was suspended over the grave. The head and arms were taken down the year after his death by Oswio his successor, and deposited, the head in the monastery of Lindisfarne, the arms in the royal city of Bamborough<sup>65</sup>.

<sup>642.</sup>  
Death of Os-  
wald.

Bamborough was the first place that ventured to stop the

<sup>63</sup> Bed. iii. 7.

Shropshire: by some Winwich in Lancashire.

<sup>64</sup> By most supposed to be Oswestre in

<sup>65</sup> Id. iii. 9. 11, 12. Chron. Sax. p. 32.

CHAP.  
II.

destructive progress of the Mercians after the battle of Maserfield. Situated on a rock, and protected on one side by a steep ascent, on the other by the waters of the ocean, it bade defiance to their utmost exertions. But the genius of Penda was fertile in expedients, and that which he adopted, displays the ferocity of his disposition. By his order the neighbouring villages were demolished; every combustible material was collected from the ruins, and reared up against the walls; and as soon as the wind blew fiercely towards the city, fire was set to the pile. Already were the smoke and flames wafted over the heads of the trembling inhabitants, when the wind suddenly changed, and the fire spent its fury in the opposite direction. Chagrined and confounded Penda raised the siege, and led back his army <sup>66</sup>.

## OSWIO, BRETWALDA VII.

Reign of  
Oswio.

The retreat of Penda afforded leisure to the Northumbrian thanes to elect a successor to Oswald. The object of their choice was his brother Oswio, who inherited the abilities of his predecessor, and who, to strengthen his throne, married Eanfled, the daughter of Edwin <sup>67</sup>. But the power of the nation was now broken: and his long reign of twenty-eight years, though it was occasionally distinguished by brilliant successes, was harassed at intervals by the inroads of the Mercians, the hostility of his nephew Oidilwald, and the ambition of his own son Alchfrid.

Murder of  
Oswin.  
644.

In the second year of his reign, he was alarmed by the claims of a dangerous competitor of the house of Ælla, Oswin the son of Osric: and prudence or necessity induced him to consent to a compromise, by which he allotted Deira to his rival, but reserved to himself Bernicia and the northern conquests. The

<sup>66</sup> Bed. iii. 16.

<sup>67</sup> Bed. iii. 15. Nen. c. 44.

character of Oswin has been drawn in the most amiable colours by the pencil of the venerable Bede. He was affable, just, religious, and generous. His virtues were idolized by his subjects; and his court was crowded with foreign Saxons, who solicited employment in his service. Six years the two princes lived in apparent amity with each other; but in the seventh their secret jealousy broke into open hostilities. Oswin, seeing no probability of success against the overwhelming force of his adversary, disbanded his army, and concealed himself with one attendant at Gilling, the house of the caldorman Hunwald. The perfidious thane betrayed him to his enemy; and nothing but his death could satisfy the policy of Oswio. The bishop Aidan, who loved and revered him for his virtues, bitterly lamented his fate, and in twelve days followed him to the grave<sup>68</sup>. The Northumbrian, however, did not reap the fruit of his cruelty. Oidilwald, the son of Oswald, was placed on the throne of the Deiri, probably by the superior influence of Penda<sup>69</sup>.

651.

That restless monarch seemed determined to obtain the dignity of Bretwalda. He had lately expelled Coinwalch from the throne of Wessex, because that prince had repudiated his daughter Sexburga. He now directed his arms against Northumbria, penetrated again as far as Bamborough, and set fire to every habitation in the line of his march<sup>70</sup>. Oswio, warned by the fate of his immediate predecessors Edwin and Oswald, made every effort to mitigate the resentment of so formidable an enemy. He sent him the most valuable presents; his second son Egfrid was delivered as a hostage to the care of Cynwise the queen of Penda: and Alchfrid his eldest son married Cyneburge the daughter of the Mercian. This connexion between the two

Enmity of  
Penda.

652.

<sup>68</sup> Bed. iii. 14.

<sup>69</sup> Ibid. and c. 23, 24.

<sup>70</sup> Bed. iii. 17.



CHAP.  
II.

families brought Peada, the son of Penda, to the Northumbrian court on a visit to his sister. There he saw and admired Alchfleda, the daughter of Oswio: but the difference of religion would have opposed an insuperable obstacle to their union, had not Alchfrid prevailed on his friend to listen to the teachers, and embrace the doctrines of christianity. When his sincerity was questioned, he replied with warmth, that no consideration, not even the refusal of Alchfleda, should provoke him to return to the worship of Woden: and at his departure he took with him four priests to instruct his subjects, the southern Mercians, or Middle-Angles, whom he governed with the title of king during the life of his father. It was to be feared that the conversion of Peada would irritate the fanaticism of Penda: but the old king, though he persevered in his attachment to the religion of his ancestors, expressed his admiration of the morality of the gospel, and permitted it to be taught to his subjects. To the converts however he shrewdly observed, that as they had preferred the new worship, it was but just that they should practise its precepts: and that every individual would incur his displeasure, who should unite the manners of the paganism which he had abjured, with the profession of the christianity which he had embraced <sup>71</sup>.

653.

About the same time another royal proselyte was led to the waters of baptism. By gratitude Sigeberct, king of Essex, was attached to Oswio, and paid frequent visits to the court of Northumbria. Oswio laboured to convince his friend of the folly of idolatry. He frequently inculcated that images formed by the hand of the artist, could possess none of the properties of the Deity: and that the God, who deserved the worship of man, must be an almighty and eternal being, the creator, the ruler,

<sup>71</sup> Id. c. 21.

and the disposer of the universe<sup>72</sup>. Sigeberet listened attentively to his royal instructor, consulted the thanes who attended him, and was baptized by Finan, the successor of Aidan, at Waulbottle in Northumberland. The presbyter Cedd was consecrated bishop of the East Saxons, and fixed his residence in London.

But Penda had again summoned his Mercians to arms. The first victim of his resentment was Anna, king of the East-Angles, who for three years had afforded an asylum to Coinwalch, king of Wessex. He fell in battle, and was succeeded by his brother Edilhere, who artfully directed the hostility of the conqueror against the Northumbrians. It was in vain that Oswio endeavoured to avert the danger by the offer of submission and tribute. The Mercian declared that it was his object to exterminate the whole nation: the presents, which had been sent, were distributed among his auxiliaries; and thirty vassal chieftains, Saxons and Britons, swelled with their followers the numbers of his army. Despair at last nerved the courage of Oswio. With his son Alchfred, and a small but resolute force, he advanced to meet the multitude of the invaders. The night before the eventful contest, he fervently implored the assistance of heaven, and vowed, if he returned victorious, to devote his infant daughter Ælfleda to the monastic profession. In the morning Oidilwald, ashamed perhaps of fighting against his countrymen, separated from the Mercians, and remained at a distance a quiet spectator of the combat. The valour or despair of the Northumbrians prevailed. Of the thirty vassal chieftains who served under the banner of the Mercian, only Oidilwald, and Catgubail the British king of Gwynez, escaped. Penda did not survive the destruction of his army. This hoary

Defeat and  
death of  
Penda.  
654.

<sup>72</sup> Id. iii. 22.

CHAP.  
II.

---

veteran, who had reached his eightieth year, and had stained his sword with the blood of three kings of the East-Angles, and of two of the Northumbrians, had been carried from the field by the crowd of the fugitives, but was overtaken by the pursuers, and put to death. The battle was fought at Winwidfield near Leeds; and the Aire, which had overflowed its banks, swept away more of the Mercians in their flight, than had fallen by the sword of the enemy. The Anglo-Saxons were accustomed to preserve by proverbs the memory of remarkable events. Of this victory it was usually said: "In Winwid's stream was revenged  
" the death of Anna, the deaths of Sigebert and Egeric, and the  
" deaths of Edwin and Oswald <sup>73</sup>."

The fall of Penda and the annihilation of his army opened an unexpected prospect to the ambition of Oswio. With rapidity he over-ran East-Anglia and Mercia; subdued the astonished inhabitants; and made them feel the miseries, which they had so often inflicted. Mercia he divided into two portions. The provinces on the north of the Trent he annexed to his own dominions: those on the south, out of compassion for his daughter, he permitted to remain under the government of her husband Penda. But that unfortunate prince did not long enjoy the donation. At the next festival of Easter he perished, by the treachery, it is said, of his wife: and his territory was immediately occupied by the Northumbrians.

Dedication of  
Ælfleda.

The obligations of his vow now demanded the attention of Oswio. Ælfleda, a child not one year old, was entrusted to the care of the abbess Hilda: and her dower was fixed at one hundred and twenty hides of land in Bernicia, and an equal number in Deira. This munificent donation enabled the sisterhood to remove from Hartlepool to a more convenient situation at

<sup>73</sup> Bed. iii. 24. Nenn. c. 64. Alc. de Pont. apud Gale, p. 712.



Whitby, where the royal nun lived the space of fifty-nine years in the practice of the monastic duties, during one half of which she exercised the office of abbess. The king soon after endowed another monastery at Gilling. His conscience still reproached him with the blood of Oswin: and at the solicitation of his queen Eanfled, he established, on the very spot in which that prince had been slain, a community of monks who were charged with the obligation of offering up daily prayers for the soul of the murdered king, and for that of his kingly murderer<sup>74</sup>.

Oswio was now Bretwalda in the fullest sense of the word. The union of Mercia with Northumbria had placed under his control a greater extent of territory, than had belonged to any of his predecessors: the princes of the Britons and Saxons unanimously submitted to his authority; and the greater part of the Picts and Scots were careful to avert his enmity by the payment of annual tribute. Yet long before his death his power suffered a considerable diminution<sup>75</sup>. Three Mercian ealdormen, Immin, Eafha and Eadbert, took up arms to recover the independence of their country; expelled the Northumbrian magistrates; and conferred the sceptre on a prince, whom they had anxiously concealed from the researches of the Bretwalda, Wulphere, the younger son of Penda. In defiance of the Northumbrian he retained his authority, and united under his government the Mercians, the Middle-Angles, and the Lindiswaras, or natives of the county of Lincoln. To add to the mortification of Oswio, his eldest son Alchfrid required a portion of the Northumbrian territory with the title of king. A hint in Bede would lead us to suppose that he even drew the sword against his father. As Oidilwald had perished, the ambition of Alchfrid

Power of  
Oswio.

<sup>74</sup> Bed. iii. 24.

<sup>75</sup> Bed. ii. 5. iii. 24. Hence pope Vitalian

calls Britain Oswio's island. Suam insulam.  
Id. iii. 29.

CHAP.  
II.Religious  
disputes.

was gratified, and a kingdom was assigned him in the country of the Deiri <sup>76</sup>.

From politics Oswio directed the attention of his declining years to the concerns of religion. Christianity had now been preached in all the Saxon kingdoms except Sussex: but as the missionaries had come from different countries, though they taught the same doctrine, they disagreed in several points of ecclesiastical discipline. Of these the most important regarded the canonical time for the celebration of Easter, a subject, which had for several centuries disturbed the peace of the church. That it depended on the commencement of the equinoctial lunation, was universally admitted: but according to the Roman astronomers that lunation might begin as early as the fifth, according to the Alexandrian it could not begin before the eighth, day of March. The consequence of this diversity of opinion was, that when the new moon fell on the fifth, sixth, or seventh of that month, the Latin celebrated the feast of Easter a full lunation before the Greek, christians <sup>77</sup>. In the middle of the sixth century the Roman church, weary of the disputes occasioned by these different computations, had adopted a new cycle, which agreed in every important point with the Alexandrian calculation. But this improvement was unknown to the British christians, who at that period were wholly employed in opposing the invaders of their country; and they continued to observe the ancient cycle of Sulpicius Severus, which was now become peculiar to themselves. Hence it frequently happened that Easter, and in consequence the other festivals of the year depending on that solemnity, were celebrated at different

<sup>76</sup> Bed. iii. 14. iii. 21.

<sup>77</sup> There were a few other variations in the paschal canons, which contributed still more

to perplex the subject. They may be seen in Smith's Bede, App. ix. p. 698. and Dr. O'Connor, Proleg. ii. 119.

times by the Saxon christians, accordingly as they had been instructed by Scottish, or by Roman and Gallic, missionaries.

CHAP.  
II.

---

Another, but subordinate subject of dispute was the form of the ecclesiastical tonsure. A custom had long prevailed that the clergy should be distinguished by the manner in which they wore their hair: and the missionaries, not acquainted with the different modes prevailing in different countries, were at their first meeting mutually surprised and shocked at what they deemed the uncanonical appearance of each other. The Romans shaved the crown of the head, and considered the surrounding circle of hair as a figure of the wreath of thorns, which had been fixed on the temples of Christ by the cruelty of his persecutors. The Scots permitted the hair to grow on the back, but shaved in the form of a crescent the front of the head. The former pleaded in defence of their tonsure that it had descended to them from St. Peter, and accused their adversaries of wearing the distinctive mark of Simon Magus and his disciples. The latter could not disprove the assertions of their adversaries, but contended that their method of shaving the head, however impious in its origin, had been sanctified by the virtues of those who had practised it. Each party obstinately adhered to its own custom, and severely condemned that of the other.

If such questions could divide the missionaries, it cannot be surprising that they should perplex their disciples. The restoration of concord was reserved for the zeal and authority of Oswio. He, with the majority of his subjects, had derived the knowledge of christianity from the Scots: his queen Eanfled, and his son Alchfrid had been educated by the disciples of the Romans. Thus Oswio saw his own family divided into factions: and the same solemnities celebrated at different times in his own palace. Desirous to procure uniformity, he summoned the champions of

Uniformity  
established.  
664.



CHAP.  
II.

the two parties to meet at Whitby, and to discuss the merits of their respective customs. Wilfrid, afterwards bishop of York, rested the cause of the Romans on the authority of St. Peter, and the practice of the universal church, which ought not to yield to the pretensions of a few obscure congregations of christians on the western shores of Britain. Colman boasted of the sanctity of St. Columba, the apostle of the north, and contended that nothing should be changed, which he and his successors had sanctioned with their approbation. Oswio terminated the debate by declaring that he should prefer the institutions of St. Peter to those of St. Columba. The decision was applauded by the majority of the meeting: and of the Scottish monks, several conformed to the practice of their opponents, the others retired in silent discontent to the parent monastery in the isle of Hii<sup>78</sup>.

Yellow  
plague.

In the same year, the twenty-second of Oswio, the beginning of the month of May was rendered remarkable by a total eclipse of the sun. The ignorance of the observers did not fail to predict the most alarming disasters: and the event seemed to justify their predictions. The summer was extremely dry: the heavens, to use the expression of an ancient chronicler, appeared to be on fire; and a pestilence of the most fatal description (it was called the yellow plague) depopulated the island<sup>79</sup>. It made its first appearance on the southern coasts, and gradually advancing towards the north, had ravaged before winter both Deira and Bernicia. It reached Ireland in the beginning of August. The symptoms of this destructive disease have not been described by historians: but it baffled all the medical science of the natives: and many of the East-Saxons, unable to

<sup>78</sup> Bed. iii. 25, 26.

<sup>79</sup> Compare Bede (iii. xxvii.) with the Ulster Annals (Usher, Ant. Brit. p. 948.).

account for it on natural grounds, attributed it to the anger of the gods, and reverted to their former idolatry. From the instances recorded in Bede, it appears that many died in the course of a single day, and that of those who caught the infection, hardly more than one in thirty recovered. During twenty years it visited and revisited the different provinces of Britain and Ireland. Bede does not attempt to calculate the amount of its ravages: but is content with the vague terms of depopulated districts, and multitudes of dead. In Ireland an ancient writer computes its victims at two-thirds of the inhabitants<sup>80</sup>. The highlands of Caledonia were alone free from this dreadful visitation. The natives piously ascribed the exemption to the intercession of their patron saint Columba, and persuaded themselves that even in the infected countries they were inaccessible to its attacks. Adamnan, the abbot of Icolmkill, relates, with obvious emotions of national pride, that twice during this period he visited the king of Northumbria, and, though he lived in the midst of the contagion, though numbers were daily dying around him, neither he, nor any of his attendants, ever took the infection<sup>81</sup>.

The pestilence had no sooner appeared than it was fatal to several of the most distinguished characters in the island. Catguallet, king of Gwynes, Ercombert of Kent, Ethelwald of Sussex, Deusdedit archbishop of Canterbury, the bishops of London and Lindisfarne, Boisil, the celebrated abbot of Mailros, and Ethelburga, the royal abbess of Berking, were among the first of its victims. The death of the metropolitan afforded Oswio an opportunity of promoting his favourite system of religious uniformity. He consulted with Egbert, the new king

Theodore  
archbishop of  
Canterbury.

<sup>80</sup> Vit. Geral. Sax. apud Ant. Brit p. 1164. <sup>81</sup> Adamn. Vit. St. Columb. ii. c. xlvii. p. 153

CHAP.  
II.

---

of Kent; and by their concurrence, the presbyter Wighard, who had been chosen to succeed to the archiepiscopal dignity, was sent to Rome to ask the advice of the Apostolic see. But in that city the new prelate fell a victim to the pestilence which he had escaped in his own country: and his death was announced in a letter to Oswio from pope Vitalian. The pontiff, however, assured the king that he would gratify his wishes by selecting for the church of Canterbury a person equal to so exalted a station: and after some delay Theodore, a monk of Tarsus, whose virtue and erudition had been honoured with general applause, landed in Kent, with the title of archbishop of Britain. His authority was immediately acknowledged by all the Saxon prelates: new bishoprics were established; synods were held; and uniformity of discipline was every where observed.

Death of  
Oswio;

Oswio died in 670. With him expired both the title and the authority of Bretwalda. The power of Northumbria had for some years been on the decline; while the neighbouring state of Mercia, created by the genius of Penda, had gradually matured its strength, and the southern kingdom of Wessex had with a slow but steady progress constantly advanced in the subjugation of the Britons. These three rival nations will, in the following chapter, solicit the attention of the reader: the more feeble kingdoms of Essex, Kent, East-Anglia and Sussex, sometimes the allies, but generally the vassals of their more powerful neighbours, cannot awaken sufficient interest to deserve a more detailed and separate narration.



CHAP. III.

ANGLO-SAXONS.

KINGS OF NORTHUMBRIA—OF MERCIA—ETHELBALD—OFFA—  
CENULF—OF WESSEX—CÆADWALLA—INA—CYNEWULF—EGBERT  
—ETHELWULF—ETHELBALD—ETHELBERT—ETHELRED.

NORTHUMBRIA.

FROM Oswio the Northumbrian sceptre was transferred to the hands of Egfrid, the elder of his surviving sons<sup>1</sup>. The Picts, despising the youth of the new monarch, assembled under their prince Bernherth, and asserted their independence. But Egfrid, with a vigour which surprised and dismayed them, put himself at the head of a body of horse, entered their territory, defeated them in a bloody battle, and compelled them to submit again to the superior power of the Northumbrians. With equal expe-

CHAP.  
III.

---

---

Northumbrian  
kings.

<sup>1</sup> Malmsbury (20, 21.) and several later writers say that Alchfrid the elder son was still alive. but rejected on account of illegitimacy: and that he ascended the throne after the death of Egfrid. From a diligent examination of Bede it appears to me that they have confounded Alchfrid, and Aldfrid, and made the two but one person. Aldfrid was illegi-

itimate, and *thought* to be the son of Oswio. He lived in spontaneous exile among the Scots through his desire of knowledge, and was called to the throne after the decease of the legitimate offspring of Oswio. See Bede, p. 129. 132. 178. 206, 207. 234. 247. 293. Also the poem De Abbat. Lindis. in act. SS. Bened. p. 305.

CHAP.  
III.

---

dition he anticipated and defeated the designs of Wulphere king of Mercia, who numbered among his vassals most of the southern chieftains. The victory broke for a while the power of the Mercians. Wulphere died soon after: and his kingdom was at first seized by the Northumbrian, but restored to Ethelred, who had married Osthryda, the sister of Egfrid<sup>2</sup>.

Religious prejudice has conferred an adventitious interest on the reign of Egfrid; and his quarrel with Wilfrid, the celebrated bishop of York, occupies a distinguished but disproportionate space in our modern histories. Wilfrid was a noble Northumbrian, who had travelled for improvement; and after his return from Italy, had been selected as the instructor and confidant of Alchfrid, the son of Oswio. When Tuda died, Wilfrid was chosen to succeed him in the bishopric of York, and was sent by the two princes into Gaul to be consecrated by his friend Agilberct, bishop of Paris. Whether it was that during his absence, the quarrel arose between Oswio and his son, or that the party of the Scottish missionaries had acquired the ascendancy, as is intimated by Eddius, Wilfrid, at his return, found Ceadda in possession of the episcopal dignity, and retired peacefully to his monastery at Rippon. But Theodore of Canterbury restored Wilfrid, and translated Ceadda to Lichfield. Oswio acquiesced in the decision of the metropolitan, and the bishop enjoyed for several years his friendship, and that of his successor Egfrid<sup>3</sup>.

Egfrid's first wife was Edilthryda, the daughter of Anna king of the East-Angles, and widow of Tondberct, ealdorman of the Girvii. At an early period in life she had bound herself by a vow of virginity, which was respected by the piety or indiffer-

<sup>2</sup> Edd. Vit. Wilf. xix. xx. 61, 62. Bed. iv. 12. <sup>3</sup> Edd. i—xv. Bed. iii. 28. iv. 3. v. 19.

ence of her husband. At his death she was demanded by Oswio for his son Egfrid, a youth of only fourteen years : and in spite of her remonstrances was conducted by her relations to the court of Northumbria. She persisted in her former resolution ; and Egfrid, when he ascended the throne, referred the matter to the decision of Wilfrid, having previously offered him a valuable present if he could prevail on Edilthryda to renounce her early vow. The prelate however approved of it : the princess took the veil at Coldingham : and the friendship between Wilfrid and Egfrid was considerably impaired. The king now married Ermenburga, a princess, the violence of whose character excited the discontent of the people, and the remonstrances of the bishop. The freedom of his admonitions mortified her pride, and she found in her husband the willing minister of her vengeance <sup>4</sup>.

In the exercise of his authority archbishop Theodore was always severe, occasionally despotic. He had already deposed three of the Saxon prelates ; and Wilfrid was destined to experience the same fate. At the solicitation of Egfrid and Ermenburga, he came to Northumbria, divided the ample diocese of York into three portions ; and consecrated three new prelates, one for Bernicia, a second for Deira, and a third for the Lindiswaras. But Wilfrid did not submit in silence. He complained that he had been deprived without notice or accusation ; and, with the advice of his episcopal colleagues, appealed to the equity of the sovereign pontiff. The appeal was admitted. The injured prelate prosecuted it in person : Cænwald, a monk, appeared as the advocate of Theodore. After a patient hearing Pope Agatho decided, that Wilfrid should be restored to his former bishopric ;

678

<sup>4</sup> Bed. iv. 19. Edd. xxiv.



CHAP.  
III.

but that he should select three proper persons out of his own clergy, should ordain them bishops, and divide among them the more distant parts of his diocese<sup>5</sup>.

680.

Egfrid and Ermenburga had made several fruitless attempts to intercept the prelate on his journey : at his return they threw him into prison, and during nine months endeavoured by the alternate employment of lenity and rigour, of promises and threats, to extort a confession that the papal rescript had been procured by bribery, or falsified by his contrivance. Wearied at last with his constancy, and harassed by the importunities of the abbess Ebba, they consented to his enlargement, but on the condition that he should bind himself by an oath never more to set his foot within the dominions of Egfrid. Wilfrid retired into Mercia. From Mercia he was driven by the intrigues of his persecutors into Wessex : and from Wessex was compelled to seek an asylum among the pagans of Sussex. Edilwalch their king took him under his protection : and the exile repaid the benefit by diffusing among his subjects the doctrines of the gospel. The South-Saxons were the last people of the octarchy who embraced christianity<sup>6</sup>.

Egfrid's wars  
and death.  
679.

Though the royal families of Northumbria and Mercia were allied by marriage, their union had been broken by the ambition of Egfrid. The hostile armies met on the Trent : their valour was wasted in a dubious conflict ; and peace was restored by the paternal exhortations of Theodore. Ælfwin, the brother of Egfrid, had fallen in the battle : and as the honour of the king compelled him to demand compensation, he was persuaded to accept the legal *were* instead of prolonging hostilities for the uncertain purpose of vengeance<sup>7</sup>. Afterwards, in the year preceding

681.

<sup>5</sup> Edd. xxiv—xxx. Bed. iv. 12. v. 19.

<sup>6</sup> Edd. xxxiii—xl. Bed. iv. 13. v. 19.

<sup>7</sup> Edd. xxiii. Bed. iv. 21.

his death, he dispatched Beorht, a warlike and sanguinary chieftain, to ravage the coast of Ireland. Of his motives for this expedition we are not informed. Bede assures us that the Irish were a harmless and friendly people. To them many of the Angles had been accustomed to resort in search of knowledge, and on all occasions had been received kindly, and supported gratuitously. Beorht requited their hospitality by ravaging their country, and burning their churches, monasteries, and towns. The natives, unable to repel the invader by force, implored on the author of their wrongs the vengeance of heaven: and their imprecations were believed to be fulfilled in the following year by the unfortunate death of Egfrid. Against the advice of his council the king led an army into the territory of the Picts. Brude, the Pictish king, prudently retired before a superior enemy, till his pursuers had entangled themselves in the defiles of the mountains. At Drumnechtan was fought a battle, which proved most fatal to the Northumbrians: few escaped from the slaughter: Egfrid himself was found on the field by the conquerors, and honourably interred in the royal cemetery in the isle of Hii. The Picts, and Scots, and some tribes of the Britons, took advantage of this opportunity to recover their independence: Trumwin, whom Egfrid had appointed bishop at Abercorn, fled with his clergy into the south; and of the Saxon settlers all, who had not the good fortune to make a precipitate escape, were put to the sword, or consigned to perpetual slavery<sup>8</sup>.

685

Egfrid had left no issue by Ermenburga; and the Northumbrian thanes offered the crown to Aldfrid, the reputed but illegitimate son of Oswio. During the last reign he had retired

Aldfrid

<sup>8</sup> Bed. iii. 27. iv. 26. Edd. xliii. Chron. Sax. 45. Sim. Dun. Hist. ecc. Dun. p. 43.

CHAP.  
III.

to the western isles, and had devoted the time of his exile to study under the instruction of the Scottish monks. His proficiency obtained for him from his contemporaries the title of the learned king. Though a pacific disposition, and the diminished power of the kingdom, did not permit him to assume the superiority, which had been possessed by several of his predecessors, he reigned respected by his neighbours, beloved by his subjects, and praised by the learned whom he patronised. If he conducted in person any military expedition, it has escaped the notice of historians : but the celebrated Beorht, by his order or with his permission, attempted to obliterate the disgrace, which the late defeat had brought on the Northumbrian arms ; and, like the unfortunate Egfrid, lost in the attempt both his life and his army<sup>9</sup>.

687.

In the second year of his reign, Aldfrid, at the recommendation of archbishop Theodore, had restored Wilfrid to his bishopric and possessions. The reconciliation was not lasting. The prelates who had been expelled by the restoration of Wilfrid, acquired the confidence of the king ; Brihtwald, the successor of Theodore, was induced to favour their cause ; and the persecuted bishop was compelled to appeal a second time to the justice of Rome. He returned with a papal testimonial of his innocence : but Aldfrid refused to see him, and he sheltered himself under the protection of Coenred of Mercia. Aldfrid

705.

died in 705 : and in his last moments regretted his treatment of Wilfrid, and bequeathed to his successor the charge of doing justice to the injured prelate. A compromise, satisfactory to all parties, was effected in the course of the same year<sup>10</sup>.

Succession of  
Northumbrian  
kings.

Hitherto the actions and abilities of the Northumbrian princes have demanded a more ample space : a few pages may suffice

<sup>9</sup> Bed. v. 24.<sup>10</sup> Bed. v. 19. Edd. xlii—lviii.



for the history of their successors, which will present nothing to the reader but one continued scene of perfidy, treason and murder. At the death of Aldfrid, his son Osred was eight years old. The ealdorman Eadulf usurped the sceptre, and besieged the royal infant in Bamborough: but the people espoused the cause of Osred, and the usurper, after a tumultuous reign of two months, paid the forfeit of his treason. Beretfrid assumed the guardianship of the king, and chastised the incursions of the Picts in a bloody battle fought near the wall. But Osred soon emancipated himself from the restraint of his tutor: and the ungovernable youth was slain in his nineteenth year on the banks of Winandermere, in an attempt to suppress a dangerous insurrection headed by his kinsmen, the two brothers Cænred and Osric. Cænred possessed the throne two years, Osric eleven, at whose death it descended to Ceolwulf the brother of his predecessor. The learning and piety of Ceolwulf are attested by venerable Bede: but he possessed neither the vigour nor the authority requisite for his station. In the second year of his reign, he was seized, shorn, and shut up in a monastery. From this confinement he escaped, reascended the throne, and learned amid the splendid cares of royalty to regret the tranquillity which he had reluctantly possessed in the cloister. After a reign of eight years, he voluntarily resigned the sceptre, and embraced the monastic profession at Lindisfarne<sup>11</sup>. He was succeeded by his cousin Eadbert, who during a reign of one-and-twenty years enlarged the territory, and revived for a while the ancient glory of the Northumbrians. The Picts and Mercians felt the superiority of his arms: and with the assistance of Ouengus, the Pictish king, he took Dunbarton from the Britons,

711.

716.

729.

731.

737.

<sup>11</sup> Mailros, 136. Sim. Dun. 100.

CHAP.  
III.

and added Cyil to his dominions. In his old age he imitated his predecessor, and received the tonsure among the clergy of the church of York, of which his brother Egbert was the archbishop. His retreat by some writers is attributed to compulsion; others assign it to the impression made on his mind, by comparing the violent deaths of two contemporary princes with the peaceful exit of Ceolwulf<sup>12</sup>. Oswulf, the son of Eadbert, was slain by a conspiracy of his thanes soon after his accession: and the sceptre by the suffrage of the people was placed in the hands of Edilwold, a noble Northumbrian. But the descendants of Ida, who claimed it as the right of their family, considered him an usurper. The death of Oswin, his principal opponent, who fell in a battle which lasted three days in the vicinity of Melrose, seemed to confirm him on the throne: but after a troublesome reign of six years he resigned, in an assembly of the witan at Finchley, in favour of Alchred, a prince of the line of Ida<sup>13</sup>. The inconstancy of the Northumbrian thanes was fatal to the ambition of their monarchs. Alchred, abandoned by those who had placed him on the throne, fled for protection to Kennet king of the Picts, and was succeeded by Ethelred, the son of Edilwold, of whom we know only, that in the fifth year of his reign, his army was twice defeated by two rebel ealdormen Ethelwald and Heardbert, and that the loss of his three principal captains induced him to fly, and leave the sceptre to Alfwold the son of Oswulf<sup>14</sup>. Alfwold's reign was as tumultuous as those of his predecessors. Beorn his principal minister was burnt to death in Silton by a party of thanes, whose enmity he had incurred by the equity of his

<sup>12</sup> Auct. Bed. p. 224. Sim. Dun. p. 105.  
Hunt. 196.

<sup>13</sup> Sim. Dun. p. 106. Auct. Bed. 224.

<sup>14</sup> Chron. Sax. 62. Sim. Dun. 107, 108.  
Mailros, 138.

administration; and the king himself, whose virtue was not a match for the ferocity of his subjects, was slain by the ealdorman Sigan. The murderer, five years after, perished by his own sword<sup>1</sup>. Osred, the son of Alchred, attempted to seize the crown: but the thanes recalled the exiled Ethelred, and the late claimant, to save his life, enrolled himself among the clergy of York, and afterwards for greater security fled to the isle of Man. Ethelred returned with the thirst of revenge. He ordered Eardulf, one of his most powerful opponents, to be slain at the door of the church of Rippon. The monks carried the body into the choir. During the funeral service it was observed to breathe, proper remedies were applied to the wounds and the future king of Northumbria was carefully concealed in the monastery. The fate of Elf and Elwin, the two sons of Alfwold, was more deplorable. They had fled to the sanctuary at York: were drawn by deceitful promises from their asylum, and paid with their lives the price of their credulity. Osred now returned from the isle of Man, and braved his rival to battle, but he was deserted by his followers, and added another to the victims of Ethelred's ambition. That prince, however, was hastening to the close of his bloody career. In his third year the total failure of the harvest had reduced the inhabitants to the extremity of distress: to famine were soon added the ravages of pestilence: and to complete their misfortunes an army of Danes landing on the coast, pillaged the country, and destroyed the venerable church of Lindisfarne, the former residence of the apostle of the Northumbrians. Both the calamities of nature, and the cruelties of this unknown enemy, were attributed to the imprudence or the bad fortune of Ethelred:

<sup>1</sup> Chron. Sax. 62. 64. Mailros, 139.



CHAP.  
III.

---

794.

798.

801.

806.

and he fell in a fruitless attempt to crush the rising discontent of his subjects<sup>16</sup>. The sceptre stained with the blood of so many princes was next grasped by Osbald: but it dropped from his hands at the end of twenty-seven days, and Eardulf, whose life had been saved by the monks of Rippon, ascended the throne. Osbald prudently retired to the cloister, where he enjoyed a tranquillity unknown to his more successful competitor. Eardulf was compelled to fight against the murderers of Ethelred, and defeated them in a sanguinary conflict at Billingham near Whalley. They found a powerful protector in Cenulf, king of Mercia. The two kings advanced against each other at the head of their respective armies: but a reconciliation was effected by the interposition of the prelates, and they swore eternal friendship to each other. Yet Eardulf was afterwards surprised by his enemies, and put into close custody. These numerous, and bloody revolutions had excited the notice of foreign nations. Charlemagne pronounced the Northumbrians more perfidious than the very pagans<sup>17</sup>: and by a special messenger sought and obtained the liberation of the captive from the hands of his sanguinary subjects. It seems that the opponents of Eardulf consented to commit the decision of their quarrel to the equity of the pontiff Leo III. The king himself, after paying a visit to the emperor at Noyon, repaired to Rome, where a messenger from Eanbald, archbishop of York, had already arrived. That prelate, the ealdorman Wado, and Cenulf of Mercia were believed by Leo to be the secret authors of the rebellion. In the beginning of 809 Eardulf left Rome, accompanied by Aldulf the papal legate, and by the messenger of Eanbald, to whom Charle-

<sup>16</sup> Chron. Sax. 64, 65. Mailros, 139. Sim. Dun. 110—113.

<sup>17</sup> Gentem perfidam et perversam, pejorem paganis. Malms. 26.

magne, in order to manifest the interest which he took in the affair, added Rotfrid, abbot of St. Amands, and Nanther, abbot of St. Omers. With this honourable escort he arrived in Northumbria; all opposition vanished before the papal and imperial envoys; and the deposed king was unanimously restored to his throne<sup>18</sup>. How long he continued to reign is uncertain.

It is unnecessary to pursue farther the history of these princes. During the last century Northumbria had exhibited successive instances of treachery and murder, to which no other country perhaps can furnish a parallel. Within the lapse of one hundred years fourteen kings had assumed the sceptre: and yet of all these one only, if one, died in the peaceable possession of royalty. Seven had been slain, six had been driven from the throne by their rebellious subjects. After Eardulf, the same anarchy and perfidy prevailed, till the Danes totally extinguished the Northumbrian dynasty, by the slaughter of Ella and Osbriht in the year 867.

From these worthless princes, the votaries and victims of their ambition, the mind will turn with pleasure to two very different characters, who, in a more humble station, became the benefactors of their age and their country. These were Bede and Alcuin, Northumbrian scholars, whose literary superiority was acknowledged by their contemporaries, and to whose writings and exertions Europe was principally indebted for that portion of learning, which she possessed from the eighth to the eleventh century. Bede was born at Sunderland, and was intrusted in his childhood to the care of the monks of Jarrow, a convent on the right bank of the Tyne. In that seminary he spent sixty-

Notice of  
Bede.

<sup>18</sup> Le Cointe, Ann. eccl. Franc. p. 102. Rer. Gallic. tom. v. p. 72. 255. 333. 355. Annal. Bened. tom. ii. p. 383. Bouquet, 602.

CHAP.  
III.

---

two years, devoting, according to his assertion, the whole of his time either to his own improvement or to the improvement of others. He appears to have possessed whatever knowledge had survived the ruin of the Roman empire; and if the reader look into his writings, he will be astonished at the depth and the variety of his attainments. Of his works the most valuable is the "Ecclesiastical History of the Nation of the Angles," which while it treats professedly of the establishment of christianity in the different Saxon kingdoms, incidentally contains almost all that we know, of the history of the more early princes. This learned monk died at Jarrow in 733. His works were quickly transcribed, and dispersed among the nations of Europe: and the applause with which they were received, induced the Anglo-Saxons to consider him as the ornament and pride of their nation<sup>19</sup>.

Of Alcuin.

Alcuin was a native of York, or its neighbourhood. By archbishop Egbert he was appointed master of the great school in the archiepiscopal city. His reputation attracted crowds of students from Gaul and Germany to his lectures, and recommended him to the notice of the emperor Charlemagne. He accepted the invitation of that prince to reside in his court; diffused a taste for learning through all the provinces of the empire; and numbered the most distinguished prelates and ministers among his scholars. When, in his old age, he retired from the distractions of the palace, many followed him to his retreat at Tours, where he continued his favourite occupation of teaching till his death in the commencement of the ninth century. His works are numerous. They consist principally of poems, elementary introductions to the different sciences, treatises

<sup>19</sup> Et rectum quidem mihi videtur, says the abbot Cuthbert, ut tota gens Anglorum in omnibus provinciis, ubicumque reperti sunt,

gratias Deo referant, quia tam mirabilem virum illis in sua natione donavit. Ep. St. Bonif. p. 124.



tises on a variety of theological subjects, and an interesting correspondence with the most celebrated characters of the age<sup>20</sup>.

CHAP.  
III.

MERCIA.

In the preceding pages the reader will have noticed the accession of Wulphere to the throne of Mercia, and his frequent and not inglorious struggles against the power of the Northumbrians. With equal spirit, and eventually with greater success, he opposed his southern rivals, the kings of Wessex. In the first conflict the chance of war made Wulphere the prisoner of Coinwalch, but with the recovery of his liberty he obliterated the disgrace of his defeat. At the battle of Pontisbury the forces of Wessex were dispersed; the victors ravaged the country of their enemies; and the Wihtwaras, the inhabitants of the isle of Wight, submitted to the dominion of Wulphere<sup>21</sup>. That prince was now the most powerful of the kings on the south of the Humber: and he employed his authority in promoting the diffusion of christianity among his dependants. Idolatry disappeared in Mercia: the natives of Essex, who, during the pestilence, had returned to the worship of Woden, were reclaimed by the preaching of the bishop Jarumnan: and

Mercian kings

Wulphere

661

<sup>20</sup> The Anglo-Saxon converts were indebted for the little learning they acquired to their missionaries: and hence for some time those in the north repaired for instruction principally to Ireland, those in the south to the Roman teachers at Canterbury. This produced a kind of literary rivalry between the two islands, of which an amusing account is given by Aldhelm, who had studied first under Irish, and then under Roman masters. In his letter to Eadfrid, who had just returned from Ireland, he gives due praise to the learning of the Irish scholars; but then he observes that

England too has its share, that Theodore and Adrian shine like the sun and moon at Canterbury, and that the former is surrounded with scholars even from Ireland. *Theodorus summi sacerdotii gubernacula regens. Hibernensium globo discipulorum stipatur. Usser, syllog. ep. p. 38. See also O'Connor, prol. lxix.*

<sup>21</sup> This appears to me the most plausible manner of reconciling Ethelwerd (p. 476) with the Saxon Chronicle (p. 39) and Bede (iv. 13).

CHAP.  
III.

Edilwalch, king of Sussex, at the persuasion of Wulphere, professed himself a christian. On the day of his baptism, he received from the munificence of his royal god-father the sovereignty of the isle of Wight, and of the territory of the Meanwaras, a district comprehending almost the eastern moiety of Hampshire. Wilfrid, who had been driven into exile by the resentment of Ermenburga, improved the opportunity to establish the belief of the gospel in the kingdom of Sussex, and Edilwalch rewarded his zeal with the donation of the isle of Selsey, containing eighty-seven hides of land, and two hundred and fifty slaves. They were baptized, and immediately received their freedom from the piety of the bishop <sup>22</sup>.

The power of Wulphere declined as rapidly as it had risen. Towards the end of his reign, he was defeated by the Northumbrians, and lost the province of the Lindiswaras. The men of Wessex, who had borne his superiority with impatience, were encouraged by the victory of the Northumbrians, to try again the fortune of war. Though the battle was not decisive, it contributed to break the power of Wulphere, at whose death Egfrid, the Northumbrian monarch, over-ran and subjected the kingdom <sup>23</sup>.

675.  
Ethelred.

Ethelred was the brother of Wulphere, and had married Osthryda, the sister of Egfrid. To this alliance he was perhaps indebted for the crown of Mercia. He led an army against Lothaire, king of Kent, burnt the villages and churches, carried off the inhabitants, and destroyed the city of Rochester. He next demanded the province of the Lindiswaras from Egfrid: a war ensued: Ælfwin, the brother of the Northumbrian, was slain: and Ethelred, though he paid the *were* for the

676.

679.

<sup>22</sup> Bede iii. 30. iv. 13. Edd. Vit. Wilf. xl.<sup>23</sup> Chron. Sax. p. 41. Edd. xx.

death of Æliwin, recovered the possession of the disputed territory. For many years he reigned with honour: but the murder of his queen Osthryda by the Suthenhymbre, the people between the Trent and the Humber, forcibly affected his mind. He gave the government of the discontented district to his nephew Cœnred, the son of Wulphere: and at last abdicated the throne in his favour. He had children of his own: but they were of an immature age, and the nation preferred a successor of approved judgment and in the vigour of manhood. Ethelred then took the monastic vows in the monastery of Bardeney, was raised to the office of abbot, and died at an advanced age in 716<sup>24</sup>.

CHAP  
III.

697.

704.

Cœnred was a prince whose piety and love of peace are loudly applauded by our ancient chroniclers: but whose short reign of five years affords only a barren theme to the historian. As soon as Ceolred, the son of the preceding monarch, was of an age to wield the sceptre, Cœnred resigned, and travelling to Rome, received the monastic habit from the hands of the pontiff. Offa, the son of Sighere, king of Essex, was the companion of his pilgrimage, and the imitator of his virtues<sup>25</sup>.

Cœnred.

709.

The reign of Ceolred was almost as tranquil as that of his predecessor. Once only had he recourse to the fortune of arms, against Ina, king of Wessex. The battle was fought at Wodensbury: and the victory was claimed by each nation. But Ceolred degenerated from the piety of his fathers, and by the licentiousness of his morals alienated the minds of the Mercians. In the eighth year of his reign, as he sat at table with his thanes, he suddenly lost his reason, and shortly after expired in the most excruciating torments<sup>26</sup>.

Ceolred.

715.

716.

<sup>24</sup> Bed. iv. 12. 21. v. 19. Chron. Sax. 44. 49. Flor. ad an. 716. Chron. Pet. de Burg. p. 6.

<sup>25</sup> Bed. v. 19.

<sup>26</sup> Chron. Sax. p. 50, 51. Ep. St. Bonif. apud. Spelm. p. 225.



CHAP.  
III.

---

---

Ethelbald.

Contemporary with Ceolred was Ethelbald, a descendant of Alwin, the brother of Penda. He was in the vigour of youth, graceful in his person, ambitious of power, and immoderate in his pleasures. To avoid the jealousy of Ceolred, by whom he was considered as a rival, Ethelbald had concealed himself among the marshes of Croyland, where he was hospitably entertained by Guthlake, the celebrated hermit. As soon as he had learned the death of his persecutor, he issued from his retreat, assumed the sceptre without opposition; and afterwards, to testify his gratitude for his former benefactor, raised a magnificent church and monastery over the tomb of Guthlake<sup>27</sup>. The character of Ethelbald was a compound of vice and virtue. He was liberal to the poor and to his dependants; he watched with solicitude over the administration of justice; and he severely repressed the hereditary feuds, which divided the Mercian thanes, and impaired the strength of the nation. Yet in his own favour he never scrupled to invade the rights of his subjects; and that no restraint might be imposed upon his pleasures, he refused to shackle himself with the obligations of marriage. The noblest families were disgraced, the sanctity of the cloister was profaned by his amours. The report of his immorality reached the ears of the missionary, St. Boniface, who from the heart of Germany wrote him a letter of most earnest expostulation<sup>28</sup>. What influence it had on his conduct, is not mentioned: but he soon after attended a synod, held by archbishop Cuthbert for the reformation of manners; and long before his death, forsook the follies and vices of his youth.

Of the kings, who had hitherto swayed the Mercian sceptre,

<sup>27</sup> Ingul. p. 2. To construct the building, Ethelbald gave 300 pounds of silver the first year, and 100 pounds a year for the ten fol-

lowing years, p. 3.

<sup>28</sup> Ep. St. Bonif. apud Spelm. p. 225.

Ethelbald was the most powerful. From the Humber to the southern channel, he compelled every tribe to obey his authority: but he seems to have respected the power or the abilities of the Northumbrian monarchs: and if he ventured twice to invade their territories, it was at times when they were engaged in the north against the Picts, and when the spoils which he obtained were dearly purchased by the infamy of the aggression<sup>29</sup>. In the south the kings of Wessex struggled with impatience against his ascendancy, but every effort appeared only to rivet their chains. They were compelled to serve him as vassals, and to fight the battles of their lord. At length, in 752, Cuthred undertook to emancipate himself and his country, and boldly opposed the Mercians in the field of Burford in Oxfordshire. In the open space between the two armies, Edilhun, who bore the golden dragon, the banner of Wessex, slew with his own hand the standard-bearer of Ethelbald: and his countrymen hailed as the omen of victory, the valour of their champion. An ancient poet has described in striking language the shock of the two armies; the shouts and efforts of the combatants, their murderous weapons, the spear, the long sword, and the battle-axe, and their prodigality of life in the defence of their respective standards. Chance at length conducted Ethelbald to the advance of Edilhun: but the king of Mercia shrunk before the gigantic stature, and bloody brand of his adversary, and submitted to give to his followers the example of a precipitate flight. This defeat abolished for a time the superiority of Mercia<sup>30</sup>.

737.

740

752

Ethelbald did not long survive his disgrace. Beornred, a noble Mercian, aspired to the throne, and a battle was fought

757

<sup>29</sup> Bed. v. 23. In his charters he calls himself Rex Britannæ, and Rex non solum Merciorum sed et omnium provinciarum, quæ

generali nomine Sutangli dicuntur. Smith's Bed. app. p. 786. Hunt. 195. Chron. Sax. 54.  
<sup>30</sup> Hunt. 195. West. ad ann. 755.

CHAP.  
III.

on the hill of Seggeswold in Warwickshire. The king either fell in the engagement, or was killed by his own guards in the following night. His body was buried in the monastery of Repandune<sup>31</sup>.

Offa.

The death of Ethelbald transferred the momentary possession of the crown to Beornred : but the thanes espoused the interests of Offa, a prince of royal descent ; and the usurper, at the end of a few months, was defeated in battle, and driven out of Mercia. Of the reign of the new monarch the fourteen first years were employed in the subjugation of his domestic enemies,

His victories.

771.

unable to effect without the effusion of much blood<sup>32</sup>. In 771

he first appeared in the character of a conqueror, and subdued the Hestingi, a people inhabiting the coast of Sussex<sup>33</sup>. Three

774.

years afterwards, he invaded Kent, routed the natives at Otford, and stained the waters of the Darent with the blood of the fugitives<sup>34</sup>. From the more feeble, he turned his arms against

777.

the more powerful, states. He entered Oxfordshire, which then belonged to Wessex ; Cynewulf, the West-Saxon monarch, fled before him : Bensington, a royal residence, was taken ; and the territory on the left bank of the Thames became the reward of the conqueror<sup>35</sup>. The Britons were the next victims of his ambition. The kings of Powis were driven from Shrewsbury beyond the Wye ; the country between that river and the Severn was planted with colonies of Saxons : and a trench and rampart stretching over a space of one hundred miles from

<sup>31</sup> Ingul. p. 5. Auct. Bed. p. 224. Sim. Dun. p. 105. Malm. f. 11.

<sup>32</sup> Ep. Alcuini apud Malm. p. 33. Lel. Collect. i. 402.

<sup>33</sup> Mail. p. 138. Sim. Dun. p. 107. The Hestingi have been sought in every part of the island. A charter in Dublet fixes them in

Sussex. By it Offa confirms a grant of land in the neighbourhood of Hastings to the abbey of St. Denis, and styles Bertwald, the proprietor of Hastings and Pevensey, his *fidelis*. Apud Alford, ad ann. 790.

<sup>34</sup> Chron. Sax. 61. Mail. 138.

<sup>35</sup> Chron. Sax. 61. Mail. 138. Ethel. 477.



the mouth of the Wye to the æstuary of the Dee, separated the subjects of Offa from the incursions of their vindictive neighbours<sup>36</sup>. The Northumbrians also, but in what year is uncertain, were compelled to own the superiority of the Mercian<sup>37</sup>.

The chair of St. Peter was filled at this period by Adrian, the friend and favourite of Charlemagne. In 785 two papal legates, the bishops of Ostia and Tudertum, accompanied by an envoy from the French monarch, landed in England: and convoked two synods, the one in Northumbria, the other in Mercia. In the latter, which was attended by Offa, and by all the princes and prelates on the south of the Humber, the legates read a code of ecclesiastical laws composed by the pontiff for the reformation of the Anglo-Saxon church. They were heard with respect: and subscribed by all the members<sup>38</sup>. The ambition of Offa did not omit the opportunity of attempting a project, which he had long meditated. Jaenbercht, archbishop of Canterbury, had formerly offended the king, and had been deprived by him of all the manors which belonged to his see in the Mercian territories. From the man the enmity of Offa was transferred to the church, over which he presided. Why, the king asked, should the Mercian prelates be subject to the jurisdiction of a Kentish bishop? Why should the most powerful of the Saxon kingdoms be without a national metropolitan? According to his wishes a proposition was made in the synod, that the jurisdiction of the see of Canterbury should be confined to the three kingdoms of Kent, Sussex, and Wessex: that one of the Mercian bishops should be raised to the archiepiscopal rank; and that all the prelates between the Thames and the Humber should be

CHAP.  
III.

785.  
Archbishopric  
of Lichfield.

<sup>36</sup> Wise's *Asser*, p. 10. *Sim. Dun.* p. 118. *Caradoc.* p. 20. *Langhorn*, p. 292.

<sup>37</sup> *West*, 142. Offa, in a charter dated 780, styles himself *Rex Merciorum simulque aliorum*

*circumquaque nationum.* *Smith Bed. app.* p. 767.

<sup>38</sup> *Chron. Sax.* 64. *Wilk. Con. tom. i.* p. 151.

CHAP.  
III.

subject to his authority. Jaenbercht did not acquiesce without a struggle in the degradation of his church; but the influence of Offa was irresistible, and Higebert of Lichfield was selected to be the new metropolitan<sup>39</sup>. Still it was necessary to procure the papal approbation. The messengers of Offa urged the great extent of the province of Canterbury, and the propriety of appointing a native metropolitan to preside over the churches of so powerful a kingdom as Mercia: the advocates of Jaenbercht alleged the letters of former pontiffs, the prescription of two centuries, and the injustice of depriving an innocent prelate of more than one half of his jurisdiction. Adrian assented to the wishes of the king: the pallium with the archiepiscopal dignity was conferred upon Adulph, the successor of Higebert, in the see of Lichfield; and Jaenbercht was compelled to content himself with the obedience of the bishops of Rochester, London, Selsey, Winchester and Sherburne<sup>40</sup>.

Before the conclusion of the council, Egferth, the son of Offa, was solemnly crowned, and from that period, reigned conjointly with his father. At the same time the king delivered into the hands of the legates a charter, in which he bound himself by oath, and promised for his successors, to send annually the sum of three hundred and sixty-five mancuses to the church of St. Peter in Rome, to be employed partly in defraying the expences of the public worship, partly in the support of indigent pilgrims<sup>41</sup>.

Alcuin, the Anglo-Saxon preceptor of Charlemagne, had been instrumental in opening an epistolary correspondence between

Offa and  
Charle-  
magne.

<sup>39</sup> Malm. f. 15. Wilk. Con. p. 152. 164. It was, says the Saxon chronicle, a "geflit-fullic (quarrelsome) synod," p. 63. The situation of Calcuth or Calcythe, where it was held, is disputed. I suspect it to be Chelsey, which was called Chelcethe as late as the end of the fifteenth century. Lel. Col. iv. 250.

<sup>40</sup> Angl. Sax. i. 460. Malms. f. 15. Spel. con. 302.

<sup>41</sup> Ang. Sac. i. 461. Chron. Sax. p. 64. Hentigdom (f. 197), says, Egferth, was crowned king of Kent: but in this he differs from all other historians.—The mancus was equal to thirty pennies.

his royal pupil and the king of Mercia<sup>42</sup>. From the letters, which are still extant, it appears that several of the thanes, who had opposed the succession of Offa, finding it unsafe to remain in England, had sought an asylum upon the continent. The humanity of Charlemagne refused to abandon them to the resentment of their enemy. Those, who asserted their innocence, he sent to Rome to exculpate themselves before the pope: the others he retained under his protection, not, as he said, to encourage them in their rebellion, but with the hope that time might soften the resentment of Offa, and that the fugitives might be received into favour. Once he intrusted some of them to the faith of Ethelheard, the successor of Jaenbercht in the see of Canterbury: but on the express condition, that he should send them back to France in safety, unless Offa should give the most solemn assurances, that he would pardon their offences<sup>43</sup>. Another subject of discussion regarded the mercantile interests of the two nations. It was complained that the avarice of the English manufacturers had induced them to contract the size of the woollen gowns, which they exported to the continent: and the vigilance of the French had detected several adventurers, who, under the disguise of pilgrims, had attempted to impose on the officers of the customs<sup>44</sup>. These points were amicably arranged:

<sup>42</sup> In his letters Charles gives himself the sounding title of "the most powerful of the christian kings of the east;" and at the same time to sooth the vanity of Offa, calls him "the most powerful of the christian kings of the west." Ep. Car. Mag. apud Bouquet, tom. v. p. 620.

<sup>43</sup> The letter to Ethelheard is so honourable to Charlemagne, that I shall offer no apology for transcribing a part of it. Hos miseros patriæ suæ exules vestræ direximus pietati, deprecantes, ut pro ipsis intercedere dignemini apud fratrem meum carissimum Offanum re-

gem.—His si pacem precari valeatis, remaneant in patria. Sin vero durius de illis frater meus respondeat, illos ad nos remittite illæsos. Melius est enim peregrinare quam perire, in aliena servire patria quam in sua mori. Confido de bonitate fratris mei, si obnixè pro illis intercedatis, ut benigne suscipiat eos, pro nostro amore, vel magis pro Christe charitate, qui dixit remittite et remittetur vobis. Int. epist. Alcuini. ep. 61.

<sup>44</sup> Malms. f. 17. *Lel. Collec.* i. 402. *Wilk. Con.* i. 158. *Bouquet*, v. 627.



CHAP.  
III.

---

but a new occurrence interrupted for a time that harmony, which had subsisted for so many years. Charlemagne, as a proof of his friendship, had proposed a marriage between his illegitimate son Charles and a daughter of Offa. The Mercian, as the price of his consent, demanded a French princess for his son Egferth. If we reflect that the two monarchs had hitherto treated each other on the footing of perfect equality, there will not appear any thing peculiarly offensive in such a demand. Yet it wounded the irritable pride of Charlemagne; he broke off all communication with the Mercian court; and the trade with the English merchants experienced the most rigorous prohibitions. But Gerwold, the collector of the customs, whose interests probably suffered from this interruption of commerce, contrived to pacify his sovereign: and Alcuin, who was commissioned to negotiate with the Mercian, succeeded in restoring the relations of amity between the two courts <sup>45</sup>.

Murder of  
Ethelbert, of  
East-Anglia.

The most powerful of the Saxon princes were ambitious of an alliance with the family of Offa. Brihtric and Ethelred, the kings of Wessex and Northumbria, had already married his daughters Eadburga and Elfreda: and Ethelbert, the young king of the East-Angles, was a suitor for the hand of their sister, Etheldrida. This amiable and accomplished prince (so he is described) by the advice of his council proceeded with a numerous train to Mercia. On the confines he halted, and sent forward a messenger with presents and a letter, announcing the object of his intended visit. A kind invitation was returned, accompanied with a promise of security. At his arrival he was received with the attention becoming his dignity, and expressions of affection most flattering to his hopes. The day was spent in

<sup>45</sup> Chron. Fontanellen. c. xv. apud Bouquet, v. 315. Epist. Alc. ad Colc. ibid. p. 607.

feasting and merriment: in the evening Ethelbert retired to his apartment; but shortly afterwards was invited by Wimbert, an officer of the palace, to visit Offa, who wished to confer with him on matters of importance. The unsuspecting prince, as he followed his guide through a dark passage, was surrounded by ruffians, and deprived of life. At the news, his attendants mounted their horses and fled: Etheldrida, shocked by this atrocity and disappointed in her expectations of worldly happiness, retired from court, and lived a recluse in the abbey of Croyland: and Offa, shut up in his closet, affected, by external demonstrations of grief, to persuade the world of his innocence. Gratitude to the founder of his abbey has induced the monk of St. Albans to transfer the whole guilt from the king to his consort Cyne-drida: by every other ancient writer, he is said to have acted at her suggestions: but, if it be true that he immediately annexed East-Anglia to his own dominions, little doubt can be entertained that the man, who reaped the advantage, had directed the execution of the murder<sup>46</sup>.

Offa honoured the memory of the prince, whose blood he had shed, by erecting a stately tomb over his remains, and bestowing rich donations on the church of Hereford, in which they reposed. About the same time he endowed the magnificent abbey of St. Albans. But his heart was corroded by remorse, and his body enfeebled by disease. Within two years he followed Ethelbert to the grave, and was buried near Bedford, in a chapel on the banks of the Ouse. It was the tradition of the

Offa's death.

794.

<sup>46</sup> Westminster is merely the copyist of the monk of St. Albans, who, besides confining the guilt to the queen, makes Ethelbert sink through a trap-door into a cave, where he was dispatched. Vit. Off. ii. p. 980. Wal-

lingford (p. 530), on some ancient authority, describes him as falling in battle. Occidit in campestri indicto bello. See Chron. Sax. 65. Malm. 15. Ethelw. 477. Asser. Ann. 154. Brompton, 749—752.

CHAP.  
III.

Egferth.

neighbourhood, that, a few years afterwards, the river overflowed, and that his bones were carried away by the inundation<sup>47</sup>.

Egferth, who had been crowned nine years before, succeeded his father. The ancient writers indulge in reflections on the misfortunes of a family, the establishment of which had cost its founder so many crimes. Egferth died without issue after he had possessed the crown one hundred and forty-one days. Of his sisters, Elfleda became a widow soon after her marriage, Eadburga died in poverty and exile in Italy, and Edilthrida finished her days in seclusion at Croyland. Within a few years after the murder of Ethelbert, Offa and his race had disappeared for ever<sup>48</sup>.

Cenulf depo-  
ses Eadbert of  
Kent.

The throne of Mercia was next filled by Cenulf, descended from another of the brothers of Penda. At the commencement of his reign, a singular revolution in Kent directed his attention to that kingdom. By the death of Aluric the race of Hengist became extinct: and the prospect of a throne awakened the ambition of several competitors. The successful candidate was a clergyman related to the descendants of Cerdic, Eadbert Pren, whose aspiring mind preferred the crown to the tonsure<sup>49</sup>. Ethelheard, the archbishop of Canterbury, beheld with sorrow his elevation: but if *he* treated Eadbert as an apostate, Eadbert considered *him* as a rebel; and the metropolitan, unable to maintain the discipline of the canons, consulted the Roman pontiff, Leo III. who, after mature deliberation, excommunicated the king, and threatened, that, if he did not return to

<sup>47</sup> I have not mentioned Offa's pretended journey to Rome: for it could not have escaped the notice of every historian before the fabulous monk of St. Albans. The institution of the Remescot, is attributed to him by Huntingdon: I suspect that writer has con-

founded it with the annual donation of 365 mancuses already mentioned.

<sup>48</sup> Ing. p. 6.

<sup>49</sup> Hunting. f. 197. Wallingford says he was brother to Ethelred, the eldest son of Withred, p. 530.



the clerical profession, he would exhort all the inhabitants of Britain to unite in punishing his disobedience<sup>50</sup>. Cenulf took this office on himself: and Eadbert, convinced that resistance would be vain, endeavoured to elude the vigilance and revenge of his enemies. He was, however, taken: the eyes of the captive were put out, and both his hands amputated. Cuthred, a creature of the victor's, obtained the throne, with the title, but without the authority, of king. Eadbert was reserved by the Mercian for the gratification of his vanity. A day had been appointed for the dedication of the church of Winchelcomb, which he had built with royal magnificence: the ceremony was attended by two kings, thirteen bishops, ten ealdormen, and an immense concourse of people: and in their presence Cenulf led his mutilated captive to the altar, and of his special grace and clemency granted him in the most solemn manner his freedom. According to the national custom the parade of the day was concluded by the distribution of presents. To the kings, prelates, and ealdormen he gave horses, garments of silk, and vases of the precious metals, to each visitor of noble birth but without landed possessions a pound of silver, and to every monk and clergyman a smaller but proportionate sum<sup>51</sup>.

CHAP.  
III.

796.

The next undertaking of Cenulf was an act of justice, to restore to the successor of St. Augustine the prerogatives, of which they had been despoiled at the imperious demand of Offa. The authority of the new metropolitan had been endured with reluctance by the English prelates, his former equals: and the archbishops of Canterbury and York seized the first opportunity

Restores the  
prerogatives  
of Canter-  
bury.  
803.

<sup>50</sup> Anglia Sacra, i. 460. In the pope's letter the name of the king is not mentioned: but all circumstances conspire to point out Eadbert.

<sup>51</sup> Monast. Angl. i. 189. Chron. Sax. 67. Sim. Dun. 114. Malm. 13. Walling. 530.

CHAP.  
III.

---

of conveying to the king the sentiments of the episcopal body. He acquiesced in their wishes: a letter in his name and that of the nobility and clergy was written to the pope; and Ethelheard proceeded to Rome to plead in person the rights of his church. A favourable answer was obtained; and Ethelheard at his return, summoned a council of twelve bishops, in which it was declared that the decree of pope Adrian had been surreptitiously obtained, and the metropolitan of Lichfield was reduced to his former station among the suffragans of Canterbury<sup>52</sup>.

813.

Persecutes  
archbishop  
Wulfrid.

Archbishop Wulfrid was, like his predecessor, for some time the favourite of Cenulf<sup>53</sup>. With the origin of the dissension between them, we are unacquainted: but we afterwards find the king displaying the most violent hostility against the primate, and excluding him during six years from the exercise of the archiepiscopal authority. Both appealed to the holy see, and Wulfrid repaired to Rome, to vindicate his character from the charges of his royal persecutor. At his return Cenulf summoned him before a great council at London. "I require," said the king, "that you surrender to me and my heirs your manor of three hundred hides at Yongesham, and pay to me one hundred and twenty pounds of silver. If you refuse, I will drive you out of Britain, and no solicitation of the emperor, no command of the pope, shall ever procure your return." Wulfrid heard the menace with firmness: and Cenulf shewed himself inflexible. After much altercation and many remonstrances, a compromise was effected by the interposition of the nobility and clergy. Wulfrid acquiesced in the king's demand: and Cenulf consented that the cession should

816.

<sup>52</sup> Wilk. con. 163. 167. Smith's Bed. app. p. 787. Malm. f. 15. Evid. eccl. Christ. 2212.

<sup>53</sup> Ing. p. 6.

be of no value, unless he wrote to the pope in favour of the archbishop, and restored him to all the privileges which his predecessors had enjoyed. But no sooner had he obtained possession of the manor and the money, than he laughed at the credulity of Wulfrid, who was compelled to submit in silence, and wait for compensation from the justice of Cenulf's successor<sup>54</sup>.

After a prosperous reign of twenty-six years the king was killed in an expedition against the East-Anglians. Notwithstanding his persecution of the archbishop, he is celebrated by our ancient writers for his piety no less than his courage and good fortune. He was succeeded by his only son Kenelm, a boy of seven years of age. After the lapse of a few months the young prince accompanied his tutor Ascebert into a forest, where he was barbarously murdered. Suspicion attributed his death to his elder sister Quendrida, whose ambition, it was said, would have willingly purchased the crown with the blood of a brother. If such were her views, she was disappointed. Ceolwulf, her uncle, ascended the throne: but Quendrida succeeded to the patrimony of her father, and is frequently mentioned in the English councils with the titles of abbess, and heiress of Cenulf<sup>55</sup>.

Kenelm murdered.  
819:

The reign of Ceolwulf was short. In his second year he was dethroned by Beornwulf, a Mercian, who had no better title than his power and opulence. He obliged Quendrida to compound with Wulfrid for the land which her father had wrested from the archbishop. His abilities are said to have been unequal to his station, and he was soon compelled to yield to the superior genius of Egbert, king of Wessex<sup>56</sup>.

821.

Ceolwulf.

824.

<sup>54</sup> Wilk. Con. 172, 173. Spel. con. 332. Chron. Sax. 69.

<sup>55</sup> Ing. p. 7. Wilk. & Spel. ibid. Prob-

ably she was called abbess, because Cenulf had left her the abbey of Winchelcomb.

<sup>56</sup> Ing. p. 7.



CHAP.  
III.

## WESSEX.

Kings of  
Wessex.597.  
Ceolwulf.

607.

619.

Death of  
Tewdric of  
Wales.

From the kings of Mercia it is time to return to the descendants of Cerdic, whose fortune or abilities, after a struggle of three hundred years, triumphed over every opponent, and united all the nations of the Anglo-Saxons in one great and powerful monarchy. The death of the bretwalda Ceawlin and the accession of his nephew Ceolric, have already been noticed. To Ceolric, after a short reign of five years, succeeded his brother Ceolwulf, whose enterprising spirit engaged him in constant hostilities with the Saxons, Britons, Scots, and Picts<sup>57</sup>. The men of Sussex made a bold but unsuccessful effort to recover their independence. The war was conducted with the most obstinate valour: and though Ceolwulf crushed his opponents, it was with the loss of his bravest warriors<sup>58</sup>. He next led a numerous army against the Britons, drove Mouric, their king, beyond the Severn, and penetrated to the banks of the Wye. The pride of the natives attributed their reverses, not to the superiority of the conquerors, but to the incapacity of their leader. His father Tewdric, it was said, had never shewn his back to an enemy: were he to place himself at their head, the Saxons would not dare to appear in his presence. Tewdric had resigned the sceptre, and led the life of a hermit amidst the rocks of Dindyrn. From his cell he was drawn by the entreaties of his countrymen; and assumed with reluctance the command of the army. In the battle which followed, the hermit gained the victory, but lost his life. He received a wound in the head, of which he died near the confluence of the

<sup>57</sup> Chron. Sax. p. 22. Hunt. 181.<sup>58</sup> Chron. Sax. p. 25. Hunt. 181.

Wye and the Severn. Ceolwulf did not survive him more than a year<sup>59</sup>.

CHAP.  
III.

Ceolwulf was succeeded by Cynegils, the son of Ceolric, who divided the kingdom with his brother Cuichelm. This partition did not diminish the strength of the nation. The two brothers appeared to be animated with the same spirit, and united their efforts to promote the public prosperity. They led a powerful army to Bampton in Somersetshire. The Britons fled at the martial appearance of the enemy; and the Saxons returning from the pursuit numbered two thousand and forty-six enemies among the slain<sup>60</sup>. The three sons of Saberct, who had succeeded to the kingdom of Essex, ventured to provoke the hostility of the two brothers; but they fell on the field of battle, and of their followers but few escaped to carry the intelligence to their countrymen<sup>61</sup>.

Cynegils and  
Cuichelm.  
611.

614

.623

The character of Cuichelm is disgraced by the attempt of his messenger Eomer to assassinate Edwin, king of Northumbria. What peculiar provocation he might have received, it is in vain to conjecture: according to Malmsbury, he had been deprived of part of his territory. The silence of historians acquits Cynegils of any share in the guilt of his brother; but he was unwilling to see him fall a victim to the resentment of the Northumbrian, and assisted him with all his forces in a fruitless attempt to repel Edwin. Fortunately the conqueror was appeased, and left them in possession of their territories<sup>62</sup>.

626.

Two years afterwards Penda, who was then beginning his

628.

<sup>59</sup> Usher de prim. p. 292. Langhorn, p. 148. As Tewdric was killed by pagans, the Britons styled him a martyr. Mathern, where he was buried, derived its name from the words Merthir Tewdric. When Bishop Godwin repaired his tomb, he found the

bones entire, and the fracture of the skull apparently recent. God. de Præsul. p. 593.

<sup>60</sup> Hunt. 181. Malm. 6. Chron. Sax. p. 25.

<sup>61</sup> Hunt. 181.

<sup>62</sup> Bed. iv. 9. Chron. Sax. 27, 28.

CHAP.  
III.

sanguinary career, determined to measure his strength with that of the West-Saxons. The obstinacy of the two armies prolonged the contest till it was interrupted by the darkness of night. The conflict was about to be renewed in the morning, when both parties, appalled by the loss of the preceding day, were induced by their mutual fears to listen to terms of reconciliation. The battle was fought at Cirencester<sup>63</sup>. Both Cynegils and Cuichelm received baptism from the hands of the bishop Birinus. Cynegils survived his brother seven years, and died in 642.

Coinwalch.  
642.

The throne was next filled by Coinwalch, the son of the last monarch, who had refused to embrace christianity with his father and uncle. He had formerly married a sister of Penda; but as soon as he obtained the crown, he dismissed her with ignominy, and bestowed his hand on a more favourite princess. The Mercian, burning with resentment, entered Wessex, defeated Coinwalch, and chased him out of his dominions. He found an asylum in the territory of Anna, the virtuous king of the East-Angles, where he was induced to abjure the deities of paganism. In the third year of his exile, he recovered his throne by the assistance of his nephew Cuthred; and as a testimony of his gratitude, bestowed on his benefactor three thousand hides of land at Aston in Berkshire. His next care was to fulfil the pious bequest of his father, and to erect a church and monastery in the city of Winchester. Its size and magnificence astonished his countrymen<sup>64</sup>.

Expelled and  
restored.

652.

658.

Coinwalch was eminently successful against the Britons. He defeated them at Bradford, and afterwards at Pen; and made the Parret the western boundary of his kingdom. But he was

<sup>63</sup> Chron. Sax. p. 29. - Ethelward, 476. Hunt. 181.

<sup>64</sup> Bed. iii. 7. Chron. Sax. 31, 32, 33, 39. Malm. f. 6.



compelled to bend before the superior power of Wulphere, king of Mercia. If the chance of war threw that prince into the hands of Coinwalch, the reader has seen that he recovered his liberty, defeated the West-Saxons, and transferred the sovereignty of the isle of Wight, and of part of Hampshire, to his friend Edilwalch, the king of Sussex<sup>65</sup>.

661.

At the death of Coinwalch without children, an alluring prospect was opened to the ambition of the remaining descendants of Cerdic; but the reins of government were instantly seized by his widow Sexburga, a princess, whose spirit and abilities were worthy of a crown. By her promptitude and decision she anticipated or suppressed the attempts of her opponents: at the head of her army she overawed the neighbouring princes, who were eager to humble the power of Wessex; and by the lenity of her sway, endeavoured to reconcile her subjects to the novelty of a female sovereign. Yet a general discontent prevailed; the chieftains conceived it a disgrace to submit to the sceptre of a woman; and she would probably have been driven from the throne, had not her death anticipated the attempt, before the first year of her reign was at an end<sup>66</sup>.

Sexburga.  
672

The government of Wessex now assumed the form of an aristocracy. The most powerful thanes associated for their mutual defence; and in the emergencies of foreign war conferred on one of their number the title of king<sup>67</sup>. The first of these was Æscuin, a descendant of Ceolwulf, who fought a bloody but indecisive battle with Wulphere, at Bedwin in Wiltshire. He died or was expelled in the following year: Ceutwin, the

674.

676.

<sup>65</sup> Chron. Sax. 33. 39. Bed. iii. 7. iv. 13. Hunt. 182.

<sup>66</sup> Chron. Sax. 41. Westminster says she was dethroned (ad ann. 672); but I prefer

the testimony of Malmsbury, f. 6.

<sup>67</sup> This appears the only manner of reconciling the ancient chroniclers with Bede iii. 12.

CHAP.  
III.

brother of Coinwalch, succeeded, and the West-Saxons under his conduct drove the Britons to the borders of the ocean. To escape his pursuit, many joined their brethren in Armorica<sup>68</sup>.

Cædwalla.

Among the numerous princes of the family of Cerdic was Cædwalla, of the house of Ceawlin. His youth, activity, and courage had distinguished him above his equals: but the quality which attracted the admiration of the people alarmed the jealousy of Ceutwin; and Cædwalla, with a band of faithful adherents, retired from danger into the territory of Sussex. Yet the spirit of the fugitive scorned to solicit assistance from the enemies of his country: and in the extensive forests of Andredswald and Chiltene he maintained his independence<sup>69</sup>. At the

In Sussex.

same time Wilfrid, the banished bishop of York, resided in Selsey, which had been given to him by Edilwalch. The similarity of their fortunes formed a bond of amity between the two exiles. Cædwalla frequently visited the prelate, and received from him seasonable supplies of horses and money. Insensibly the number of his followers increased; adventurers and malcontents crowded to his standard; and he made a sudden and unexpected irruption into the cultivated part of Sussex. Edilwalch, who attempted with a few followers to oppose him, was slain; and the flames of war were spread over the country, when the ealdormen Bercthune and Andhune returned from Kent with the army of Sussex, and drove this band of outlaws to their former asylum in the forest. There Cædwalla received the welcome intelligence that his persecutor Ceutwin was dead,

Made king of  
Wessex.  
685.

<sup>68</sup> Chron. Sax. 44. Malm. 6. Hunt. 183. Ethel. 476.

<sup>69</sup> De desert. Chilton et Ondred. Edd. c. xli. The forest of Andredswald has been already mentioned: Chiltene was probably in

the eastern part of Hampshire, and in the district of the Meanwari lately added to Sussex. Remains of the name still exist in Chilton, Chalton, &c.

and had generously, on his death-bed, named him his successor. He immediately marched into Wessex: his reputation had already interested the people in his favour: his rivals were intimidated by the martial appearance of his followers; and Cæadwalla ascended, without opposition, the throne of Cerdic<sup>70</sup>.

The first care of the new king was to remove the disgrace which he had so lately received in Sussex. With a powerful army he entered that devoted country, slew Bercthune in battle, and reduced the natives to their former dependence on the crown of Wessex. Thence he pursued his victorious career into Kent. The inhabitants fled at his approach; and the riches of the open country became the spoil of the invaders<sup>71</sup>.

686

Conquers the  
isle of Wight.

The isle of Wight had been formerly subjugated and colonised by a body of Jutes. Wulphere had severed it from Wessex: Cæadwalla resolved to reunite it to his dominions. Though a pagan, he implored, in this difficult enterprise, the assistance of the god of the christians, and vowed, in the event of victory, to devote one-fourth of his conquest to the service of religion. Arvald, who held the island under the crown of Sussex, defended himself with courage; and Cæadwalla received several wounds before he could subdue his antagonist. In his rage he had determined to exterminate the natives, and to supply their place with a colony of Saxons; but he yielded to the entreaties and exhortations of Wilfrid; and gave to the bishop, in execution of his vow, three hundred hides of land, the fourth portion of the island. By him the donation was transferred to the clergyman Bernwine, his nephew, who, with the assistance of Hiddela, established the christian faith among the inhabitants<sup>72</sup>.

<sup>70</sup> Edd. c. xli. Bed. iv. 15. Chron. Sax. 45. Malm. 151.

<sup>71</sup> Bed. iv. 15. Chron. Sax. p. 46. Hunt 192.

<sup>72</sup> Bed. iv. 16.



CHAP.  
III.

Puts to death  
the brothers of  
Arvold.

During this invasion two young princes, the brothers of Arvold, had escaped from the island, and sought an asylum among the Jutes of the opposite coast. They were concealed at Stoneham; but the place of their retreat was betrayed to Cæadwalla, and an order was dispatched for their immediate execution. Cynibert, the abbot of Redbridge, hastened to solicit, and with difficulty obtained, a respite, till he should baptize the unfortunate youths. He hastened to Stoneham, informed them of their approaching end, consoled them with the hope of future happiness, and explained to them the leading doctrines of Christianity. They listened to him with gratitude; the ceremony of baptism was performed; and the two brothers joyfully offered their necks to the sword, “in the certain hope,” says Bede, “of exchanging a temporary for an immortal and “blissful existence”<sup>73</sup>.”

Loses his brother in Kent.  
687.

The next theatre of his vengeance, or his ambition, was the kingdom of Kent. His brother Mollo commanded the West-Saxon army: and the natives recurring to the policy which they had adopted in the former year, retired at the approach of the invaders. Mollo, whom the absence of an enemy had rendered negligent, incautiously separated from his forces with twelve attendants. He was descried by the peasants, attacked, hunted into a cottage, and burnt to death. Cæadwalla hastened to revenge the fate of his brother: and devoted the whole of Kent to the flames and the sword<sup>74</sup>.

Goes to Rome.

From his first acquaintance with Wilfrid, the king had imbibed a favourable notion of the christian worship: when he had mounted the throne, he invited the bishop into Wessex. honoured him as his father and benefactor, and determined to

<sup>73</sup> Bed. *ibid.*

<sup>74</sup> Chron. Sax. p. 48.

embrace the faith of the gospel. Another prince would have been content to receive baptism from his own prelate or his instructor : Cæadwalla resolved to receive it from the hands of the sovereign pontiff. He crossed the sea, visited in his progress the most celebrated churches, testified his piety by costly presents, was honourably entertained by Cunibert, king of the Lombards, and entered Rome in the spring of the year 688. On the vigil of Easter he was baptized by pope Sergius, and changed his name to that of Peter, in honour of the prince of the apostles. But before he laid aside the white robes, the usual distinction of those who had been lately baptized, he was seized with a mortal illness, and died on the twentieth of April in the thirtieth year of his age. By the command of Sergius he was interred in the church of St. Peter ; and an inscription fixed on his tomb preserved the memory, and celebrated the virtues, of the king of the West-Saxons<sup>75</sup>.

CHAP.  
III.

688.

Is baptized

Dies.

Ina.

Publishes a  
code of laws.

The successor of Cæadwalla was Ina, who derived his descent from the bretwalda Ceawlin. As a warrior Ina was equal, as a legislator he was superior, to the most celebrated of his predecessors. In the fifth year of his reign he assembled the Witenagemot, and “ with the advice of his father Cenred, of his bishops Hedda, and Erconwald, of all his ealdormen, and wise men, “ and clergy,” enacted seventy-nine laws, by which he regulated the administration of justice, fixed the legal compensation for crimes, checked the prevalence of hereditary feuds, placed the conquered Britons under the protection of the state, and exposed and punished the frauds, which might be committed in the

<sup>75</sup> Chr. Sax. *ibid.* Bed. v. 7. The concluding lines of his epitaph were these :  
Candidus inter oves Christi sociabilis ibit :  
Corpore nam tumulum, mente superna tenet.

Commutasse magis sceptrorum insignia credas,  
Quem regnum Christi promeruisse vides.  
*Ibid.*

CHAP.  
III.

Invades Kent  
and Cornwall.  
694.

710.

715.

Is opposed by  
pretenders to  
the crown.

721.

transfer of merchandise, and the cultivation of land<sup>76</sup>. Essex, (by what means is unknown) had already been annexed to his crown<sup>77</sup>: and Kent was again destined to lament the day in which Mollo had perished. At the head of a resistless army Ina demanded the *were* for the death of his cousin: and Withred, king of Kent, to appease the resentment of the invader, paid the full compensation, thirty thousand pounds of silver<sup>78</sup>. The West Saxon monarch steadily pursued the policy of his fathers in the gradual subjugation of the Britons: added by successive conquests several districts to the western provinces of his kingdom; and expelled after long struggles, Geraint, the king of Cornwall. His dispute with Ceolred of Mercia, was more bloody, and less glorious. The battle was fought at Wodnesbury. Both claimed the victory: but neither dared to renew the engagement<sup>79</sup>.

If the abilities of Ina had promoted the prosperity of Wessex, the duration of his reign exhausted the patience of the more aspiring among the descendants of Cerdic. He had swayed the sceptre two-and-thirty years, when the etheling Cenulf ventured to claim the royal authority, and in a short time paid the forfeit of his ambition<sup>80</sup>. The next year his example was followed by another pretender named Eadbyrht; who seized the strong castle of Taunton, which Ina had lately erected in Somersetshire. It was at the moment when an insurrection had drawn the king into Sussex: but his queen Ethelburga assembled an army, took the fortress by storm, and levelled it with the ground. Ead-

<sup>76</sup> Leges Sax. p. 14—27.

<sup>77</sup> Malm. 7. Ina calls the bishop of London, "my bishop." Leg. Sax. p. 14.

<sup>78</sup> Chron. Sax. p. 48. Polychron. p. 243. Malmsbury (7.) has too great a sum, 30,000 marks of gold. Florence of Worcester

makes it amount to 3700 pounds. Flor. ad ann. 694.

<sup>79</sup> Chron. Sax. p. 50, 51. Hunt. 193, 194.

<sup>80</sup> Chron. Sax. p. 52. Flor. Wig. ad ann. 721.



byrht had the good fortune to escape from his pursuers, and was raised by the enemies of Ina to the throne of Sussex. During two years the natives successfully maintained the struggle for their independence, but in the third they were defeated, and the death of Eadbyrht consummated the subjection of their country<sup>81</sup>.

Ina was the friend and benefactor of the churchmen. All the celebrated monasteries in his kingdom experienced his bounty: and the abbey of Glastonbury was erected by him with a munificence truly royal<sup>82</sup>. The religious sentiments which he had imbibed in early life, sunk more deeply into his mind as he advanced in years; and their influence was strengthened by the exhortations of his queen, who ardently wished for the retirement of the cloister. With this view, if we may credit the narrative of Malmsbury, she devised and executed a most singular stratagem. The king and queen had given a splendid entertainment to the nobility and clergy of the kingdom. The following morning they left the castle: but after a ride of a few hours, Ina, at the earnest solicitation of Ethelburga, consented to return. He was surprised at the silence and solitude which appeared to reign in the castle. At each step his astonishment increased. The furniture had disappeared: the hall was strewed with fragments and rubbish: and a litter of swine occupied the very bed, in which he had passed the night. His eyes interrogated the queen, who seized the moment to read her husband a lecture on the vanity of human greatness, and the happy serenity of an obscure and religious life<sup>83</sup>. It is not, however, necessary to

<sup>81</sup> Chron. Sax. p. 52. · Hunt. 194.

<sup>82</sup> Malm. de Ant. Glast. edit. Gale, p. 310. His donations amounted to 2900 pounds of silver, and 350 pounds of gold. Ibid. I should think this money arose from the *were*

paid for the death of Mollo: as Ina built the monastery pro anima propinqui sui Mollonis. Gale, 309. Monast. Ang. i. 13.

<sup>83</sup> Malm. 7.

CHAP.  
III.

Resigns the  
CROWN.

Goes to Rome.

Dies,  
128.

attach much credit to the story. There are other grounds on which the determination of Ina may be explained, without attributing it to so clumsy an artifice. He had now reigned seven-and-thirty years. The peace of his old age had been disturbed by rebellion. His body was broken by infirmity, his mind distracted by care. Experience had taught him how difficult it was to hold with a feeble hand the reins of government among a warlike and turbulent nobility. He resolved to descend spontaneously from that situation, which he could no longer retain with dignity: and religion offered to his grey hairs a holy and a safe retreat. In the witena-gemot he resigned the crown, released his subjects from their allegiance, and expressed his wish to spend the remainder of his days in lamenting the errors of his youth. Within a few weeks the royal penitent, accompanied by Ethelburga, quitted Wessex. To watch and pray at the tombs of the apostles Peter and Paul, was the first object of their wishes: and after a tedious journey they arrived in Rome, and visited the holy places. It may be, as some writers have asserted, that Ina then built the school of the English in that city<sup>81</sup>: but this circumstance was unknown to the more ancient historians: and can hardly be reconciled with the humility of the king, whose endeavour it was to elude the notice of the public, and to live confounded with the mass of the common people. On this account he refused to shave his head, or wear the monastic habit: and continued to support himself by the labour of his hands, and to perform his devotions in the garb of a poor and unknown pilgrim. He died before the expiration of the year: and was soon followed to the grave by Ethelburga,

<sup>81</sup> West. ad ann. 727. He also attributes to Ina the establishment of Peter-pence, which is equally improbable.

the consort of his greatness, and the faithful companion of his poverty and repentance <sup>85</sup>.

CHAP.  
III.

When Ina resigned the sceptre, he recommended for his successors, Æthelheard, the brother of his queen, and Oswald, who through Ethelbald, Cynebald, and Cuthwin, traced his descent from Ceawlin <sup>86</sup>. The two princes immediately became antagonists: Oswald, though defeated, did not relinquish his pretensions; and till his death in 730, Æthelheard reigned in anxiety and suspense. This domestic quarrel impaired the power, and emboldened the enemies, of Wessex. The British writers claim for their countrymen the glory of three victories, obtained in North-Wales, South-Wales, and Cornwall <sup>87</sup>. The superiority of the Mercians is better established. Æthelheard was compelled to obey the authority of Ethelbald, king of Mercia: and an unsuccessful attempt to recover his independence, was chastised by the loss of Somerton, the capital of Somersetshire. After an inglorious reign of thirteen years he left his crown to his brother Cuthred <sup>88</sup>.

Æthelheard.

735.

741.

Cuthred first drew his sword to revenge the death of his son, the etheling Cenric, who had been slain in a sedition of the people. The perpetrators of the crime, apprehensive of punishment, took up arms, and placed at their head the ealdorman Edilhune. Their army was inferior to that of the king: but the bravery of their leader supplied the deficiency of numbers: and the victory was doubtful, till a dangerous wound removed the ealdorman from the field. The conqueror behaved with generosity to his vanquished subjects, and restored Edilhune to his favour. The services of that nobleman in the great victory of

Cuthred.

748.

<sup>85</sup> Bed. v. 7. Chron. Sax. p. 52. Malm.  
7. Gale, 313.

<sup>87</sup> Caradoc, p. 16.

<sup>88</sup> Chron. Sax. p. 54. Hunt. 195.

<sup>86</sup> Bed. v. 7. Chron. Sax. p. 53.



CHAP.  
III.

---

752.

Burford have been already mentioned. By his assistance the king defeated the Mercians, and fixed the independence of Wessex. An expedition against the Britons, which added a considerable district to his dominions, closed the career of this warlike monarch, who died in 754<sup>89</sup>.

Sigebyrcht

Sigebyrcht succeeded to the crown. Before the end of the year, the majority of the thanes rejected his authority, and elected a descendant of Cerdic, by name Cynewulf. Hampshire alone, by the influence of the ealdorman Cumbra, remained faithful to Sigebyrcht: but that nobleman having presumed to remonstrate with him on his conduct, was put to death by his ungrateful master. The loss of their leader dissolved the connexion between the Hampshire-men and the king: they united with their countrymen in acknowledging the claim of Cynewulf: and Sigebyrcht fled with precipitation to the forest of Andredswald. There he wandered for almost a year; till he was accidentally discovered at Prevet by one of the retainers of Cumbra, who, to revenge the death of his lord, thrust his spear through the body of the fugitive prince. He is said to have been buried with royal honours at Winchester<sup>90</sup>.

is deposed.

Cynewulf.

Of the long reign of Cynewulf we know little more than that it was signalized by several victories over the Britons, and disgraced by the surrender of Bensington to the Mercians. But the history of his death deserves to be preserved, as illustrative of two great features in the Anglo-Saxon character,—devotedness of attachment, and ferocity of revenge. Sigebyrcht had left a brother named Cyneheard, who, to escape the jealousy of the new king, had abandoned his native country, and consoled the hours of exile with the hopes of revenge. Thirty-one years

784.

Is murdered.

<sup>89</sup> Chron. Sax. 56. Hunt. 196. Carad. 17. <sup>90</sup> Chron. Sax. 56. Ethelw. 477. Hunt. 196.

had elapsed from the death of Sigebyrcht, when Cyneheard returned with eighty-four adherents, and secreted himself in the woods. It chanced one evening that the king left Winchester with a slender retinue to visit a lady at Merton, to whom he was warmly attached. Cyneheard stole silently from his retreat, followed with caution the footsteps of the monarch: and in the dead of the night surrounded the residence of his mistress. Cynewulf was asleep: his attendants were dispersed in the neighbouring houses. At the first alarm he arose, seized his sword, and descended to the door, where he descried his enemy, and springing forward aimed a desperate blow at the head of Cyneheard. The wound, which was but slight, was quickly revenged by the weapons of the conspirators. Roused by the noise of the combatants and the shrieks of the woman, the king's attendants hastened to his assistance; but they found him breathless, and weltering in blood. It was in vain that Cyneheard offered them their lives and possessions. They scorned his proposals: and after a long conflict were all slain with the exception of a Briton, who in quality of hostage, had been detained in the court of Cynewulf. Even he was severely wounded.

Early in the morning the news arrived at Winchester. The caldorman Osric, and Wiverth the thane, immediately mounted their horses, and rode to Merton, followed by their retainers. Cyneheard met them at the gate to justify his conduct, and solicit their friendship. He pleaded the obligation of revenging the wrongs of his family: asserted his claim to the throne; offered them valuable possessions; and bade them recollect that many of his friends were their kinsmen. "Our kinsmen," they replied, "are not dearer to us, than was our lord. To his  
Punishment  
of the mur-  
derers.
"murderers we will never submit. If those, who are related to

CHAP.  
III.

“us, wish to save their lives, they are at liberty to depart.”<sup>91</sup>  
 “The same offer,” returned the followers of Cyneheard, “was made to the king’s attendants. They refused it. We will prove to-day that our generosity is not inferior to theirs.” Impatient of delay, Osric forced the barrier: he was opposed with the most desperate intrepidity: and the battle was terminated only by the failure of combatants. Of Cyneheard’s eighty-four companions one alone was saved. He was found among the slain covered with wounds, but still alive: and owed his preservation to this fortunate circumstance, that he was the god-son of Osric. The body of Cynewulf was interred among the ashes of his progenitors at Winchester: that of Cyneheard was conveyed to the church of Exeter<sup>91</sup>.

## Brihtric.

The vacant throne was next occupied by Brihtric. The West-Saxon thanes had still retained the ancient privilege of electing their kings. Though they confined their choice to the descendants of Cerdic, they frequently disregarded the order of hereditary succession. This practice was productive of the most serious evils. Every prince of the royal race was ambitious of ascending the throne. The unsuccessful candidate often appealed to the sword: the strength of the nation was impaired by domestic dissensions: and the reigning prince was frequently compelled to divert his attention from the general welfare to his own individual security. The opponent of Brihtric was Egbert, who, unable to withstand the power of his enemy, left the island, and sought employment in the armies of Charlemagne. Of the exploits of the king during the sixteen years of his reign, historians are silent: the circumstances of his death, on account

<sup>91</sup> Chron. Sax. 57. 63. Hunt. 196, 197. Flor. ad ann. 784. Malm. 7. Ethelw. 477. Westm. ad ann. 786. They all agree in substance, but differ in minor circumstances. I have selected those which appear the most probable.



of its consequences, have arrested their attention. Brihtric had married Eadburga, the daughter of Offa, a princess as ambitious and unprincipled as her father. By her imperious temper she governed her husband, and, through him, the whole nation. The king had noticed with particular distinction the ealdorman Worr. Jealous of the rising influence of this young nobleman, Eadburga prepared for him a poisonous potion : but unfortunately the king drank of the same cup, and accompanied his favourite to the grave. The West-Saxons vented their imprecations against the murderess, who escaped with her treasures to France : and the witena-gemot enacted a law, by which the consorts of their future kings were deprived of the style and privileges of royalty. Eadburga was presented to Charlemagne, and when the jeering monarch asked her, whom she would have, him or his son, " your son," she replied, " for he is the younger." The emperor was, or affected to be, displeased : but he made her a present of an opulent monastery, in which she resided with the title of abbess. But the dissoluteness of her conduct soon scandalized the sisterhood, and the public. She was expelled with ignominy, and after many adventures, terminated her miserable existence at Pavia in Italy, where the daughter of the king of Mercia, and widow of the king of Wessex, was often seen soliciting in rags the charity of passengers. Brihtric died in the year 800<sup>92</sup>.

Is poisoned by  
his queen.  
800.

Her fate.

### EGBERT.

The expulsion of Egbert, and his reception at the court of Charlemagne, have been already mentioned. Three years he

Egbert

<sup>92</sup> Chron. Sax. 63. 68. Asser, p. 10. 12

CHAP.  
III.

served in the armies of that emperor, and improved the period of his exile in acquiring a proficiency in the arts of war and of government. The death of Brihtric recalled him to his native country. He was the only remaining prince of the house of Cerdic, deriving his descent from that conqueror through Inigils, the brother of Ina. By the West-Saxon thanes his claim was unanimously acknowledged: and the day of his coronation was ennobled by a splendid victory, the omen of subsequent conquests. Desirous perhaps to disturb the joy of the ceremony, Ethelmund, the Mercian ealdorman of Gloucestershire, attempted with a body of horsemen to cross the Isis at Kempsford, and was opposed by Wulstan, the West-Saxon ealdorman of Wiltshire. Both the commanders fell in the engagement: but the Mercians were routed, and pursued with considerable loss into their own territory <sup>93</sup>.

Subdues the  
Britons.  
809.

Egbert devoted the commencement of his reign to the cultivation of peace, and the improvement of his people. It was not till 809 that he unsheathed the sword: but from that period each succeeding year was marked by new victories and conquests. He repeatedly invaded and appropriated to himself parts of the territory of the ancient Britons: the havoc of war and the flames of destruction were carried to the western extremity of the island: and the natives of Cornwall, exhausted by numerous defeats, reluctantly submitted to the conqueror <sup>94</sup>. The East-Angles, who still remembered the treachery of Offa, by entreaties and presents induced him to make war upon the Mercians. The two armies met at Ellendune on the banks of the Willy: and Beornwulf, after an obstinate resistance, yielded the palm of victory to his adversary, who, seizing the favourable

The Mercians,  
823.

<sup>93</sup> Chron. Sax. p. 68.

<sup>94</sup> Chron. Sax. p. 69, 70. Ethelweard, 478.

moment, overran the feeble kingdoms of Kent and Essex, and united them to his own dominions. Beornwulf, and after him his successor Iudecan, sought to wreak their vengeance on the East-Angles<sup>95</sup>. Both lost their lives in the fruitless attempt: and Wiglaf, who next ascended the throne, had scarcely grasped the sceptre, when he was compelled to drop it at the approach of the West-Saxons. Unable to collect an army, he endeavoured to elude the pursuit of the invaders: wandered for three years in the forests and marshes: and during four months obtained a secure retreat in the cell of Ethelburga, the daughter of Offa, who lived a recluse in the church of Croyland. Time, and the entreaties of the abbot Siward, mitigated the resentment of Egbert: who at last permitted Wiglaf to retain the sceptre, on condition that he should pay an annual tribute, and swear fealty to the king of Wessex<sup>96</sup>. By the submission of Mercia and of the East-Angles, Egbert found himself on the frontiers of Northumbria, which was already subdued by the terror of his name. The chieftains, with Eanfrid at their head, met him at Dore, acknowledged him for their lord, and gave hostages for their obedience. Thence he directed his arms against the Britons, penetrated through the heart of North Wales, and planted his victorious standard in the isle of Anglesey. Thus in the space of nineteen years did Egbert, by his policy and victories extend the authority of Wessex over the greater part of the island, and obtain for himself the honourable title of “the eighth Bretwalda<sup>97</sup>.”

The North-  
umbrians.  
828.

<sup>95</sup> Prece pretioque Ingul. 7. Chron. Sax. p. 70.

<sup>96</sup> Ingul. 7, 8.

<sup>97</sup> Chron. Sax. 71, 72. Ethelw. 478. The opinion that he gave himself the title of the first king of England, rests on no sufficient

authority. Several of his predecessors had as good a right to it as himself: and his immediate successors contented themselves with the usual style of kings of the West-Saxons. By monarcha Britanniae Huntingdon (198) probably means no more than Bretwalda.



CHAP.  
III.

---

The Danes  
and North-  
men.

Scarcely, however, had the king attained this superiority over the native princes, when he saw himself assailed by a foreign and most dangerous enemy. At this period the peninsula of Jutland, the islands of the Baltic, and the shores of the Scandinavian continent, were the birth-place of a race of men, who, like the Saxons of old, spent the best portion of their lives on the waves, despised the tranquil enjoyments of peace, and preferred the acquisitions of rapine to the laborious profits of industry. Their maritime situation familiarized them with the dangers of the ocean : and an absurd law of succession, which universally prevailed among a multitude of chieftains, consigned the majority of their children to the profession of piracy. The eldest son obtained the whole patrimony of his family : the rest of the brothers received no other inheritance than their swords, and ships, with which they were expected to acquire both reputation and riches<sup>98</sup>. Till the eighth century the sea-kings (so the principal of these adventurers were called), confined their depredations to the northern seas : but they had heard of the wealthy provinces in the south ; and the success of their first attempts incited them to engage in more distant and important expeditions. Several chieftains associated under the banner of a renowned and experienced leader. In spring the pirates sailed to some distant province, landed, ravaged the country, collected the spoil, steered to another coast, repeated their depredations, and in autumn returned loaden with plunder to their own country. Their first attempts were directed against the British isles : next they desolated the coasts of France and Spain ; at last they sailed through the straits which divide Europe from Africa, and taught the shores of the Mediterranean to tremble at the names of the

<sup>98</sup> Gale, 533. Snorre, *Havniæ*, 1777. p. 43. Messen. *Stockholme*, 1700, p. 4.

Danes and Northmen. The establishment of a Danish dynasty in England, of the dutchy of Normandy in France, and afterwards of a powerful kingdom in Italy, bears sufficient testimony to their courage, their activity, and their perseverance.

Of their descents in England during the eighth century three only are recorded, one on the isle of Thanet, and two on the coast of Northumbria. If these predatory incursions produced a temporary alarm, they furnished no cause of permanent uneasiness. But towards the close of the reign of Egbert the numbers of the pirates perpetually increased, and their visits were annually renewed. In 832 they landed in the isle of Shepey, conveyed away the plunder, and returned home without molestation. The next year a fleet of five-and-thirty sail entered the mouth of the Dart: and Egbert had the mortification to see his West-Saxons turn their backs to the invaders. Convinced of the necessity of preparation, he summoned all his vassals to meet him in London, explained to them the measures which he had resolved to adopt, and waited in anxious suspense for the next descent of the enemy. Nor were they inferior in policy to the king. They landed on the coast of Cornwall: where, by the offers of friendship, they seduced the Britons from their allegiance; and at Hengstone hill encountered with united forces the men of Wessex. The king commanded in person: and a bloody but decisive victory restored the glory of his arms, crushed the rebellion of the Britons, and compelled the invaders to seek refuge in their ships. This was the last exploit of Egbert, who died in the following year, after a long, a glorious, and a fortunate reign<sup>99</sup>.

Their de-  
scents.

832.

833.

835.

Death of Eg-  
bert.

836

<sup>99</sup> Ethelw. 478. Hunt. 198. Ing. 10.

## CHAP.

## III.

## ETHELWULF.

Succession of  
Ethelwulf.

Ethelwulf succeeded his father on the throne of Wessex: the conquered provinces of Kent, Essex, and Surrey were formed into a subordinate kingdom, and intrusted to the government of Athelstan, the son or the brother of Ethelwulf<sup>100</sup>.

Of this monarch it has frequently been observed that he was fitter to wear the cowl, than to wield the sceptre. For so unfavourable a character he is principally indebted to the pen of Malmsbury, who describes him as a prince of inferior abilities, and assigns the merit of his government to the wisdom of his ministers Alstan, bishop of Sherburne, and Swithin, bishop of Winchester. But the accuracy of this statement may be questioned. In the pages of the more ancient annalists Ethelwulf appears with greater dignity: and if we may estimate his character by his conduct, we cannot refuse him the praise of activity and courage.

The education of his more early years had been confided to Swithin, provost of Winchester; and the care of the tutor was repaid by Egbert with the office of royal chaplain. From the lessons of his preceptor the young prince was removed to study the military art under the auspices of his father: and after the victory of Ellendune, he commanded the army which expelled Baldred, king of Kent, from his dominions, and annexed that province, with Surrey and Essex, to the ancient patrimony of the house of Cerdic<sup>101</sup>. As soon as he had mounted the throne

<sup>100</sup> Chron. Sax. 73. Our chroniclers are equally divided on the question, whether Athelstan was the son of Egbert, or of Ethelwulf. I suspect that Ethelwulf governed the conquered provinces during the life of his fa-

ther, and at that monarch's death transferred them to Athelstan.

<sup>101</sup> Malmsbury (De Pont. l. ii. f. 137) tells us that Ethelwulf, at the death of his father, was a subdeacon: but that a dispensation for



he bestowed upon his former tutor the vacant bishopric of Winchester; but retained at the head of the council the experienced bishop of Sherburne. The incessant and desultory invasions of the Northmen suggested the propriety of appointing officers in the maritime districts, who, on the first alarm, might collect the inhabitants, and oppose the landing or progress of the enemy; and this arrangement, though, by dividing the force of the country, it lessened the chance of victory, generally succeeded in confining the depredations of the invaders to the vicinity of the coast. The whole island was now surrounded by their squadrons. While one occupied the attention of Ethelwulf, a second of thirty-three sail entered the port of Southampton, and soon after a third attempted to effect a landing on the isle of Portland. Of the king's success we are not informed: Wulfere defeated the invaders at Southampton; but Ethelhelm was slain at Portland with many of the men of Dorset. The next spring a powerful army landed in Lincolnshire. The caldorman Herebryht, with his followers, perished in the marshes; and the barbarians pushed their victorious career through East-Anglia to the Thames. The following year three bloody battles were fought at Rochester, Canterbury, and London: and Ethelwulf himself was defeated in an action at Charmouth with thirty-five sail of the enemy<sup>102</sup>.

Danish invasions.

837.

835

839

him to ascend the throne was obtained from Leo III. because he was the only surviving descendant of Cerdic. But Leo had then been dead more than twenty years; Athelstan, the brother or son of Ethelwulf, was living, and might have governed Wessex as well as Kent; and the story itself appears to have been unknown to all preceding writers, and even to Malmsbury, when he wrote his history of the kings (De Reg. 20). The tale of Ethelwulf having been bishop of Winchester is still less entitled to credit. Both reports probably arose from confounding to-

gether different persons with the same or similar names. Thus in the ancient life of St. Neot (Act. SS. Bened. Sæc. iv. tom. ii. p. 325.) the bishop of Winchester his contemporary, and Ethelwold who was bishop a century afterwards, are both described as the same person.

<sup>102</sup> Chron. Sax. 73, 74. Asser, annal. 155. About this time occurred the wars between the Scots and Picts, which ended in the subjugation of the latter by Kenneth, king of Scots, in 842. Fordun, iv. 6. 8.

CHAP.  
III.

851.

Whether it was that the pirates were discouraged by the obstinate resistance which they experienced, or that France, now become the theatre of intestine feuds and fraternal ambition, offered a more inviting prospect, they appear to have abandoned Britain for the next ten years, while they visited and revisited with impunity the different provinces on the coast of Gaul. But in 851 several squadrons, as if by common consent, returned to the island. One army had landed the preceding autumn in the isle of Thanet, and had passed the winter on shore, a circumstance which filled the Saxons with consternation, as it seemed to denote a design of permanent conquest. In the spring a fleet of three hundred and fifty sail ascended the Thames: Canterbury and London were sacked, and Bertulf, the tributary king of Mercia, to whom the defence of the district had been assigned, was defeated<sup>103</sup>. The barbarians turned to the left, and entered Surrey, where Ethelwulf with his West-Saxons waited to receive them at Okeley. The battle which ensued, was the subject of a poem, fragments of which have been preserved by the ancient chroniclers. It was most obstinate and sanguinary. The victory remained to Ethelwulf; and the loss of the Danes is said to have been greater than they had ever sustained in any age or country. The other divisions of the Saxon forces were equally successful. Ceorl with the men of Devon defeated the barbarians at Wenbury: and Athelstan, king of Kent, captured nine of their ships in an engagement near Sandwich. So many victories gave to this the name of the prosperous year: and the Northmen, disheartened by their losses, respected during the remainder of Ethelwulf's reign the shores of Britain<sup>104</sup>.

<sup>103</sup> Chron. Sax. 74. Asser, 5, 6. Ing. 11.<sup>104</sup> Chron. Sax. 74, 75. Asser, 5, 6. The

Danes made one or two descents afterwards, but of little importance.

Burrhed, king of Mercia, the successor of Bertulf, had determined to chastise the insolence of the Welsh, who made frequent incursions into his territories. Merfyn Frych their sovereign, fell in the battle: but Roderic Mawr succeeded to the throne, and defied all the power of the Mercian. Burrhed had recourse to his superior lord, the king of Wessex: and Ethelwulf, uniting his forces with those of his vassal, penetrated through Wales as far as the isle of Anglesey, and compelled the natives to acknowledge the superiority of the king of Mercia. At his return he gave his daughter Ethelswitha in marriage to Burrhed: and the nuptials were celebrated with royal magnificence at Chippenham<sup>105</sup>.

Ethelwulf  
assists the  
Mercians  
853

The repeated invasions of the barbarians induced Ethelwulf frequently to consult the assembly of his thanes. On one of these occasions by their advice, and with their consent, he published a charter, of which the copies are so different, and the language is so obscure, that it is difficult to ascertain its real object: whether it were to exempt from all secular services the tenth part of each manor, whoever might be the possessor, or to annex that portion of land to the possessions which had already been settled on the church. That the grant, however, was highly advantageous to the clergy, is evident from the engagement of the bishops of Sherburne and Winchester, who appointed the Wednesday of each week as a day of public supplication, to implore the divine assistance against the Danes. This charter was at first confined to the kingdom of Wessex: but in a council of the tributary states, held at Winchester in 855, it was extended to all the nations of the Saxons<sup>106</sup>.

Grants a liberal  
donation to  
the church  
854

<sup>105</sup> Chron. Sax. 75. Asser, 6, 7. Caradoc, 27. Spelm. p. 348. Ing. 17. Gale, 359. Westm. 158. Also Chron. Sax. 76. Ailred, 351.

<sup>106</sup> See the charters in Wilk. p. 183. Asser, 8. Ethelw. 478.



CHAP.  
III.Visits Rome.  
855.

The pious curiosity, which had induced so many of the Saxon princes and prelates to visit the city of Rome, was not yet extinguished in the breasts of their posterity. The bishop of Winchester had lately performed the journey, and had been accompanied by Alfred, the youngest and best-beloved of the sons of Ethelwulf, a boy in the fifth year of his age. The prince was honourably received by the pontiff Leo IV., who, at the request of his father, conferred on him the regal unction, and the sacrament of confirmation<sup>107</sup>. In 855, the tranquillity which England enjoyed, encouraged Ethelwulf to undertake the same journey. Attended by a splendid retinue, with his son Alfred, the royal pilgrim crossed the channel, visited the most celebrated churches of Gaul, and was sumptuously entertained at the court of Charles the bald, king of France. At Rome he spent several months in viewing the remains of ancient magnificence, and indulging his devotion at the shrines of the apostles. He rebuilt the school or hospital of the Saxons, which had lately been burnt, made numerous presents to the pope, the nobles, the clergy, and the people of Rome, and solicited an ordinance that no Englishman should be condemned to do penance in irons out of his own country<sup>108</sup>. In his return he again visited the

<sup>107</sup> Asser, 7. Chron. Sax. 77. Why did the king request the pope to crown Alfred at so early an age? Different reasons have been suggested by ancient and modern writers. Perhaps it was to secure his succession to the crown after his brothers to the exclusion of their children. Such at least was Ethelwulf's determination in his will.

<sup>108</sup> Asser, 8, 9. Chron. Sax. 76. Anastas. Biblioth. ii. 206, 207. Par. 1649. Annal. Bertin. apud Bouquet, viii. 72. 268. 620. For parricide and other enormous crimes the bishops were accustomed to condemn penitents to wear irons for a certain number of

years, and on some occasions sent them to Rome to be absolved by the pope. One of these criminals is thus described by Wulstan of Winchester, an eye-witness.

Occidit proprium crudeli morte parentem,  
Unde reo statim præcepit episcopus urbis,  
Ferreus ut ventrem constringeret acriter omnem  
Circulus, et similem paterentur brachia pœnam,  
Continuosque novem semet cruciando per annos,

Atria sacrorum lustraret sæpe locorum,  
Viseret et sacri pulcherrima limina Petri,  
Quo veniam tantæ mereretur sumere culpæ.

Act. Bened. sæc. iv. tom. ii. p. 72.

French monarch, and after a courtship of three months was married to his daughter Judith, who, probably, had not yet reached her twelfth year. The ceremony was performed by Hincmar, archbishop of Rheims. At the conclusion the princess was crowned, and seated on a throne by the side of her husband: a distinction which she afterwards claimed to the great displeasure of the West-Saxons.

Ancient writers have not mentioned to whom Ethelwulf had intrusted the reins of government during his absence upon the continent. But Ethelbald, his eldest son, a prince of impetuous passions and insatiable ambition, conceived the design of seizing the throne for himself, and of holding it in defiance of his father. His advisers and accomplices were Alstan, the celebrated bishop of Sherburne, and Eachstan, the caldorman of Somerset. In the forest of Selwood the project was disclosed to some of the more powerful thanes, whose approbation appeared to insure its success. But at the return of Ethelwulf the tide of popularity flowed in his favour: the majority of the nation condemned the treason of an unnatural son: and a civil war would have been the consequence, had not the moderation of the king consented to a partition of his dominions. He resigned to Ethelbald the kingdom of Wessex, and contented himself with the provinces, which Athelstan, who had lately died, had governed with the title of king. He survived this compromise but two years, which he spent in acts of charity and exercises of devotion. By his will, which was confirmed in a general assembly of the thanes, he left the kingdom of Kent to his second son Ethelbert, and the kingdom of Wessex to Ethelbald, Ethelred, and Alfred, his other sons, in the order of seniority. His private patrimony he divided among his children, charged with the obligation of maintaining one poor person on every ten hides of land, and of paying

Ethelbald  
reigns  
856.

Pacification.

CHAP.  
III.Ethelwulf  
dies.

a yearly rent of three hundred mancuses to the pope for the use of that prelate, and the service of the churches of St. Peter and St. Paul. He died in 858, and was buried at Winchester<sup>109</sup>.

## ETHELBALD.

Ethelbald  
marries his  
mother-in-  
law.  
858.

After the death of Ethelwulf, Ethelbald continued to sit on the throne of Wessex: Ethelbert, in pursuance of his father's will, assumed the government of Kent, Essex, and Surrey. The new king had been the foremost to condemn the marriage of Ethelwulf with the daughter of the French monarch: he now forgot his former enmity to the princess, and took the young widow to his own bed. This incestuous connexion scandalized the people of Wessex: their disapprobation was publicly and loudly expressed: and the king, overawed by the remonstrances of the bishop of Winchester, consented to a separation<sup>110</sup>. Judith (I may here be allowed to pursue her history), unwilling to remain in a country which had witnessed her disgrace, sold her lands, the dower she had received from Ethelwulf, and returned to the court of her father. Charles, who dared not trust the discretion of his daughter, ordered her to be confined within the walls of Senlis, but to be treated at the same time with the respect due to a queen. The cunning of Judith was, however, more than a match for the vigilance of her guards. By the connivance of her brother she eloped in disguise with Baldwin, great forester of France: and the fugitives were soon beyond the reach of royal resentment. The king prevailed on his bishops to excommunicate Baldwin,

<sup>109</sup> Asser, 9. 12, 13. Testament. Alfred. *ibid.* 79. Ethelwulf confined the inheritance to the male issue of his children, so far at least that if any part of it came in the order of

descent to a female, and she died without leaving a son, it was to revert to the king's principal heir. *Ibid.*

<sup>110</sup> Asser, 13.



for having forcibly carried off a widow : but the pope disapproved of the sentence ; and at his entreaty Charles gave a reluctant consent to their marriage, though neither he nor archbishop Hincmar could be induced to assist at the ceremony. They lived in great magnificence in Flanders, the earldom of which was bestowed on them by the king, and from their union descended Matilda, the wife of William the conqueror, who gave to England a long race of sovereigns <sup>111</sup>.

In the battles, which were fought during the life of Ethelwulf, Ethelbald had acquired peculiar distinction. During his own reign, he possessed no opportunity of displaying his courage, or the memory of his exploits has been obliterated. Yet his martial character so endeared him to the youth of Wessex, that they lamented his death as a national calamity, and foretold that England would soon feel how severe a loss she had sustained. He died in 860.

His death.

### ETHELBERT.

By the provisions contained in the testament of Ethelwulf, the crown of Wessex ought, on the demise of the last king, to have descended to Ethelred, the third of the brothers. But Ethelbert, who had hitherto possessed the kingdom of Kent, advanced the claim of seniority, and his pretensions were admitted by the great council of Wessex. His martial virtues are said to have been equal to those of his late brother : and the title of “ invincible conqueror ” was accorded to him by the admiration or flattery of his contemporaries. Yet the meagre chronicles of the times contain no record of his victories ; and

Ethelbert.  
860.

<sup>111</sup> Apud Bouquet, viii. Annal. Bertin. 77, Chron. Sith. 268. Capitul. Car. Cal. 650. 78. 83. Ep. Hinc. ad Nic. pap. 214.

CHAP.  
III.

we are only told that his reign was short, and that he died in 865.

864.

Under this prince the city of Winchester was sacked by the Northmen. As they were conveying the plunder to Southampton, they were defeated with great slaughter by the ealdormen of Hampshire and Berkshire. Another army landed in the isle of Thanet, and sold to the men of Kent their forbearance for a considerable sum of money. But they laughed at the credulity of the purchasers: and the eastern moiety of the province was pillaged and depopulated by the faithless barbarians<sup>112</sup>.

Adventures of  
Ragnar Lod-  
brog.

It was also during his reign that an event occurred in the north, which endangered by its consequences the very existence of the Saxons as a nation. Among the sea-kings one of the most adventurous and successful was Ragnar Lodbrog. On the shores of the Baltic, in the Orkneys and the Hebrides, in Ireland, Scotland, and Northumbria, he had diffused the terror of his name. In France the intrepid pirate had conducted his fleet up the Seine, spread the flames of devastation on each of its banks, and taken possession of the city of Paris, which was redeemed from destruction by the payment of seven thousand pounds of silver. By his orders ships of a larger size than had hitherto been navigated by his countrymen, were constructed for an invasion of England: but, whether it was owing to the violence of the weather, or the unskilfulness of the mariners, they were wrecked on the coast of Northumbria. Ragnar with several of his followers reached the shore, and heedless of the consequences, commenced the usual career of depredation. Though the Northumbrians had cast off the yoke imposed on them by

845.

<sup>112</sup> Asser, 14, 15. Chron. Sax. 78. Rudborn (Ang. Sac. i. 206) postpones the capture of Winchester to the first year of Ethelred; and adds that every monk belonging to

the cathedral was slain by the infidels. The Annales Wintonienses place this event in 873. Ibid. note.

Egbert, their country was torn by civil dissensions; and, at this very moment, their chieftains were divided by the opposite pretensions of two competitors, Osbert and Ælla. At the first news of the descent of the Northmen, the latter flew to the coast, fought with the plunderers, made Ragnar prisoner, and immediately put him to death. He is said to have been devoured by snakes, and to have consoled his last moments with the hope, that “the cubs of the boar” would avenge his fate<sup>113</sup>. Nor was he disappointed. His sons, who were in Denmark, swore to punish the murderer; the relations, the friends, and the admirers of the deceased chieftain crowded to their standard; and eight sea-kings, with twenty *jarls*, combined their forces in the pursuit of revenge and plunder<sup>114</sup>.

CHAP.  
III.

His death by  
Ælla.  
865.

### ETHELRED.

By the death of Ethelbert, the crown of Wessex devolved on Ethelred, the third of the sons of Ethelwulf. At the same time the northern armament, conveying twenty thousand warriors, under the command of Inguar and Ubbo<sup>115</sup>, two of the sons of Ragnar, reached the coast of East-Anglia. They landed without opposition: but finding their number unequal to the enterprise which they had undertaken, they fortified their camp, and patiently awaited the arrival of reinforcements from the Baltic. The depth of winter was spent in procuring horses for the army, and in debauching the fidelity of some among the Northumbrian chieftains. In February they abandoned East-Anglia, and by

Invasion by  
the sons of  
Ragnar.  
866.

They conquer  
Northumbria.  
867.

<sup>113</sup> Saxo Gram. p. 176. Soræ, 1654. Pe. Olaus, apud Langbeck, p. 111. Hafniæ, 1772.

<sup>114</sup> Ragnar's death was known to the English chroniclers: but they were ignorant of

the reason which induced his sons to attempt the conquest of the island. The industry of Mr. Turner has discovered the real cause in the northern historians. Turner, ii. 107, 118.

<sup>115</sup> *Lel. Coll.* i. 220.



CHAP.  
III.

the first of March were in possession of York. Alarmed for their country, Osbert and Ælla postponed the decision of their private quarrel, and united their forces against the common enemy. On the twenty-first of March they surprised the Danes in the neighbourhood of York, drove them into the city, and made a breach in the walls. They had penetrated into the streets, when despair redoubled the efforts of the Northmen: and the assailants were in their turn compelled to retire. Osbert, with the bravest of the Northumbrians, was slain: Ælla had the misfortune to fall alive into the hands of his enemies; and Inguar and Ubbo enjoyed the exquisite delight of torturing the man who had slain their father. His ribs were divided: his lungs were pulled out; and salt was thrown into the wounds. This victory gave the Danes the undisputed possession of the country south of the Tyne: the natives on the north of that river solicited the friendship of the invaders, and, with their consent, conferred the sovereign power on a chieftain called Egbert<sup>116</sup>.

Invade Mer-  
cia.  
868.

The army of the barbarians now divided itself into two bodies. The smaller remained at York to cultivate the country: the more numerous marched to the south, and took possession of Nottingham. Burrhed, king of Mercia, immediately solicited the assistance of Ethelred, who, with his brother Alfred and the forces of Wessex, joined the Mercian army. The enemy prudently confined themselves within the walls of the town: and the besiegers were unable to force them to a battle. At length Nottingham was surrendered by capitulation,

<sup>116</sup> Asser, 17, 18. Chron. Sax. 79. Saxo Gram. 177. Pet. Olaus, 111. Sim. Dun. 14. The punishment inflicted on Ælla was usual among the Northmen, and was called "at rista örn," from the supposed resemblance of the victim to the figure of an eagle. The

operation was generally performed by the chief himself. It is thus described by Snorre — Ad speciem aquilæ dorsum ita ei laniabat, ut adacto ad spinam gladio, costisque omnibus ad lumbos usque a tergo divisus, pulmones extraheret. Snorre, p. 108.

and the Danes retired without molestation to their countrymen at York <sup>117</sup>.

CHAP.  
III.

The next expedition of the Northmen led them across the Humber into Lincolnshire. They landed at Lindesey, burnt the rich monastery of Bardenev, and put its inhabitants to the sword. The summer months were devoted to the pursuit of plunder, and the gratification of their appetites: in September they passed the Witham, and entered the district of Kesteven. To oppose their progress the ealdorman Algar had collected the youth of the neighbourhood. In the first attempt he repulsed their advanced guard, and killed three of their kings. On the following morning his little army was surrounded by all the forces of the invaders. The advantage of the ground enabled the Saxons to protract the contest till the evening: at last they were broken by an artifice of the enemy, and slaughtered without mercy. The victors continued their march during the silence of the night: but their route was illumined by repeated conflagrations. As the flames approached the monastery of Croyland, the younger monks escaped in their boats across the lake: the more aged, with the boys, retired to the church. Oskytul, a Danish chieftain, soon forced the gates: the abbot was beheaded on the steps of the altar; and his companions, with the exception of one boy, were massacred in different apartments of the abbey. After having pillaged and burnt the monastery, they directed their march to Medeshamstede. An attempt was made by the inhabitants of the neighbourhood to defend the walls: and in the first assault one of the sons of Ragnar received a severe wound. But in the second the fury of the Danes burst open the gates: the women and children,

Plunder and  
destroy the  
churches.

<sup>117</sup> Asser, 19, 20. Chron. Sax. 79. Ingul. 18.

CHAP.  
III.

who had sought refuge within the abbey, were massacred: and Ubbo avenged the wound of his brother by slaughtering, with his own hand, the abbot and eighty-four monks. From the ashes of Medeshamstede they proceeded to Huntingdon, and from the destruction of that place to the isle of Ely. The nuns of this monastery, who were descended from the noblest of the Saxon families, were sacrificed to their lust and cruelty: the treasures of the country, which had been deposited in the island, were divided among the barbarians: and the edifice, with every other building within the range of their devastation, was devoured by the flames <sup>118</sup>.

Enter East-  
Anglia.

It will excite surprise that the Saxon princes should remain idle spectators of the progress of the Danes, instead of uniting their forces for the defence of their common country. They appear to have conceived that the fury of the torrent would, as it rolled on, gradually subside. The king of Mercia had seen one of his most opulent provinces for six months in their possession, and yet, under the pretence of opposing the Britons in the west, had not made a single effort for its deliverance. From Mercia the invaders entered the country of the East-Angles. They had already burnt Thetford, when Ulfketul, the ealdorman, retarded their advance for a few days. But Edmund, the king, conscious of his inability to contend against superior numbers, and afraid of inflaming their resentment by a fruitless resistance, disbanded his forces, and retired towards his castle of Framlingham <sup>119</sup>. He was intercepted at Hoxon on the Wavenley, and conducted in chains to the quarters of Inguar. The proposals of the sea-king were rejected by the captive as repugnant to his honour and religion. To extort his compliance, he

<sup>118</sup> Asser, 20. Ingul. 19. 24.

<sup>119</sup> In Leland's Collectanea (i. 222) we are

told that Edmund fought a great battle with the Danes, in which he lost most of his men.



was bound naked to a tree, and lacerated with whips: some of the spectators, with cruel dexterity, shot their arrows into his arms and legs: and the Dane, wearied out by his constancy, ordered his head to be struck off. Edmund was revered as a martyr by his subjects and their posterity<sup>120</sup>.

CHAP.  
III.

Murder king  
Edmund.

The winter was spent by the Northmen in regulating the fate of the East-Angles, and in arranging plans of future conquest. From Thetford, the general rendezvous, Inguar returned to his former associates in Northumbria<sup>121</sup>; Gothrun assumed the sceptre of East-Anglia, which, from that period, became a Danish kingdom; and Halfdene and Bacseg, leading the more adventurous of the invaders into Wessex, surprised the town of Reading. They fortified the place, and, to strengthen their position, began on the third day to open a trench from the Thames to the Kennet: but the ealdorman Ethelwulf attacked them at Englefield, killed one of their commanders, and drove the workmen into the camp. Four days later Ethelred and his brother Alfred arrived with the army of Wessex. The parties, which the pursuit of plunder had led to a distance, were easily put to flight: but in an attempt to storm the Danish intrenchments the Saxons experienced a loss, which taught them to respect the skill as well as the valour of the invaders. Ethelred, however, sensible that his crown was at stake, reinforced his army, and, before the end of the week, met the enemy at Escesdune<sup>122</sup>. The night was spent on each side in preparation for the combat: the morning discovered the Danes assembled in two divisions on different parts of an eminence. Ethelred ordered the Saxons to adopt a

Invade Wessex.

<sup>120</sup> Asser, 20. Ing. 24. Abbo Floriac. in Act. Sanct. West. ad ann. 870.

<sup>121</sup> He afterwards invaded Ireland and died there. Annal. Ulton. 63.

<sup>122</sup> Escesdune has been sought in different

places by different writers. As the Saxon Chronicle (p. 135) says, that it lay in the road from Wallingford to Cuckhamsley hill, Gibson was probably right when he fixed it at Aston.

CHAP.  
III.

similar arrangement, and retired to his tent to assist at mass<sup>123</sup>. The impatience of Alfred condemned the piety of his brother: and ordering his men to cover their heads with their shields, he boldly led them up the declivity, and attacked one of the hostile divisions. Ethelred followed quickly with the remainder of the army: and the Northmen, after a most obstinate resistance, were routed, and pursued in confusion as far as Reading. Among the slain were Bacseg, one of their kings: and the jarls Osburn, Frean, Harold, and the two Sidrocs. A solitary thorn tree pointed out to posterity the spot on which the Danes were defeated<sup>124</sup>.

Within a fortnight after the last sanguinary conflict, another was fought at Basing, in which the invaders took ample revenge of the Saxons. Their numbers were soon after increased by the arrival of another armament from the Baltic, and a most obstinate battle ensued at Morton in Berkshire. The Saxon chroniclers give the advantage to their countrymen, but acknowledge that the Danes remained in possession of the field. Ethelred, who had been wounded, survived only a few days, and was buried at Winburn: the invaders returned to Reading, where they divided the spoil, and rejoiced over their victory<sup>125</sup>.

Death of  
Ethelred.

<sup>123</sup> It has been said that Ethelred was "impressed with a dispiriting belief that he should not survive the battle" (Turner, vol. ii. p. 154): but the words of Asser have a very different meaning. Affirmans se inde (e ten-

torio) vivum non discessurum, antequam sacerdos missam finiret, et divinum pro humano nolle deserere servitium. Asser, 22.

<sup>124</sup> Asser, 21—24.

<sup>125</sup> Asser, 24. Chron. Sax. 81.

CHAP. IV.

ANGLO-SAXONS.

BIRTH, EDUCATION, AND ACCESSION OF ALFRED—SUCCESSSES OF THE DANES—ALFRED OPPOSES THEM BY SEA—HIS VICTORIES, LAWS, AND IMPROVEMENTS—REIGNS OF EDWARD—ATHELSTAN—EDMUND—AND EDRED.

ALFRED THE GREAT.

WITH the name of Alfred, posterity has associated the epithet of “the great.” The kings, his predecessors, are chiefly known to us by their actions in the field of battle: it is the praise of Alfred that he was not only a warrior, but also the patron of the arts, and the legislator of his people. *Their* history has been compressed into a few pages: but *his* merit will deserve a more full and detailed narration.

CHAP.  
IV.

---

Alfred was born at Wantage in 849, the youngest of the four sons, whom Osburga, the daughter of Oslac, bore to Ethelwulf. The beauty, vivacity, and playfulness of the boy endeared him to his parents, who affected to foresee that he would one day prove the chief ornament of the race of Cerdic. It was this partiality which induced the king to send him, when only in his fifth year, with a numerous retinue to Rome, to be crowned by the pontiff; and afterwards, when the royal pilgrim himself visited the apostolic city, Alfred was selected to accompany his father.

Birth of Alfred.



CHAP.  
IV.His educa-  
tion.

The Anglo-Saxons of this period had degenerated from the literary reputation of their ancestors. The thanes, dividing their time between the occupations of war and the pleasures of the chase, despised the tranquil pursuits of knowledge, and directed the attention of their children to those exercises, which reciprocally impart and require habits of strength, agility, and courage. Osburga, however, had the merit of awakening in the mind of Alfred that passion for learning, by which he was so honourably distinguished from his contemporaries. Holding in her hand a Saxon poem elegantly written, and beautifully illuminated, she offered it as a reward to the first of her children, whose proficiency should enable him to read it to her. The emulation of Alfred was excited: he ran to his master, applied to the task with diligence, performed it to the satisfaction of the queen, and received the prize of his industry<sup>1</sup>.

The northern nations were all passionately fond of their vernacular poetry. Every victory which they obtained, was celebrated in the verses of their bards: and the memory of their fathers was preserved and consecrated in their traditionary poems. To listen to such effusions was the great delight of Alfred: he learned them by heart, and was proud to repeat them to others. But by the death of his parents he was transferred to the care of an elder brother, who neglected the education which had been begun by his mother, and when he had reached his twelfth year he was far from being perfect in the humble but necessary art of reading. The utility of this attainment, though it laid the foundation of his future proficiency, was circumscribed within a very narrow circle. For Saxon lite-

<sup>1</sup> Asser, 16. The same writer carefully distinguishes the *liberales artes* from the *venatoriâ et cæteris artibus, quæ nobilibus conveniunt*, p. 43.

rature comprised only a few national poems, and books of devotion : the treasures of history and science were still locked up in the obscurity of a learned language. When in a later period of life, oppressed with disease, and occupied by the cares of government, the king applied himself to the study of the Latin tongue, he bitterly lamented that indulgence which had permitted him to throw away the years of his youth in pursuits and diversions, from which he had reaped nothing but ignorance and regret<sup>2</sup>.

But if the mind of Alfred had not received the polish of classical literature, it had been deeply impressed with religious sentiments, which influenced his conduct through life. At the age of twenty he determined from motives of virtue to marry. The lady, whom he honoured with his choice, was Alswitha, the daughter of Ethelfrid, a Mercian ealdorman, and of Eadburga, a princess of the race of Penda. But the joy of the nuptial ceremony was clouded by an unexpected calamity. In the midst of the festivity, while Alfred was entertaining the thanes of both kingdoms, he was suddenly seized with a most painful disorder. Its seat was internal : its origin and nature baffled all the science and skill of the Saxon physicians. By the ignorance of the people it was attributed to magic, or to the malice of the devil, or to a new and unknown species of fever. From that moment to the day in which Asser wrote his history, during the long lapse of five-and-twenty years, the king was afflicted with this mysterious disease : its attacks were almost incessant : and each short interval of ease was embittered by the prospect of a speedy return of pain. It continued to harass him till his death<sup>3</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> Asser, 17.<sup>3</sup> Asser, 19, 40—42.

CHAP.  
IV.

His succe-  
sion to the  
crown.  
871.

During the reigns of his brothers, with the title of king, Alfred possessed the government of a district the name of which is not mentioned. At the death of Ethelred he was called to the throne by the unanimous voice of the West-Saxons. With real or affected modesty he refused; alleging his own incapacity, and the increasing multitudes of the Danes. His objections were over-ruled, the archbishop of Canterbury placed the crown on his head; and at the name of Alfred the hopes of Wessex revived. The first care of the young monarch (he was only in his twenty-second year) was to perform with decent pomp the funeral of his late brother: and from this solemn ceremony he was summoned to arms and the field of battle. Another body of adventurers had joined the invaders stationed at Reading. The confederates penetrated into Wiltshire, and from their camp on the hills which cover the banks of the Willy, spread devastation over the surrounding country. Anxious to distinguish himself, the new king, at the head of his West-Saxons, advanced to seek a more numerous enemy. The impetuosity of the attack threw the Northmen into disorder: but they rallied from their flight, renewed the contest, and rather by superior numbers than superior valour, wrested the victory from the grasp of their opponents. The unfortunate issue of this battle gave a new direction to the policy of Alfred. He negotiated with the Danish chieftains, and induced them, probably by the offer of a valuable present, to withdraw out of his dominions<sup>4</sup>.

He purchases  
peace.

Danes con-  
quer Mercia.  
872.

From Wiltshire Halfdene led his barbarians to London, where he passed the winter. Burrhed, the king of Mercia, taught by the example of Alfred, made them a liberal donative, and obtained a promise that they would march peaceably through

<sup>4</sup> Asser, 24, 25. Chron. Sax. 82.



his territories on their road to the north: but they halted at Torksey in Lincolnshire, and returned to their usual habits of depredation. Another present, and another treaty succeeded. The Danes derided the simplicity of the Mercian, and on a sudden, without pretext or provocation, surprised Repton on the southern bank of the Trent. The monastery, the pride of Mercian piety, they burnt to the ground: and violated the tombs of the princes whose ashes reposed within it. The following spring their numbers were doubled by the arrival of another horde of adventurers, under the united command of the kings Gothrun, Oskytul, and Amund. His knowledge of their force, joined to his experience of their perfidy, drove the Mercian king to despair. Unable to repel them by force, or to purchase their removal by money, he abandoned his throne, and proceeded, a reluctant pilgrim, to the tombs of the apostles at Rome. He arrived with a broken heart, died within a few days, and was buried in the church of the Saxon hospital. His queen Ethelswitha followed her lord, but had not even the consolation of visiting his grave. She sickened and died at Ticino<sup>5</sup>.

By the retreat of Burrhed, the Mercian sceptre was left at the disposal of the invaders. They placed it in the hands of Ceolwulf, a native thane, who had the pusillanimity to accept it from the enemies of his country, on the ignominious condition of paying them a yearly tribute, and of reigning in subservience to their will. This phantom of a king was but the pander to their rapacity. As long as he could extort money from his miserable countrymen, he was permitted to retain the sceptre: when he could no longer satisfy their demands, he was stripped of the

<sup>5</sup> Asser, 26. Ingul. 26, 27.

CHAP.  
IV.

Pillage north  
of the Tyne.  
876.

ensigns of royalty, and suffered from their cruelty that death, which he owed to his country. He was the last who bore the title of king of Mercia<sup>6</sup>.

The whole of the Anglo-Saxon territories were now under the dominion of the invaders, with the exception of the districts on the south of the Thames, and the north of the Tyne. In 875, having arranged the plan of their future operations, they divided themselves into two bodies. The new adventurers with their three kings moved towards the south, and occupied Cambridge: Halfdene and his followers embarked on board their fleet in the Trent, steered along the coast of Deira, entered the Tyne, and ascended that river as far as the mouth of the Tame. Here they moored their fleet during the winter. Upon the first appearance of spring they issued forth to the work of devastation. Tynemouth was levelled with the ground. The abbey of Lindisfarne was plundered, and reduced to ashes; while the bishop and monks precipitately fled with their treasures and the body of St. Cuthbert to the highest of the Northumbrian mountains. At Coldingham the nuns, stimulated by the example of their abbess, disfigured their faces with wounds to escape the insults of the barbarians. They preserved their chastity; but they perished in the flames, which devoured their convent. Wherever Halfdene marched, his route might be traced by the smoking ruins of towns and villages, and the mangled remains of the victims of his barbarity. The summer he spent in ravaging the lands of the Strathclyde Britons, the Scots, and the Picts: in the autumn he returned into Bernicia, and, dividing it among his followers, exhorted them to cultivate by their industry that soil, which they had won by their valour<sup>7</sup>.

<sup>6</sup> Asser, 26, 27. Ingul. 27. Chron. Sax. 82, 83.

<sup>7</sup> Asser, p. 27. Chron. Sax. p. 83. Sim. Dunel. p. 95. Mat. West. ad ann. 870.

While Halldene was thus consolidating his conquests in Northumbria, Gothrun with the southern army remained inactive for the space of twelve months in the neighbourhood of Cambridge. But one night the barbarians suddenly hastened to their fleet, embarked, and disappeared. Some time after they were descried, steering towards the coast of Dorset, where they surprised the strong castle and monastery of Wareham, situated at the conflux of the Frome and the Piddle. From this station plundering parties were dispatched in every direction, which, on the arrival of Alfred, retired within their intrenchments. In the art of besieging places the Saxons seem to have been conscious of their deficiency. They never refused to meet the enemy in the field; but from the day, on which Ethelred was defeated before Reading, prudence had taught them to respect the Danish fortifications. Alfred attempted to negotiate: and Gothrun consented, for a considerable sum, to retire out of Wessex. Instructed, however, by the fate of Burrhed, and not confiding in the sincerity of the Dane, the king demanded a certain number of hostages, and was permitted to select them from the noblest of the chieftains. He next required their oaths. They swore by their bracelets. He was not content. They swore by the relics of the christian saints. Satisfied that he had bound them by every tie, which his diffidence could devise, Alfred now expected their departure; when, in the darkness of the night, a detachment of the army sallied from the castle, surprised the Saxon cavalry, mounted the horses of the slain, and by a rapid march took possession of Exeter. The king, unable to dislodge them from either position, retired with shame and disappointment<sup>8</sup>.

<sup>8</sup> Asser, 27, 28. Chron. Sax. 83.



CHAP.  
IV.

Alfred builds  
a fleet.  
877.

In the fifth century the Saxons had been formidable for their power by sea: their conquests in Britain had directed their attention to other objects, and had annihilated their fleet. But Alfred now saw the necessity of opposing the Danes on their own element. In 875 he had equipped a few ships, manned them with foreign adventurers, whom the hope of reward had allured to his service, and, trusting himself to the faith of these mercenaries, had sailed in quest of an enemy. Fortune threw in his way a Danish fleet of seven ships, one of which he captured, while the others escaped. This trifling success elevated his hopes: ships and gallies were built; and by unceasing efforts, he at last succeeded in creating a navy. He had soon reason to congratulate himself on this acquisition. A resolution had been taken by the Northmen to evacuate Wareham. Their cavalry proceeded to join their friends at Exeter, and were followed by Alfred, who invested the place by land: the infantry embarked on board the fleet, and were directed to steer to the same city. But they had scarcely put to sea, before a storm compelled them to run along the coast of Hampshire, where they lost one half of their ships. The others, shattered by the tempest, recovered their course, but were opposed by the Saxon fleet, which blockaded the mouth of the Ex, and after a sharp action were entirely destroyed. The loss of one hundred and twenty sail induced Gothrun to treat in earnest. More hostages were given, the former oaths were renewed, and the Northmen marched from Exeter into Mercia<sup>9</sup>.

Faults in the  
character of  
Alfred.

It has been said that the character of Alfred was without a blemish. Such unqualified praise is the language of rhetorical declamation, rather than of historical truth. In his early

<sup>9</sup> Asser, p. 29. Chron. Sax. p. 84.

years, indeed, his opening virtues endeared him to the nation<sup>10</sup>: and in a more advanced age he was the guardian and the benefactor of his country. But in his conduct at the commencement of his reign there was much to reprehend. The young monarch seems to have considered his high dignity as an emancipation from restraint, and to have found leisure, even amidst his struggles with the Danes, to indulge the impetuosity of his passions. The scandal of Wallingford may be dismissed with the contempt, which it perhaps deserves<sup>11</sup>: but we learn from more ancient authorities that his immorality and despotism provoked the censure of his virtuous kinsman St. Neot<sup>12</sup>: and Asser, his friend and panegyrist, acknowledges, that he was haughty to his subjects, that he neglected the administration of justice, and treated with contempt the complaints of the indigent and oppressed. It was to this *indiscretion* (to borrow the term under which the partiality of the biographer was willing to veil the misconduct of his patron<sup>13</sup>), that Alfred himself attributed the severe and unexpected calamity, which overwhelmed him in the eighth year of his reign. For the piety of the age, instead of tracing events to their political sources, referred them immediately to the providence of God; and considered misfortunes as the instrument with which divine justice punished past enormities.

At the close of the last campaign we left him in the undisturbed possession of the kingdom of Wessex: at the beginning

He is driven from his throne.  
878.

<sup>10</sup> Asser, p. 24. He adds that Alfred, had he been ambitious, might have obtained the crown from the favour of the people to the exclusion of his elder brother.

<sup>11</sup> In primordiis regni sui vivebat luxui et vitiis subjugatus—virgines et caste vivere volentes vel invitas vel voluntarias omni studio

subdere festinavit. Walling. p. 535.

<sup>12</sup> Prævos redarguens actus jussit in melius converti.—De tyrannidis improbitate, ac de superba regiminis austeritate acriter eum increpavit. Vit. St. Neoti in act. SS. Ben. Sæc. iv. tom. ii. p. 330, 331.

<sup>13</sup> Asser, p. 31, 32.

---

---

CHAP.  
IV.

of the next year we discover him a solitary fugitive, lurking in the morasses of Somersetshire. This sudden revolution arose from the policy of Gothrun, the most artful of the Northmen. That chieftain, on his retreat out of Wessex, had fixed his residence at Gloucester, and rewarded the services of his veterans by dividing among them the lands in the neighbourhood. But while this peaceful occupation seemed to absorb his attention, his mind was actively employed in arranging a plan of warfare, which threatened to extinguish the last of the Saxon governments in Britain. A winter campaign had hitherto been unknown in the annals of Danish devastation: after their summer expeditions they had always devoted the succeeding months to festivity and repose: and it is probable that the followers of Gothrun were as ignorant as the Saxons of the real design of their leader. On the first days of the year 878 they received an unexpected summons to meet him on horseback at an appointed place: on the night of the sixth of January they were in possession of Chippenham, a royal villa on the left bank of the Avon. There is reason to believe that Alfred was in the place, when the alarm was given: it is certain that he could not be at any great distance. From Chippenham Gothrun dispersed his cavalry in different directions over the neighbouring counties: the Saxons were surprised by the enemy before they had heard of the war: and the king saw himself surrounded by the barbarians without forces and almost without attendants. At first he conceived the rash design of rushing on the multitude of his enemies: but his temerity was restrained by the more considerate suggestions of his friends; and he resolved to reserve himself for a less dangerous and more hopeful experiment. To elude suspicion he dismissed the few thanes, who were still near his person, and endeavoured alone, and on foot,



to gain the centre of Somersetshire. There he found a secure retreat in a small island, situated in a morass formed by the conflux of the Thone and the Parret, which was afterwards distinguished by the name of Ethelingey, or Prince's island <sup>14</sup>.

Though the escape of Alfred had disappointed the eager hopes of the Danes, they followed up their success with indefatigable activity. The men of Hampshire, Dorset, Wilts, and Berkshire, separated from each other, ignorant of the fate of their prince, and unprepared for any rational system of defence, saw themselves compelled to crouch beneath the storm. Those who dwelt near the coast, crossed with their families and treasures to the opposite shores of Gaul; the others sought to mitigate by submission the ferocity of the invaders, and by the surrender of a part, to preserve the remainder, of their property. One county alone, that of Somerset, is said to have continued faithful to the fortunes of Alfred: and yet, even in

Submission of  
Wessex.

"To account for the sudden retreat of Alfred, and the temporary extinction of the West-Saxon power, has perplexed most historians. I shall not enumerate their different hypotheses, as the account given in the text satisfactorily, in my opinion, explains the whole difficulty; and is supported by authorities which seem to have been overlooked. "DCCCLXXXVIII. This year in mid winter, over twelfth-night, the Danish army stole to Chippenham; and rode over the West-Saxon land; and settled in it. And much of the people they drove over sea, and of the rest the greater part they rode round, and subjected to themselves, except the king Alfred, and he with a little band, went un- easily to the woods and the fastnesses of the moors." Chron. Sax. 84. Their success was owing to their celerity, obequitando, Ethelw. f. 480.—Iter accelerans occidentales Anglicos attentavit invadere. In illis enim partibus didicerat a fugitivis ipsum regem hiemare.—Rex autem Aluredus audiens barbaricam rabiem et sævitiam cominus irruisse,

suorumque considerans dispositionem (*dispersionem*, MS. Claud. A. 5. p. 157) huc illucque cœpit animo fluctuare: tandem discretione fretus arbitrio, cessit hostibus, ac solus et inermis fugæ est expositus ludibrio. Vit. St. Neot, in Act. SS. Ben. Sæc. iv. tom. ii. p. 333. This author proceeds to notice one of the adventures, which Alfred, in better days, delighted to narrate to the circle of his friends (Malms. de Reg. 23). In his retreat he was entertained in the cottage of a swineherd: and his hostess, in the absence of her husband, desired the stranger to watch the loaves, which she had placed to bake on the hearth. But Alfred's mind was too forcibly occupied with the thought of his misfortunes to attend to the charge. The bread was burnt: and the negligence of the king was severely chastised by the tongue of the woman. This incident was soon sung in Latin verse.

Urere quos cernis panes, gyrare moraris,  
Cum nimium gaudes hos manducare ca-  
lentes.

Asser, p. 31.

CHAP.  
IV.

the county of Somerset, he was compelled to conceal himself in the fens, while the ealdorman Æthelnoth with a few adherents wandered in the woods. By degrees the secret of the royal retreat was revealed: he was joined by the more trusty of his subjects; and in their company he occasionally issued from his concealment, intercepted the straggling parties of the Danes, and returned loaded with the spoils, often of the enemy, sometimes (such was his hard necessity) of his own people. As his associates multiplied, these excursions were more frequent, and successful; and at Easter, to facilitate the access to the island, he ordered a communication to be made with the land by a wooden bridge, of which he secured the entrance by the erection of a fort.

A party of  
Danes de-  
feated.

While the attention of Alfred was thus fixed on the enemy who had seized the eastern provinces of his kingdom, he was unconscious of the storm, which threatened to burst on him from the west. Another of the sons of Ragnar, probably the sanguinary Ubbo, with three-and-twenty sail had lately ravaged the shores of Demetia or South Wales; and crossing to the northern coast of Devonshire, had landed his troops in the vicinity of Aplemore. It appears as if the two brothers had previously agreed to crush the king between the pressure of their respective armies. Alarmed at this new debarcation, Odun the ealdorman, with several thanes, fled for security to the castle of Kynwith. It had no other fortification than a loose wall erected after the manner of the Britons: but its position on the summit of a lofty rock rendered it impregnable. The Danish leader was too wary to hazard an assault: and calmly pitched his tent at the foot of the mountain, in the confident expectation that the want of water would force the garrison to surrender. But Odun, gathering courage from despair, silently left his intrenchments at the

dawn of the morning: burst into the enemy's camp, slew the Danish chief with twelve hundred of his followers, and drove the remainder to their fleet. The bravery of the Saxons was rewarded with the plunder of Wales; and among the trophies of their victory was the *Reafan*, the mysterious standard of the raven, woven in one noon-tide by the hands of the three daughters of Ragnar. The superstition of the Danes was accustomed to observe the bird, as they marched to battle. If it appeared to flap its wings, it was a sure omen of victory: if it hung motionless in the air, they anticipated nothing but defeat<sup>15</sup>.

The news of this success infused courage into the hearts of the most pusillanimous. Alfred watched the reviving spirit of his people, and by trusty messengers invited them to meet him in the seventh week after Easter at the stone of Egbert, in the eastern extremity of Selwood forest<sup>16</sup>. On the appointed day the men of Hampshire, Wiltshire, and Somerset cheerfully obeyed the summons. At the appearance of Alfred, they hailed the avenger of their country, the wood re-echoed their acclamations: and every heart beat with the confidence of victory. But the place was too confined to receive the multitudes that hastened to the royal standard: and the next morning the camp was removed to Ieglea, a spacious plain, lying on the skirts of the wood, and covered by marshes in its front<sup>17</sup>. The day was spent in making preparations for the conflict, and in assigning their places to the volunteers that hourly arrived: at the dawn of the next morning, Alfred marshalled his forces, and occupied the

Alfred re-appears.

<sup>15</sup> Chron. Sax. 84. Asser, 32.

<sup>16</sup> It is now called Brixton.—Ingulf (p. 26) and some writers after him, inform us that the king disguised himself as a harper, and visited the Danish camp, where he observed their negligence, and learned their ulterior objects.

The story is in itself improbable, and was unknown to Asser.

<sup>17</sup> It is believed to be Leigh not far from Westbury. In the life of St. Neot it is described as *grata salicis planities juxta silvam*. p. 335.



CHAP.  
IV.Fights the  
Danes.

summit of Ethandune, a neighbouring and lofty eminence<sup>18</sup>. In the meanwhile Gothrun had not been an idle spectator of the motions of his adversary. He had recalled his scattered detachments, and was advancing with hasty steps to chastise the insolence of the insurgents<sup>19</sup>. As the armies approached, they vociferated shouts of mutual defiance; and after the first discharge of their missive weapons rushed to a closer and more sanguinary combat. The shock of the two nations, the efforts of their leaders, the fluctuations of victory, and the alternate hopes and fears of the contending parties must be left to the imagination of the reader. The Danes displayed a courage worthy of their former renown, and their repeated conquests. The Saxons were stimulated by every motive that could influence the heart of man. Shame, revenge, the dread of subjugation, and the hope of independence, impelled them forward: their perseverance bore down all opposition: and the Northmen, after a most obstinate but unavailing resistance, fled in crowds to their camp. The pursuit was not less murderous than the engagement: the Saxons immolated to their resentment every fugitive, who fell into their hands. Immediately, by the king's orders, lines were drawn round the encampment; and the escape of the survivors was rendered impracticable by the vigilance and the multitude of their enemies. Famine and despair subdued the obstinacy of Gothrun, who on the fourteenth day offered to capitulate. The terms imposed by the conqueror

as victorious.

<sup>18</sup> *Disposita seriatim acie proximum anticipaverunt promontorium. Hinc hostium explorabant occursum. Ibid. Anticipavit montem hostibus nimis aptum, si præcavissent. Walling. p. 538. This is probably Bratton-hill, near Eddington.*

<sup>19</sup> *Gytrus undique Danos convocans, magnam magnam contraxit. Walling. ibid. Ut rumor hujus eventus latissime diffusus profa-*

*nas Gytronis attingeret aures—protinus juxta morem suum acies disposuerunt, ad locum certaminis castra moventes. Vit. St. Neot. p. 335. These passages plainly show that the Danes were not surprised by Alfred, as is generally asserted. See also Translat. St. Cuth. in act. SS. Bened. sæc. iv. tom. ii. p. 279.*

were, that the king and principal chieftains should embrace christianity ; that they should entirely evacuate his dominions ; and that they should bind themselves to the fulfilment of the treaty by the surrender of hostages and by their oaths. After a few weeks, Gothrun with thirty of his officers was baptized at Aulre near Athelney. He took the surname of Athelstan, and Allred was his sponsor. After the ceremony both princes removed to Wedmore, where on the eighth day Gothrun put off the white robe and chrysmal fillet, and on the twelfth bad adieu to his adopted father, whose generosity he had now learned to admire as much as he had before respected his valour. From Chippenham he marched into Mercia, fixed his head-quarters at Cirencester, and ordered his followers to cultivate the soil. He remained here but twelve months, when he returned to his former kingdom of East-Anglia : and though a Danish armament under the command of Hastings entered the Thames, and solicited him to renew the war, he adhered faithfully to his engagements. Two treaties which he made with Alfred are still extant. By the first the boundaries between the two kingdoms are determined to be the Thames, the river Lee to its source, a line drawn thence to Bedford, and along the Ouse to its mouth. The lives of Englishmen and Danes are declared to be of equal value : and all unauthorized intercourse between the two nations is forbidden. By the second the two kings engage to promote christianity, and to punish apostacy ; the laws of the Danes are assimilated to those of the Saxons ; and the fines payable for offences are determined both in Saxon and Danish money<sup>20</sup>. The followers of Gothrun gradually adopted the habits of civilized life ; and by acquiring an interest in the soil,

<sup>20</sup> Leg. Sax. 47. 51.

CHAP.  
IV.

Alfred's im-  
provements in  
the army.

contributed to protect it from the ravages of subsequent adventurers.

The retreat of Gothrun gave to Wessex a long respite from the horrors of war, and fifteen years of comparative tranquillity left Alfred at leisure to attend to the improvement and civilization of his people. The army claimed his first care. The desultory but incessant attacks of the Danes had demonstrated the necessity of organizing a force, which should be ready to take the field at the first alarm, and to march to any point of the coast that was menaced with an attack; but at the same time the scarcity which arose from the frequent suspensions of agricultural labour, shewed the impolicy of collecting together the great mass of the population. Alfred adopted an improved plan: which, while it was calculated to oppose a formidable force to the descents of the Northmen, secured a sufficient supply of hands for the cultivation of the soil. The defence of the towns and cities was intrusted to the courage and fidelity of the inhabitants under the direction of the king's Gerefæ or reeve: of the rest of the free population the males were divided into two classes, to each of which was allotted in rotation a regular term of service. They were commanded by the king or the ealdorman of the county: and instead of pay received from the national stores a proportionate supply of provisions <sup>21</sup>.

The fortifications.

The utility of fortifications had been sufficiently demonstrated by the example of the Danes, and the successful defence of Kynwith. By the orders of Alfred a survey was made of the coast and navigable rivers: and castles were built in places the best fitted to prevent the landing, or to impede the progress of an enemy. Yet in this undertaking, of which the necessity was so



apparent, he had to encounter numerous difficulties, arising from the prejudices and indolence of his people. In many instances the execution of the royal orders was postponed: in others the buildings were abandoned as soon as the foundations had been laid. But occasional descents of the Danes came in aid of the king's authority: those, who had lost their property by their negligence, were eager to repair the fault by their industry; and before the close of his reign Alfred had the satisfaction to see more than fifty castles built according to his directions <sup>22</sup>.

The first attempt which the king made to create a navy has been already mentioned. His success stimulated him to new exertions: and, to acquire knowledge, and to do honour to the naval profession, he often accompanied his squadrons in their expeditions. On one of these occasions he met four sail of Northmen. Two were captured by boarding, and their crews put to the sword: the commanders of the other two, terrified by the fate of their companions and their own loss, threw down their arms, and on their knees solicited mercy. On another occasion the Saxon fleet surprised and captured thirteen sail in the river Stour. Every man on board was massacred: but the same evening the victors in their return were intercepted by a Danish squadron, and completely defeated <sup>23</sup>. As soon as the king became acquainted with the arts of attack and the modes of defence practised by the northern nations, several improvements suggested themselves to his superior sagacity. He ordered ships to be built of larger dimensions than those of the Danes. Their decks were higher, and their length double. The increased elevation gave his mariners an advantage over their enemies, who were compelled to direct their strokes upwards: and the greater

The navy

883

885

<sup>22</sup> Asser, p. 59, 60. Spelm. Vit. Alfred, p. 129. not.      <sup>23</sup> Asser, 36, 37. Chron. Sax. 86-87

CHAP.  
IV.

bulk of the vessels added to their stability in the water, while the Danish ships were agitated by the slightest motion. That their celerity might not be retarded by the additional weight, he augmented the number of the rowers; and gave to all his vessels thirty, to several more than thirty, oars on a side. This fleet was so judiciously disposed in the different harbours, that the marauding squadrons of the barbarians found it difficult to approach, or to abandon, the shore with impunity<sup>24</sup>.

The adminis-  
tration of jus-  
tice.

From measures of defence against a foreign enemy, the king turned his attention to the domestic economy of the country. During the long period of Danish devastation, the whole fabric of civil government had been nearly dissolved. The courts of judicature had been closed: injuries were inflicted without provocation, and retaliated without mercy; and the Saxon, like the Dane, had imbibed a spirit of insubordination, and a contempt for peace, and justice, and religion. To remedy these evils, Alfred restored, enlarged, and improved the salutary institutions of his forefathers; and from the statutes of Ethelbert, Ina, Offa, and other Saxon princes, composed a code of law, adapted to the circumstances of the time, and to the habits of his subjects<sup>25</sup>. But legislative enactments would have been of little avail, had not the king insured their execution, by an undertaking of no small difficulty, but which by his vigilance and perseverance he ultimately accomplished. The Saxon jurisprudence had established an ample gradation of judicatures, which diverged in different ramifications from the king's court into every hamlet in the kingdom: but of the persons invested with judicial authority very few were qualified for so important an office. Almost all were ignorant: many were despotic. The powerful refused to ac-

<sup>24</sup> Chron. Sax. 98.

<sup>25</sup> Leg. Sax. 28—46.

quiesce in their decisions; and the defenceless complained of their oppression. Both had frequent recourse to the equity of Alfred, who listened as cheerfully to the complaints of the lowest as of the highest among his subjects. Every appeal was heard by him with the most patient assiduity: in cases of importance he revised the proceedings at his leisure; and the inferior magistrates trembled at the stern impartiality, and inflexible severity of their sovereign. If their fault proceeded from ignorance or inadvertence, they were reprimanded or removed according to the magnitude of the offence: but neither birth, nor friends, nor power, could save the corrupt or malicious judge<sup>26</sup>. He was made to suffer the punishment, which he had unjustly inflicted; and, if we may believe an ancient authority, forty-four magistrates were by the king's order executed in one year for their informal and iniquitous proceedings<sup>27</sup>. This severity was productive of the most beneficial consequences. The judges were careful to acquire a competent degree of knowledge; their decisions became accordant to the law: the commission of crime was generally followed by the infliction of punishment: and theft and murder were rendered as rare, as they had formerly been prevalent. To prove the reformation of his subjects, Alfred is said to have suspended valuable bracelets on the highway, which no one ventured to remove: and as a confirmation we are told, that if a traveller lost his purse on the road,

<sup>26</sup> Asser, 69—71.

<sup>27</sup> *Miroir des Justices*, p. 296. ed. 1642. It was written by Andrew Horne under Edward I. or Edward II. Some of the cases are curious. Thus Athulf was executed because he had condemned Copping, who was not twenty-one years of age: Billing, because he had condemned Leston, who did not sit down, when proclamation had been made for all but the murderer to sit down: Hale, because he had acquitted the sheriff Tristram, though

Tristram had unjustly seized goods for the king's use: Therborn, because he had condemned Osgot for a crime, of which he had obtained pardon from the king: Oskitell, because he had condemned Cutling on the sole report of the coroner. Thus also he imprisoned Sithing, because that officer had imprisoned Herbole for a crime committed by Herbole's wife: he ordered Haulf to lose a hand, because he had not inflicted that punishment on Armoc, &c. p. 296—301.



CHAP.  
IV.

He encourages learning.

he would at the distance of a month find it lying untouched in the same spot<sup>28</sup>. These are probably the fictions of a posterior age: but they serve to shew the high estimation in which Alfred's administration of justice was held by our forefathers.

The decline of learning in the Saxon states had been rapidly accelerated by the Danish invasions. The churches and monasteries, the only academies of the age, had been destroyed: and at the accession of Alfred, Wessex could hardly boast of a single scholar, able to translate a Latin book into the English tongue<sup>29</sup>. The king, who from his early years had been animated with the most ardent passion for knowledge, endeavoured to infuse a similar spirit into all who aspired to his favour. For this purpose he invited to his court the most distinguished scholars of his own and of foreign countries. Plegmund and Werfrith, Ethelstan and Werwulf visited him from Mercia. John of Old Saxony left the monastery of Corbie for an establishment at Ethelngy: Asser of St. David's was induced by valuable presents to reside with the king during six months in the year: and an honourable embassy to Hincmar, archbishop of Rheims, returned with Grimbald the celebrated provost of St. Omer's<sup>30</sup>. With their assistance Alfred began in his thirty-ninth year to apply to the study of Roman literature: and opened schools in different places for the instruction of his subjects. It was his will that the children of every free-man, whose circumstances would allow it, should acquire the elementary arts of reading and writing: and that those, who were designed for civil or

<sup>28</sup> Malms. de Reg. ii. 4. f. 24.

<sup>29</sup> Alfred, præf. ad Past. p. 82. Wise's Asser.

<sup>30</sup> Asser, 46—49. Epist. Fulconis in Wise's Asser, p. 123. John, abbot of Ethelngy, has been often confounded with Joannes Scotus Erigena. They were different per-

sons. Scotus, as his name imports, was a native of Ireland: John the abbot was a native of Old-Saxony (Asser, 61). Scotus was neither priest nor monk (Mabillon, sæc. iv. tom. ii. p. 510). John the abbot was both priest and monk (Asser, 47—61. Ælfrédi præf. ad Past. p. 85).

ecclesiastical employments, should moreover be instructed in the Latin language<sup>31</sup>.

CHAP.  
IV.

It was a misfortune which the king frequently lamented, that Saxon literature contained no books of science. "I have often "wondered," says he, "that the illustrious scholars, who once "flourished among the English, and who had read so many "foreign works, never thought of transferring the most useful "into their own language<sup>32</sup>." To supply the deficiency Alfred himself undertook the task. Of his translations two were historical, and two didactic. The first were the ecclesiastical history of the English by Bede, and the epitome of Orosius, the best abridgment of ancient history then extant, both works calculated to excite and gratify the curiosity of his subjects. Of the others one was meant for general reading, "the Consolation of Philosophy" by Boetius, a treatise deservedly held in high estimation at that period; and the second was destined for the instruction of the clergy, the Pastoral of Gregory the great, a work recommended to his notice both by its own excellence, and the reputation of its author. Of this he sent a copy to every bishop in his dominions, with a request that it might be preserved in the cathedral for the use of the diocesan clergy<sup>33</sup>.

His translations.

In the arrangement of his time, his finances, and his domestic concerns, Alfred was exact and methodical. The officers of his household were divided into three bodies, which succeeded each

Arrangement of his time.

<sup>31</sup> Ælfred. præf. ad Past. p. 85. Asser, 43—55. Did he not at this time establish the university of Oxford? I know not. The contested passage in Asser (p. 52) appears to me undoubtedly spurious. What writer of the ninth or tenth centuries ever used the expressions, Divus Petrus, or Divi Gildas, Melkinus, &c.

<sup>32</sup> Ælfred. præf. ad Past. p. 84.

<sup>33</sup> Ibid. 86. On each copy was an *æstell* of fifty mancuses, and the king requested that no one would "take the *æstell* from the book, "nor the book from the minster." The meaning of the word *æstell* has hitherto proved a stumbling-block to the commentators.

CHAP.  
IV.

Of his finances.

other in rotation, and departed at the end of the month, the allotted period of their service<sup>34</sup>. Of each day he gave one third to sleep and necessary refreshments: the remainder was divided between the duties of his station, and works of piety and charity<sup>35</sup>. His treasurer was ordered to separate his revenue into two moieties. The first he subdivided into three parts, of which one was destined to reward his servants and ministers, another to supply presents for the strangers who visited his court, and the third to pay the numerous bodies of workmen whom he employed. For he erected palaces in different parts of his dominions: repaired and embellished those which had been left by his predecessors, and rebuilt London and several other towns, which the Danes had reduced to heaps of ruins. In all these undertakings we are told that he displayed an improved taste and considerable magnificence. Among his artists were numbers of foreigners attracted by his offers, and the fame of his liberality: and by frequent conversation with them he is said to have acquired a theoretical acquaintance with their respective professions, which astonished the most experienced workmen<sup>36</sup>.

The other moiety of his revenue was parceled out into four portions. One was devoted to the support of his school, his favourite project. Another was given to the two monasteries which he had founded, one at Shaftesbury for nuns, at the head of whom he placed his daughter Ethelgiva: another at Ethel-

<sup>34</sup> Asser, 65.

<sup>35</sup> Malm. 24, 25. Asser, 67. Without the knowledge of chronometers, Alfred was perplexed to discover the true hour of the day. To remedy the inconvenience he had recourse to the following simple expedient. By repeated experiments he found that a quantity of wax, weighing seventy-two denarii, might be made into six candles, each twelve inches long and of equal thickness, and that these, burning in succession, would last exactly

twenty-four hours. To prevent the flame from being affected by currents of air, the candles were inclosed in a large lantern of transparent horn: and as the combustion of each inch of wax corresponded with the lapse of one seventy-second part of the day, or twenty of our minutes, he was hence enabled to measure his time with some accuracy. Asser, 68, 69.

<sup>36</sup> Asser, 52. 58. 66.



ingey for monks, which he peopled with foreigners, because the Danish devastations had abolished the monastic institute among his own subjects. The third portion he employed in relieving the necessities of the indigent, to whom he was on all occasions a most bountiful benefactor. From the fourth he drew the alms, which he annually distributed to different churches. They were not confined to his own dominions, but scattered through Wales, Northumbria, Armorica, and Gaul. Often he sent considerable presents to Rome: sometimes to the nations in the Mediterranean and to Jerusalem: on one occasion to the Indian christians at Meliapour. Swithelm, the bearer of the royal alms, brought back to the king several oriental pearls, and aromatic liquors<sup>57</sup>.

The long interval of peace, which Alfred enjoyed after the baptism of Gothrun, had raised him to a high pre-eminence among the British princes. The East-Anglian and Northumbrian Danes, though their subjection was rather nominal than real, acknowledged his authority. The kingdom of Mercia no longer existed. He had given the government of that country with his daughter Æthelflæda to the ealdorman Ethered. Even the kings of the Welsh, Anarawd of Gwynnez, Hemeid of Demetia, Helised of Brecon, Howel of Gleguising, and Brocmail of Gwent, harassed by intestine dissensions, voluntarily placed themselves under his protection, and did him homage on the same terms as Ethered of Mercia<sup>58</sup>. It was in this season of prosperity that Alfred saw the storm, which had so long desolated the fairest provinces of Gaul, cross the channel, and burst on his own ter-

His power

Invasion by  
Hastings.  
893.

<sup>57</sup> See Asser, 58. 60. 64. 66, 67. Chron. Sax. p. 86. 90. Malm. de gest. reg. 24. Hunt. 201. Flor. Wigor. 591. It is curious that as Asser (p. 58) makes the mare Tyrrenum extend "ad ultimum Hybernæ finem,"

so Alfred in his translation of Orosius says of the same or the Wendelsæ, that "on hyre west ende is Scotland."

<sup>58</sup> Asser, 49, 50.

CHAP.  
IV.

ritory. Hastings, the most renowned and successful of the seakings, after more than forty years of carnage and plunder, undertook, in imitation of Gothrum, to win for himself a kingdom in Britain. The forces of the Northmen assembled in the port of Boulogne in two divisions, of which one comprising two hundred and fifty sail steered its course to the mouth of the Limene, and took possession of Apuldre on the Rother<sup>39</sup>; the other of eighty ships under Hastings himself, directing its course more to the north, entered the Swale, and fortified a position at Milton. Never did Alfred display more ability, nor the barbarians more pertinacity, than in the conduct of this war. Every attempt of the invaders was foiled by the foresight and expedition of their adversary: yet they maintained the contest for more than three years: and did not abandon their object, till they had exhausted every resource, which courage or perfidy, activity or patience could supply.

As soon as Alfred had collected his forces, he marched into Kent, and occupied a strong position between Milton and Apuldre. From a lofty eminence he could watch the motions of his enemies, while his flanks were secured from surprise by an extensive wood on the one side, and a deep morass on the other. Thus the communication between the Northmen was intercepted: and each army was compelled to remain inactive in its camp, or, if it ventured a forward movement, to expose itself to probable destruction. The perfidy of Hastings disengaged him from this embarrassing situation. He offered to depart in consideration of a sum of money: gave hostages for the performance of his engagement: and as a spontaneous proof of his

<sup>39</sup> There was formerly a river and spacious harbour of this name. Neither are at present in existence, owing to inundations. The spot

is now called Romney Marsh. See Gibson at the end of the Saxon Chronicle, p. 34.

sincerity permitted his two sons to receive the sacrament of baptism. To one Alfred, to the other Ethered, stood sponsors<sup>40</sup>. But in the meantime a part of the army at Apuldre eluded the vigilance of the king, stole through the forest of Andredswald, and began to ravage the counties of Wessex. At Farnham they were overtaken by Alfred, and his son Edward. The Saxons were victorious: the booty and horses of the barbarians fell into their hands: and many of the fugitives perished, as they attempted to cross the Thames without a knowledge of the fords. In the action their king, whose name is unknown, had received a severe wound: and his inability to bear the rapidity of their flight, compelled them to halt in Thorney, a narrow islet formed by the waters of the Coln. There they were carefully watched by successive parties of Saxons, till they obtained permission to depart on terms similar to those, which had been stipulated with Hastings<sup>41</sup>.

The open hostility of these adventurers was not more formidable than the suspicious fidelity of their countrymen, who under Gothrun and Cuthred had formerly settled in East-Anglia and Northumbria. Both these princes were now dead, and neither oaths nor hostages could secure the obedience of their former retainers. Some time before the evacuation of Thorney, Alfred had received intelligence that these faithless vassals had equipped two powerful fleets, with one of which they were besieging Exeter, while the other ravaged the northern shore of Devon. To add to his perplexity the perfidy of Hastings was now become manifest. He had indeed abandoned Milton, but it was only to cross the river, and take possession of Beamfleet

891.

<sup>40</sup> Chron. Sax. 94. Hunt. 201. West. 178.

<sup>41</sup> Chron. Sax. 93. Ethelwerd, 482. This island is generally supposed to be the Mersey at the mouth of the Coln in Essex. But

Ethelwerd calls it Thorney: and from the situation I should conceive it to have been formed by the river Coln, which enters the Thames near Staines.



CHAP.  
IV.

Who retires  
to France.

The war con-  
tinues.

on the coast of Essex, where he had been joined by the fleet from Apuldre. In this emergency the king divided his forces. With the cavalry he hastened to Exeter, and drove the besiegers to their ships: Ethered with the remainder surprised Beamfleet in the absence of Hastings, and obtained possession of his treasures, his wife, and his children. This loss humbled the pride of the barbarian: he solicited a pacification: Alfred, in opposition to the advice of his council, ordered the prisoners to be restored; and Hastings promised to leave the island for ever<sup>42</sup>. Whether he performed his engagement, we are not told: but from this moment he disappears from the pages of the Saxon annalists; and before the close of the century we find him in France, pursuing his usual career of devastation. At last he accepted from Charles the simple the city and territory of Chartres, and condescended to become the vassal of a throne, which he had so often shaken to its foundation<sup>43</sup>.

However this may be, the adventurers from Apuldre and the fugitives from Thorney took possession of Shobury on the coast of Essex; and their numbers were increased by the arrival of auxiliaries from East-Anglia and Northumbria. On a sudden, leaving a sufficient garrison for the defence of the place, they burst from their cantonments, swept with rapidity the left bank of the Thames, crossed the country to the Severn, and plundered without opposition both sides of that river. At the first alarm the men of Mercia and Wessex, and the Britons of Wales hastened to oppose the depredators, who at Buttington found themselves surrounded by three armies under Ethered, Athelm, and Ethelnoth. For several weeks they supported with patience the hardships of a siege: but, as soon as their horses were devoured, famine compelled them to make a desperate attempt,

<sup>42</sup> Chron. Sax. 93, 94. Flor. 596. <sup>43</sup> Wil. Gemet. 221. 228. Bouquet, vii. 221. 228.

and with immense loss they forced a way through their enemies, traversed Mercia, and regained their fortress at Shobury. Here they reposed themselves till their losses were repaired by the arrival of new adventurers: and then, bursting like a torrent through Mercia, they took possession of Chester and the Wirall. Alfred was at the time cruising with his fleet in the channel. He hastened to the Wirall; but when he had examined the position of the enemy, despaired of being able to force their lines, and contented himself with driving away the cattle, and destroying the corn in the neighbourhood. Famine compelled the barbarians to seek new adventures. They ravaged North Wales: but finding the royal army in their way, suddenly returned, directed their march through Northumbria into East-Anglia, and by that circuitous route, regained their former station in Essex. It might have been expected that after so many failures, they would have abandoned the island. Alfred heard with pleasure that they had put to sea with their families and plunder: but in a few days they were discovered in the Thames near London, and steering their course up the Lea, selected a strong position about twenty miles from that capital, and made it their head quarters during the winter<sup>44</sup>.

895.

In the ensuing spring, the citizens harassed by the neighbourhood of the Danes, attempted to storm their intrenchments, but were repulsed with considerable slaughter. To protect the harvest, Alfred encamped on the banks of the Lea, and, as he was riding one day, discovered a spot, in which by diverting the course of the water, and raising obstructions in the bed of the river, it was easy to prevent the egress of the enemies' fleet. The work was soon completed, and for its protection a castle was

896.

<sup>44</sup> Chron. Sax. 94—96. Flor. 596, 597

CHAP.  
IV.

---

Its termina-  
tion.

897.

Battles by sea.

erected on each bank. The Northmen, foiled by the king's ingenuity, abandoned their position; and, though they were pursued by the Saxon cavalry, reached Bridgenorth on the Severn. Here they passed the winter without molestation. But their spirit was broken: dissension prevailed among their leaders, and in the spring they disbanded themselves, separating into small bodies, and taking different directions. Many obtained settlements among the East-Anglians and Northumbrians: the remainder sailed to their countrymen on the banks of the Seine <sup>45</sup>.

But though the great body of the barbarians had retired from the contest, several small marauding parties continued to hover round the coast, and often inflicted the most serious injuries on the inhabitants. On one occasion six Danish vessels were seen to enter the strait between the isle of Wight and the coast of Hampshire: and were quickly pursued by a Saxon squadron of nine sail. The Northmen had divided their force. Three of their ships lay dry on the beach, while the crews were employed in pursuit of plunder: the other three rode at anchor to receive the attack of the Saxons. In the unequal contest which followed, two of these were captured: the third with only five men on board contrived to escape to a port in East-Anglia. The engagement was hardly terminated when the Danes returned from their expedition on shore; and the ebbing of the tide left all the English vessels aground, three near to the enemy, the other six at a considerable distance. This accident awakened the hopes of the barbarians, who fearlessly crossed the sands on foot, and made an attack on the nearest vessels. In this bold though unsuccessful attempt they lost one hundred and twenty men: and yet by their superior skill were the first to get off

<sup>45</sup> Chron. Sax. 96, 97.



their ships and put to sea. One of the three escaped : the others were driven on the coast of Sussex, where their crews were seized and executed as pirates. During the summer no fewer than twenty Danish vessels were captured <sup>46</sup>.

The death of Alfred happened on the 26th of October, in the year 900 or 901. He left two sons, Edward who succeeded him, and Ethelwerd, who received from his father a learned education, and whose sons perished at the celebrated battle of Brunanburg <sup>47</sup>. His daughters were Ethelflæda, married to Ethered of Mercia, Ethelgiva abbess of Shaftesbury ; and Alfritha, wedded to Baldwin count of Flanders, and son of the celebrated Judith.

900.  
Death of Al  
fred.

The will of Alfred is deserving of notice from the interesting information which it affords respecting the transmission of property among the Saxons <sup>48</sup>. Egbert had entailed his estates on his male descendants to the exclusion of females : “ to the spear-side and not to the spindle-side.” Ethelwulf made Ethelbert, his second son, king of Kent : to Ethelbald, Ethered, and Alfred, he bequeathed at his death certain lands, which were to descend unimpaired to the survivor of the three. When Ethelbald died, Ethelbert claimed the kingdom : and a compromise was effected among the brothers, according to which Ethered and Alfred surrendered to the king their joint interest in the lands bequeathed by Ethelwulf, which he immediately restored to them with the addition of all such estates as he had acquired either by his personal exertions, or with their assistance. After the

<sup>46</sup> Chron. Sax. 98, 99.

<sup>47</sup> This Ethelwerd, who died in 922 (Flor. 602). has generally been confounded with Ethelwerd the historian, who wrote in the reign of Edward the martyr, and who says expressly that he was descended not from Alfred, but from Alfred's brother and pre-

decessor Ethered. Ethelw. præf. 473.

<sup>48</sup> A Latin but very faulty translation may be seen in Wise's Asser, p. 74. A more accurate version has been made by Manning from the Saxon original in the register of the abbey of Newminster at Winchester, preserved in the library of Mr. Astle.

CHAP.  
IV.

death of Ethelred, the two remaining brothers made a new agreement in presence of their nobles, by which it was settled that the survivor should inherit the personal estate of the other, and the lands originally bequeathed by their father : but that he should faithfully divide among his nephews all the other real property which both had acquired by grant, purchase, or any other means. Alfred, having stated these particulars, informs us, that in order to dispose by will of what belonged to him by the death of Ethelred, he assembled the thanes of Wessex at Langdon. “I prayed them,” he adds “for my love (and gave them security that I would never bear them ill will for speaking justly) not to be prevented by fear or love from deciding right : lest any man should say that I had defrauded my kins-folks.” The thanes approved his title to the property. “It is all,” said they, “delivered there into thy hand. Therefore thou mayest bequeath and give it either to a relation or a stranger, as thou thinkest best.” The next day the king in their presence revoked all his former wills, divided his lands among his two sons, his three daughters, his two nephews, his cousin Osferth and his wife Alswitha<sup>49</sup>. He then left sums of money to all the above, to his ealdormen, to his servants, and his bishops: fifty mancuses of gold to fifty priests, fifty to the poor ministers of God, fifty to poor people in distress, and fifty to the church in which he should be buried. At the end he strictly forbad his heirs to invade the liberty of those men, whom he had made free. “For God’s love, and for the advantage of my soul, I will that they be masters of their own freedom, and of their own will ; and in the name of the living God I entreat that no man disturb them by exaction of money or in any

<sup>49</sup> If any of the lands which he left to females had descended to him from Egbert, he desired his heirs male to take the lands, and give to the females an equivalent in money.

“ other manner : but that they be left at liberty to serve any lord  
“ whom they may chuse.”

CHAP.  
IV.

---

## EDWARD.

The succession of Edward was opposed by his cousin Ethelwold, who claimed the crown as the representative of Ethered, the elder brother of the late monarch. His pretensions were over-ruled by the decision of the Witena-gemot : and the discontented prince, apparently under pretence of recovering the hereditary patrimony of his father, assembled his retainers, and occupied the castles of Christchurch and Wimburn. In the latter place he forcibly married a nun out of the convent, and announced his resolution never to surrender the fortress but with his life. The approach of Edward to Badberry suggested a less hazardous policy. He retired in secrecy, and reached the northern Danes, who pitying his misfortunes, or admiring his spirit, gave him the title of king, and hastened to fight under his banner. In a short time the exile saw himself at the head of an army of adventurers from Northumbria, East-Anglia and France. With these he landed in Essex, and obtained possession of that county. The next year he marched through Mercia as far as Cricklade, crossed the Thames, and pillaged the greater part of Wiltshire. But at the approach of Edward he retired : and the West-Saxons in their turn retaliated on the Danes the injuries, which they had inflicted on Mercia and Wessex. From St. Edmund's dyke in Cambridgeshire they spread the flames of war to the mouth of the Ouse : and crossing that river, continued in the fenny country the work of devastation. At last Edward

Ethelwold as-  
pires to the  
crown.  
901.

904.

906.



CHAP.  
IV.

---

and perishes  
in battle.

thought proper to withdraw his army. In defiance of repeated orders the men of Kent remained behind : they were surrounded by the Danes ; and a most murderous conflict ensued. Two ealdormen, several thanes, two abbots, and the greater number of the common men perished, but the East-Anglians purchased their advantage at a high price. They lost their king Eohric : and to Edward the death of Ethelwold was of greater consequence than the most brilliant victory <sup>50</sup>.

Edward takes  
possession of  
Mercia.

From this period the king's attention was principally directed to two great objects, the union of Mercia with his own dominions, and the subjugation of the Northumbrian and East-Anglian Danes. I. For a few years the government of Mercia, during the frequent infirmities of Ethered, was intrusted to the hands of Ethelfleda, a princess whose masculine virtues and martial exploits are celebrated in the highest strains of panegyric by our ancient historians. At the death of her husband, Edward seized and united to Wessex the two important cities of London and Oxford : nor does Ethelfleda appear to have resented this partition of her territory. She continued to govern the remainder with the title of the lady of Mercia, and cordially supported her brother in all his operations against the common enemy. But that respect, which Edward had paid to the merit of his sister, he refused to the weakness of his niece Elfwina. When Ethelfleda died in 920, pretending that the young princess had promised marriage to Reynold the Dane, he entered Mercia at the head of his army, sent her an honourable captive into Wessex, abolished every trace of a separate government, and moulded the whole of the Saxon territories into one undivided kingdom <sup>51</sup>.

<sup>50</sup> Chron. Sax. 100, 101. Hunt. f. 202.  
West. 180, 181.

<sup>51</sup> Chron. Sax. 103. 107. Ingulf. 28.  
Caradoc, 47.

II. Had the Danes in England been united under the same monarch, they would probably have been more than a match for the whole power of Edward: but they still preserved the manners and spirit of their ancestors, and diminished their national strength by dividing it among a number of equal and independent chieftains. After the death of Ethelwold five years elapsed without any important act of hostility: in 910 Edward conducted his forces into Northumbria, and spent five weeks in ravaging the country, and collecting slaves and plunder. The next year the Northmen returned the visit. They penetrated to the Avon: but in their retreat were overtaken by the Saxons, and suffered a defeat, which was long a favourite subject among our national poets. Edward now adopted the plan, which had been so successfully pursued by his father, of building fortresses for the defence of his dominions, and the annoyance of the enemy. A line drawn from the mouth of the Thames, through Bedford, to Chester, will pretty accurately describe the boundary which separated the hostile nations. To curb the East-Anglians the king built Witham and Hertford: while Ethelfleda, at his suggestion, erected similar fortresses at Bridgenorth, Tamworth, Stafford, Warwick, and other places in the vicinity. Their utility was soon demonstrated in the failure of a Danish expedition from the coast of Armorica. After ravaging the shore of Wales, the barbarians attempted to penetrate into Herefordshire. They were opposed by the inhabitants of the neighbouring burghs, driven into a wood, and compelled to give hostages, as a security for their peaceable departure. Edward was, however, suspicious of their honour, and lined the northern coast of Somersetshire with troops. As he expected, they made two attempts to land in the night at Watchet and at Portlock, and were defeated at both places with considerable slaughter. The remains fled to

CHAP.  
IV.Success of  
Edward and  
Ethelfleda.

one of the uninhabited isles in the mouth of the Severn, but want soon compelled them to abandon their asylum, and seek new adventures in Wales and Ireland <sup>52</sup>.

The royal brother and sister, having thus provided for the security of their own territories, proceed to attack those of their enemies. Ethelfleda took Derby by storm, though the Danes obstinately defended themselves in the streets; and then laid siege to Leicester, which, with the adjacent territory, was subdued by the terror of her arms. Edward, on his side, built two forts at Buckingham to overawe the Northmen of the adjoining counties, took Bedford by capitulation, and, advancing into Northamptonshire, fortified Towcester. The Danes alarmed at the progressive encroachments of the Saxons, made, in the same year, four attempts to obtain possession of the nearest fortresses. One party occupied Tempsford, and besieged Bedford: another stormed the walls of Towcester: a third attacked Wigingamere, and a fourth surrounded Malden. In each instance the garrisons defended themselves till the royal army came to their assistance; and Edward, eager to improve his success, took possession of Huntingdon and Colchester. The Danes were dispirited by so many losses: and all their chieftains from the Willand in Northamptonshire to the mouth of the Thames, submitted to the conqueror, took the oaths of allegiance, and acknowledged him for their "lord and protector" <sup>53</sup>.

Edward pursues his success.

During the three next years the king with unceasing vigilance pursued the same line of policy. He successively carried his arms to every part of the ancient boundary of Mercia, and erected fortresses at Manchester, at Thelwall on the left bank of the Mersey, at Nottingham, and at Stamford. By these con-

<sup>52</sup> Chron. Sax. 102--105. <sup>53</sup> To hlaforde and to mund-boran. Chron. Sax. 109. Also, 106--109.



quests Edward acquired more real power than had ever been possessed by any of his predecessors. All the tribes from Northumbria to the channel formed but one kingdom subject to his immediate controul: while the other nations in the island, warned by the fate of their neighbours, anxiously solicited his friendship. The Danes and Angles of the north made him offers of submission: the kings of the Scots and Strath-clyde Britons chose him for their "lord and father:" and the princes of Wales paid him a yearly tribute. Yet he was not long permitted to enjoy this pre-eminence. He died in 925 at Farrington, and his death was immediately followed by that of his eldest son Ethelward at Oxford<sup>54</sup>.

924.

Dies

Edward had been thrice married, and left a numerous family. Of the sons, who survived him, three successively ascended the throne, Athelstan, Edmund, and Edred. Six of his daughters were married to foreign princes, some of them the most powerful sovereigns in Europe: and three, Elfleda, Ethelhilda, and Eadburga embraced a religious life. Of Eadburga the early history is curious. She was the youngest of Edward's children, and had been led by her father, when she was about three years old, into a room, in which he had previously placed a collection of female trinkets, and a chalice with the book of the gospels. The child ran to the latter, and Edward, interpreting her choice as the destination of heaven, embraced her and exclaimed: "thou shalt be gratified

His family

Eadburga

<sup>54</sup> Chron. Sax. 111. The chronicle tells us that Edward built a town and fortified it at Badecanwyllan in Peaceland, which Gibson conceives to be Bakewell in Derbyshire. I think that Peaceland means Lothian, which according to Camden was anciently called Pietland (Brit. p. 1181), and that Badecanwyllan, the bathing wells, is probably Bathgates. For it was on occasion of his building

this fortress that "the king of the Scots and "all the people of the Scots, and the king of "the Strathclyde Gaels, and all the Strathclyde Gaels (the men of Galloway. West-min. 184) chose him for their father and "lord." Chron. Sax. 110. In other words, they did him homage: *hominium fecerunt*. Mailros, 146.

CHAP.  
IV.

“ in thy wishes ; nor will thy parents regret, if they yield to thee  
“ in virtue.” She was delivered to the care of her grandmother  
Alswitha, and of the nuns of Winchester ; with whom she spent  
a long course of years, eminent among the sisters for her humi-  
lity and devotion <sup>55</sup>.

Edward forti-  
fied the  
burghs.

In legislative and literary merit Edward was much inferior to his father : he surpassed him in the magnitude and the durability of his conquests. The subjection of the Danes to Alfred was only nominal : and at his death the kingdom, which he left to his son, was bounded by the Mercian counties on the banks of the Thames and the Severn. Edward by steadily pursuing the same object, and ensuring the submission of each district before he proceeded to further conquests, extended his rule over all the Danes of Mercia and East-Anglia. Wherever he penetrated, he selected a strong position, and while a multitude of workmen surrounded it with a wall of stone, encamped in the neighbourhood for their protection <sup>56</sup>. That these fortifications were equal to their object is evident from the fact, that not one of them was ever captured by the enemy : and they were productive in after ages, of consequences, which this monarch could not possibly have foreseen. They were long the principal towns in England, and served to multiply a class of men of a higher order, and distinguished by greater privileges than the ceorles or husbandmen. To the burghers was intrusted the defence of their walls and of the adjacent country. By living in society, and having arms in their hands, they grew into consideration, and insensibly acquired such a degree of power and wealth as ultimately to open to their representatives the national council, and thus lay the foun-

<sup>55</sup> Malms. de Reg. ii. 13. De Pont. ii. f. 140.

<sup>56</sup> Chron. Sax. 106. 108.

dation of that influence, which the people enjoy in our present constitution.

CHAP.  
IV.

During his reign an important alteration was effected in the ecclesiastical economy of the kingdom of Wessex. The frequent wars which had preceded the restoration of Alfred, had caused a relaxation of discipline, and, in many places, had revived the superstitions of paganism. Pope Formosus sought by threats and exhortations to awaken the zeal of the West-Saxon prelates, and suggested the propriety of increasing the number of their bishoprics. About the year 910 the two churches of Winchester and Sherburn became vacant, and Plegmund, archbishop of Canterbury, improved the opportunity to make a new division of the kingdom, and to establish three more dioceses for the counties of Somerset, Devon, and Cornwall<sup>57</sup>.

Ecclesiastical  
affairs.

The most important of the religious foundations at this period was the new minster at Winchester. At the death of Alfred, the aged Grimbold had requested permission to retire to the friends of his youth, the clergy of St. Omers: but Edward, unwilling to be deprived of his services, prevailed on him to remain in England, by promising to provide for him according to the intention of the late king, a monastery in the neighbourhood of the royal city. From the bishop Denulf and the canons he purchased three acres of land, on which he erected a spacious church and buildings for the accommodation of Grimbold and a society of clergymen, and bestowed on them the lands which his father had destined for that purpose in his will. To this new minster he transferred the remains of Alfred: and in the same place his own body, and that of his son Ethelward were deposited<sup>58</sup>.

<sup>57</sup> Wilk. Con. i. 199, 200. Eadm. Nov. v. 128.

<sup>58</sup> Monast. Ang. p. 208, 209. Annal. de Hyde apud Alf. iii. p. 201. 205. Chron.

Sax. p. 111. During Edward's reign the English made frequent pilgrimages to Rome. In 921 many were massacred in passing the Alps by the Saracens from Fraxinetum. A



CHAP.  
IV.

## ATHELSTAN,

## THE FIRST MONARCH OF ENGLAND.

Succession of  
Athelstan.  
924.

By the will of the late monarch the crown was left to Athelstan his eldest son, about thirty years of age. The claim of the new king was immediately admitted by the thanes of Mercia, and after a short time by those of Wessex. The ceremony of his coronation was performed at Kingston by Athelm, archbishop of Canterbury <sup>59</sup>.

Tale about the  
mother of  
Athelstan.

Of the mother of Athelstan, Malmsbury has told a romantic tale, on the faith of an ancient ballad. She was the daughter of a neat-herd, and called Egwina. Her superior beauty, even in her childhood, had attracted admiration: and a fortunate dream was said to portend that she would prove the mother of a powerful monarch. This report excited the curiosity of the lady who had nursed the children of Alfred. She took Egwina to her house, and educated her as one of her own family. When prince Edward casually visited his former nurse, he saw the daughter of the neat-herd, and was captivated with her beauty. Athelstan was the fruit of their mutual affection <sup>60</sup>. From this very doubtful story it has been inferred that the king was an illegitimate son: but the force of the inference is weakened by the testimony of a contemporary poetess, who in mentioning the birth of Athelstan, alludes to the inferior descent of his mother, but at the same

few years later many others met with the same fate. Chron. Flodoardi apud Bouquet, vii. 177. 180.

<sup>59</sup> Chron. Sax. 111. Malm. 26. In Malmsbury we have three different accounts of Athelstan, which should be carefully distinguished. The first he compiled himself from documents within his reach. The second he abridged from the longer work of a con-

temporary poet, whose extravagant praises of his patron he reduced to the standard of probability and common sense. The last is a collection of facts for which no written authority could be found: but which were mentioned in Anglo-Saxon songs transmitted from one generation to another. Malm. 26—29

<sup>60</sup> Malm. 29.

time calls her the partner of Edward's throne<sup>61</sup>. The child was the delight of his grandfather Alfred, who created him a knight by investing him with a mantle of purple, and a short sword in a golden scabbard. After the death of his mother he was intrusted to the care of his aunt Ethelfleda, a fortunate circumstance, as it probably caused his interests to be, at this period, so eagerly espoused by the natives of Mercia<sup>62</sup>.

In Wessex Athelstan had to guard against the secret designs of his enemies, of whom the most dangerous was the etheling Alfred. The associates of this prince had conspired to seize the person of the king at Winchester, and to deprive him of sight. On the discovery of the plot Alfred demanded, according to the forms of the Saxon jurisprudence, to clear himself by oath: and Athelstan, who dared not refuse the privilege, sent him to Rome in the custody of his messengers, to perform the ceremony in the presence of the pontiff. The unfortunate etheling swore to his innocence on the altar of St. Peter. But as he survived his oath only three days, his death was considered a sufficient proof of his guilt by the witan, who adjudged his estates to the king. By him they were given to the monastery of Malmsbury<sup>63</sup>.

Alfred aspires  
to the crown.

Sightric, the Danish king of Northumbria, had braved the power of Edward: he solicited the friendship of Athelstan, and asked his sister Editha in marriage. The two princes met at Tamworth. Sightric was baptized, received the hand of Editha, and accepted from Athelstan a grant of what he already possessed, the country between the Tees and the frith of Forth<sup>64</sup>. It is said, that the barbarian soon repented of his own choice, and abandoned both his wife and religion<sup>65</sup>: it is certain that

Athelstan  
takes possession  
of North-  
umbria.  
925.

<sup>61</sup> Quem peperit regi consors non incluta regni.  
*Roswitha, de gest. Odon.* p. 165.

<sup>62</sup> Malm. 27.

<sup>63</sup> Malm. 28, 29.

<sup>64</sup> Malm. 27. Wallingford, 540.

<sup>65</sup> Westmin. 185.

CHAP.  
IV.

he died at the end of twelve months, and that Athelstan seized the opportunity to annex Northumbria to his own dominions. The two sons of Sightric fled before the superior power of the Anglo-Saxon; Godfrid into Scotland, and Anlaff into Ireland. Anlaff had the good fortune to meet with friends and associates: but Constantine, the king of the Scots, dared not afford an asylum to the enemy of Athelstan; and Godfrid, after a fruitless attempt to surprise the city of York, voluntarily surrendered himself to the mercy of the conqueror. He was received with humanity and treated with honour: but the mind of the Dane could not brook the idea of dependence, and on the fourth day he fled to the coast, and commenced the profession of a sea-king<sup>66</sup>.

Extends his  
authority over  
the Britons.

The ambition of Athelstan now grasped at the sovereignty of the whole island. In the north he levelled with the ground the castle of York, the principal bulwark of the Danish power: Ealdulf, a Saxon chieftain, was compelled to yield to him the strong castle of Bamborough: and the king of Scots, and the prince of Cumberland obeyed his summons, and acknowledged his superiority. On the west he intimidated the Britons of Wales and Cornwall. The chieftains of the former waited on him at Hereford, where they stipulated to confine their countrymen to the right bank of the Wye, and to pay a yearly tribute of twenty pounds of gold, three hundred pounds of silver, and five thousand head of cattle. The Cornish Britons had hitherto reached from the Land's-end to the river Ex, and possessed one half of Exeter. He commanded them to retire beyond the Tamar; surrounded the city with a strong wall of stone; and frequently honoured it with his presence. To confirm his claim of sovereignty, he convened at a place called Eadmote all the

<sup>66</sup> Malm. 27.



princes of the Scots, Cambrians and Britons, who, placing their hands between his, swore to him that fealty, which the Saxon vassal was accustomed to swear to his lord <sup>67</sup>.

During this tide of success, and when Athelstan had just reached the zenith of his power, Edwin, the eldest of his brothers, perished at sea. The traditionary ballads, consulted by Malmsbury, attribute his death to the jealousy of the king, who convinced of his own illegitimacy, suspected Edwin of aspiring to that crown which belonged to him by the right of inheritance. It was in vain that the young prince asserted his innocence upon oath: and when his oath was disregarded, threw himself on the affection of his brother. The tyrant thought his own safety incompatible with the life of Edwin: and, while he affected the praise of lenity by commuting the sentence of death into that of banishment, committed his victim to the mercy of the waves in an open and shattered boat, with only one companion. The prince, in a paroxysm of despair, leaped into the sea: his attendant coolly waited for the flow of the tide, and was wafted back to the shore in the neighbourhood of Dover. Athelstan, it is added, when it was too late, repented of his cruelty, submitted to a course of canonical penance, and built the church of Middleton, that prayers might be daily offered for the soul of his murdered brother. Such is the tale which Malmsbury has preserved, but of which he does not presume to affirm or deny the truth <sup>68</sup>. It seems not to deserve much credit. No trace of

Death of his  
brother Ed-  
win.

<sup>67</sup> Malm. 27, 28. Flor. 602. Mail. 147. The contemporary writer in Malmsbury makes the tribute of the Welsh amount to 25,000 cattle. I have preferred the more moderate account of Caradoc, p. 48.

<sup>68</sup> Non constanter sed titubanter. Malm. 25. Non ut defendam, sed ne lectorum scientiam defraudem. Id. 29. The story is repeated

by Sim. 134. 154. Hoved. 242. West. 186. Brompt. 836. It may however be observed that Simeon, Hoveden, and Westminster, have all copied the same words from one common document. Florence (603), who usually copies the same document, has in this instance deserted it, and omitted entirely the death of Edwin.

CHAP.  
IV.

it is to be discovered in the contemporary biographer of Athelstan: and in the poem from which it was extracted, it was coupled with another tale evidently fabulous<sup>69</sup>. That Edwin perished at sea, cannot be doubted: but the king appears rather to have deplored his death as a calamity than to have regretted it as a crime. The account of Huntingdon contains all that can now be known of the transaction: "soon afterwards he had " the misfortune to lose in the waves of the ocean his brother " Edwin, a youth of great vigour and good disposition<sup>70</sup>."

Scots rebel  
and submit.

The king of Scots eagerly sought to free himself from his dependance on the English monarch: and with this view entered into alliance with Howel, king of Wales. But the power of Athelstan was irresistible. At the head of his army he extended his ravages as far as Dunfædor and Westmore, while his fleet pillaged the coast to the extremity of Caithness. Constantine was compelled to implore the clemency of the conqueror, and to surrender his son as an hostage for his fidelity<sup>71</sup>.

Invasion of  
Anlaff.  
937.

Three years afterwards the superiority of the English king was threatened by a more formidable confederacy. In 937 a fleet of six hundred and fifteen sail cast anchor in the Humber. It obeyed the commands of Anlaff, who was come with an army of Irish and northern adventurers to reconquer the dominions of his father. His arrival was the signal of war to his confederates,

<sup>69</sup> The ballad proceeds to say that it was the butler of Athelstan, who urged his master to the death of Edwin: that one day as he waited on the king, his foot slipped, and recovering himself with the other, he exclaimed: thus brother helps brother. The words reminding Athelstan of the fate of Edwin, he ordered the butler to be put to death. Malm. 22. This kind of story seems to have been a favourite with the Anglo-Saxons. The reader will meet with another edition of it in the history of Edward the confessor.

<sup>70</sup> That Edwin perished at sea is asserted

by the Saxon chronicle (111), and Mailros (147). The words of Huntingdon are: *nec multo post adversa percussus fortuna fratrem suum Edwinum magni vigoris juvenem et bonæ indolis maris fluctibus flebiliter amisit.* Hunt. 204. 158, 159.

<sup>71</sup> Chron. Sax. 111. Sim. Dun. 134. Floren. 603. On this account Ethelwerd, a contemporary, says, *Colla subdunt Scoti pariterque Picti, uno solidantur Britannidis arva.* Ethelw. 482. *Scotiam sibi subjugando perdomuit.* Sim. Dun. 25.

the Scots and Britons, who under their respective princes directed their march to the same spot. The lieutenants of Athelstan, unable to repel the torrent, endeavoured to retard its progress. Negotiations were opened to gain time for the arrival of Athelstan, who not content with his own forces, had purchased the aid of several sea kings. As he passed through Beverley, he visited the church, offered his dagger on the altar, and vowed to redeem it, if he returned victorious, at a price worthy of a king. The armies were soon in the neighbourhood of each other, when Anlaff planned a midnight attack, in the hope of surprising and killing his adversary. To discover the quarters of Athelstan, he adopted an artifice familiar to the Northmen. The minstrel was in that age a sacred character ; and Anlaff with his harp in his hands fearlessly entered the English camp, mixed without suspicion among the troops, and was at last conducted to the royal pavilion. The king, who was at dinner, bade the stranger strike his harp, and rewarded him for his song. But the disguise of the pretended minstrel could not conceal him from the eye of a soldier, who had once served under his standard, but who disdained to betray his former leader. As soon as Anlaff was out of danger, this man related the circumstance to Athelstan, and to the charge of perfidy, indignantly replied : “ No ; “ I have shewn that my honour is above temptation ; and remember that if I had been perfidious to him, I might also have proved “ perfidious to you.” The king accepted the apology, and by his advice, removed to a distant part of the field. The ground which he had left, was afterwards occupied by the bishop of Sherburn. In the dead of the night the alarm was given : Anlaff with a body of chosen followers was in the midst of the camp ; and a bloody and doubtful conflict ensued. In the morning, when he



CHAP. had retired, it was discovered that the prelate had perished with  
IV. all his attendants<sup>72</sup>.

Victory of  
Brunan-  
burgh.

Two days after this occurrence was fought the battle of Brunanburgh, in Northumbria: a battle celebrated in the relics of Saxon and Scandinavian poetry. The multitude of the confederates consisted of five nations, Norwegians, Danes, Irish, Scots, and Britons: in the English army waved a hundred banners, and round each banner, if we may believe the exaggeration of a contemporary, were ranged a thousand warriors. The contest lasted till sunset. A northern sea-king, in the pay of Athelstan, was opposed to the Irish, and after an obstinate struggle drove them into a wood at no great distance. Turketul with the citizens of London, and Singin with the men of Worcestershire, penetrated into the midst of the Scots, killed the son of their king, and compelled Constantine to save himself by a precipitate flight. Anlaff still maintained his position against all the efforts of Athelstan and his West-Saxons: but the victors returning from the pursuit, fell on his rear, and decided the fortune of the day. The Northman escaped the sword of his enemies; but he left five confederate sea-kings, seven jarls, and many thousands of his followers, on the field of battle. "Never," says the native poet, "since the arrival of the Saxons and Angles, those artists of war, was such a carnage known in England." The conqueror in his return from the battle, redeemed his dagger from the church of Beverley with a grant of ample and most valuable privileges<sup>73</sup>.

Power of  
Athelstan.

This splendid victory crushed the enemies, and confirmed the ascendancy of Athelstan. By the Northmen he was distin-

<sup>72</sup> Malm. 26.

<sup>73</sup> Chron. Sax. 112-114. Egilli Saga

apud Johnstone, 31. Ingulf. 37. Mailros, 147. Malm. 27, 28.

guished with the appellation of "the conqueror"<sup>74</sup>. The British princes no longer disputed his authority: the chieftains of the East-Anglian and Northumbrian Danes, who under a nominal vassalage had so often maintained a real independence, entirely disappeared: and all the countries originally conquered and colonized by the different Saxon tribes became united under the same crown. To Athelstan belongs the glory of having established, what has ever since been called the kingdom of England. His predecessors, till the reign of Alfred, had been styled kings of Wessex. That monarch and his son Edward assumed the title of kings of the Anglo-Saxons. Athelstan sometimes called himself king of the English: at others claimed the more pompous designation of king of all Britain. Both these titles were indiscriminately employed by his immediate successors: but in the course of a century the latter fell into disuse: the former has been retained to the present age<sup>75</sup>.

As the power of the king became predominant in Britain, his influence began to be felt upon the continent. He maintained a friendly correspondence with several foreign courts; and three princes, destined to act important parts in the concerns of Europe, were educated under his protection. I. The first was Haco, the younger son of Harold Harfagre, the powerful king of Norway. When the father sent the child to the English court, he presented the king with a magnificent ship of which the sails were of purple, while the beak was covered with plates of gold, and the inside hung round with gilded shields. At the death of Harold, Eric the elder brother ascended the throne: but he

He protects  
foreign  
princes

Haco of Nor-  
way.

<sup>74</sup> Snorre, p. 119. He also calls him Athelstan the faithful. Ibid.

<sup>75</sup> For Alfred, see Heming. Chart. i. 42. Asser, 1. 3.: for Edward, Gale, iii. p. 362.: for Athelstan, id. p. 364. The coins in Camden Tab. 4, 5: in Hick's Diss. tab. ii. and the

MS. in the Cotton library, Tiberius, A. 2. Athelstan ab omnibus imperator totius Britanniae est pronuntiatus. Flor. 693. Subactis ubique hostibus totius Britanniae dominium obtinuit. Sim. Dun. 18.

CHAP.  
IV.Alan of Bre-  
tagne.Louis of  
France.

soon lost by his cruelty the affection of his subjects: and Athelstan sent his "foster son," with a powerful fleet to obtain possession of the sceptre. The enterprise succeeded: English missionaries under the protection of the new king disseminated the doctrines of the gospel; and the reign of Haco the good, is still celebrated in the annals of Norway<sup>76</sup>. II. A second ward of the English king was Alan of Bretagne. The charitable donations of Ethelwulf, Alfred, and Edward, to the churches of Armorica had given rise to an intercourse between the English and the transmarine Britons, who still, at the distance of four centuries, lamented their banishment from the land of their fathers<sup>77</sup>. When the Normans under Rollo depopulated Bretagne, numbers of the natives sought and obtained an asylum under the protection of Athelstan. Among the fugitives was Matheudoï, who had married the daughter of Alan the great: and who committed his infant son to the care of his friend. Athelstan stood sponsor to the young prince at his baptism, watched over his education: and at a proper age sent him back to his native country with the surviving exiles, and a band of English adventurers. The young Alan proved himself worthy of his protector: he recovered by degrees the territories of his grandfather: and by a long series of splendid actions made himself the sovereign of Bretagne<sup>78</sup>. III. Athelstan's own nephew was the third of his royal pupils. His sister Edgiva had been married to Charles the simple, king of France, to whom she bore a son Louis, who from his long exile in England, was surnamed d'outremer. Three years after his birth, her

<sup>76</sup> Malms. 28. Snorre, 121. 138. 160. Havnæ, 1777. Mr. Turner has the merit of calling the attention of writers to the connexion between Athelstan and the king of Norway. Vol. ii. 83—91.

<sup>77</sup> In exulatu atque in captivitate in Francia commoramur. Epist. Radbodi Dol. epis. Gale, iii. 364.

<sup>78</sup> Chron. Nannet. apud Bouquet, vii. 276 Gul. Gemet. iii. 1.



husband was imprisoned by the treachery of Herbert, count of Vermandois : but the queen escaped with her child, and was received with an affectionate welcome by her father Edward. When Athelstan succeeded to the throne, he was not indifferent to the interests of his sister and nephew. In 926 the friends of Charles made an attempt to obtain his freedom, and Louis was sent at their request to France : but the efforts of the royalists were speedily repressed, and the young prince sought again the protection of his uncle. After an exile of thirteen years he recovered the throne of his fathers. Athelstan had contracted a friendship with the duke of Normandy, who was induced at the death of Rodulf the successor of Charles, to espouse the interests of Louis<sup>79</sup>. An embassy from France, at the head of which was the archbishop of Sens, demanded the rightful descendant of Charlemagne : they swore in the hands of Athelstan and Edgiva, that he should be immediately put in possession of the royal authority : and Louis sailed to Boulogne with a splendid retinue of Anglo-Saxon thanes and prelates. He was received by a deputation of the French nobility, conducted in state to Laon, and crowned with the usual solemnity<sup>80</sup>. But he soon found himself opposed by the factions which had dethroned his father, and were now supported by Otho of Germany ; and therefore solicited the assistance of his uncle, whose fleet ravaged with impunity the lands of his enemies along the coast of Flanders<sup>81</sup>. As for Edgiva she continued to hold a distinguished place in the councils and court of her son, till in an unlucky hour she fixed her affections on the count of Meaux, the son of the man who had wrested the sceptre from her hus-

CHAP.  
IV.

923.

926.

930.

<sup>79</sup> Hugo Floriac. apud Bouquet, vii. 319. apud Bouquet, vii. 290. Chron. Osoran. Item, 304. Chron. Turon. ix. viii. 237.

<sup>80</sup> Flodoardi, Hist. iv. 26. Chron. Viridun. <sup>81</sup> Chron. Flodoard, vii. 193.

CHAP.  
IV.

951.

band. At her instigation he carried her off, as it were, by force, and married her as soon as they arrived in a place of apparent safety. Louis was indignant at the conduct of his mother. He immediately pursued the fugitives, made Edgiva his prisoner, and committed her to the custody of his queen Herberge<sup>82</sup>.

Marriages of  
his sisters.

Ethilda.

Besides Edgiva and the wife of Sightric the Northumbrian, Athelstan had seven other sisters, of whom three put on the veil, four were married to some of the most powerful princes in Europe. 1. In 926, Hugo the great, father to the founder of the Capetian dynasty, solicited the hand of Ethilda. He had been among the most active enemies of Charles the simple: but he had recently declared in favour of the captive monarch, and had selected for his ambassador Adulf of Flanders, the cousin of Athelstan. In the assembly of the witan at Abingdon were displayed the numerous and costly presents which he had sent, perfumes, jewels, relics, horses, the sword of Constantine the great, and the spear of Charlemagne. Before this splendid exhibition his former demerits disappeared, and Ethilda became the wife of a noble Frank, who without the title, possessed the wealth and power of a king.

Editha.

2. Soon after the battle of Brunanburgh, the emperor, Henry the Fowler, sought a consort for his son Otho among the sisters of Athelstan. The king appears to have been flattered by the request: and to return the compliment, he sent both Editha and Adiva to Germany, that the imperial suitor might make his choice. Before their departure each princess received presents from the king, the thanes, and the prelates, the only dower she could offer to her future husband. They were conducted as far

<sup>82</sup> Daniel, *Hist. de France*, ann. 951. taph may be seen in Mabillon, *Analec.* i. Chron. Flooardi, viii. 207. Edgiva's epi- 427.

as Cologne by the chancellor Turketul. Otho preferred Editha: her sister was married to a prince whose name has not been preserved, but whose dominions lay among the Alps. 3. There only remained Elgiva, the youngest and most beautiful of the daughters of Edward. She accepted the hand of Louis, prince of Aquitain <sup>83</sup>.

Adiva.  
Elgiva.

In the year 940 Athelstan died, regretted by his subjects, and admired by the surrounding nations. He was of a slender habit, and middling stature. His hair, which was yellow, he wore in ringlets entwined with thread of gold. Among the higher orders of the nobility he maintained that reserve which became his superior station: to the lower classes of his subjects he was affable and condescending. From his father he had inherited a considerable treasure: but his liberality was not inferior to his opulence, and the principal use which he made of money was to enrich others. To his vassals he was accustomed to make many and valuable presents: the spoil collected in his military expeditions was always divided among his followers: and his munificence to the clergy was proved by the churches which he erected or repaired <sup>84</sup>. Neither ought his charities to be left unnoticed. He annually redeemed at his private expense a certain number of convicts, who had forfeited their liberty by their crimes: and his bailiffs were ordered, under severe penalties, to support a pauper of English extraction on every two of their farms <sup>85</sup>. As a legislator he was anxious to suppress offences, to secure an impartial administration of justice, and to preserve the standard coin of the realm in a state of purity. With this view he held

Athelstan's  
death.

Manners.

Charities.

Laws.

<sup>83</sup> For these marriages see Ethelwerd (473), Ingulf (37, 38), Malmsbury (25. 28), Westminster (185, 186), and Hrosvitia, de gestis Odonis. 161—165.

<sup>84</sup> All these particulars are mentioned by his

contemporary biographer apud Malms. 27.

<sup>85</sup> Each pauper received annually a complete suit of clothes, and monthly a measure of meal, a gallon of bacon, or a ram worth four pence. Leg. Sax. 56.



CHAP.  
IV.

assemblies of the witan at Greatly, Faversham, Exeter, and Thundersfield: associations were formed under his auspices for the protection of property: and regulations were enacted respecting the apprehension, the trial, and the punishment of malefactors. Negligence in the execution of the laws was severely chastised. A thane paid to the crown a fine of sixty shillings: a superior magistrate was amerced in double that sum with the forfeiture of his office<sup>86</sup>. In his will he had chosen the abbey of Mahnsbury for the place of his sepulture. There he had deposited the remains of his cousins Ælfwin and Ethelwin, who fell at Brunanburgh; and to the same place his own body was conveyed in solemn pomp, followed by a long train of prelates and nobles, and surrounded by the presents which he had bequeathed to the monastery<sup>87</sup>.

## EDMUND.

Northumbrian  
princes.

The civil wars, which formerly desolated Northumbria, have been mentioned already: after the extinction of its native kings it continued to present similar scenes of anarchy and bloodshed. Its chieftains were partly of Saxon, partly of Danish origin, alike in disposition and habits, but enemies to each other, and equally regardless of treachery or of violence when it could contribute to their aggrandizement. Every sea-king was certain of finding an asylum among them: and, if he had the ambition to aspire to a throne, there were never wanting men, who were willing to draw the sword in his cause. Sometimes a fortunate adventurer extended his authority over the whole nation; sometimes two or more shared the sovereign power among them. But they were no better than flitting shadows of royalty,

<sup>86</sup> Leg. 54—69.

<sup>87</sup> Malm. 29.

following each other in rapid succession. After a year or two many of them perished by the treachery of affected friendship, or the sword of declared enmity ; many were compelled to abandon the country, and revert to the pursuits of piracy : hardly one transmitted the inheritance of his authority to his children. Occasionally necessity extorted from them an acknowledgment of the superiority claimed by the kings of Wessex : but the moment the danger was removed, they uniformly forgot their oaths, and resumed the exercise of their independence. It seems to have mattered little, whether these princes were natives or foreigners : the pride of the inhabitants was satisfied, provided they did not crouch to the pretensions of the southern Saxons, whose superior civilization was viewed with contempt by the barbarism of the Northumbrians.

After the battle of Brunanburgh the terror of Athelstan had kept this turbulent people under some restraint : but at his death their ancient spirit revived : Anlaff was invited to hazard a third time the fortune of war : and within a few weeks the Humber was covered by a numerous fleet of foreign adventurers. The sea-king rested his hope of success on the rapidity of his motions, and, marching into Mercia, obtained possession of Tamworth. Edmund, the brother of Athelstan, and about eighteen years of age, had been crowned at Kingston, and hastened to oppose the invaders. The operations of the campaign are involved in much obscurity. The success which attended the first efforts of Edmund, seems to have been balanced by a subsequent defeat : and the respective losses of the two princes induced them to listen to the suggestions of the archbishops Odo and Wolstan, who laboured to effect a pacification. The vanity of our chroniclers has exhibited the transaction in partial colours : but the conditions of the treaty prove the superiority

Anlaff's success.  
910.

CHAP.  
IV.His death.  
941.Edmund con-  
quers North-  
umbria.

942.

943.

944.

And Cumbria.  
945.

of Anlaff. Edmund ceded in full sovereignty to the Dane all the provinces on the north of the Watling street <sup>88</sup>.

The sea-king did not long enjoy his good fortune. He died the next year, and Edmund improved the opportunity to recover the dominions which he had lost. His measures were planned with foresight, and executed with vigour. The five-burghs, as they were called, of Derby, Leicester, Nottingham, Stamford, and Lincoln, had long been inhabited by the descendants of Danes, who, though they made a profession of obedience to the English monarchs, considered it a duty to favour the enterprises of their kinsmen. These towns formed as it were a chain of fortresses running through Mercia, and garrisoned by enemies. The king began his operations by reducing them in succession. Their inhabitants were expelled, and replaced by English colonies <sup>89</sup>. Edmund next proceeded into Northumbria. That country was already divided between two princes, one of whom like his predecessor was called Anlaff, the other styled himself Reginald, king of York. They submitted without resistance to the superior power of Edmund, acknowledged themselves his vassals, and embraced christianity. The king stood sponsor to Anlaff, at his baptism; and adopted Reginald for his son, when he received confirmation. Yet he had hardly left the country, when they again asserted their independence. Their perfidy soon met with its punishment. The archbishop of York and the ealdorman of Mercia united their forces, and drove the two traitors out of the country <sup>90</sup>.

A sense of their own danger had hitherto taught the Britons of Cumbria to assist their neighbours in their different struggles

<sup>88</sup> Besides the printed chronicles, see another in MS. quoted by Mr. Turner, *Tib. B. 4. Westminster* (187), adds to the conditions of the treaty, that the survivor was to succeed to

the dominions of the other. This is not mentioned by any other writer.

<sup>89</sup> *Chron. Sax.* 114. *Hunt.* 203. *Flor.* 603.

<sup>90</sup> *Ethelw.* 482. *Flor.* 604. *Hunt.* 203.



in support of their independence. It was against them that Edmund next directed his arms. Every effort, which they could make, was hopeless: the two sons of Dunmail their king fell into the hands of the conqueror, and were deprived of sight, and the country was bestowed on Malcolm, king of Scots, on the condition that he should become the vassal of the English crown, and should unite with Edmund in opposing the attempts of the sea-kings <sup>91</sup>.

The reign of Edmund lasted only six years. He was celebrating at Pucklekirk in Gloucestershire the feast of St. Augustine, the apostle of the Saxons, when he perceived Leof a noted outlaw enter the hall. This man had been banished on account of his crimes some years before: and now had the audacity to seat himself at the royal table, and to offer resistance, when the cup-bearer delivered to him an order to depart. Passion hurried Edmund to the spot, where he received a wound in the breast, from a dagger which Leof had concealed under his clothes. The king immediately expired: the assassin was cut in pieces by the royal attendants <sup>92</sup>.

Edmund's  
death.  
946.

Edmund had been married to Elfgiva, a princess of exemplary virtue, whose solicitude for the relief of the indigent, and charity in purchasing the liberty of slaves, have been highly extolled by our ancient writers. She bore him two sons, Edwy and Edgar, of whom the eldest could not be more than nine years of age. Their childhood rendered them incapable of directing the government: and in an assembly of the prelates, thanes,

<sup>91</sup> Ut sibi terra et mari fidelis esset. Lel. Col. ii. 399. Sim. 156. Hunt. 203. Flor. 604. His midwyrhta, or associate in war, Chron. Sax. 115. Ut Aquilonares Angliæ partes terra marique ab hostium adventantium incursionibus tueretur. West. 188. Fordun

(iv. 24) asserts that according to the agreement between the two kings, the heir to the crown of Scotland was always to hold Cumberland of the crown of England.

<sup>92</sup> Malm. 30. West. 188. In most of his charters he styles himself Rex Anglorum.

CHAP.  
IV.Edred suc-  
ceeds.

and vassal princes of Wales, their uncle Edred, the only surviving son of Edward, was chosen king ; and, to use the inflated language of a charter given on the occasion, was “ consecrated “ at Kingston to the quadripartite government of the Anglo- “ Saxons, Northumbrians, Pagans, and Britons <sup>93</sup>.”

## EDRED.

Final subjec-  
tion of the  
Northum-  
brians.  
946.

The reign of Edred was principally distinguished by the final subjugation of the Northumbrians. Immediately after his coronation, he proceeded to that country : and received first from the natives, afterwards from the Scots, and lastly from the Cumbrians, the usual oaths of fidelity<sup>94</sup>. But the obedience of the Northumbrians lasted only as long as they were overawed by his presence : he was no sooner departed, than they expelled his officers, and set his authority at defiance. Eric, who had been driven from Norway by his brother Haco, and had wandered for years a pirate on the ocean, landed on their coast, and was immediately saluted king. The news excited the indignation of Edred. His first object was to secure the important city of York : and with that view he dispatched his chancellor Turketul to archbishop Wolstan, to confirm the wavering fidelity of that prelate, whose influence among his countrymen was unbounded. The king soon afterwards entered Northumbria at the head of the men of Wessex and Mercia : and by ravaging the lands, severely punished the perfidy of the rebels. But as he led back his followers laden with pillage and unsuspecting of danger, the

<sup>93</sup> Smith's Bed. App. 772. Elfiva died before her husband. Ethelw. 482.

<sup>94</sup> Flor. 604. West. 189. “ The Scots “ gave him their oaths that they would

“ will whatever he should will.” Chron. Sax. 115. Cum Northymbri subiciuntur cuncti, necnon Scoti jusjuranda continent, inmutabilemque fidem. Ethelw. 482.

gates of York were thrown open in the night; a chosen band of adventurers silently followed his march, and a division of his army was surprised and destroyed. To revenge this insult he resumed the work of devastation: but his anger was appeased by presents, entreaties, and submission; and he returned in triumph with a long train of captives to London. Eric might still perhaps have maintained himself in the country, had he not been opposed by a new competitor, Anlaff, one of the princes who had fled from the sword of Edmund in the last reign. The two rivals assembled their forces: Anlaff was victorious: and the Norwegian with his brother and son perished in the wilds of Stanemoor by the treachery of Osulf, and the sword of Macco, the son of Anlaff<sup>95</sup>.

This was the last struggle of Northumbrian independence. Edred returned with a numerous army, and traversed the country without opposition. Large and fertile districts were laid desolate: the archbishop, whose conduct had long been ambiguous, was immured for a year within the castle of Whitby: the principal noblemen were torn from their dependants, and carried by the king into captivity: the whole province, like the rest of England, was divided into shires, ridings, and wapentakes: and the government was intrusted to a number of officers appointed by Edred, under the superintendence of Osulf, who took the title of earl of Northumberland<sup>96</sup>.

Edred was afflicted with a lingering and painful disease<sup>97</sup>: and much of the merit of his reign must be attributed to the counsels of his favourite ministers, the chancellor Turketul, and

Account of  
Turketul

<sup>95</sup> Ing. 30. 41. West. 189. Mail. 148.

<sup>96</sup> Ing. 41. Sim. 156. Walling. 541.

<sup>97</sup> Malm. 30. He was for a long time unable to take any solid food (Vit. S. Dun. in Act. SS. p. 353): a most unlucky circum-

stance for an Anglo-Saxon king, of whom it was expected that he should be the foremost in the pleasures of the table as well as the dangers of the field.



CHAP.  
IV.

Dunstan, abbot of Glastonbury. Turketul was a clergyman of royal descent, the eldest son of Ethelwerd, and the grandson of Alfred. He had refused preferment in the church, but accepted and retained the office of chancellor under his cousins Athelstan, Edmund, and Edred. His virtues and abilities were honoured with the approbation of the prince, and the applause of the people. He held the first place in the royal councils: the most important offices, both civil and ecclesiastical, were conferred by his advice: and his attendance on the sovereign was required in every military expedition. The important part which he acted in the battle of Brunanburgh, has been already noticed <sup>98</sup>. When he was sent by Edred to archbishop Wolstan, it chanced that his road led him by the ruins of Croyland, which still afforded a miserable shelter to three monks, the survivors of the Danish devastations. Turketul was affected by the piety and resignation of these aged anchorites; and he felt a secret desire to enter into their society, and to restore their monastery to its ancient splendour. At his return he solicited, and after several refusals, obtained the permission of his sovereign. The public crier announced to the citizens of London that the chancellor, before he quitted his office, was anxious to discharge all his debts, and to make threefold reparation to any person, whom he might have injured. When he had satisfied every demand, he gave fifty-four of his manors, the inheritance which he had received from his father, to the king, and reserved six for the use of his monastery. At Croyland he made his monastic profession, received the investiture from Edred, was blessed by the bishop of Dorchester, and the next day by the advice of the

<sup>98</sup> Ingulf remarks (p. 37) that though he led the troops to battle, he refused to make use of arms, because the canons prohibited to clergymen the effusion of blood. It was,

however, the doctrine of the age, that an exception was allowed in war undertaken for the protection of the country against a pagan invasion. Ibid.

lawyers resigned the abbey with its appurtenances into the hands of the sovereign. All the lands which formerly belonged to it, had, during the Danish wars, been seized by Burghed, king of Mercia, who annexed a part to the crown, and divided the remainder among his thanes. The former were cheerfully restored by the piety of Edred: of the latter several manors were purchased from the present possessors by Turketul. At the next meeting of the witan he received a new grant of the whole from the king in the most ample form, but with the exception of the privilege of sanctuary, which he refused as a violation of justice and an incentive to crime. From this period he spent seven-and-twenty years in the discharge of his duties as abbot: the zeal of the preceptor was rewarded by the proficiency of his disciples; and at his death in 975 the monks of Croyland formed a numerous and edifying community<sup>99</sup>.

The abbot of Glastonbury, the other favourite of Edred, occupies a disproportionate space in most of our modern histories. Nearly related to Athelm, archbishop of Canterbury, and to Elphege, bishop of Winchester, he had been introduced by them a candidate for royal favour to the court of king Athelstan. But the jealousy of rivals, and the reflections suggested by a dangerous illness, diverted the thoughts of the young thane from worldly pursuits to the monastic state: and having received the order of priesthood, he served during several years the church of Glastonbury. In this situation his zeal, disinterestedness, and charities attracted the notice of the public: by Turketul he was recommended to the favour of Edmund; and that prince bestowed on him Glastonbury with its possessions. By Edred, Dunstan was not less respected than he had been by his predecessor. The new king made him the director of his conscience: deposited with him his

And of Dun-  
stan.

<sup>99</sup> See Ingulf, 25. 30.—41. 52.

CHAP.  
IV.  

---

Edred's death.  
955.

treasures and the titles to his lands, and earnestly solicited him to accept the vacant bishopric of Winchester. This preferment he declined : and, while he was more obscurely employed in the government of his monastery, unexpectedly lost his friend and benefactor. The king, whose constitution had been enfeebled by frequent returns of his disease, was induced by a new and more alarming attack, to send for the abbot of Glastonbury : but had expired before Dunstan arrived. Edred reigned something more than nine years, and was buried at Winchester<sup>100</sup>.

<sup>100</sup> Ang. Sac. ii. 90—104. Malm. 30



# CHAP. V.

## ANGLO-SAXONS.

REIGNS OF EDWY—EDGAR—EDWARD THE MARTYR—ETHELRED—  
AND EDMUND, SURNAMED IRONSIDE.

### EDWY.

AT the accession of Edred, his nephews Edwy and Edgar had been passed by on account of their childhood: at his death the elder of the two brothers was chosen king by the unanimous voice of the witan, and entered immediately on the full exercise of the royal authority<sup>1</sup>.

The young king had unfortunately imbibed an idea that the crown belonged to him of right from the time of his father's death. The consequence was, that during the life of Edred he looked on him as an usurper, and after his decease treated his friends as personal enemies to himself<sup>2</sup>. They were removed

CHAP.  
V.

Edwy.  
955.

<sup>1</sup>It is observable that the ancient writers almost always speak of our kings as *elected*. Edwy's grandmother in her charter (Lye, App. iv.) says: "he was chosen. *gecoren*." The contemporary biographer of Dunstan (apud Boll. tom. iv. Maii, 344) says: *ab universis Anglorum principibus communi electione*. He also intimates that Wessex and

Mercia had not yet coalesced into one kingdom: *ut in utraque plebe regum numeros nominaque suppleret electus*, p. 353.

<sup>2</sup>Wallingford, 541, 542. No ancient writer has mentioned the age of Edwy at his accession. Circumstances concur to shew that he had certainly reached his sixteenth, possibly his eighteenth, year.

CHAP.  
V.

from the royal councils; and this original cause of discontent was increased by the conduct of their successors. By flattering the king's passions the new favourites obtained the ascendancy over his mind: and by seeking the aggrandizement of their own families at the expense of others, they at first lessened, and ultimately destroyed, his popularity. Every order of men successively experienced either injury or insult. The relations of Edwy were driven from the court: several of the most opulent thanes were forcibly deprived of their estates: the grants that had been made to different churches were resumed; and the whole nation was thrown into a ferment by new and grievous exactions<sup>3</sup>. But that which most loudly provoked the censure of the public was the treatment of the king's grandmother Edgiva. That princess, venerable for her age and virtues, was, on some unknown pretext, despoiled of her riches and patrimony, and reduced to a state of indigence and privacy<sup>4</sup>.

His miscon-  
duct.

While Edwy, by these tyrannical proceedings, alienated the affections of his subjects, he rendered himself contemptible by the immorality of his private life. Ardent in the pursuit of pleasure, and regardless of public decency, he abandoned himself to the most unseemly enjoyments. The language in which

<sup>3</sup> Osbern, 104. Unde quid mali succreverit, quam infamis fama populorum aures et ora repleverit, *facile est et me tacente videre*. Ipse namque possessiones quorumcumque diripere, hos et illos exhæreditare, majores natu proscribere, totumque regnum innumeris oppressionibus conturbare festinavit. Eadmer, vit. S. Dunst. apud Surium, p. 236. Col. Agrip. 1618. I have quoted this passage from Eadmer (which evidently appears to have been copied by him from a contemporary writer), because it has been omitted in the extracts published by Wharton in Ang. Sac. tom. ii.

<sup>4</sup> Osb. 104. Accessit his malis ejus nimis detestabile malum. Matrem quippe, totius

Anglæ nobilitatricem, ecclesiarum consolatricem, et sustentatricem oppressorum—in immensum afflixit, ac vastatis rebus ad eam pertinentibus, ab eo statu, in quo esse solebat, sævus et crudelis dejecit. Ead. ibid. Atavam suam prædari præcepit. MS. Cleop. 78. "When Edred ended, was Eadgiva "bereaved of all her property:" is her own expression in her original charter. Lye, App. iv.—I take the words prædare, diripere, vastare, to mean that summary kind of vengeance which individuals frequently inflicted on their enemies, and kings on powerful delinquents, by sending a body of armed men, to drive off their cattle, and plunder their houses and estates.

our ancient writers uniformly describe and reprobate this part of his conduct, is not fit for the eye of every reader<sup>5</sup>: but it will be proper to delineate the real nature of his connexion with Ethelgiva, a subject, which, though unimportant in itself, has derived some interest from the embellishments with which it has been adorned by the fancy of modern historians.

Ethelgiva was a lady of noble birth, who had conceived the design of securing the dignity of queen for herself or her daughter<sup>6</sup>. With the view of captivating Edwy's affections, they were constantly in his company: and, if we may credit the scandal of the age, neither of them hesitated to sacrifice her honour to the hope of obtaining the object of her ambition. The king's coronation had been fixed at a distant day by the witan. As soon as the ceremony was ended, Edwy proceeded with the thanes and prelates to the banquet, which was always given on such occasions: but after a hasty repast, he rose from his seat, left the hall, and repaired to the company of Ethelgiva and her daughter. By the members of the witan his departure was considered as an insult: and after some deliberation it was resolved that Kinsey, bishop of Lichfield, and the abbot of Glastonbury should, in the name of the whole assembly, recal the king, and command Ethelgiva to leave the court, under the penalty of death. The two deputies found Edwy in the most unbecoming situation, replaced the crown upon his head, and conducted him back to the hall. Before they had left the room, Ethelgiva threatened Dunstan with the whole weight of her resentment<sup>7</sup>.

His amon  
with Ethel  
giva.

<sup>5</sup> Regiam dignitatem obscœnis operibus dehonestabat. Eadm. 192. Libidine ardens sine intermissione æstuabat ad coitum. Osb. 104. Expugnator alienæ pudicitiae, negligens suæ, vaga fractus libidine. Senatus in vit. S. Oswaldi, MS. in the Durham library.

<sup>6</sup> Cum adulta filia. MS. Cleop. 76. Filiam

adultam. Eadmer apud Surium, p. 237. It will not follow from this expression that Ethelgiva was very old. By law females were adult at twelve years of age. Wilk. con. i. p. 120. xxvii.

<sup>7</sup> See Note [A], at the end of the volume.



CHAP.  
V.

The influence which that ecclesiastic formerly enjoyed, had expired with the reign of Edred. To have been honoured with the friendship of his uncle was a sufficient crime in the estimation of Edwy: but Dunstan had, by a still more honourable provocation, incurred the enmity of this prodigal and voluptuous youth. As the treasurer of Edred, and the executor of his last testament, he had disappointed the rapacity of the prince<sup>8</sup>: and by seeking to check the licentiousness of his conduct, had long ago wounded and irritated his pride<sup>9</sup>. To a mind thus predisposed the late transaction appeared an unpardonable offence: and Ethelgiva, in order to execute her threat, had not so much to stimulate, as to guide, the resentment of her paramour against a supposed enemy, and an importunate monitor. With the king's permission a party of armed men was dispatched to Glastonbury, who seized on the property of Dunstan, and expelled him by force from his monastery. Several thanes offered him an asylum in their houses: but their generosity subjected them to the vengeance of Edwy; and the abbot, that he might not involve his friends in his own ruin, resolved to submit to his fate, and to retire into exile. He was no more than three miles from the shore, when the satellites of Ethelgiva arrived, with an order, it is said, to deprive him of sight. He pursued his course, landed in Flanders, and was honourably received by the earl Arnulf, who appointed for his residence the monastery of St. Peter's at Ghent<sup>10</sup>.

Her banishment.

Soon after this transaction Edwy appears to have married, an event which might have been expected to put an end to the connexion between him and his mistress. Whether on that occasion Ethelgiva was committed to the care of her relations

<sup>8</sup> Wallingford, 542. Osb. 102.

<sup>9</sup> Osb. 104.

<sup>10</sup> See Note [A], at the end of the volume.

or of her husband, we are ignorant: but the king, either instigated by his passion, or moved by her solicitations, carried her off by force, and placed her in one of the royal farms <sup>11</sup>. Archbishop Odo undertook to remove the scandal by enforcing the punishment, which the laws awarded against women living in a state of concubinage <sup>12</sup>. Accompanied by his retainers, he rode to the place, arrested Ethelgiva, probably in the absence of her lover, conducted her to the sea-side, and put her on board a ship, in which she was conveyed to Ireland. At his return to court he waited on Edwy, and in respectful and affectionate language endeavoured to justify his own conduct, and to sooth the exasperated mind of the young prince <sup>13</sup>.

Notwithstanding his errors, the West-Saxons were still attached to Edwy, as the descendant of a long race of kings, the lineal representative of the founder of their monarchy. But to the other Saxon nations he was a stranger, the head of a family, which had been imposed upon them by the reverses of war. In the second or third year of his reign the Mercians rejected his authority. Edwy did not tamely submit to the insult: but his force was inferior to that of the insurgents, and he was compelled to retire with precipitation into Wessex. Ethelgiva, who had returned from Ireland, was the companion of his flight. At Gloucester she fell into the hands of the pursuers, who with their swords divided the sinews of her legs, a cruel but not unusual mode of punishment in that age. After lingering in great torment for a few days, she expired <sup>14</sup>.

Revolt of the  
Mercians.

The war was continued with more acrimony than exertion: Edwy's death.

<sup>11</sup> Quam et rapuit. Vit. S. Oswaldi, MS. Nero. E. 1.

"realm." Leg. Sax. 53.

<sup>12</sup> Edward, the grandfather of Edwy, had enacted: "if a known whorquean be found in any place, men shall drive her out of the

<sup>13</sup> See Note [A], at the end of the volume.

<sup>14</sup> For the death of Ethelgiva, see Note [A], at the end of the volume.

CHAP.  
V.

---

959.

and each bank of the Thames was alternately laid waste by parties of marauders. Edgar, the king's brother, was chosen to fill the united throne of Mercia and Northumbria<sup>15</sup>. Edwy, after a short struggle, finding himself unable to dethrone, consented to acknowledge the new king: and in a gemot of the whole nation, the Thames was unanimously fixed for the common boundary of their respective dominions. We are told that after this partition, the king reformed his conduct, and studied to recover the affections of his subjects. His death in the following year disappointed their hopes. By one writer he is said to have been assassinated<sup>16</sup>: by others to have pined away through grief for the loss of the northern provinces<sup>17</sup>: by all his death is described as miserable and premature. From his beauty he was usually called Edwy the fair<sup>18</sup>.

### EDGAR.

Edgar's in-  
fancy.

Edgar was still in the cradle, when he lost his mother Elfgiva. By his father the infant was intrusted to the care of Alfwena, the wife of Athelstan, an East-Anglian ealdorman, who from his royal descent and extensive authority had obtained the surname of the "half-king." The young prince was educated with their children; and was, it is probable, indebted to the family for his elevation to the throne of Mercia, in opposition to his brother Edwy. Athelstan, a little before his death, entered the monastery of Glastonbury; his four sons, Ethelwold, Alfwold, Athelsin, and Ailwin, long continued to be the favourite counsellors of Edgar<sup>19</sup>.

<sup>15</sup> Eligere sibi Eadgarum in regem. MS. Cleop. 78.

<sup>16</sup> MS. Nero, A. 6. quoted by Mr. Turner, p. 163.

<sup>17</sup> Ingulf, 41. Malm. 30. Caradoc, 56.

<sup>18</sup> Ethelwerd, 483.

<sup>19</sup> Hist. Rames. 387. 393. It is singular that modern historians should attribute the revolt of the northern provinces, and the elevation of Edgar, to the intrigues of the monks,



CHAP.  
V.

One of the first measures of the new king, or rather of his ministers (for he was only in his fourteenth year), was to recal from exile the abbot of Glastonbury. His possessions, which lay in the dominions of Edwy, he could not recover: but he was retained in an honourable situation at court near the person of Edgar. When the witan assembled, he opened the session with a discourse, which excited the admiration of his hearers: received at their unanimous request the episcopal consecration: and on the death of the bishop of Worcester, was appointed successor to that prelate. The next year the church of London became vacant: and he accepted, though with reluctance, the administration of that diocese <sup>20</sup>.

He recalls  
Dunstan.  
957.

The thanes of Wessex, after the death of Edwy, offered the throne to Edgar; and the two kingdoms were again united under the same monarch. The oppressive acts of the late government were now solemnly annulled. Edgiva, the relict of Edmund, recovered her patrimony: Dunstan was re-established in the possession of Glastonbury and Abingdon: and ample reparation was made to the thanes, who had suffered from the passion or resentment of Edwy <sup>21</sup>. One of the last acts of that prince had been to nominate Byrhtelm, bishop of Sherburn, to the metropolitical see of Canterbury. Perhaps the ministers of Edgar were unwilling to see a favourite of his brother at the head of the English church: certain it is that in the assembly of the witan his want of vigour was alleged as a proof of his incapacity: and that Byrhtelm returned with disgrace to the church, from which he had been promoted. Dunstan, who was

Becomes king  
of Wessex.  
959.

and of archbishop Odo, not only without a single authority in favour of the charge, but in direct opposition to the fact, that both the archbishop and the monks who had suffered from the despotism of Edwy, continued faithful to him. By all ancient writers the insur-

rection is confined to the Mercians, East-Anglians, and Northumbrians.

<sup>20</sup> MS. Cleop. 78, 79. Osbern, 107. Walingford, 544.

<sup>21</sup> MS. Cleop. 79.

CHAP.  
V.

selected in his place, repaired to Rome, and obtained the pallium from John XII. He resigned the bishopric of London in favour of Ælfstan, that of Worcester in favour of Oswald, the nephew of Odo<sup>22</sup>.

Surnamed the  
peaceful.

Edgar has received from posterity the surname of “the peaceful.” During the sixteen years of his reign he was never compelled to unsheath the sword against either a foreign or a domestic enemy. The circumstance is the more remarkable, if we consider the lot of the kings who preceded, or followed him. His predecessors, during the long lapse of one hundred and fifty years, scarcely enjoyed an interval of repose from the repeated, and often formidable, invasions of the Northmen. Of his successors his son was driven by them into Normandy: his grandson was compelled to share the throne with a foreign chieftain; and his descendants in the third degree lived in exile, while the English sceptre was wielded by a race of Danish sovereigns. This long interval of tranquillity, the peculiar felicity of Edgar, arose partly from the policy of his uncle Edred, partly from his own good fortune and the vigour of his councils.

Pleases the  
Northum-  
brians.

The population of Northumbria was composed in a great proportion of Danes or the posterity of Danes. Animosity against their southern neighbours, and affection for their own kinsmen, induced them frequently to invite, always to assist, the invaders. By Edred, indeed, they had been completely subdued: but it is probable that their submission would only have been temporary, had not circumstances connected their interests with the prosperity of the new king. Edgar had been educated

<sup>22</sup> MS. Cleop. 79. Osb. 109. Wharton (Ang. Sac. ii. 107. not.) infers from the words of Osbern (p. 110), that Dunstan pos-

sessed Rochester with Canterbury. This is a mistake. Osbern says the contrary. So also does Eadmer, 214.

CHAP.  
V.

among the Danes of East-Anglia: the Northumbrians had united with that people and the Mercians to raise him to the throne: and they respected him as a king whom they had not only chosen for themselves, but had imposed on the hostile kingdom of Wessex. He, whether it were gratitude or policy, paid to them on all occasions the most marked attention: and the only blot, which the southern annalists could discover in his character, was his partiality for the manners, and his zeal for the welfare, of his Danish subjects<sup>23</sup>. Still he appears to have kept a watchful eye over their conduct: and on the death of Osulf, their first earl, his jealousy taught him to diminish the power of the Northumbrians by dividing the country into two earldoms; of which he gave one, extending from the Humber as far as the Tees, to Oslac, and the other, comprising the lands on the north of that river, to Eadulf<sup>24</sup>. Soon after this the witan assembled at York, and Edgar addressed them in language, which while it suited his own dignity, was soothing to the vanity of a high-spirited people: “It is my will,” said the king, “that the Danes choose for themselves such laws, as are best adapted to their particular circumstances: and that the English observe the statutes which I and my counsellors have added to the ancient dooms. But one thing I would have to be common to all my people, English, Danes, and Britons, in every part of my empire: that both rich and poor possess in peace what they have rightfully acquired; and that no thief find a place where he may secure the property that he has stolen.” After a few regulations for this purpose, he proceeds: “Again it is my will that the Danes select for themselves the best laws in their

Divides their  
territory.  
966.

Permits them  
to make their  
own laws.

<sup>23</sup> Chron. Sax. 116. In hoc tamen peccabat, quod paganos eos, qui in hac patria sub eo degebant, nimis firmavit, et extraneos huc adductos plus æquo diligens valde corrobora-

ravit. Hunt. 204.

<sup>24</sup> Walling. 544. Hoved. 243. This writer makes the Tyne the division between the counties.



CHAP.  
V.

---

“ power. This permission I have granted you, and will grant  
 “ you, as long as I live, for the fidelity which you have always  
 “ borne to me. Among the English I and my witan have fixed  
 “ proportionate fines for different transgressions: and my wish  
 “ is that you do the same with discretion and my approbation.  
 “ And let the earl Oslac and all the military men, who dwell in  
 “ this earldom, promote it: and let word be sent to the ealdormen  
 “ Ælfere, and Ægelwin, that it may come to the knowledge of  
 “ all, both rich and poor. As long as I live, I will be to you a  
 “ faithful lord, and most kind to all who shall be careful to keep  
 “ my peace<sup>25</sup>.”

His naval ex-  
peditions.

But Edgar, to preserve the tranquillity of his dominions, did not depend solely on the fidelity of the Northumbrians. Every year, about the commencement of summer, when the sea-kings issued forth in quest of adventures, directions were given for the ship-fyrd, or naval expedition. A fleet of three hundred and sixty sail was divided into three squadrons stationed on the three coasts of the island: and the king, successively embarking in each, made by sea the circuit of his dominions. This annual parade of his power intimidated the northern chieftains, who conducted their piratical hosts to other shores, where they were equally tempted by the hope of plunder and less dismayed by the probability of resistance<sup>26</sup>.

His power.

Proud of his ascendancy, Edgar assumed the most lofty titles. He styled himself king of the English, and of all the nations dwelling around, monarch of all Albion and of the kings of the isles<sup>27</sup>. We are assured that the princes of the Scots and

<sup>25</sup> Leg. Sax. 80. 82. Ælfere was ealdorman of the Danes in the north of Mercia, Ægilwin or Aylwin of those in East-Anglia.

<sup>26</sup> Malm. 33. Sim. 160. Mailros, 150.

These writers make the ships amount to 3600. The number appears to me enormous. I have therefore retrenched a cipher.

<sup>27</sup> Ing. 42. 46, 47. Bed. App. 776.

Britons did him service as vassals<sup>28</sup>: and if we may believe one of his charters, all the islands between Britain and Norway, the city of Dublin, and the greater part of Ireland, had submitted to his authority<sup>29</sup>. In lieu of the tribute, which his predecessors had imposed on the Welsh, he exacted an annual present of the heads of three hundred wolves: and so effectual was the expedient that in four years that race of ferocious animals was entirely extirpated<sup>30</sup>. At the invitation of Alfsi, bishop of Durham, and the two earls of Northumbria, Kenneth, king of Scotland, visited Edgar in London. From the English monarch he received valuable presents, silks, rings, and gems, and one hundred ounces of pure gold; but the principal object of his journey was to solicit as a favour, or to demand as a right, the cession of the province of Lothian. It formerly belonged to the Northumbrian kings, who had pushed their conquests and colonies to the frith of Forth<sup>31</sup>: but its proximity to the Scots exposed it to frequent inroads, and its remoteness from the present seat of government rendered it unproductive to the royal treasury. By Edgar the matter was referred to his ministers, who were induced by the poverty and distance of the province to decide in favour of Kenneth: and Lothian was finally ceded to the crown of Scotland on the condition that its inhabitants should be permitted to retain their language, laws, and customs<sup>32</sup>.

In the internal administration of the government Edgar exhibited an example worthy the imitation of future kings. He usually spent the winter months in making progresses through

Administra-  
tion of justice.

<sup>28</sup> Hunt. 204. Sim. 159. West. 192.

<sup>29</sup> Dugdale, i. 140.

<sup>30</sup> Malm. 32. Carad. 56.

<sup>31</sup> Bede speaking of Abercorn, says: in monasterio Æbbercornig, posito quidem in regione Anglorum, sed in vicinia freti, quod

Anglorum terras Pictorumque disternat. Bed. iv. 26.

<sup>32</sup> Walling. 545. West. 193. Does not this sufficiently account for the prevalence of the English language in the low-lands of Scotland?

CHAP.  
V.

the different counties, every where reforming abuses, inquiring into the conduct of the magistrates, and listening to the complaints of the people. He was most anxious that the poor should obtain justice equally with the rich. By his authority family feuds were suppressed, and men were compelled to submit the decision of their quarrels to the legal tribunals. He restored the coinage to its legitimate weight and purity; enforced the punishment of exile against malefactors convicted of atrocious offences, and almost extinguished the crime of robbery, by the vigilance with which he caused the guilty to be pursued, and by the impediments which his laws opposed to the transfer of stolen property<sup>33</sup>. The inhabitants of Thanet had long been addicted to acts of piracy. In 969 they plundered several merchant-ships on their voyage from York: but the ealdorman of Kent, by the order of the king, immediately entered the isle, pillaged the country, and hanged the most guilty: another instance of military execution, which in that age the state of society and the imperfection of judicial proceedings might perhaps render expedient<sup>34</sup>.

The restoration of the monks.

The tranquillity of Edgar's reign, his undisputed superiority over the neighbouring princes, and his attention to the welfare of his people, have contributed to throw a lustre around his memory: the reformation of the church, undertaken by the prelates, and effected with the aid of his authority, though it was received with gratitude by his contemporaries, has been marked with unmerited censure by modern writers. The Danish invasion had both relaxed the sinews of ecclesiastical discipline, and dissolved the greater number of the monastic and clerical esta-

<sup>33</sup> Leg. Sax. 77. 80. MS. Cleop. 79. Osb. 110. Chron. Sax. 116. Mailros, 150. Malm. 32, 33.

<sup>34</sup> Chron. Sax. 121. West. 192. Non ut hostis insaniens, sed ut rex malo mala puniens. Hunt. 204.



blishments. The most opulent monasteries had been laid in ruins by the rapacity of the barbarians: and their lands, without an owner, had been seized by the crown, or had been divided among the nearest and most powerful thanes. Under former kings, efforts had been made to restore the monastic order, but they had proved ineffectual. The prejudices against it were nourished by the great proprietors now in possession of its ancient revenues: even the monastery of Ethelngy, which Alfred had peopled with foreign monks, had been gradually deserted: and the two abbeys of Glastonbury and Abingdon, the fruits of the zeal of Dunstan, had been dissolved by the resentment of Edwy. The clerical order was more fortunate. Though shattered and disfigured, it had survived the tempest. But the friends of religious severity, when they compared the clergy of their day with the clergy of ancient times, saw much in their conduct to lament and correct. Formerly they had lived in communities under particular regulations: and their seclusion from temporal pursuits insured the faithful discharge of their spiritual functions. But during the Danish wars they had been dispersed amidst their relatives, had divided among themselves the revenues of their respective churches, and, substituting others for the performance of the service, indulged in the pleasures and dissipation of the laity. But that which gave particular offence to the more devout was their marriages. It is most certain, that during the two first centuries of the Saxon church the profession of celibacy was required from every clergyman advanced to the orders of priest, or deacon, or sub-deacon<sup>35</sup>: but amid the horrors of successive invasions the injunctions of the

<sup>35</sup> Bed. i. 27. v. 21. Wilk. con. p. 112. 133, 134. 136.

CHAP.  
V.

canons had been overlooked or contemned : and, on many occasions necessity compelled the prelates to ordain, for the clerical functions, persons who had already engaged in the state of matrimony. Similar causes had produced similar effects in the maritime provinces of Gaul : and Dunstan had witnessed, during his exile, the successful efforts of the abbot Gerard to restore the ancient discipline in the churches of Flanders<sup>36</sup>. Animated by his example, the metropolitan made a first essay to raise the monastic establishments from their ruins : and his labours were zealously seconded by two active co-operators, the bishops Oswald and Ethelwold. The former governed the church of Worcester : the latter, his favourite disciple, had been placed at his request in the see of Winchester. To them Edgar was induced to sell, or grant, the lands of the monasteries, which had fallen to the crown : and of those which remained in the hands of individuals, a portion was recovered by purchase, and still more by the voluntary resignation of the possessors. Persons were soon found ready to embrace an institute recommended by the prelates, and sanctioned by the king : as fast as buildings could be erected, they were filled with colonies of monks and their novices : and within a few years the great abbeys of Ely, Peterborough, Thorney, and Malmsbury, rose from their ashes, and recovered the opulence and the splendour which they had formerly enjoyed.

The reform of  
the clergy.

The next object of the metropolitan was the reformation of the more dissolute among the clergy, principally in the two dioceses of Winchester and Worcester. For this purpose a commission was obtained from Rome, and a law was enacted, that every priest, deacon, and subdeacon should live chastely, or be

<sup>36</sup> Vit. S. Gerar. sæc. v. Bened. p. 272.

ected from his benefice<sup>37</sup>. Oswald, whose zeal was tempered with lenity, soon converted the canons of his cathedral and of Winchelcomb into communities of monks. Ethelwold met with a more stubborn resistance: and after a considerable delay was compelled to recur to the civil magistrate. Armed with the royal authority he successively transferred the prebendaries of the old and new minsters to other situations which he had prepared for them in his diocese, and supplied their places with monks whom he had selected from his favourite convent at Abingdon. There was nothing now to arrest the progress of monachism. The laity had caught the spirit of the prelates: several opulent noblemen erected monasteries on their respective demesnes: and the king publicly gloried in the assertion, that though the order was nearly extinct at his accession, almost fifty abbeys had been established during his reign<sup>38</sup>.

It was the pride of Edgar to display his opulence and authority; to be surrounded by prelates, nobles, and the princes his vassals; and to distribute among them presents of greater or less value in proportion to their respective ranks. Hence it will excite surprise that a prince of this character, living in an age which attached so much importance to the regal unction, should have permitted thirteen years of his reign to elapse before he was crowned: nor is it less extraordinary that of the many historians who relate the circumstance, not one has thought proper to assign the reason. The ceremony was at length performed at

Edgar's magnificence.

<sup>37</sup> Eadmer, 200. Wilk. con. 239. 247. I have omitted the celebrated speech attributed to Edgar on this occasion, because it is probably a declamation composed by some rhetorician.

<sup>38</sup> Chron. Sax. 117. Ingulf. 45. 47. Osbern, 111. Wolstan, vit. Ethelwoldi. 614. Ead. 200. Hist. Rames. 400. The rule observed in all these monasteries was that of

St. Benedict, with the addition of a few national customs (Apost. Bened. app. par. 3. p. 80). The Benedictine monks were first introduced among the Northumbrians in 661 (Edd. vit. Wilf. xlv.), among the West-Saxons in 675 (Malm. de Pont. v. 344. 353. 356), and among the Mercians in 709 (Wilk. con. p. 71).



CHAP.  
V.

---

Bath with the usual solemnity, and in the presence of an immense concourse of spectators. Thence he proceeded to Chester to receive the homage of eight princes, Kenneth king of Scotland, Malcolm of Cumberland, Mac Orric of Anglesey and the isles, Jukil of Westmoreland, Jago of Galloway, and Howel, Dyfnwal, and Griffith of Wales. The ceremony was opened with a splendid procession by water on the Dee. Edgar stepping into his barge seated himself at the helm : and the vassal kings taking the oars rowed him to the church of St. John the Baptist ; the prelates and thanes followed in their barges, while the banks were lined with spectators and the air resounded with acclamations. At his return he is said to have observed to those around him : “ My successors may think themselves kings, “ when they can command the service of the like number of “ princes <sup>39</sup>.”

*His courage.* Edgar had happily no opportunity of acquiring military glory : but on one occasion he proved that he was not deficient in personal courage. Kenneth, alluding to his spare form and low stature, had said that it was a disgrace to so many brave men to obey the authority of a dwarf. The words were reported to the king, who dissembling his anger, conducted Kenneth into a neighbouring wood, and bade him draw his sword and learn, who was the fitter to command the other. The king of Scots apologized for the jest, and disarmed his resentment <sup>40</sup>.

*His death.* Edgar lived only two years after his coronation, and died in 975 <sup>41</sup>. Like the other princes of his family he married at a very

<sup>39</sup> Chron. Sax. 121. Mailros, 150. Flor. 607. West. 192.

<sup>40</sup> Malm. 32.

<sup>41</sup> Chron. Sax. 122. The chronicle has preserved parts of the poems made on the occasion. I shall offer a literal version of

some passages to the curiosity of the reader.

“ Here ended his earthly joys Edgar England’s  
“ king : and chose the light of another world,  
“ beauteous and happy. Here Edgar de-  
“ parted, the ruler of the Angles, the joy of  
“ the West-Saxons, the defender of the Mer-

early age. His first wife Elfreda the fair, survived their union but two years, and left him a son, Edward, who succeeded him. By his second wife Elfrida, the daughter of Ordgar, earl of Devonshire, he had two sons, Edmund, who died in his infancy, and Ethelred, who ascended the throne after the murder of Edward. Most writers have contented themselves with telling us that the king married Elfrida after the death of Ethelwold her first husband: but Malmsbury, on the faith of an ancient ballad, has transmitted to us a story probably invented by his enemies. According to this account Elfrida was possessed, as the heroine of every romance should be, of unparalleled beauty and accomplishments. Edgar commissioned Ethelwold, the son of his foster-father Athelstan, and his favourite minister, to visit Ordgar, and report his opinion of the daughter. The heart of the ealdorman was captivated. He forgot his duty, wooed and married Elfrida, and on his return informed his master, that, though she might grace the house of a subject, she did not become the splendour of a throne. But the secret was quickly betrayed: it reached the ears of the king; and he announced to his astonished favourite that he intended to visit the bride. Ethelwold had now recourse to tears and entreaties. He disclosed to his wife the whole transaction, and conjured her to conceal her beauty from the eyes of the king. But Elfrida had already ceased to love: and he appeared to her in the light of an enemy, since he had deprived her of a crown. She received the king in her gayest

“cians. That was known afar among many  
“nations. Kings beyond the baths of the  
“sea-fowl worshipped him far and wide:  
“they bowed to the king as one of their own  
“kin. There was no fleet so proud, there  
“was no host so strong, as to seek food in  
“England, while this noble king ruled the  
“kingdom. He reared up God’s honour, he

“loved God’s law, he preserved the people’s  
“peace, the best of all the kings that were  
“before in the memory of man. And God  
“was his helper: and kings and earls bowed  
“to him: and they obeyed his will: and  
“without battle he ruled all as he willed.”—  
p. 116. 122.

CHAP.  
V.

attire, and employed all her arts to engage his notice and win his affections. Edgar retired, convinced of the perfidy of his friend, and of the superior beauty of the lady. For a while he disguised his intentions: but took the opportunity, while they were hunting together in the forest of Wherwell, to run his spear through the body of Ethelwold. It is needless to add, that he married the widow<sup>42</sup>.

I should not have noticed this tale, so improbable in itself, and supported by such questionable evidence, had it not found a place in most of our modern histories. There is another, which is better authenticated, and attributes to Edgar the violation of Wulfrith, a young lady, educated in the convent of Wilton, who to elude his pursuit, had covered herself with the veil of one of the sisters. She bore him a daughter, Editha, afterwards abbess of Wilton. For this offence the king was severely reprov'd by the archbishop, and submitted to a course of penance during the term of seven years<sup>43</sup>.

## EDWARD, THE MARTYR.

Succession of  
Edward.  
975.

It was unfortunate that the two sons of Edgar were very young at the time of their father's death. Edward had reached his thirteenth, Ethelred only his seventh year. There could be no doubt of Edward's claim to the crown: the right of primogeniture, the will of his father, and the extreme youth of his brother,

<sup>42</sup> Malm. 33. The same story is told with some variation by Brompton (866). I should refer its origin to the time when Elfrida became the object of public execration on account of the murder of Edward. Malmsbury in the same place, and on no better authority, tells us another tale of a lady at Andover, who, to save the chastity of her daughter, substituted the handsomest of her slaves. In the

morning the king discovered the deception, gave the woman her liberty, and raised her to a superiority above her former mistress. Id. 33.

<sup>43</sup> Osbern, 111. Ead. 218. Malm. 33. adds: certum est non tunc sanctimoniale fuisse. Osbern tells us that the king was crowned in 975, because his penance was then ended. But seven are not thirteen years.



all pleaded in his favour. Yet his succession was opposed by a party, who objected to his character, that he was of a harsh and cruel disposition, and to his birth, that he was born before either his father or mother had been crowned<sup>44</sup>. At the head of the faction was Elfrida, whose ambition hoped to obtain the sceptre for her own son, and who, to strengthen his interests, openly proclaimed herself the patroness of the ejected clergy. The pretensions of Ethelred were espoused by them, by their numerous partisans, and in particular by Alfere, the powerful earl of Mercia; while on the other hand, all the prelates, and the earls of Essex and East-Anglia maintained with equal obstinacy the superior claim of Edward. The controversy threatened to involve the nation in the horrors of civil war. Alfere wrested from the monks their new establishments in Mercia: Oslac of Northumbria was driven by his enemies into exile: and Alfwin and Alfwold armed the East-Anglians in their own defence. At length a general meeting of the witan was held: and Dunstan so victoriously proved the right of Edward, that he was chosen king without further opposition, and was crowned with the usual solemnity<sup>45</sup>.

The young prince did not sway the sceptre four years. His constitution and his virtues promised a long and prosperous reign: the ambition of Elfrida cut short his days, and blasted the hopes of his subjects. One morning as he was hunting, he stopped at Corfe castle in Dorsetshire, the residence of his step-mother. While the unsuspecting prince was in the act of drinking a cup of mead on horseback, he was stabbed in the belly by an assassin. He immediately put spurs to his horse, but his bowels falling out, he sank from his seat, and was

His murder.  
978.

<sup>44</sup> Osbern, 113. Eadmer, 220.

<sup>45</sup> Chron. Sax. 123. Mailros, 151. In-

gulf, 54. Hist. Rames. 412, 413. Malm.  
39.

CHAP.  
V.

dragged by the stirrup. His servants following the track of his blood, found him breathless, and buried him privately at Wareham. A few years later Dunstan and Alfre took up his remains, and interred them with royal magnificence at Shaftsbury<sup>46</sup>.

During his reign happened the tragic catastrophe at Colne, which has furnished modern writers with a pretext for accusing the primate of impiety and murder. If we may believe their narratives, Dunstan had the art to counterfeit a miracle in defence of the monks. By his orders, we are told, the floor of the room, destined to contain the members of the council, was loosened from the walls: during the deliberation the temporary supports were removed: and while the primate was secure in his seat above, the rest of the assembly were precipitated to the ground. Yet if we divest the real fact of its modern embellishments, it will be reduced to this; that the floor sank under the accumulated weight of the crowd: that the archbishop had the good fortune to support himself by a beam: and that of the others some were killed, and many were hurt in the fall<sup>47</sup>. More than this was unknown to any ancient writer: the contrivance and object ascribed to Dunstan are the fictions of later writers.

<sup>46</sup> Chron. Sax. 124, 125. Ing. 54. Malm. 34. Langtoft, p. 628. edit. Hearne.

<sup>47</sup> Chron. Sax. 124. Malm. 34. Flor. 608. Hunt. 204. Mailros, 151. I have omitted the miracle of the crucifix speaking at Winchester, as well as Dunstan's nocturnal conflict with the devil, which modern writers have numbered among the imaginary artifices of the archbishop. My reason is because they were unknown to his ancient biographers. They are indeed mentioned by Osbern and

Eadmer. But it is plain that both these writers compiled from the same materials, which were, as Osbern informs us, p. 88, Anglo-Saxon documents believed to be translations from Latin originals consumed in the great fire at Canterbury, and which, as Eadmer adds, p. 211, were rejected by some critics on account of their opposition in several instances to known historic facts. Materials of this description can only deserve credit, when they are supported by more ancient evidence.

## ETHELRED.

Elfrida now reaped the harvest of her crimes and ambition. By the death of Edward there remained but one prince of the blood royal: and the absence of other claimants compelled the prelates and thanes, though with no small repugnance, to bestow the crown on the son of the murderess<sup>48</sup>. The ceremony was performed at Kingston on the festival of Easter: and the following is the oath which was administered to the king by archbishop Dunstan, previously to the coronation. “In the name of the most holy Trinity I promise, first, that the church of God and all christian people shall enjoy true peace under my government: secondly, that I will prohibit all manner of rapine and injustice to men of every condition: thirdly, that in all judgments I will cause equity to be united with mercy, that the most clement God may, through his eternal mercy, forgive us all. Amen<sup>49</sup>.”

Ethelred succeeds.  
978.

Ethelred was only ten years of age, handsome in his person, and amiable in his disposition. But his spirit had been broken by the violence and barbarity of his mother. When he wept at the untimely death of Edward, she considered his tears as a reproach to herself, and punished him so severely, that his life was thought to be in danger. But as he advanced in age, her influence gradually declined; and she at last bade farewell to the court, and built the two monasteries of Ambresbury, and Whorwel. In one of these she spent the remainder of her days, bewailing her

<sup>48</sup> A weak attempt was made to raise an opposition in favour of Editha, the natural daughter of Edgar by Wulftrith. She herself rejected the offer. Vit. S. Eadgithæ, in act. SS. Bened. p. 638.

<sup>49</sup> Hick. gram. præf. —. MS. Claud. A. 3. It is in substance the same oath as had long been taken by the christian kings among the northern nations. See Martene, ii, 188. 197. 199. 211.



CHAP.  
V.

past misconduct, and endeavouring to atone for the scandal which she had given, by the publicity of her repentance<sup>50</sup>.

The reign of her son was long and unfortunate. Though guiltless himself, he enjoyed the benefit of Edward's murder, and, on that account, appeared on the throne stained with the blood of an elder and unoffending brother. Even in his youth he did not possess the affection of his subjects: during his manhood, he incurred their hatred by his apathy for their sufferings, his disinclination for business, and his immoderate love of pleasure. The northern pirates, who had long respected the coasts of England, soon discovered the distracted state of the kingdom: the depredations of the last century were renewed with still greater success: and, as if heaven had conspired with man to avenge the blood of Edward, the horrors of invasion were aggravated by several years of scarcity, by a contagious distemper among the cattle, and a dysentery most fatal to the human species. It would be difficult to select a period in English history, in which the nation was visited with such a multiplicity of calamities, as during the protracted reign of Ethelred<sup>51</sup>.

Invasions and  
ravages of the  
Northmen.

The profession of piracy among the Northmen had, in the last century, received many considerable checks. The vigilance, with which the coasts of Gaul and Britain were guarded, had diminished the chances of success: the more opulent adventurers, willing to enjoy the fruits of their plunder, sought to excite a spirit of industry among their countrymen; and powerful princes had arisen who, for their own security, laboured to put down the faithless and ferocious sea-kings. A few chieftains, however, still followed the example of their fathers; and

980.

<sup>50</sup> Malm. 34. West. ad ann. 978.    <sup>51</sup> Chron. Sax. 125. Ing. 55, 56. Malm. 34

one of these rovers in 980, ventured to make a descent near Southampton. His temerity was rewarded with an ample booty. With similar success he repeated the attempt on the isle of Thanet: and in the succeeding years the coasts of Cornwall and Devonshire, then the isle of Portland, afterwards Watchet in Somersetshire, were successively visited and plundered by the barbarians. These, indeed, were but momentary inroads. They might harass: they could not alarm. But in 991 a more formidable armament under Justin and Gurthmund reduced Ipswich. Thence the Northmen proceeded as far as Malden, to meet the ealdorman Brithnod, who had formerly gained a splendid victory on the same spot, and whom they now challenged a second time to the combat. Accompanied by his retainers, Brithnod hastened to oppose the enemy; during fourteen days he frustrated all their attempts, but was at last surrounded by superior numbers and slain. Ethelred, unprepared and alarmed, consulted his witan; and by the advice of Siric, the successor of Dunstan, resolved to purchase with money the departure of the invaders. The two sea-kings received ten thousand pounds of silver, and returned to Denmark, carrying with them the head of Brithnod, as the proof of their victory and revenge<sup>52</sup>.

991.

This dastardly measure was productive of the most fatal consequences. It was defended on the ground that it offered the least expensive means of removing the invaders, and had been sanctioned by the example of former kings both in England and Gaul: but it should also have been remembered, that it had always served to give the Danes a high notion of their own power, and to induce a frequent repetition of their visits. The

Treason of  
Elfric.

992.

<sup>52</sup> Chron. Sax. 125, 126. Hist. Elien. 493, 494. Malm. 35.

CHAP.  
V.

---

next year the witena-gemot adopted a wiser line of policy : and a numerous fleet was collected at London, under the command of two ealdormen, and two prelates. But of the former one was already a traitor, and secretly leagued with the Northmen. Elfric had succeeded his father Alfere in the government of Mercia, had been deprived of it on account of his misconduct, and had recovered it by the influence of his friends. Intrusted with a principal command, he was directed to surprise a Danish squadron, as it lay at anchor in a state of unsuspecting security : but he joined the enemy in the evening, informed them of the impending danger, and urged them to immediate flight. In the pursuit Elfric's vessel was captured. The traitor himself had the fortune to escape : but the eyes of his son Algar were put out by the orders of Ethelred : either because the young man had been an accomplice in the treason, or because revenge impelled the king to punish the guilt of the father on his guiltless offspring<sup>53</sup>.

993.

In the following year the Danes transferred their arms from the south to the north of England. Bamborough was carried by storm : the three chieftains appointed to conduct the natives, deserted to the invaders ; and the coast on both sides of the Humber was successively ravaged by the barbarians. But in 994 two new, and more powerful, chieftains appeared ; Sweyn, king of Denmark, and Olave, king of Norway. The former had mounted the throne by the murder of his father ; had been twice expelled by the arms of Eric of Sweden, and had twice recovered his dominions. Olave was the son of Tryggva, a pirate by profession, who had repeatedly visited and pillaged the coasts of Ireland, Britain, and Normandy. From the Scilly isles,

Sweyn and  
Olave.  
994.

<sup>53</sup> Chron. Sax. 127. Malm. 35. Flor.



where a hermit induced him to embrace christianity, he had sailed to the Orkneys ; had subdued and converted the natives with the logic of his sword ; and at his arrival on the coast of Norway had been unexpectedly hailed king by the chieftains, who had deposed Hacon the bad. A confederacy was formed between the Swede and Norwegian, who with ninety-four ships sailed up the Thames to attack the city of London. They were repulsed with considerable loss ; and to revenge their disappointment ravaged the neighbouring counties of Essex, Kent, Sussex, and Hampshire. Terror and distrust prevailed again in the councils of Ethelred. The invaders had mounted a body of horsemen to carry their devastations to a greater distance : the king dared not collect an army to oppose their excursions : and as a last resource, the sum of sixteen thousand pounds, and winter quarters at Southampton, were offered as the price of their forbearance. The conditions were accepted. Olave accompanied the prelates Elphege and Ethelward to Andover ; received from the bishop of Winchester the sacrament of confirmation, and promised the king that he would never more draw the sword against his christian brethren. Sweyn, on the departure of his confederate, was compelled to follow him ; but he never forgave what he deemed a breach of faith in the Norwegian. Olave employed his time in endeavouring to convert his subjects ; and some years afterwards was surprised by Sweyn at sea near to the isle of Wollin. Unable to contend with success against the multitude, and disdaining to surrender to his enemy, he terminated the unequal contest by leaping from his ship into the waves <sup>54</sup>.

During the four following years different parts of the coast

Other invasions.  
998.

<sup>54</sup>Chron. Sax. 127—129. Mail. 152. Sim. Dunel. 163. Saxo Gram. 184. 189. Snorre, 222. 345.

CHAP.  
V.

were repeatedly laid waste by the pirates. At last in 998 Ethelred succeeded in collecting a powerful fleet and army: but the commanders, we are told, were secret friends of the Danes; who by their advice quitted the kingdom, and sailed to the mouth of the Seine. The king, unable to meet with the Northmen, led his troops the following year into Cumberland, which he almost desolated by his ravages, while his fleet, prevented by the weather from gaining the station assigned to it, sailed to the isle of Man, and depopulated that nursery of pirates <sup>55</sup>.

In 1001 the Danes returned from Normandy. They landed in Hampshire; carried their devastations as far as the Bristol channel, and re-tracing their steps passed to the isle of Wight. In this expedition they had fought and gained two battles: and had reduced to ashes Waltham, Taunton, Pen, Clifton, and several smaller towns. The king could discover no better expedient than that of ransom; and the barbarians retired on the payment of twenty-four thousand pounds <sup>56</sup>.

Ethelred mar-  
ries Emma.  
1002.

Ethelred, in the seventeenth year of his age, had married Elfleda, the daughter of the ealdorman Thored, who bore him six sons, and four daughters. After her death he obtained the hand of Emma, a Norman princess, who on her marriage, assumed the name of Elgiva. The king and her father Richard had formerly been enemies. The origin of their quarrel is unknown: but Ethelred had prepared a fleet for the invasion of Normandy, and Richard had arrested all the English merchants and pilgrims in his dominions, thrown many into prison, and condemned several to death. Pope John XV. undertook to reconcile the two princes: and his legate Leo, the vice-bishop of Treves, visited first Ethelred, and then Richard. At his re-

<sup>55</sup> Chron. Sax. 129, 130. Mail. 153.  
Fordun asserts that the Cumbrians had re-

fused to pay their share of the Dane-gelt, iv. 35.  
<sup>56</sup> Chron. Sax. 131, 132. Flor. 611.

quest they sent commissioners to Rouen : by whom it was agreed that all ancient causes of dissension should be forgotten : that a perpetual peace should subsist between the king of England and the marquess of Normandy, their children born and to be born, and all their true liegemen : that every infraction of this peace should be repaired by satisfactory compensation · and that neither prince should harbour the subjects nor the enemies of the other without a written permission. This, the oldest treaty now extant between any of our kings and a foreign power, is drawn up in the name of the pope, and confirmed by the oaths and marks of one bishop and two thanes on the part of Ethelred, and of one bishop and two barons on the part of Richard <sup>37</sup>. The king's union with a Norman princess was calculated to improve this friendship between the two nations, and to secure a powerful support against the Danes. But Ethelred's misconduct marred his hopes. By his neglect of his young queen, and his repeated infidelities, he alienated her affections, and provoked the resentment of her brother, Richard II., who had succeeded his father in the dukedom.

Emma reached England in the spring. The rejoicings occasioned by the marriage were scarcely concluded when Ethelred planned and executed a measure, which will cover his name with eternal infamy. He ordered a general massacre of the Danes on the same day in every county. On the festival of St. Brice, the thirteenth of November, the unsuspecting victims with their wives and families were seized by the populace : and the horror of their murder was in many places aggravated by every insult and barbarity which national hatred could suggest. At London they fled for security to the churches, and were mas-

Massacre of  
the Danes

<sup>37</sup> Malm. 35, 36. West. 196. The treaty was called indifferently, marquess, or earl, or duke.  
was signed at Rouen, March 1st, 991. Richard



CHAP.  
V.

---

sacred in crowds round the altars. The most illustrious of the sufferers was Gunhilda, the sister of Sweyn, who had embraced christianity, and had married Palig, a naturalized Northman. By the orders of the royal favourite, the infamous Edric, her children and her husband were slaughtered before her eyes. In the agonies of death she is said to have foretold the severe revenge, which her brother would one day inflict both on him who commanded, and on those who perpetrated, the murder<sup>56</sup>.

Of the motives which prompted this bloody tragedy, and of the extent to which it was carried, we are ignorant. It could not include every individual of northern extraction, or it would have swept away one third of the population. But beside the descendants of the Danes, who had settled in England about a century before, there were many Northmen who had been incorporated with the natives during the late reigns. For it was a favourite custom with our kings to display their generosity by donations of land to foreigners in return for their services: and of late it had been their policy to retain the northern adventurers to fight their battles. This is numbered among the principal errors of Edgar: and there is evidence that Ethelred had followed the dangerous precedent of his father. In all probability it was only to Danes of this description that the royal order extended. To their repeated treasons the natives were accustomed to attribute the success of the invaders: and the charge was confirmed in the late campaign by the conduct of Palig, who though he had sworn fealty to Ethelred, and had received from him a princely inheritance, had violated his oath, and fought under the banner of his kinsmen. Hence, perhaps, the king, taught by experience, could no longer place any confidence

<sup>56</sup> Malin. 35. Hunt. 206. West. 200, 201

in their loyalty, and unable to free himself from them by other means, had recourse to the revolting expedient of assassination. Sweyn, however, was not tardy in revenging the fate of his countrymen. By the negligence or perfidy of Hugo, the Norman governor appointed by Emma, he obtained possession of Exeter, and thence poured his barbarians into the heart of Wiltshire. A numerous army had been collected to oppose him under the command of Elfric, who had again made his peace with the king: but the hoary traitor, by a counterfeit sickness, paralyzed the efforts of his followers; and Sweyn indulged without molestation in the pursuit of plunder and vengeance. During four years England presented the mournful spectacle of a nobility divided by faction, treason, and murder; of a king unequal to the duties of his station; and of a people the sport of an exasperated and vindictive enemy. If the winter afforded a pause from the horrors of war, the barbarians were always prepared to recommence their devastations in the spring: if a season of scarcity compelled them to retire for a while, they constantly reappeared with the following harvest. Each county was successively the scene of their ravages: the natives who fell into their hands experienced every species of insult, of torment, and of death. Every village, town, and city was invariably given to the flames. There were indeed instances in which the despair of the inhabitants inflicted severe punishment on the invaders: but as often as the English armies ventured to oppose them in the open field, they were routed with the most dreadful slaughter. At length in 1007 Sweyn had quenched his thirst of revenge, and consented to a peace on the payment of thirty-six thousand pounds of silver<sup>59</sup>.

CHAP.  
V.

Revenged by  
Sweyn.  
1003.

1007

<sup>59</sup> Chron. Sax. 133—136.

CHAP.  
V.Exertions of  
Ethelred.  
1008.

1009.

Invasion by  
Thurchil.

The enormous sums repeatedly given to the Danes had never purchased more than a temporary cessation of hostilities: and it was at last discovered that the riches of the nation might be more usefully employed in providing for its own defence, than in stimulating the rapacity of its enemies. In the witena-gemot it was determined to provide a formidable fleet, and armour for the mariners, by an assessment on all the landholders in the kingdom, in the proportion of one ship for three hundred and ten hides, and of a helmet and breast-plate for every eight hides. The next year the most numerous armament that ever rode in the English channel, was collected at Sandwich. Ethelred himself, accompanied by his principal thanes, went on board; and every heart thrilled with the hope of victory. But this pleasing anticipation soon vanished in mistrust and disunion. Brihteric, the brother of Edric, lately appointed earl of Mercia, accused of treason Wulfnoth, the “child” of the South-Saxons. That chieftain, either conscious of guilt, or indignant at the charge, separated from the fleet with twenty ships, and commenced the profession of a sea-king. Brihteric with eighty sail undertook to bring him back “alive or dead;” but his squadron was stranded by the fury of a tempest, and every vessel was burnt by the followers of Wulfnoth. This disaster increased the confusion of the royal councils: the most groundless suspicions were entertained: Ethelred hastily returned to land; and the mariners, abandoned by their captains, steered their course up the Thames<sup>60</sup>. The departure of the English was the signal for the re-appearance of the Danish fleet. It was no longer under the command of Sweyn, who affected to observe his recent stipulations; but he had secretly granted permission to Thurchil to re-

<sup>60</sup> Chron. Sax. 137.



venge the death of his brother, who had perished in a former expedition<sup>61</sup>. For three years Thurchil carried fire and devastation into different parts of the kingdom. In the first he ravaged the southern counties : in the second he penetrated through East-Anglia into the fens, which had hitherto afforded a secure asylum to the natives : in the third he besieged and destroyed the important city of Canterbury. Thurchil had lain before it twenty days, when the traitor Elmer set fire to a number of houses ; and while the inhabitants were employed in extinguishing the flames, the Northmen forced open one of the gates, and rushed into the city. Elphege, the archbishop, venerable for his age and virtues, threw himself into the midst of the carnage, and besought the barbarians to spare the inhabitants. He was seized, bound and dragged to behold the fate of his cathedral, in which were collected the monks, the clergy, the women and the children. A pile of wood had been reared against the wall : with shouts of triumph the fire was kindled : the flames quickly ascended the roof ; and as the melted lead and falling timbers compelled the fugitives to quit their retreat, they were successively massacred before the eyes of the primate. In the evening the Danes numbered eight hundred captives : seven thousand men besides women and children had perished in the sack of the city. The life of Elphege was spared during several weeks, in the hope that he might be induced to pay a ransom of three thousand pounds : but the old man refused to solicit the aid either of his friends or the clergy ; and he was put to death on the Saturday after Easter while he was labouring to impress his captors with a reverence for the doctrines of christianity. At last Thurchil, after ravaging the greater part of thirteen counties, sold his

1011.

1012

<sup>61</sup> Encom. Emmae, Maseres, p. 7. Licentiâ ulciseretur. Ditmar apud Bouquet, x. 134. accepta, ut fratrem suum inibi interfectum

CHAP.  
V.

friendship and services to Ethelred for the sum of forty-eight thousand pounds. Many of his followers accepted settlements in the island: and the mariners of five-and-forty ships swore allegiance to the monarch<sup>62</sup>.

Distress of  
the English.

Here the reader may pause to take a view of this fallen and devoted country. The natives had not submitted to their fate without a struggle; but numerous treasons and accumulated defeats had unnerved their courage; while repeated victories had inspired the Danes with the idea that they were invincible. We are assured on good authority that one Northman was considered an equal match for ten Englishmen<sup>63</sup>. Hence we meet with few instances of successful defence, except in the fortified cities, which were seldom reduced. London, though repeatedly besieged still bade defiance to all the power of the invaders<sup>64</sup>. But the open country was universally abandoned to their mercy, while they systematically destroyed whatever they could not carry away, and reduced to ashes every monastery, village, and town. In consequence of these ravages the labours of agriculture were interrupted or abandoned: and in some years the scarcity was so great, that the Danes themselves had been compelled to quit the island in search of provisions<sup>65</sup>.

These calamities sprung from the ferocity of the invaders: others must be attributed to the turbulence and insubordination of the natives. Since the death of Edgar the administration of justice had been but feebly enforced: of late it had been entirely suspended. The absence of legal punishment, and the licence of a state of warfare, had left the passions of individuals without restraint; the most atrocious crimes were committed with impu-

<sup>62</sup> Chron. Sax. 141, 142. Ang. Sac. ii. 135.

<sup>63</sup> Serm. Lup. apud Hicks, 103.

<sup>64</sup> Chron. Sax. 138.

<sup>65</sup> Chron. Sax. 134.

nity; and men sought to indemnify themselves for their own losses by the spoliation of their neighbours. On the one side relations were sold for slaves by their relations, children in the cradle by their parents; on the other the slaves often rose on their masters, pillaged their property, and then deserted to the enemy<sup>66</sup>. The thanes of each district adopted at last the general policy of the nation. Instead of uniting with their neighbours against the common enemy, they negotiated for their own security: and by the payment of a sum of money dismissed the barbarians to another county, to repeat the same ravages, and extort similar contributions<sup>67</sup>.

To this period must also be referred the origin of direct and annual taxation. The sums which Ethelred so frequently paid to the Northmen were raised by an impost on landed property, which did not cease with the occasion, but was retained for centuries under the pretext of providing for the defence of the kingdom<sup>68</sup>. The assessments were at first apportioned with apparent equity: but they soon gave birth to much extortion, and consequently to much misery. Wherever money was known to exist, it was required by the king's officers: the payment of one demand was considered sufficient evidence of ability to pay a second: and by these repeated exactions, joined to the depredations of the enemy, the most opulent proprietors were often reduced to a state of penury. From one instance the reader may form an idea of the others. In 1005 Godric was chosen abbot of Croyland: and in that and the seven following years the monies levied on the monastery by the king, the ealdorman, and the inferior officers amounted on an average

Taxation.

<sup>66</sup> Serm. Lupi apud Hicks, Diss. epis. 99,  
<sup>106</sup> Langbeck, ii. 464. 469.

<sup>67</sup> Chron. Sax. 134. 140, 141.

<sup>68</sup> Hunting. v. f. 205. It was called Dane-

geld, and became an annual land-tax of twelve pence per hide. The clergy were exempted from it. Leg. Sax. Ed. Con. xi. p. 198.



CHAP.  
V.

---

to the annual sum of four hundred marks. In 1013 Sweyn plundered all the manors belonging to the abbey; and crowds of the natives, fleeing from the swords of the barbarians, sought an asylum at Croyland. The benevolent old man received them with open arms; consoled them in their misfortunes, and offered them support as long as his means sufficed. The choir and the cloisters he reserved for the accommodation of his own monks and those of the neighbourhood; the body of the church was allotted to the clergy for their residence; the laymen were lodged in the other apartments of the abbey; and the women and children in temporary buildings erected in the cemetery. The charity of Godric awakened the rapacity of Sweyn. Under pain of the demolition of the monastery he ordered the abbot to pay one thousand marks at Lincoln, on an appointed day; and not satisfied with this sum, extorted another thousand within the three following months. Scarcely were these demands satisfied, when the officers of Ethelred appeared. They accused Godric of being the confederate of Sweyn: the payment of the money extorted from him by violence was construed into an act of treason: and he was compelled to send two thousand marks to the king to recover the royal favour. Harassed by these iniquitous proceedings, and reduced to a state of poverty, Godric, as a last resource, implored the protection of Norman, a powerful retainer of the ealdorman Edric; and that chieftain, in consideration of the grant of a valuable manor for the term of one hundred years, proclaimed himself the patron of the abbey, and engaged to defend it with his sword from every unjust demand<sup>69</sup>.

Last invasion  
by Sweyn.  
1013.

Report had carried to Denmark the knowledge of Thurchil's

<sup>69</sup> Ingul. 55. 57.

success and of his subsequent engagement with Ethelred : and Sweyn, jealous of the reputation as well as the fidelity of that chieftain, summoned all his vassals to his standard, and openly declared his intention to attempt the conquest of England. The riches of the fleet, and the superior magnificence of the royal galley are described in terms of admiration by a contemporary historian : nor shall we refuse credit to his narrative, if we recollect that Denmark had been for centuries the depot of successful depredation<sup>70</sup>. Sweyn sailed to Sandwich ; failed in an attempt to corrupt the Danish mercenaries ; and directed his course to the mouth of the Humber. At Gainsborough he received successively the submission of the Northumbrians, of the men of Lindesey, of the Five-burghers, and of the other inhabitants on the north of the Watling-street. They were partly incorporated with his troops, and were commanded to supply him with provisions and horses. As conquest was his object, he resolved to extort by terror the submission of the southern English : and the orders, which he issued preparatory to his march, were congenial to the barbarism of the chief and his followers : to ravage the open country, pillage the churches, burn the towns, and put every male to the sword<sup>71</sup>. From the Watling-street to the Thames these instructions were faithfully observed : the inhabitants of Oxford appeased his anger by prayers and hostages : their example was followed by the citizens of Winchester ; and the invader, borne forward by the tide of success, hurried his troops to the walls of London. The city was defended by Ethelred and Thurchil, whose policy and courage baffled the negotiations, stratagems, and assaults of the enemy. Sweyn

<sup>70</sup> Encom. Emmæ, Maseres, p. 9. Vanes in the shape of birds or dragons were fixed on the masts to point out the direction of the

wind. Ibid.

<sup>71</sup> Flor. 614. West. 201.

CHAP.  
V.Flight of  
Ethelred.

consoled his disappointment with the repetition of his former cruelties; and marching slowly to Bath, proclaimed himself king of England, summoned to his court the thanes of Wessex, Mercia, and Northumberland, and compelled them to swear allegiance to the king of the Danes. This general defection created alarm within the walls of the metropolis. The wavering fidelity of the citizens induced the king and Thurchil to retire with the fleet to Greenwich: and the authority of the invader was quickly established in London itself. In this emergency Ethelred yielded to despair. His wife and children with a retinue of one hundred and forty horsemen he recommended to the care of her brother Richard, and sailed clandestinely with the few thanes and prelates, who still adhered to his fortunes, to the isle of Wight. There he remained in concealment till a messenger from Emma brought him the offer of a secure asylum in Normandy<sup>72</sup>.

1114.  
Death of  
Sweyn.

The successes of the northern chieftains were often attended with surprising revolutions: and their thrones, which had no firmer basis than that of terror, were overturned at the first shock. It was in the second week of January that Ethelred fled from England, and abandoned the crown to his victorious competitor: in the first week of February the unexpected death of that competitor recalled the fugitive king, and re-established his authority. Sweyn, before he died, had appointed his son Canute to succeed him: and the will of the monarch had been confirmed by the acclamations of the army<sup>73</sup>. But the English, no longer overawed by the genius of the conqueror, and considering the moment favourable for the recovery of their independence, invited Ethelred to re-ascend the throne. His son

<sup>72</sup> Chron. Sax. 143, 144. Malin. 39. West. 202. <sup>73</sup> Encom. Emm. p. 9.



Edward met the thanes at London: it was agreed that the king should forgive all past offences, should govern according to law, and should on important occasions follow the advice of the great council: and that the thanes, on their part, should swear to support his authority, and never to submit to a Danish sovereign. Ethelred, who returned about the middle of Lent, was received with enthusiasm, and instantly led an army against the enemy in Lindesey. Canute could not withstand the superior force of the English, and fled with sixty ships, leaving his associates to the mercy of the victors. The country was ravaged, and every inhabitant of Danish extraction was put to the sword. To revenge the fate of his friends Canute ordered the hostages, who had been delivered to his father, to be deprived of their ears, noses, and hands. In this mutilated state, the sons of the noblest families among the English, were landed at Sandwich, as pledges of that unsparing retribution which awaited those, who had revolted from the authority, or opposed the interests, of the Dane. He proceeded to his own country<sup>74</sup>.

Return of  
Ethelred.

It might have been expected that the English, relieved from the pressure of the enemy, would have employed this interval in providing against future dangers. But distrust and treachery still distracted their attention, and divided their councils. Ethelred convoked an assembly of the witan at Oxford: and his first measure was a repetition, on a smaller scale, of that system of massacre, for which he had already suffered so severely. Many thanes of Danish descent were immolated to his jealousy or revenge: but Sigferth and Morcar, the chieftains of the Sevenburghers, were too powerful to be openly assailed with impunity. On such occasions the policy of the king did not disdain the

1115.

<sup>74</sup> Chron. Sax. 145. Flor. 615. Hunt. 207.

CHAP.  
V.

dagger of the assassin. The unsuspecting earls were invited to a banquet by his favourite Edric : and in the midst of the feast were murdered by a body of armed men. Their retainers, alarmed at the fate of their lords, fled to the church of St. Frideswitha : driven from the gates they sought refuge in the tower : but Ethelred, irritated by their resistance, ordered fire to be put to the sacred edifice : and had the satisfaction to see his enemies, real or supposed, perish in the conflagration. Such conduct was not of a nature to conciliate esteem, or to insure fidelity. The sequel proved that he could not command the obedience of even his own family. Edmund, his eldest son, petitioned for the possessions of the two earls. The father refused : and the young prince hastened to Malmsbury, married Algiva, the relict of Sigeferth, whom the king had confined in the monastery, rode with her into Northumberland, and by her influence prevailed on the Seven-burghers to receive him as their chieftain. Ethelred was compelled to acquiesce in this insult to his authority <sup>75</sup>.

Invasion by  
Canute.

At the commencement of winter Thurchil had received twenty-one thousand pounds as the reward of his past services : but either suspecting the capricious temper of Ethelred, or dreading the resentment of his native sovereign, he returned with nine sail to Denmark, and obtained, after much solicitation, the forgiveness of Canute. The thousand ships, which, according to the northern writers, that prince had collected for the invasion of England, are reduced to two hundred by a contemporary historian : but he describes in pompous colours, the splendour of

<sup>75</sup> Chron. Sax. 146. Malm. 39. Flor. 616. West. 202. The Fif-burghers or inhabitants of the five burghs, Leicester, Stamford, Derby, Nottingham, and Lincoln, are well known in our history. But who were

the Seven-burghers? Malmsbury (41) and Westminster (203) seem to place them among the Northumbrians : the Saxon Chronicle (146) and Florence (616) make them include the Fif-burghers.

their equipment, and assures us that among the warriors whom they bore, there was not one of ignoble birth, or past the age of manhood, or unpractised in feats of arms, or unable to contend in speed with the fleetest horse<sup>76</sup>. Sandwich was at this period “the most celebrated haven in Britain<sup>77</sup>.” Here Thurchil solicited and obtained permission to obliterate the disgrace of his past disloyalty. He was the first to land; but was resolutely opposed; and if he ultimately proved successful, it was not without the loss of the bravest among his Danes. From Sandwich Canute proceeded along the southern coast, ravaged the maritime counties, and extorted the submission of the West-Saxons. An army had been collected in the north by Edmund: another in Mercia by Edric. They joined, quarrelled and separated. The resentment of Edric led him to the standard of Canute: and his example was followed by a body of Danes, who had sworn fealty to Ethelred<sup>78</sup>.

The next year, after an ineffectual attempt to raise an army in the southern counties, Edmund put himself at the head of the Northumbrians, who had been called into the field by their earl Uhtred. England soon became the prey of two hostile armies, which instead of seeking each other, contented themselves with plundering the defenceless inhabitants. The royalists wreaked their vengeance on the counties of Stafford, Salop, and Leicester, which had refused to join their standard: and Canute, adopting a similar policy, indulged his followers with the pillage of the eastern part of Mercia, and the neighbourhood of York. Uhtred was called away to protect his own property: but finding resistance hopeless, made an offer of submission. It

1116.

<sup>76</sup> Encom. Emm. 12. Langbeck, i. 67. 118.

<sup>77</sup> Sandwich omnium Anglorum portuum famosissimus. Encom. Emm. 13, 14.

<sup>78</sup> Forty ships. Chron. Sax. 146. Flor.

616. The amount of the Danish armies is always calculated by our old writers in *ships*. From different hints I conjecture the complement of a *ship* to have been about 80 men,



CHAP.  
V.

was accepted : and his oath of fealty was followed by an order for his execution. The Dane summoned him to attend his court at Wiheal : a curtain suspended across the hall concealed Thurebrand and a body of assassins : and the defenceless earl fell a victim to the perfidy of his new sovereign. Forty of his retainers shared his fate<sup>79</sup>.

Death of  
Ethelred.

Harassed with care, and worn out with disease, Ethelred had resigned the defence of the throne to the courage and activity of Edmund. At the arrival of Canute from Denmark he was confined to his bed at Cosham in Wiltshire. For greater security he had been removed to London, where he lingered through the winter. But his constitution was broken : and on the twenty-third of April he terminated a long and calamitous reign at the very moment when the barbarians were preparing to

<sup>79</sup> Chron. Sax. 147, 148. Malm. 40. Encom. Emm. 15. The history of Uhtred and his family will afford striking proofs of the barbarism of the times. When Malcolm, king of Scotland, laid siege to Durham, Uhtred assumed the office of his aged father, the earl Waltheof, and defeated the enemy. After the victory he selected the most handsome of the slain, whose heads by his orders were cut off, washed in the river, and with their long braided hair fixed on stakes round the walls of the city. To reward this service Ethelred appointed him earl, and gave him his daughter Elfgiva in marriage. His former wife Siga was the daughter of the opulent thane Styr. With her he had espoused the quarrels of the family, and engaged to satisfy the revenge of his father-in-law by the death of that nobleman's enemy Thurebrand. But Thurebrand frustrated all his machinations, and at last, as appears above, obtained the consent of Canute to inflict on his foe the punishment which had been designed for himself. The murderer, however, fell soon after by the sword of Aldred, the son of the man whom he had murdered. The duty of revenge now devolved on Ceorl, the son of Thurebrand. The two chieftains spent some

years in plotting their mutual destruction : by the persuasion of their friends they were reconciled : the reconciliation was confirmed by oaths of brotherhood, and a promise of making together a pilgrimage to Rome. Aldred visited Ceorl at his house, was treated with apparent kindness, and then treacherously assassinated in the forest of Ridesdale. Ceorl escaped the fate which he merited : but at the distance of many years his sons, while they were feasting at the house of the eldest brother near York, were surprised by Waltheof the grandson of Aldred. The whole family was massacred with the exception of Sumerlede, who chanced to be absent, and of Canute, who owed his life to the pity inspired by his amiable character. Sim. Dun. 81, 82. This hereditary feud, which had now continued for five generations, was at last extinguished by the Norman conquest. From it the reader may judge of the disunion, mistrust, and treachery, which prevailed in armies composed of the retainers of chieftains, bound by what they considered a most sacred duty, to seek the destruction of each other. It was to this that in a great measure was owing the success of the Danes.

besiege him in his capital. Of the sons by his first wife Edmund, Edwy, and Athelstan survived him: by Emma he left two others, Edward and Alfred <sup>80</sup>.

CHAP.  
V.

### EDMUND.

If the personal exertions of an individual could have prevented the subjugation of England, that glorious achievement would have been accomplished by the courage and perseverance of Edmund. He was in London at the time of his father's death, and was immediately proclaimed king by the citizens. Canute was posted at Southampton, where the thanes of Wessex with little repugnance acknowledged him for their sovereign. The preparations for the siege of the capital, the last bulwark of English independence, were now ready: and a fleet of three hundred and forty sail, carrying an army of twenty-seven thousand men, had been collected in the mouth of the Thames <sup>81</sup>. Within the city were Edmund and his brother, the queen dowager Emma, two bishops, and several distinguished thanes. It was easy for Canute to cut off the communication by land: to prevent the ingress and egress by water proved an undertaking of greater difficulty. As the fortifications of the bridge impeded the navigation of the river, by dint of labour a channel was dug on the right bank: through it was dragged a considerable number of ships: and the Northmen became masters of the Thames above as well as below the city. The valour of the inhabitants repelled every assault: their constancy was tried by promises and threats. Canute demanded that Edmund with his brother should be

Siege of London.  
1016

<sup>80</sup> Chron. Sax. 146. 148.

<sup>81</sup> We owe this information to Ditmar, bishop of Mersburgh, who received it the

same year from an acquaintance. He tells us that Canute's ships carried on an average eighty men. Bouquet, x. 134.

CHAP.  
V.

delivered into his hands; that fifteen thousand pounds should be paid for the ransom of the queen, twelve thousand for that of the bishops; and that three hundred hostages should be given as pledges for the fidelity of the citizens. If these terms were accepted, he would take them under his protection: if they were refused, the city should be abandoned to pillage and the flames<sup>82</sup>.

Battles be-  
tween Ed-  
mund and  
Canute.

Sensible that it required the exertions of an army to save the capital, Edmund endeavoured to escape during the darkness of the night. A boat conveyed the royal brothers through the Danish fleet<sup>83</sup>, and the men of Wessex hastened in crowds to their standard. They surprised a party of plunderers in the forest of Gillingham: but had soon to contend with Canute himself, who leaving a detachment to observe the city, had advanced with the rest of his forces to crush the growing power of his competitor. The battle of Searstan is celebrated in the writings of our annalists. Edmund placed his most approved warriors in the front: the remainder were formed into a reserve. The Danes were assisted by Edric and Ælmer with the men of Wilts and Somerset. So obstinate was the valour of the combatants, that night alone put an end to the contest. It was renewed the next morning: when Edmund, espying his adversary, with a stroke of his battle-axe divided the shield of the Dane, and wounded his horse in the shoulder. A crowd of Northmen sprung forward to protect their monarch: and Ed-

<sup>82</sup> Ditmar, *ibid.* Chron. Sax. 148.

<sup>83</sup> Ditmar, *ibid.* It is singular that Ditmar's friend should call the brother of Edmund Athelstan, and say that he fell in the next engagement. This prince is unknown to our national historians. Yet his will is published by Lye (*Dic. App. No. 5*), in which he repeatedly calls Ethelred his father, Elfrida his

grandmother, and Edmund and Edwy his brothers. It has been supposed that the author of the will was slain by the Danes in 1010: but the Athelstan, who fell on that occasion, was not the king's son. He was his "athum" or daughter's husband. Chron. Sax. 139.



mund slowly retired before the multitude. At this moment Edric cut off the head of Osmear, who had been slain, and holding it in his hand exclaimed, "The head of Edmund!" At the sight some of the English turned their backs. The indignant prince hurled his spear at the traitor: and, hastening to an eminence, uncovered his face, that he might be known to his troops. The battle was thus restored, and was a second time interrupted by the darkness of night<sup>84</sup>.

In this murderous conflict each army had suffered severely; but the morning showed that the result was in favour of the English. Canute was already on his march to London. Edmund, as soon as he had repaired his losses, followed the footsteps of the Dane, forced him to raise the siege, and fought a second battle at Brentford. The advantage seems to have been with the enemy, who again returned to the capital, but failing in the assault, began to pillage the neighbouring country. The indefatigable Edmund overtook the plunderers at Oxford, where they experienced a most signal overthrow. It is pretended that the English monarch might have annihilated the Danes, had it not been for the perfidious counsels of Edric, who was again restored to favour<sup>85</sup>. Canute sailed to the isle of Shepey. To a personal challenge from the English hero, he coolly replied: "Let the man who talks of fighting in winter, take care to be prepared in summer<sup>86</sup>."

Within a few days the Northmen had quitted the isle of Shepey, and carried devastation through the county of Essex. Edmund met them at Ashdown. The Danes brought into the field the mysterious standard of their fathers: and Thurchil,

<sup>84</sup> Chron. Sax. 148, 149. Flor. 618. Knytlinga Saga, p. 130.

<sup>85</sup> Chron. Sax. 149. Flor. 618.

<sup>86</sup> Qui aves duellum in hieme, cave ne deficias aptiore tempore. Encom. Emm. 16.

CHAP.  
V.

---

from the apparent flight of the raven, promised them certain victory<sup>87</sup>. Edmund had drawn up his forces in three divisions; but at the very onset, Edric, either actuated by treachery, or by cowardice, fled with his division. From three in the afternoon till sunset despair supported the natives: some of them even maintained the contest by the light of the moon: but at last they fled in every direction, and attempted by their knowledge of the country to elude the pursuit of the enemy. This defeat was most fatal to the prospects of Edmund. Almost the whole of the West-Saxon nobility had perished. The Danes buried their own dead; they stripped the bodies of the English, and left them naked in the field<sup>88</sup>.

Pacification.

Canute followed his competitor into Gloucestershire, and another battle would have ensued, had not the chieftains in each army been tired of this sanguinary warfare. Compelled by the expostulations of their troops, the two kings met in the isle of Olney, exchanged oaths and presents, and agreed to a compromise. The Thames was made the boundary of their respective dominions. The south was retained by Edmund: the north by Canute: but the tax called Danegeld was extended to both kingdoms, and assigned to defray the expenses of the Danish fleet. Edmund died within a month after the pacification, and was buried near the remains of his grandfather at Glastonbury. He left two infant sons, Edward and Edmund<sup>89</sup>.

The reign of this king, if reign it can be called, which was a mere struggle for existence, lasted but seven months. Yet,

<sup>87</sup> Ibid. Encom. Emm. 16.

<sup>88</sup> Ibid. 17, 18. Chron. Sax. 150. Malm. 40. Flor. 618. In this battle fell the ealdormen Ælfric, Godwin, Ulfketel, and Ethelward. Eadnoth, bishop of Dorchester, with Wulsige the abbot of Ramsey, was slain as he was saying mass for the success of the army.

Hist. Elien. 502. 'Juxta morem Anglorum veterem non armis sed orationum supplicis pugnantem exercitum juvaturi. Hist. Ram. 433.

<sup>89</sup> Chron. Sax. 150. Encom. Emmæ, 18, 19, 20. Walling. 549. Florence (618), and Westminster (205), gave to Edmund. London, Essex, and East-Anglia.

within that short space, besides having vigorously assisted in the defence of London, he fought five battles; and, till the fatal field of Ashdown, seemed destined to establish the independence of his country. From his armour or his strength he acquired the surname of “Ironside:” and his memory was long cherished by the gratitude and admiration of his subjects. Their vanity has thrown the embellishments of fiction over the character of the hero. To account for the final success of Canute it was said that the two kings fought in single combat in the isle of Olney: that the Dane, finding himself inferior, assailed his rival with flattery; and that by his eloquence, not his prowess, he induced the English prince to acquiesce in the partition of the kingdom<sup>90</sup>. Nor was Edmund permitted to die in the ordinary course of nature. By some writers his death was attributed to Canute, on whom it conferred the crown of Wessex: by others to Edric, as if the murder of a king had been wanting to fill up the measure of his treasons. The assassins were said to have been the two chamberlains of Edmund, or Edric, or the son of Edric. Some professed themselves ignorant of the circumstances, some asserted that he was stabbed in the back in a secret and unguarded moment<sup>91</sup>. But the real fact is uncertain. The Saxon Chronicle is content with saying, that he departed on the feast of St. Andrew; the encomiast of Emma, that he died by the visitation of God<sup>92</sup>.

Death of Ed-  
mund.

<sup>90</sup> Riev. 364. West. 205. Hunt. 208.

<sup>91</sup> Ingul. 57. Hunt. 208. West. 205.  
Hist. Ram. 434. Malm. 40. Saxo. 193.  
Hist. Elie. 502.

<sup>92</sup> Chron. Sax. 150. Deus Edmundum  
eduxit e corpore. Encom. Emm. 20. Ho-  
minem exiit. Walling. 549. Ambiguum  
quo casu extinctus. Malm. 40.



## CHAP. VI.

## DANES.

DANISH SOVEREIGNS — CANUTE — HAROLD — HARDECANUTE — SAXON  
LINE RESTORED—EDWARD THE CONFESSOR—HAROLD—VICTORY  
OF WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR.

## CANUTE.

CHAP.  
VI.

Canute suc-  
ceeds.

**A**FTER the death of Edmund, Canute was elected king by the unanimous voice of the nation. To justify their choice it was pretended by some, that according to the pacification of Olney, the crown belonged to him as the survivor: by others that Edmund had appointed him the guardian and protector of his children<sup>1</sup>. The best reason was the power of the Dane. No man had the wish or the hardihood to renew the bloody and unavailing contest.

Sends away  
the children  
of Edmund.  
1017.

The first object of Canute's policy was to secure himself on the throne. From the infancy of Edmund's children he had little to apprehend; but as they advanced in years, they might prove dangerous competitors. Though a sea-king was seldom diverted from his purpose by considerations of humanity,

<sup>1</sup> He was chosen sponte (Encom. Emm. p. 20), omnium consensu (Ing. 58), ex prædicta concordia conditione (Walling. 549),

quia Edmundus voluerat Canutum adiutorem et protectorem esse filiorum ejus, donec regnandi ætatem habuissent. Flor. 618.

Canute did not imbrue his hands in their blood, but sent them to his half-brother Olave, king of Sweden. If we may believe those, who could hardly possess the means of knowing it, the messenger who conducted the children, was instructed to request in secret of Olave, that he would order them to be murdered. But whatever credit may be given to that report, it is certain that they were conveyed from Sweden to the court of Stephen, king of Hungary<sup>2</sup>. That prince, who was afterwards sainted for his virtues, received the orphans with tenderness, and educated them as his own children. Edmund died in his youth: Edward married Agatha, daughter to the emperor of Germany, and will hereafter claim the reader's attention.

Besides the children, Canute had to guard against the brothers of Edmund. Edwy was in England, and, for reasons with which we are unacquainted, was named the "king of the peasants." He was banished, recalled, and assassinated in the bosom of his family. We are told that the king had endeavoured to induce Ethelwold, a powerful thane, to undertake the murder; and that, failing in the attempt, he had bribed some of Edwy's own servants<sup>3</sup>.

Edward and Alfred, the half-brothers of Edmund were in Normandy, and Wallingford assures us that their uncle Richard had fitted out a fleet in support of their claims<sup>4</sup>. But Canute had the wisdom to disarm his enmity, by asking in marriage his sister, the relict of Ethelred. To accept the hand of the man, whose hostility had almost deprived her late husband of his

Kills Edwy.

Marries Emma.

<sup>2</sup> Mailros, 155. Flor. 619. Higden, 275. Our chroniclers say that they were sent to Solomon king of Hungary. But Papebroche shews it must have been to Stephen, not to Solomon, who was not born till after the year 1051. Act. SS. Jan. ii. 325.

<sup>3</sup> Chron. Sax. 151. Flor. 619. Mailros,

155. The Saxon chronicle mentions two Edwys banished at the same time: but they appear to be one person, from Simeon (175), Higden (274), Brompton (907), Knyghton (2317).

<sup>4</sup> Walling. 550.

CHAP.  
VI.

kingdom, who was suspected of the murder of her sons-in-law, and who had despoiled her own children of the crown, does not indicate much delicacy in Emma: but her youth and vanity were flattered with the prospect of royalty; her brother reluctantly assented to the proposal: and the marriage was solemnly celebrated in the month of July. It had been previously agreed, that her issue by Canute should succeed to the crown of England; a condition, which, while it satisfied the Norman, extinguished the hopes of his nephews<sup>5</sup>.

Punishes  
Edric.

Canute had divided the kingdom into four governments. Wessex he retained for himself; East-Anglia he gave to Thurchil; and continued Eric and Edric in Northumberland, and Mercia<sup>6</sup>. But Edric soon received the reward of his former perfidy. The king was celebrating the festival of Christmas in London, and Edric had the imprudence to boast of his services. Canute, turning to Eric, exclaimed: "Then let him receive his deserts, that he may not betray us, as he betrayed Ethelred and Edmund." The Norwegian cut him down with his battle-axe; and the body was thrown from a window into the Thames. It has been said that Canute, though willing to derive advantage from the treason, was anxious to punish the traitor: but, as he ordered Norman and the principal retainers of Edric to be put to death at the same time, there is reason to believe that they were suspected of some plot against the Danish interest. Their punishment is a matter of triumph to the ancient annalists, who attribute to the perfidy of Edric the subjugation of their country: but the same writers lament the fate of Ethelwerd and Brihtric, who perished with them, and were

<sup>5</sup> Chron. Sax. 151. Encom. Emm. 21. Malm. 40, 41.

<sup>6</sup> Thurchil was expelled in 1021. Chron. Sax. 152. See a long account of this cele-

brated Dane in Langbeck, ii. 458. Eric met with the same fate as Thurchil. West. 207. Malm. 41.



numbered among the most noble and blameless of the English nobility<sup>7</sup>. The lands of the slain were distributed among the Danish chieftains; but several of these, aware of the hatred of the natives, and apprehensive for their lives, with the king's permission sold their estates, and returned with the money to their native country<sup>8</sup>.

These emigrations to Denmark were much encouraged by Canute, who, now that he thought himself secure on the throne, made it his endeavour to win the affections of his English subjects. The presence of the Danish army was to them a constant source of uneasiness and animosity: but gratitude as well as policy forbad him to dismiss it without a liberal donative. For this purpose the sum of fifteen thousand pounds was raised on the citizens of London, of seventy-two thousand on the remainder of the nation: an oppressive burthen, but which was borne with the greater cheerfulness, when its real object was understood. Of all the associates of his labours and conquests he retained only the crews of forty ships, about three thousand men, probably the Thingmanna or royal guard, which, we are told, amounted to that number<sup>9</sup>. These were a body of soldiers selected by Canute from the whole of his forces. He was their commander: the chiefs swore fealty to him; and the privates to

Rewards the  
Danes.

1015.

Establishes  
guards.

<sup>7</sup> Encom. Emma, 20. Malm. 41. Eðric is said to have been killed digno fine (Ing. 58) swythe rihtlice (Chron. Sax. 151), but the others sine culpa (Mail. 155. Flor. 619).

<sup>8</sup> Hist. Ram. 438. 443. 445.

<sup>9</sup> Chron. Sax. 151. Flor. 649. Sim. Dunel. 177. These all differ in the sum paid by the citizens of London, making it 10,500, 11,000, or 15,000 pounds. We are told in the laws of Edward the confessor, that to provide for the safety of the Danes who remained, it was agreed that they should all enjoy the king's peace; that if a Dane were murdered, the reputed murderer, unless he could clear himself

by the ordeal, should be given up to justice: that if he could not be immediately found, the inhabitants of the vill or hundred, where the murder was perpetrated, should have a month and a day to search for him: that if they did not discover him, they should then pay a fine of 46 marks: that if they surrendered him to the king within a year and a day, the money should be returned: but if they did not, forty marks of the fine should be kept by the king, and the other six be given to the parents or the lord of the slain. Leg. Sax. 199, 200.

CHAP.  
VI.

their chiefs. The laws are still extant, which he compiled for their use: and his object appears to have been to prevent the quarrels, and consequently the bloodshed, which so frequently happened among these turbulent warriors. Unfortunately the king himself was the first to transgress his own laws, by the murder of a soldier in a paroxysm of passion. He assembled the Thingmans, descended from his throne, acknowledged his crime, and demanded punishment. They were silent. He promised impunity to every individual, who should speak his sentiments. They left the decision to his own wisdom. He then adjudged himself to pay three hundred and sixty talents of gold, nine times the amount of the usual pecuniary mulct: and added nine other talents by way of farther compensation<sup>10</sup>.

Pleases the  
English.

Though Canute had been baptized in his infancy, he knew little of the doctrines of christianity. But as soon as he was seated on the English throne, the ferocity of his disposition was softened by the precepts of religion, and the sanguinary sea-king was insensibly moulded into a just and beneficent monarch. He often lamented the bloodshed and misery, which his own rapacity and that of his father had inflicted on the natives; and acknowledged it his duty to compensate their sufferings by a peaceful and equitable reign<sup>11</sup>. He always treated them with marked attention; protected them from the insolence of his Danish favourites; placed the two nations on a footing of equality; and admitted them alike to offices of trust and emolument. He erected a magnificent church at Ashdown, the scene of his last victory: and repaired the ruins of the religious edifices, which had suffered during the invasion. By his donations the abbey of St. Edmund's, the memorial of

<sup>10</sup> Langbeck, 111. 144. et seq. Saxo. 199.  
The Thingmanna were also called Thingliths,  
and Hluscarles, that is,thane-men, sea-thanes,

and domestics.

<sup>11</sup> See his charter in Ingulf, 58.

the cruelty of his fathers, was rendered for centuries the most opulent of the monastic establishments in the kingdom. In a witenagemot at Oxford he confirmed the laws of Edgar, and persuaded the English and Danish thanes to forgive each other every former cause of offence, and to promise mutual friendship for the future<sup>12</sup>. In another at Winchester a code of laws was compiled from the enactments of former kings, with such additions as were required by the existing state of society. From it some interesting particulars may be selected. I. The king exhorted all those, who were intrusted with the administration of justice, to be vigilant in the punishment of crimes, but sparing of human life: to treat the penitent with less, the impenitent culprit with greater severity; and to consider the weak and indigent as worthy of pity, the wealthy and powerful as deserving the full rigour of the law: because the former were often driven to the commission of guilt by two causes, which seldom affected the latter, oppression and want. II. He severely reprobated and prohibited the custom of sending *christians* for sale into foreign countries. But the reason which he assigned, was not, that there is any thing immoral in the institution of slavery; but that such christians were in danger of falling into the hands of infidel masters, and of being seduced from their religion. III. By the incorporation of the Danes with the natives, the rites of paganism had again made their appearance in the island. Canute forbade the worship of the heathen gods, of the sun or moon, of fire or water, of stones or fountains, and of forests or trees. At the same time he denounced punishment against those who pretended to deal in witchcraft, and the “workers of death,” whether it were by lots, or by flame, or by any other charms. IV. The existing system of jurisprudence which he

Publishes  
laws.

<sup>12</sup> Ing. ibid. Hist. Rames. 437. Eucom. Emm. 23. Chron. Sax. 151. Mail. 155.



CHAP.  
VI.

confirmed, was divided into three branches, the law of the West-Saxons, the law of the Mercians, and the law of the Danes. The two former had been preserved from the time of the Heptarchy, and prevailed in their respective districts: the latter had been introduced into East-Anglia and Northumbria by the Danes, who had settled in those countries since the beginning of the ninth century. Of all three the substance was the same: they differed only in the amount of the pecuniary mulcts which were imposed on various transgressions. V. The king undertook to ease his people of part of the burthens arising from the feudal services, which in England, as well as the other European nations, had long been on the increase. He totally abolished the custom of purveyance, forbidding his officers to extort provisions for his use, and commanding his bailiffs to supply his table from the produce of his own farms. He fixed at a moderate value the heriots which were paid at the demise of tenants, and apportioned them to the rank of the deceased, whether they died intestate or not. With respect to heiresses, whose helpless condition frequently exposed them to the tyranny of their lords, he enacted, that neither maid nor widow should be compelled to marry against her will. In conclusion he commanded these laws to be observed both by the Danes and the English, under the penalty of a single *were* for the first offence, of a double *were* for the second, and of the forfeiture of all property for the third<sup>13</sup>.

Visits Den-  
mark.

Though Canute generally resided in England, he frequently visited Denmark. He was accompanied by an English fleet; and carried with him pious and learned missionaries to civilize and instruct his countrymen. Of these, Bernard, Gerbrand, and Rainer were promoted to the episcopal dignity, and placed

<sup>13</sup> Leg. Sax. 123—125, 143—146. Brompton, 914—931.

by him in Sconen, Zealand, and Finland. In one of his visits, in 1025, he was suddenly attacked by Olave and Ulfr with a numerous army of Swedes, and was defeated with the loss of many English and Danish thanes. But our annalists add, that Godwin, who commanded the English troops, surprised the camp of the enemy during the night, and totally dispersed the Swedes: a feat of heroism, which procured him the esteem and favour of the king<sup>14</sup>.

CHAP.  
VI.

1025.

The power of Canute released the kingdom from the horrors of domestic war: but his ambition thirsted for a crown which had formerly been worn by his father. Sweyn had divided Norway between two brothers, Eric and Haco. When Eric accepted Northumberland from Canute, Haco succeeded to the whole, but was driven from it by the superior power of Olave, a Norwegian sea-king. Canute seduced the natives from their allegiance to Olave by presents, sailed to Norway with an English fleet of fifty vessels; and was every where received with acclamations of joy, and professions of attachment. He expelled Olave and restored Haco. But the latter was soon after drowned at sea; and Olave recovered his dominions. That prince was a zealous christian; but his religious innovations irritated the jealousy of the pagan priests; and he was murdered in an insurrection of his subjects<sup>15</sup>.

Conquers  
Norway.

1025.

Canute's last military effort was directed against Scotland. Fordun tells us, that Duncan, who, as nephew and heir to Malcolm, was in possession of Cumberland, refused to hold it of Canute, because that prince had not obtained the crown by hereditary descent: but that, before the armies could engage, the two kings were reconciled, and the ancient conditions re-

And subdues  
the Scots.

<sup>14</sup> Adam Brem. ii. 38. Chron. Sax. 153. West. 207.

<sup>15</sup> Chron. Sax. 153. Flor. 620. Snorre, 278.

CHAP.  
VI.

specting the possession of Cumberland, were solemnly renewed. Of these particulars our annalists are ignorant; and merely inform us, that Malcolm, unable to oppose the superior power of the English monarch, submitted to his pleasure with two inferior princes, Melbeth and Jernac<sup>16</sup>.

He rebukes  
his flatterers.

The courtiers of Canute, to please his vanity, were accustomed to extol him as the greatest of kings, whose will was obeyed by six powerful nations, the English, Scots, and Welsh, the Danes, Swedes, and Norwegians. Canute had the good sense to despise, or affect to despise, their flattery. On one of these occasions, as he was sitting on the shore near Southampton, he commanded the sea to respect its sovereign. But the influx of the tide soon compelled him to retire, and he improved the opportunity to read his flatterers a lecture on the weakness of earthly kings, when compared with the power of that supreme Being who rules the elements. Impressed with this idea, he is said, on his return to Winchester, to have taken the crown from his head, to have placed it on the great crucifix in the cathedral, and never more to have worn it even at public ceremonies<sup>17</sup>.

His pilgrim-  
age to Rome.  
1030.

In 1030 he determined to make a pilgrimage to Rome. On his road he visited the most celebrated churches, leaving every where proofs of his devotion and liberality<sup>18</sup>. In his return he proceeded immediately to Denmark, but dispatched the abbot of Tavistock to England with a letter, describing the object and the issue of his journey. This letter I shall transcribe, not only because it furnishes an interesting specimen of the manners and opinions of the age, but also because it exhibits the surprising

<sup>16</sup> Fordan, iv. 41. Chron. Sax. 153. Hunt. 208. West. 209.

<sup>17</sup> Hunt. 209. West. 209.

<sup>18</sup> So profuse was he in his donations that, according to a foreign chronicler, all who

lived on the road by which he passed, had reason to exclaim: benedictio Domini super regem Anglorum Cnutonem. Chron. Wicl. Godcl. apud Bouquet, x. 262.



change which religion had produced in the mind of a ferocious and sanguinary warrior.

Canute, king of all Denmark, England and Norway, and of part of Sweden, to Egelnath the metropolitan, to archbishop Alfric, to all the bishops and chiefs, and to all the nation of the English, both nobles and commoners, greeting. I write to inform you that I have lately been at Rome, to pray for the remission of my sins, and for the safety of my kingdoms, and of the nations, that are subject to my sceptre. It is long since I bound myself by vow to make this pilgrimage; but I had been hitherto prevented by affairs of state, and other impediments. Now, however, I return humble thanks to the almighty God, that he has allowed me to visit the tombs of the blessed apostles Peter and Paul, and every holy place within and without the city of Rome, and to honour and venerate them in person. And this I have done, because I had learned from my teachers, that the apostle St. Peter received from the Lord the great power of binding and loosing, with the keys of the kingdom of heaven. On this account I thought it highly useful to solicit his patronage with God.

His letter.  
1031.

Be it moreover known to you, that there was at the festival of Easter a great assemblage of noble personages with the lord the pope John, and the emperor Conrad, namely, all the chiefs of the nations from mount Gargano to the nearest sea, who all received me honourably, and made me valuable presents; but particularly the emperor, who gave me many gold and silver vases, with rich mantles and garments. I therefore took the opportunity to treat with the pope, the emperor, and the princes, on the grievances of my people, both English and Danes; that they might enjoy more equal law, and more secure safeguard in their way to Rome, nor be detained at so many

---

---

CHAP.  
VI.

---

---

barriers, nor harassed by unjust exactions. My demands were granted both by the emperor, and by king Rodulf, to whom the greater part of the barriers belong; and it was enacted by all the princes, that my *men*, whether pilgrims or merchants, should for the future go to Rome and return in full security, without detention at the barriers, or the payment of unlawful tolls.

I next complained to the pope, and expressed my displeasure that such immense sums were extorted from my archbishops, when according to custom they visited the apostolic see to obtain the pallium. A decree was made that this grievance should cease. Whatever I demanded, for the benefit of my people, either of the pope, or the emperor, or the princes, through whose dominions lies the road to Rome, was granted willingly, and confirmed by their oaths, in the presence of four archbishops, twenty bishops, and a multitude of dukes and nobles. Wherefore I return sincere thanks to God, that I have successfully performed whatever I had intended, and have fully satisfied all my wishes.

Now, therefore, be it known to you all, that I have dedicated my life to the service of God, to govern my kingdoms with equity, and to observe justice in all things. If by the violence or negligence of youth, I have violated justice heretofore, it is my intention, by the help of God, to make full compensation. Therefore I beg and command those to whom I have confided the government, as they wish to preserve my friendship, or save their own souls, to do no injustice either to rich or poor. Let all persons, whether noble or ignoble, obtain their rights according to law, from which no deviation shall be allowed, either from fear of me, or through favour to the powerful, or for the purpose of supplying my treasury. I have no need of money raised by injustice.

I am now on my road to Denmark, for the purpose of concluding peace with those nations, who, had it been in their power, would have deprived us of both our crown and our life. But God has destroyed their means: and will, I trust, of his goodness preserve us, and humble all our enemies. When I shall have concluded peace with the neighbouring nations, and settled the concerns of my eastern dominions, it is my intention to return to England, as soon as the fine weather will permit me to sail. But I have sent you this letter beforehand: that all the people of my kingdom may rejoice at my prosperity. For you all know that I never spared nor will spare myself, or my labour, when my object is the advantage of my subjects.

Lastly, I intreat all my bishops, and all the sheriffs, by the fidelity which they owe to me and to God, that the church-dues according to the ancient laws may be paid before my return: namely, the plough alms, the tithes of cattle of the present year, the Peter-pence, the tithes of fruit in the middle of August, and the kirk-shot at the feast of St. Martin, to the parish church. Should this be omitted, at my return I will punish the offender by exacting the whole fine appointed by law. Fare ye well <sup>19</sup>.

Canute lived three years after his pilgrimage to Rome. He died at Shaftesbury in 1035, and was buried at Winchester. By his queen Emma he had two children, a son, whom from his own name he called Hardecnute, or Canute the hardy, and a daughter Gunihlda, who was married to Henry the son of Conrad, and emperor of Germany. Besides these children, Alfgiva, the daughter of Alfhelm, earl of Northampton, had borne him, previously to his marriage, two sons, Sweyn and Harold. Their illegitimacy in the opinion of the age, was no great disgrace:

1035.  
His death.

<sup>19</sup> Spelm. Conc. 537. Ing. 59. Flor. 620. Malm. 41.



CHAP.  
VI.

and the violence of party endeavoured to obstruct their advancement, by describing them as supposititious. But that they were acknowledged by their father, is evident. To the elder, Sweyn, was given the crown of Norway, after the assassination of Olave: Harold, by his promptitude and the favour of the soldiery, ascended the throne of England on the demise of Canute<sup>20</sup>.

## HAROLD, SURNAMED HAREFOOT.

Succession of  
Harold.

1036.

By the marriage settlement between Canute and Emma, and by a more recent declaration of the king, the crown ought to have devolved on Hardecanute. But that prince had been previously sent to take possession of Denmark, and his absence encouraged the ambition of his illegitimate brother, Harold, whose interests were warmly espoused by the Thingmanna at London<sup>21</sup>, the Danes in general, and the northern English. The wishes of the southern counties were divided between Hardecanute and one of the two sons of Ethelred, who still resided in Normandy. The country appeared on the eve of a civil war: and many, to escape the impending tempest, had sought an asylum in the morasses and forests; when a compromise was effected in a witenagemot at Oxford. To Harold were allotted London and the northern division of the kingdom: the counties on the right bank of the Thames were appropriated to Hardecanute, and during his absence were committed to the government of his mother Emma, and the ealdorman Godwin<sup>22</sup>.

<sup>20</sup> Chron. Sax. 155. Ing. 61. Flor. 622. West. 206. The last writer describes Alfgiva as married to Canute.

<sup>21</sup> The Saxon Chronicle calls them the *liths-men* at London, and as the *Thingmanna*

were also called *Thingliths*, I have no doubt they were the same persons.

<sup>22</sup> Chron. Sax. 154, 155. Ingul. 61. Encom. Emm. 25, 26.

As soon as the news of the death of Canute had reached Normandy, Edward, the eldest of the surviving sons of Ethelred, and afterwards king of England, collected a fleet of forty ships, crossed the channel, and landed at Southampton. If he relied on the co-operation of his mother, he was deceived. Emma was more attached to her children by Canute than to those by Ethelred: and was actually making every exertion to preserve the crown for Hardecnute. Though Edward landed within a few miles of her residence, and in the midst of her retainers, he found himself in a hostile country: a formidable force, which was hourly increasing, menaced him with destruction: and the prince and his followers, having plundered a few villages retired to their ships, and returned to Normandy. The result of this expedition seems not to have been forgotten: and Emma, at a later period, was punished for her disaffection by the neglect of her son, and the forfeiture of her treasures<sup>23</sup>.

Invasion by  
Edward.

We are not told what were the reasons, which determined Hardecnute to trifle away his time in Denmark. Harold profited by the delay: and by threats, and promises, and presents, continued to extend his authority. But what chiefly contributed to fix him on the throne was a bloody and mysterious occurrence, of which at the present day it is difficult to discover either the origin or the motive. A letter was conveyed to Edward and his brother Alfred in Normandy. It purported to be written by their mother, upbraiding them with their apathy, describing the growing ascendancy of Harold, and urging one of them to cross the sea, and assert his right to the crown. By the historian, who has preserved this letter, it is pronounced a forgery, contrived by Harold to decoy one of the two princes

Another by  
Alfred.

<sup>23</sup> Guil. Pict. 37, 38, edit. Maseres. Will. Gemet. 271. Leg. Sax. 210.

CHAP.  
VI.

---

into his hands<sup>24</sup>. It is not very probable that Emma, after her exertions in favour of Hardecnute, and her indifference or rather enmity to Edward, could have written such a letter: but it will require equal credulity to believe that it was a contrivance of Harold. Why should he invite only one, and not both of the brothers? By removing both out of his way, he would secure himself against the claimants, to whom the eyes of the natives were principally directed: but the benefit which might be derived from the murder of one would be more than balanced by the infamy, which would result from so detestable a crime. However this may be, it is certain that Alfred, the younger, accepted the invitation, raised a small body of troops in Normandy, repaired to the court of Baldwin, earl of Flanders, and by the addition of a few adventurers from Boulogne, swelled the number of his followers to six hundred men. At Sandwich he found a strong force prepared to oppose him: and changing his course, steered round the north Foreland, till he came opposite to the city of Canterbury, where he landed without discovering an enemy. Within a few hours he was met by Godwin, who plighted him his faith, and undertook to conduct him to Emma. Leaving London on the right, because it belonged to Harold, they proceeded to Guildford, where the earl quartered Alfred and his men in small bodies among the inhabitants, supplied them plentifully with provisions, and having promised to wait on the prince in the morning, retired to his own residence. In the midst of the night, the satellites of Harold arrived, surprised the strangers in their beds, and reserved them for the butchery of the following day. With their hands bound behind them they were ranged in a line: every

<sup>24</sup> *Facern. Emm.* 28.



tenth man out of the six hundred received his liberty : and of the rest a few were selected for slavery. The scene which followed can hardly be paralleled in the annals of the American savage. The remaining victims were maimed, or blinded, or hamstrung, or scalped, or embowelled, according to the caprice or barbarity of their tormentors. “ Never,” says one of the chroniclers, “ was a more bloody deed done in this land since “ the arrival of the Danes.” The prince himself was hurried away to Harold in London, and thence to the isle of Ely, under the charge of a thane, whose threats and insults aggravated the horrors of his situation. Seated on a sorry horse, stripped of his clothes, and with his feet tied beneath the saddle, the son of Ethelred was exposed in each town and village to the derision, perhaps to the commiseration, of the beholders. At Ely he was arraigned before a court of miscreants, and adjudged to lose his eyes. The sentence was executed by main force : and the unfortunate prince, after lingering a few days, expired, either by the violence of his sufferings, or by the dagger of an assassin <sup>25</sup>.

Of the truth of this melancholy tale there is no reason to doubt. It has been transmitted to us by a contemporary writer, who received his information from the survivors of the massacre : and his narrative is fully confirmed by the testimony of succeeding historians. Yet it is difficult to believe, that such unnecessary cruelty, so wanton a waste of human blood, could have been, as is pretended, a mere act of precaution on the part

<sup>25</sup> Gul. Pict. 38. Encom. Emm. 29—31. This historian wrote within three years after the massacre. His testimony will overbalance the doubts of Malmsbury (43). Malmsbury (ibid.) supposes the murder of Alfred to have taken place after the death of Harold : Huntingdon after that of Hardecanute. But the monk of St. Omer affixes it

to the reign of Harold, and the chronicles of Mailros (156), of Florence (623), of Westminster (210), to the year 1036.—Higden thus describes the punishment of embowelling. *Primordia viscerum fecit ad palos erectos figi, et tunc corpora circumduci, donec novissima intestinorum extraherentur.* Hig 277.

CHAP.  
VI.

of Harold. It wears more the appearance of a deed, stimulated by the thirst of revenge, or prompted by the hope of inspiring terror. Perhaps Alfred, by his previous cruelty, had sharpened the resentment of his enemies: undoubtedly he had come at the invitation of a party of malcontents to drive Harold from the throne <sup>26</sup>.

Flight of  
Emma.

When Emma was informed of the fate of her son, she began to be alarmed for her own safety. Her friends advised her to quit the country: and Baldwin of Flanders offered her at Bruges a secure and honourable asylum <sup>27</sup>. Her flight left Harold without an opponent: the thanes of Wessex withdrew their allegiance from his half-brother: and he was unanimously chosen king of England. But when he called on Egelnoth, the archbishop of Canterbury, to perform the ceremony of his coronation, that prelate placing the insignia of royalty on the altar, boldly replied: "there are the crown and sceptre, which Canute intrusted to my charge. To you I neither give nor refuse them. You may take them if you please; but I strictly forbid any of my brother bishops to usurp an office, which is the prerogative of my see." Of Harold's behaviour on this extraordinary occurrence, we are ignorant: but he appears to have subsequently removed the primate's objections, and to have been crowned with the usual solemnities <sup>28</sup>.

Death of  
Harold.  
1040.

No details of his government have been transmitted to posterity. One writer insinuates, that he was a benefactor to the church: another, hostile to his memory, asserts, that through hatred of christianity, he absented himself from all the public offices of religion <sup>29</sup>. His principal amusement was the chase,

<sup>26</sup> Sceptrum et ipse paternum requirebat. Gul. Piet. 38. Ut paternum regnum obtineret. West. 210.

<sup>27</sup> Encom. Emm. 32.

<sup>28</sup> Ibid. 28, 29. He gave to the monastery of Croyland the mantle, which he wore at his coronation. Ingul. 61.

<sup>29</sup> Ibid. Encom. Emm. 29.

in which he frequently hunted on foot, and from his fleetness acquired the surname of "harefoot." After a short reign of four years, he died in 1040, and was buried at Westminster.

CHAP.  
VI.

---

## HARDECANUTE.

Emma, after her arrival at Bruges, had endeavoured, by frequent messages, to inflame the ambition, and accelerate the preparations of her son Hardecanute. Two years, however, elapsed before she was able to direct his attention to his interests in England: and then, leaving a powerful armament in port, he sailed with nine ships to consult his mother. During his residence with her at Bruges, a messenger arrived with the welcome intelligence of the death of Harold: and he was followed by a deputation of English and Danish thanes, requesting Hardecanute to ascend the throne of his father. As soon as his fleet had joined him from Denmark, he proceeded with sixty two sail to England<sup>30</sup>. His authority was immediately acknowledged: but one of the first measures of his government excited universal discontent. By Canute the Thingmanna had been reduced to the complement of sixteen ships: and the pay of these Danish guards had been long defrayed by the nation at the annual rate of eight marks for each private, and of twelve marks for each officer. The addition of the new fleet had multiplied their number in a five-fold degree: and the tax which was imposed in consequence, experienced considerable opposition. At Worcester the collectors, Thurstan and Feader, were put to death in an insurrection of the populace. But a severe punishment followed the offence. During four days the county

Succession of  
Hardecanute.

<sup>30</sup> Encom. Emm. 34.



CHAP.  
VI.

was given up to pillage, and on the fifth the city was reduced to ashes. The inhabitants had fled to an island in the Severn, where they defended themselves till they had appeased the vengeance, and obtained the pardon, of the king<sup>31</sup>.

His revenge.

Hardecanute could not forget the injuries of Harold to himself and to his relatives, the usurpation of the crown, the exile of Emma, and the murder of Alfred: and his feelings urged him to an act of impotent revenge, the folly of which was equal to its barbarity. As if he could make the dead to feel, he ordered the tomb of his predecessor to be opened: the body to be decapitated: and the head and trunk to be thrown into the Thames. Both were recovered by some fishermen, who deposited them in the cemetery of St. Clement's, the usual burying place of the Danes<sup>32</sup>.

The care of this posthumous execution had been delegated to Alfric, archbishop of York, and Godwin, earl of Wessex. But the commissioners disagreed, and the prelate accused the earl of the murder of Alfred. Godwin denied the charge; and cleared himself, in the legal manner, by his own oath, and the oaths of a jury of his peers, the principal noblemen in England<sup>33</sup>. It cannot be ascertained whether this acquittal removed the sus-

<sup>31</sup> Chron. Sax. 155, 156. Flor. 623, 624. Malm. 43.

<sup>32</sup> Flor. 623. West. 211. Mailros. 156.

<sup>33</sup> The guilt of Godwin will always remain a problem. It may be urged against him, that Alfred at the time of the murder was under his protection, and in his town of Guildford: that within four years he was publicly accused of it by the archbishop of York: and that he is condemned without hesitation by almost every historian, who wrote after the conquest. On the other hand it may be observed, 1st, that the monk of St. Omer, who was so well acquainted with the transaction, far from charging the earl, seems to represent him as perfectly ignorant of Al-

fred's danger: *ad sua recessit hospitia, mane rediturus, ut domino suo serviret cum debita honorificentia.* Enc. Emm. 30. 2d, that the accusation of the archbishop is balanced by the acquittal of Godwin on his trial: 3d, that little reliance is to be placed on the assertion of writers posterior to the conquest; when every tale, which could vilify the family of Godwin, was gratefully accepted, and eagerly countenanced by the reigning dynasty.—Edward the confessor, in two of his charters, attributes the death of his brother to Harold, and (which is more singular), to Hardecanute. Now the latter prince was in Denmark, and the accusation, if it mean any thing, must allude to those, who governed in the name of

picious of Hardecanute: but the earl was restored to favour, and participated with Emma in the administration of the kingdom. He had made to the king a most magnificent present, a ship of the usual dimensions, of which the stern was covered with plates of gold. It carried eighty warriors, the retainers of Godwin. Their lances, helmets, and coats of mail were gilt: their battle-axes glistened with decorations of gold and silver; the hilts of their swords, the nails and bosses of their shields, were of gold: and they wore round each arm two golden bracelets of the weight of sixteen ounces<sup>34</sup>. This account will not excite surprise in the reader, who recollects that the Northmen were accustomed to expend the plunder of nations in embellishing their arms and ships, objects of inestimable value in the eyes of the northern pirates<sup>35</sup>.

Hardecanute is described as mild in his manners, and generous in his disposition. His table was copiously supplied at four different hours in the day. This was no mean recommendation in the opinion of the chieftains, who set a high value on the pleasures of the table, and expected to eat and drink at the expense of the sovereign<sup>36</sup>. He sent for his half-brother Edward from Normandy; received him with the sincerest friendship, and gave him a princely establishment. His sister Ganilhda, the fairest woman of her time, he married to the emperor Henry. All the thanes, both English and Danish, attended her to the sea-shore, desirous of attracting the notice of the king, by the attention which they paid to the princess: and never before, say the

His magnificence.

Hardecanute, and in that hypothesis may reach Emma, or Godwin, or both. The king's words are, Haroldo et Hardecanuto, a quibus et alter meus frater Alfredus crudeliter est occisus. Spelm. Con. 628. 632. Yet would Harold, who was then all-powerful, have subscribed to these charters, if they had

cast so foul a stain on the memory of his father?

<sup>34</sup> Malm. 43. Mailros, 156. Flor. 623. West. 211.

<sup>35</sup> See Encom. Emm. 8. 13. Snorre, 338

<sup>36</sup> Hunt. 209.

CHAP.  
VI.

chronicles, was seen in England so magnificent a display of gold, and silver, and gems, and of silken vests, and beautiful horses. The songs which were composed on the occasion, continued to be sung by the people in their convivial meetings, and preserved the memory of Gunilhda through many succeeding generations <sup>37</sup>.

His death.

The character of the king was such as to afford the presage of a tranquil and prosperous reign. But his constitution was feeble, and his life had been frequently endangered by disease. In his second year he honoured with his presence the nuptials of a noble Dane at Lambeth. As he was standing in the midst of the company, and lifting the cup to his mouth, he suddenly fell to the ground, was carried speechless to his chamber, and in a short time expired. His body was laid near that of his father in the church of Winchester <sup>38</sup>.

Hardecanute left no issue. His death severed the connexion between the crowns of England and Denmark. Magnus, the son of Olave, who had driven Sweyn from Norway, now obtained possession of Denmark.

## EDWARD THE CONFESSOR.

Succession of  
Edward.  
1042.

Before the body of the departed king could be laid in the grave, his half-brother Edward had ascended the throne. The rightful heir of the Saxon line was the son of Edmund Ironside, the exile in Hungary. But, in determining the succession, the English had frequently substituted the uncle for the nephew. Edward was present ; his character and his misfortunes pleaded in his favour : the wishes of the natives loudly demanded a king

<sup>37</sup> Malm. 43.<sup>38</sup> Malm. 43. Flor. 624.



of the race of Cerdic : and the murmurs of the Danes, if the Danes were inclined to murmur, were speedily silenced by the overwhelming influence of Godwin. On the following Easter the son of Ethelred was crowned by archbishop Eadsy, who embraced the opportunity of reading the new sovereign a long lecture on the regal duties, and the paternal government of his Saxon predecessors<sup>39</sup>.

Edward was now about forty years of age, twenty-seven of which he had spent an exile in Normandy. Precluded by circumstances from every rational hope of obtaining the crown, he had solaced the hours of exile with the pleasures of the chase, and the exercises of religion : and he brought with him to the throne those habits of moderation and tranquillity, which he had acquired in a private station. He was a good, rather than a great, king. To preserve peace, and promote religion, to enforce the ancient laws, and to diminish the burthens of his people, were the chief objects of his government : but he possessed not that energy of mind, nor that ferocity of disposition, which, perhaps, were necessary to command the respect, and to repress the violence, of the lawless nobles by whom he was surrounded.

His character.

<sup>39</sup> Chron. Sax. 157. Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1043. It is published at the end of Lye's Dictionary. I shall refer to it by that name, because it was copied by Lambard. By the Norman writers, Edward's accession is attributed to the exertions of William duke of Normandy, then in his fifteenth year. We are told that he demanded the crown for Edward by his messengers, that he sent Edward from Normandy with a guard, and that he threatened to follow with a powerful army. The fear of an invasion made the choice of the English fall on Edward. Guil. Pict. p. 44. edit. Maseres. I consider this as one of the fictions invented in Normandy to account for the appointment, real or pretended, of William by Edward to be his

successor. That the English prince was at the very period in England, and not in Normandy, is evident not only from our English chroniclers, but from the monk of St. Omer, who in the last lines addressed by him to Emma, praises the union in which she lives in England with her two sons Edward and Hardecanute (Encom. Emm. p. 36), and from William of Jamieges, who says that Hardecanute called Edward from Normandy, and that they lived afterwards together (Guil. Gen. vii.). It is remarkable that the first of these writers says Edward was sent for, that he might partake of the kingdom (ut veniens secum obtineret regnum, p. 36) ; the second that Hardecanute left him heir to the kingdom (totius regni reliquit hæredem, ibid.).

CHAP.  
VI.

At his accession he found three powerful chieftains near the throne, Godwin, Leofric, and Siward. They had assumed the title of earls : for the ascendancy of the Danes had introduced Danish customs and Danish appellations. The *ealdorman* of the Saxons had been transformed into the *earl* of the Northmen : and the different earldoms had been fixed in different proportions, some being confined within narrow limits, while others were extended to several counties. As the delegates of the sovereign, the earls possessed considerable power. They levied forces, received fines, tried causes, and exercised the ordinary functions of royalty within their respective jurisdictions : but they were removeable at the will of the king and the witan, and did not transmit their offices to their children. The earldom of Siward extended from the Humber to the confines of Scotland ; Leofric was called the earl of Leicester, but his government comprehended most of the northern counties of Mercia. Godwin ruled in Wessex, Sussex, and Kent : and his two sons, Sweyn and Harold, already possessed, or soon obtained, the former the earldom of Gloucester, Somerset, Oxford, and Berks, the latter that of Essex, Huntingdon, East-Anglia, and Cambridgeshire. When united, these noblemen were more than a match for the king, whose chief security lay in their mutual jealousies and discordant interests.

Punishes his  
mother.

It was fortunate for Edward, that in the commencement of his reign, these powerful chieftains overlooked every subject of private dissension in their common zeal for the royal service. By their aid the restoration of the crown to the Saxon line was peaceably effected ; and the Danish families, whose fidelity was ambiguous, or whose former tyranny deserved punishment, were driven out of the kingdom. To the list of the sufferers must be added the queen-mother. Edward held a council at

Gloucester: thence, accompanied by Godwin, Leofric, and Siward, he hastened to Winchester, seized her treasures, and swept away the cattle and corn from the lands, which she possessed as her dower<sup>40</sup>. The reader will already have noticed several instances of this species of military execution: but why it was inflicted upon Emma we have no particular information. By her partiality to the Danes she had acquired the hatred of the natives. The riches, which she collected with assiduity, had always been at the command of her younger children, while her sons by Ethelred were suffered to feel the privations of poverty. To her opposition was owing, in all probability, the failure of Edward's descent after the death of Canute: and it was even whispered that she was not guiltless of the blood of Alfred<sup>41</sup>. Her antipathy to the king had discovered itself since his accession: and she had obstinately refused to grant him any pecuniary aid<sup>42</sup>. But whatever were the motives which prompted this act of severity towards her, the character of Edward, and the sanction of his council, will justify the belief that it had not been wantonly adopted. She was still permitted to retain her dower, and to reside at Winchester, where she died in 1052.

While Edward was employed in consolidating his power at home, a formidable competitor was rising in the north. Hardecnute, when he ruled in Denmark, had been frequently engaged in war with Magnus, the conqueror of Norway; till both princes, fatigued with the useless struggle, had consented to a peace, on the precarious, but not unusual condition, that the survivor should succeed to the dominions of his deceased adversary. At the death of Hardecnute, Magnus occupied Denmark. But

Is opposed by  
the king of  
Norway.  
1046.

<sup>40</sup> Chron. Sax. 157. Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1043.

<sup>41</sup> This is asserted by the monk of Winchester, who relates every fable. Ang. Sac. i. 292.

But it appears to derive some support from the assertion of Edward, mentioned at the end of note 33, p. 294.

<sup>42</sup> Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1043.



CHAP.  
VI.

this did not satisfy his ambition ; he also demanded the English crown, on the plea that, since it had been worn by Hardecanute, it was included in the provisions of the treaty. To his messengers Edward returned a sensible and resolute answer : that he sate on the English throne as the descendant of the English monarchs : that he had been called to it by the free choice of the people : and that he would never abandon it but with his life. The Northman had threatened to support his pretensions with all the power of Denmark and Norway : and Edward, to oppose the danger, had collected a numerous fleet at Sandwich. But Magnus was detained at home to defend his own territories against the rival efforts of Sweyn, the son of Ulfr and Althritha, the sister of Canute. Sweyn was defeated, and his cause appeared desperate, when the unexpected death of Magnus raised him to the throne. Norway was immediately seized by Harold, the nephew of Olave : he engaged in hostilities with Sweyn : and both princes ineffectually solicited the aid of the king of England. Sweyn had formerly requested fifty ships to support him against Magnus : he now demanded the same number against Harold. Though his requests were supported by all the influence of Godwin, who had married his aunt Githa, the witenagemot on both occasions returned a peremptory refusal<sup>43</sup>.

Marries Editha.

From the failure of Godwin in these attempts, it would appear as if the other noblemen, alarmed at his increasing influence, had combined to oppose his designs, and undermine his power. For besides their former honours, his sons had acquired a distinguished place in Edward's affections<sup>44</sup>, and his daughter had been crowned queen of England. Our ancient chroniclers, hostile as they are to her family, have not been

<sup>43</sup> Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1046. 1048, 1049. Malm. 60. Mailros, 157. Snorre, 38.

<sup>44</sup> They were " *thæs cynges dyrlingas*." Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1052.

unjust to the merit of Editha. She was, in their language, the rose blooming in the midst of thorns. In her manners and conduct she manifested no traces of that barbarism, which marked the characters of her father and brothers. Her personal accomplishments were enhanced by the qualities of her mind: and to the praise of meekness, piety, and generosity, she added, what was a very uncommon acquirement in the ladies of that age, a competent knowledge of books<sup>45</sup>. When Edward was importuned by his council to marry, he disclosed to Editha that he had bound himself to a life of continence; but offered, on the condition that he should observe his vow, to place her by his side upon the throne. Their nuptials were celebrated in 1044<sup>46</sup>.

The power of the Godwins received its first shock from the ungovernable passions of Sweyn, the eldest of the five brothers. He had violated the person of Edgiva, the abbess of Leominster, and the indignant piety of Edward drove him into banishment. The outlaw assumed the profession of a sea-king, and sought wealth and power by piratical depredations. Weary at last with wandering on the ocean, he returned to England, sent his submission to the king, and obtained a promise of pardon. But the execution of the promise was opposed by two unexpected adversaries, his brother Harold, and Beorn his cousin, who probably had been the principal gainers by his outlawry. Disappointment urged him to revenge, which he sought under the mask of friendship. The request of the emperor Henry had at this period induced Edward to collect a numerous fleet for the purpose of opposing Baldwin, earl of Flanders. This armament

History of  
Sweyn.  
1049.

<sup>45</sup> Ingulf, 62. This writer tells us that when he was a boy, Editha would often stop him as he came from school, make him repeat his lesson, ask him questions in grammar and

logic, and as a reward give him a few pieces of silver, and send him to the larder. Ibid.

<sup>46</sup> Chron. Sax. 157. West. 212.

CHAP.  
VI.

---

was divided into two squadrons, of which one lay at Sandwich under the immediate command of the king, the other at Pevensey under that of earl Godwin. Sweyn, concealing his real design, visited his father at Pevensey, where he was apparently reconciled to Beorn, and prevailed on that thane to withdraw his opposition. Thence the two cousins proceeded together towards Sandwich, for the avowed purpose of soliciting the royal clemency in favour of the outlaw : but on the road Beorn was suddenly seized by a body of armed men, hurried on board a ship at Bosenham, and conveyed to Dartmouth, on the coast of Devon. The mariners of Sweyn, by the command of their master, murdered and buried his cousin. His bones were afterwards discovered at a great depth in the ground, and re-interred near those of his uncle Canute at Winchester. The assassins sailed to Bruges, and found an asylum under the protection of Baldwin, earl of Flanders, who had made his peace with the emperor<sup>47</sup>.

Rebellion of  
the Godwins.  
1051.

After this aggravation of his guilt, it is strange that Sweyn should cherish the hope of forgiveness : and still more strange that he should ultimately obtain it. But time wore down the edge of Edward's resentment : and pity, or the recollection of former friendship, or the fear of alienating a powerful family, induced him, at the solicitation of the bishop of Worcester, to restore the outlaw to his estates and honours. It was not long, however, before the Godwins had the imprudence to brave the royal authority, and to make themselves the objects of national resentment. They had long been jealous of the part, which the Normans held in the royal favour. For during a long and tedious banishment Edward had acquired a partiality for the man-

<sup>47</sup> Chron. Sax. 160. Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1050. Flor. 626.



ners and the natives of the country, where his wants had been relieved, and his life had been protected. The gratitude of the monarch was extended to those, who had attached themselves to the fortunes of the exile. Many received ample possessions from his bounty. To Radulf he gave the earldom of Hereford : Odda was raised to equal honours in another part of the kingdom : Ulf was made bishop of Dorchester, Robert of London, and afterwards of Canterbury : and the first vacant sees were promised to two foreigners, the royal chaplains, William and Wulfhelm. While most of the courtiers, to please the king, imitated the manners, and even adopted the language of the Normans, the Godwins openly set them at defiance, and anxiously watched for an opportunity to drive them out of the kingdom<sup>48</sup>. It happened in 1051, that Eustace, earl of Boulogne, who had married the sister of Edward, paid a visit to his brother-in-law<sup>49</sup>. At Dover (a town under the influence of Godwin) his attendants quarrelled with the burghers : twenty English and about the same number of Frenchmen were slain ; and if the earl himself escaped, he was indebted for his safety to the swiftness of his horse. This sanguinary fray has been differently attributed to accident, to the insolence of the strangers, or to the inhospitality of the townsmen : but as Godwin and Eustace were enemies, there is reason to believe that, if the quarrel were not deliberately begun, it was at least prosecuted by both parties with more fury on account of the hostility of their respective lords. Eustace hastened to the king to complain of the injury : and Godwin was ordered to chastise the insolence of his *men*. The earl disdained to obey : his two sons applauded the spirit of

<sup>48</sup> Ingulf, 62.

<sup>49</sup> The name of the king's sister was Goda. She had been married to Walter, earl of Mante, and borne him a son Radulf, to whom

Edward gave the earldom of Hereford. After the death of Walter, she married Eustace. Malm. 45.

CHAP.  
VI.

---

Their banish-  
ment.

their father : and it was resolved to snatch the present opportunity and direct the national animosity against the foreign favourites. Three armies from the three earldoms of Godwin, Sweyn, and Harold, directed their march towards Longtree in Gloucestershire, to punish, as it was pretended, the depredations committed on the lands of Harold by the French garrison in the castle of Hereford<sup>50</sup>. But Edward, who lay at Gloucester, was not to be deceived by this flimsy pretext : he summoned to his aid Radulf, and Leofric, and Siward, and was soon in a condition to intimidate his opponents. The troops demanded to be led against the insurgent earls, and the best blood in England, says the chronicle, would have been shed, had not more temperate measures been suggested by the wisdom of Leofric, and adopted by the moderation of Edward. It was proposed to summon the witena-gemot, and to refer every subject of dispute to the decision of that assembly. To so equitable an offer Godwin dared not object : and hostages, as if the two parties were on a footing of equality, were mutually exchanged. At the appointed day, the autumnal equinox, Edward entered London at the head of the most powerful army that had been seen for many years : Godwin at the same time took possession of Southwark with a considerable number of followers. But the influence of the earl shrunk before the awe that was created by the majesty of the king, and the terror that was inspired by the superiority of his force. The insurgent army daily melted away : and Sweyn, on the night before the day appointed for an

<sup>50</sup> The Normans, who had followed Edward, built castles on their lands after the manner of their own country. Thus besides the castle at Hereford, we meet with Robert's castle, Pentecoste's castle, &c. Chron. Sax. 163. 167. Chron. Lamb. 1052. The fo-

reigners who formed the garrisons are called indifferently *Frencisc men*, or *Welisc* (Gaulish) men. The latter term has caused some confusion on account of its similarity to the word 'Welshmen.'

inquiry into the death of Beorn, thought it prudent to flee. He was solemnly pronounced an outlaw: the thanes, who held of Godwin and Harold, were compelled to swear fealty to the king; and the two earls were ordered to clear themselves of the accusations against them by the oaths of twelve compurgators in the presence of the witan. As a previous condition they demanded hostages for their safety: but this demand was contumeliously refused; and they were allowed five days either to establish their innocence or to quit the kingdom. Godwin, with his wife and three sons, Sweyn, Tostig, and Gurth, fled for protection to the earl of Flanders: Harold, and his brother Leofwin, hastened to Bristol, embarked on board a vessel belonging to Sweyn, and with difficulty reached Ireland<sup>51</sup>. The queen was involved in the common disgrace of her family. Her lands were seized by the king, and her person was intrusted to the custody of Edward's sister, the abbess of Whirwell. Some writers affirm that she was treated with great severity: but a contemporary historian assures us, that she was conducted with royal pomp to the monastery allotted for her residence, and informed that her confinement was only a measure of temporary precaution<sup>52</sup>.

At the very commencement of the insurrection, the foreign favourites had trembled for their safety; and by their advice Edward had solicited the assistance of William, duke of Normandy. Tranquillity was hardly restored, when that prince, with a powerful fleet, reached the coast of England. As his services were no longer wanted, he landed with a gallant train of knights, was kindly received by the king, visited several of the royal villas, and was dismissed with magnificent presents. Many have

Visit from  
William of  
Normandy.

<sup>51</sup> Chron. Sax. 163, 164. Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1052.

<sup>52</sup> The author of the life of Edward, quoted

by Stow, p. 96. His authority is the greater, as he dedicated his work to Editha herself. Ibid.



CHAP.  
VI.

---

pretended, that the real object of this interview was the future succession of William to the crown of England : but Ingulf, who accompanied that prince on his return to Normandy, and was for several years his confidential secretary, assures us, that the idea of succeeding to the English throne had not yet presented itself to his mind <sup>53</sup>.

Restoration of  
the Godwins.  
1052.

While Godwin remained at Bruges, he did not abandon himself to despair, but spent the winter in arranging the means of revenge. A few days before Midsummer he put to sea with a small squadron ; while a powerful armament at Sandwich, under the earls Radulf and Odda, watched all his motions. The outlaw was unconscious of his danger : but he escaped in a storm, and precipitately returned to his former retreat. The royal commanders were dismissed for their negligence : and while the council was debating on the appointment of their successors, the mariners (so loosely combined were the armaments of these times) returned to their respective homes. This dispersion of the fleet encouraged Godwin to renew his attempt : in the channel he was met by Harold from Ireland : with their united squadrons they pillaged the coast, swept away the ships from the different harbours, advanced up the Thames, and sailed through the southern arch of the bridge at London. The royal fleet of fifty sail was ranged on the opposite side of the river ; and a powerful army lined the left bank. Godwin sent his submission to Edward, by whom it was sternly refused. But his resolution was gradually subdued by the policy of Stigand, who insinuated that his troops were unwilling to shed the blood of their countrymen ; and that it was folly to sacrifice the affections of his subjects to the interests of a few Normans. At length he extorted from the reluctant king a commission to negotiate with God-

<sup>53</sup> Ingulf, 65. Flor. 627. Hemmingford, 456. Chron. Lamb. ad. ann. 1052.

win, and that instant the foreigners fled in despair. Robert, archbishop of Canterbury, and Ulf, bishop of Dorchester, mounting their horses, fought their way through their opponents, rode to Ness in Essex, and seizing a small and shattered bark, committed themselves to the mercy of the waves. The others dispersed in different directions; and by the connivance of Edward's friends escaped with their lives, though they were compelled to quit the kingdom. By their flight the principal obstacle to an accommodation was removed. Godwin received permission to visit the king. He laid the blame of the late dissensions on the Normans, attested in the most solemn manner the innocence of himself and his children, and surrendered as pledges for his loyalty his son Wulfnoth, and his nephew Haco. Edward received him kindly, but for greater security sent the hostages to be kept by William of Normandy. The foreign favourites were outlawed by decree of the great council: Godwin and Harold recovered their earldoms; and Editha was recalled from her prison to the throne<sup>54</sup>. But to Sweyn Edward was inexorable. He had been guilty of a most inhuman and perfidious murder: and seeing himself abandoned by his family, he submitted to the discipline of the ecclesiastical canon. He walked, a barefoot pilgrim, from Flanders to Palestine; visited with tears of compunction the holy places, and on his return finished his penance and his life in the province of Lycia<sup>55</sup>.

The services of the negociator on this occasion were not forgotten by the Godwins. He had expelled archbishop Robert: he succeeded to the honours of that prelate. Without learning, without any of the virtues becoming his profession, Stigand,

Promotion of  
Stigand.

<sup>54</sup> Chron. Sax. 165—168. Flor. 627. 628.

<sup>55</sup> Malm. 46.

CHAP.  
VI.

even under a religious monarch, arrived at the highest dignity in the English church. His only merit was an aptitude for intrigue, and the art of profiting by every occurrence. He had been originally noticed by Canute, and appointed one of the royal chaplains. By the intervention of friends and the aid of presents, he became bishop of Helmstan: from Helmstan he was successively removed to Selsey and Winchester; and now obtained the great object of his ambition, the archiepiscopal see of Canterbury. To his unspeakable mortification pope Leo IX. could not be persuaded that a church was vacant, of which the bishop was still alive, and refused to surrender his rights<sup>56</sup>. But the vigilance of Stigand never slept: John of Velitræ, under the name of Benedict, usurped the papacy for a few months; and it was no difficult matter for one intruder to obtain the pallium from another. However Benedict was soon expelled, and Alexander II. suspended Stigand from the exercise of the episcopal functions. Still, under the patronage of Harold, he contrived to deceive the simplicity of Edward: and his avarice absorbed at the same time the revenues not only of the churches of Canterbury and Winchester, but also of the monasteries of St. Augustine's, St. Alban's, Ely, and Glastonbury<sup>57</sup>.

Death of God-  
win.  
1053.

Godwin did not long survive the disgrace of his enemies. He died the following Easter; and the story, which was invented by the malice of party, would persuade us that his death was a visible judgment of heaven on the murderer of Alfred. He was sitting, we are told, at table with the king. Observing a servant, who had chanced to make a false step, support him-

<sup>56</sup> Robert had gone to Rome, and in his return with a papal letter, died at Jamieges, an abbey in Normandy. Malm. 46.

<sup>57</sup> Chron. Sax. 157, 158. 168. 170. Hist.

Elfen. 515. Mail. 158. Spel. con. 628. Vit. S. Wulst. 251. Guil. Pict. 105. Ing. 69. Malm. 116.



self with his other foot, he exclaimed: "See, how one brother assists another!"—"Yes," replied Edward, looking sternly at the earl, "and if Alfred were now alive, he might also assist me." Godwin felt the reproach, loudly protested his innocence, and with the most solemn execrations wished that, if he were guilty, he might not live to eat the morsel, which he held in his hand. He put it to his mouth, and immediately expired<sup>58</sup>. Such is the tale in its most improved state. At its first publication the preparatory incident, and the remark of Edward appear to have been forgotten<sup>59</sup>. The real fact is, that Godwin on Easter Monday fell speechless from the royal table; that he was carried by his three sons into the king's chamber; and that, after lingering for some time in great torment, he died on the following Thursday<sup>60</sup>. His earldom was given to Harold: that of Harold to Alfgar the son of Leofric.

The character of this powerful earl has been painted by most of our historians in colours of blood. They describe him as a monster of inhumanity, duplicity, and ambition. But their credibility is lessened by the consideration that they wrote after the conquest, when every artifice was adopted to persuade the English that the man whom the Norman had precipitated from the throne, was, on account of his own crimes and those of his father, unworthy to remain on it. To their defamation may be opposed the panegyric of Edward's biographer, who dedicated his work to Editha. If we may believe him, the earl was the father of the people, the support of the nation. To the peaceful and virtuous he was kind, generous, and placable: but the turbulent and lawless trembled at his lion-like

<sup>58</sup> Higden, 280. Rudborn, 239. West, 215. Brompton, 943. according to whom the person who made the false step was Harold, Godwin's son, and cup-bearer to the king.

<sup>59</sup> Ingulf, 66. Malm. 45.

<sup>60</sup> Chron. Sax. 168. Mailros, 158. Flor. 628.

CHAP.  
VI.

countenance, and dreaded the severity of his justice. The English lamented his death as a national calamity, and placed their only consolation in his son Harold, the inheritor of his father's virtues no less than of his honours<sup>61</sup>. Probably the truth will be found between the exaggerated encomiums of one party and the undistinguishing invectives of the other.

Edward's hu-  
manity.

Though the late disturbances had interrupted the general tranquillity, they had been terminated without bloodshed, and had inflicted no considerable injury on the people. The principal calamities of Edward's reign were pestilence and famine, evils which, at this period, occasionally visited every part of Europe. As long as agriculture was in its infancy, each unfavourable season was followed by a year of scarcity: and while the intercourse between nations was rare and insecure, the wants of one people could not be relieved from the plenty of another. The chroniclers of the age frequently complain of the inclemency of the seasons, of earthquakes, which, on one occasion created considerable alarm at Derby and at Worcester, of the distress caused by the failure of the crops, and of contagious distempers which afflicted not only the cattle, but also the human race<sup>62</sup>. The benevolent heart of Edward mourned over the calamities of his people, and he eagerly adopted every expedient which seemed likely to remove or to mitigate their sufferings. The Dane-gelt had now been paid for eight-and-thirty years: it formed a considerable part of the royal revenue. In 1051 the king resolved to sacrifice this advantage to the

<sup>61</sup> Vit. Ed. apud Stow, 97. These opposite accounts so perplexed Malmsbury, that he knew not what to believe, or what to reject. Malms. 45.

<sup>62</sup> Chron. Sax. 157. 169. Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1049. 1059. Mailros, 157. In the

year 1049 we are told that much corn and many farms in Derbyshire were destroyed by the *wild-fire* (Chron. Lamb. ad ann.), or as it is termed in the chronicle of Mailros, by the *wood-fire* (ignis acereus vulgo dictus silvaticus. Mail 157).

relief of the people : and the abolition of so odious an impost was received by them with every demonstration of gratitude. On another occasion, when his nobles had raised a large sum on their vassals, and begged him to accept the free gift of his faithful subjects, he refused the present as extorted from the labour of the poor, and commanded it to be restored to the original contributors<sup>63</sup>.

The only foreign war, in which the king engaged, was against an usurper, whose infamy has been immortalized by the genius of Shakspeare. In 1039 Duncan, king of Scotland, was murdered by Macbeth. A prince driven by force from the throne of his fathers might justly claim the sympathy of Edward : and Malcolm, the son of Duncan, received from him the permission to vindicate his rights with the aid of an English army. For fifteen years the power of the murderer discouraged every attempt : and the fugitive resided with his uncle, Siward, earl of Northumberland. But when Macduff, the thane of Fife, unfurled the royal standard, Malcolm hastened to the insurgents ; Siward accompanied him with a powerful force ; and the victory of Lanfanan in Aberdeenshire, by the fall of Macbeth, placed the crown on the head of the rightful heir. Among those who perished in the action was the son of Siward. The hero anxiously inquired in what manner the young man had fallen ; and being assured that his wounds were received in front, exclaimed that he was satisfied, and wished for himself no better fate. Soon after his return Siward was attacked by a disorder which proved mortal : but he declared that he would die as he had lived, like a warrior : and ordering his arms to be brought, breathed his last, sitting upright on his bed, and leaning upon

War with  
Macbeth.  
1054.

<sup>63</sup> Ing. 65. Malles, 157. How. 256



CHAP.  
VI.

his spear<sup>64</sup>. His son Waltheof was too young to succeed to the father: and the earldom was given to Tostig, the brother of Harold.

Civil war.  
1055.

While the earl of Northumberland was yet in Scotland, the flames of civil war had burst out in England. They seem to have been kindled by the jealousy of Harold, who was indignant that the earldom which he had resigned for that of Godwin, should be given to the rival family of Leofric. At the witenagemot Alfgar was accused of treason "against the king and the country." Most of our chroniclers assert his innocence<sup>65</sup>: a writer, who seems devoted to the interests of Harold, declares that his guilt was established on the most satisfactory evidence<sup>66</sup>. Outlawed by the judgment of the council, Alfgar fled to Ireland, purchased the assistance of a northern sea-king, was joined by Griffith, prince of Wales, and poured his Welsh and Norwegian auxiliaries into the county of Hereford. The earl Radulf with his retainers fled at the first onset: the city was taken and pillaged: four hundred of the inhabitants were slain: and the cathedral with the principal buildings was burnt. To revenge this insult the king assembled an army at Gloucester, at the head

<sup>64</sup> I may be allowed to observe that with respect to this event, lord Hailes (*Annals of Scotland*, p. 2.) appears to have overlooked the statements of our most ancient historians. He tells us that "Siward, with the approbation of his sovereign, led the Northumbrians to the aid of Malcolm, but did not live to see the event of his enterprise:" they say, that he defeated Macbeth, and placed Malcolm on the throne as Edward had ordered. Siwardus jussu Regis Edwardi et equestri exercitu et classe valida Scottiam adiit, et cum rege Scottorum Macbeothia prælum commisit, ac multis millibus Scottorum et Normannis omnibus, quorum supra mentionem fecimus occisis, illum fugavit, et Malcolmum, ut rex jusserat, regem constituit. Sim. Dun.

187. Florence, p. 629, repeats the same words. Mailros, p. 158, has the same sense. See also Malmesbury, *Macbetha vita regnoque spoliavit, Malcolmum regem instituit, f. 44. Huntingdon, regem bello vicit, regnum totum destruxit destructum sibi subjugavit, f. 209. Lambard's Saxon Chronicle: "Siward went with a great army into Scotland, both with ship-force, and land-force, and fought with the Scots, and routed the king Macbeth, and slew all the best in the land, and brought thence much spoil, such as no man ever got before." Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1054.*

<sup>65</sup> Ing. 66. Mail. 158. Flor. 629.

<sup>66</sup> Chron. Sax. 169.

of which Harold chased the invaders into the fastnesses of Snowdon. A negotiation followed ; which restored to Alfgar his former honours. His allies marched immediately to Leicester : and Leofric, who appears to have remained an idle spectator during the contest, was impelled by apprehension or by gratitude to reward their services at its termination. But Leofric died soon afterwards : and Alfgar succeeded to the honours of his father. The former jealousy, and former accusations were immediately revived. Alfgar again lost his earldom ; and was again restored, by the arms of Griffith and the Norwegians. But he hardly enjoyed his triumph during a year : and at his death left two sons, Morcar and Edwin, whose unmerited fate will claim the sympathy of the reader<sup>67</sup>.

CHAP.  
VI.

1057

1059.

The death of Alfgar exposed Griffith to the just resentment of Harold. The Welsh prince and his subjects had long deserved the name and punishment of robbers and assassins. From the recesses of their mountains they had made annual incursions on the inhabitants of the borders : had indulged for a while in plunder, bloodshed, and conflagration ; and had eluded the pursuit of vengeance by the celerity of their retreat. When Rhese, the brother of Griffith, fell into the hands of the English, even the meekness of Edward, “ whom no injuries could irritate<sup>68</sup>,” ordered him to be put to death : and the king now commissioned Harold to inflict a severe punishment on these persevering robbers. Aware of the difficulties arising from the nature of the country and the fleetness of the enemy, Harold selected a numerous body of young men, vigorous and active, bade them exchange their usual arms for others of less weight and dimensions ; and gave them for defence helmets and targets of

Conquest of  
Wales.  
1063.

<sup>67</sup> Ingulf, 66. Mailros, 158. Flor. 629, 630.

<sup>68</sup> Malm. 44.

CHAP.  
VI.

hardened leather. In the depth of winter he attempted by a sudden irruption to surprise Griffith: but the Welshman escaped, though his ships and mansion were consigned to the flames. At the beginning of summer, Tostig, with a body of cavalry, entered Wales from the north: Harold conveyed his troops by sea, and landed them on the coast. The indefatigable earl, who proceeded on foot and fared like the meanest of his followers, traversed the country in every direction. Neither mountains nor morasses could screen the natives from the pursuit of their enemy. Wherever the Welsh offered any resistance, he was victorious: and to perpetuate the memory of each victory, he erected a pyramid of stone with this inscription: **HERE HAROLD CONQUERED.** Overpowered and dismayed they solicited for mercy: and sent as a peace-offering the head of Griffith to the conqueror. Harold returned in triumph to Edward: the head of the Welshman with the beak and the ornaments of his ship were presented to the English monarch: and his two uterine brothers Blethgent and Rigwatlan swore fealty, and engaged to pay the ancient tribute. A law was passed condemning every Welshman, found in arms on the east of Offa's dyke, to lose his right hand: and the natives of the mountains, taught by fatal experience, respected during the four next reigns the territory of their neighbours<sup>69</sup>.

Edward sends  
for his nephew  
from Ger-  
many.

The custom of pilgrimage had prevailed among the Anglo-Saxons from the time of their conversion to christianity. During the reign of Edward there was hardly a year in which bishops, thanes, or abbots did not proceed to Rome in order to offer up

<sup>69</sup> Gir. Camb. in Ang. Sac. ii. 541. Ingulf, ES. Chron. Lam. ad ann. 1063. The chronicle says the Welsh princes swore fealty and gave hostages to the king and the earl. Why to the earl? Had he been appointed Edward's

successor? or did they merely become his vassals? At the same time and by the same authority Meredith was appointed prince of South Wales. Powel, 103.



their devotions at the tombs of the apostles. The piety or the curiosity of Aldred, bishop of Worcester, was still more enterprising. He traversed Germany and Hungary, reached the city of Jerusalem, and as a memorial of his visit to the sepulchre of the Saviour, offered a golden chalice of the weight of five marks<sup>70</sup>. Edward was animated with the spirit of his countrymen, and had bound himself by vow, to visit, in imitation of his predecessors Canute and Ethelwulf, the apostolic see. But the design was opposed by his witan, on the ground, that the king had no children, and that the dangers of the journey might expose the nation to the evils of a disputed succession<sup>71</sup>. This objection directed the thoughts of Edward to his nephew and namesake, the exiled son of his brother Edmund. An honourable embassy was sent to demand him of the emperor Henry III. into whose family he had married<sup>72</sup>: and the young Edward arrived in London with Agatha, his wife, and his children, Edgar, Margaret, and Christina. The people, who received him with lively demonstrations of joy, were plunged into mourning by his sudden death. There is something mysterious in the fate of this prince. It was natural that Edward should be anxious to embrace a nephew, who like himself, and for the same reason, had spent the better portion of his days in banishment: and whom the English monarch had now chosen for the purpose of perpetuating the race of Cerdic upon the throne. Yet from the hour of his arrival to that of his death, the prince

<sup>70</sup> Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1058.

<sup>71</sup> Spelm. con. 628.

<sup>72</sup> Some difficulty has been started with respect to this marriage, but it arises solely from an error in the printed text of Ailred: *Rex Hungarorum Edvardo filiam Germani sui Henrici imperatoris in matrimonium junxit.* 366. *Sui* should either be omitted, or, as Papebroch suggests, changed into *Sti.* Lam-

bard's chronicle only says that Agatha (that was her name) was the relation of the emperor (ad ann. 1057), and speaking of her daughter Margaret, that "her mother-kin "went to Henry the Cæsar". (ad ann. 1067). But Simeon (170), and Ailred himself, in the same page, expressly assert, that she was the daughter of the emperor's brother. He had a brother called Bruno.

CHAP.  
VI.

was by some contrivance kept at a distance from the king: a circumstance which will almost justify a suspicion that he was deemed by Harold a dangerous obstacle to the success of his future projects<sup>73</sup>.

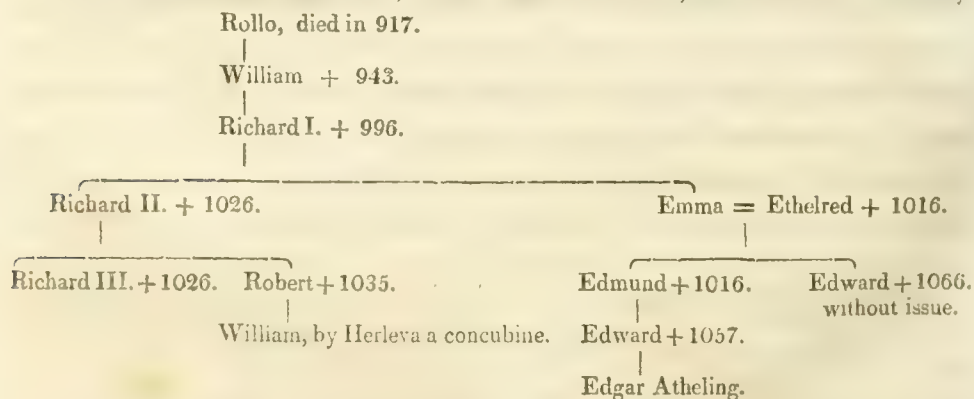
Harold in  
Normandy.  
1065.

By the course of events that earl was become the most powerful subject in England. After the death of Edward (surnamed the outlaw) but one individual stood between him and the succession, Edgar the son of that Edward, a young prince, feeble in body and still more feeble in mind, whose hereditary right was sunk in his inaptitude to govern. But the other side of the channel exhibited a more formidable competitor, in the person of William, duke of Normandy. It was evident that by descent neither could boast the remotest claim. William was the illegitimate son of Robert, the brother of Emma: Harold's only connexion with the royal family arose from the marriage of his sister with Edward<sup>74</sup>. Their real title lay in their power and ambition: and in the latter William was equal, in the former he was supe-

<sup>73</sup> Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1057.

<sup>74</sup> For the satisfaction of the reader, I shall

subjoin a short genealogy of William's descent from Rollo, the first duke of Normandy.



The descent of Harold can be traced no farther back than his grandfather Wulfnoth, "child of Sussex." His father Godwin had married Gyda, the sister of Ulfr, brother-in-

law to Canute. Of the connexion between Godwin and Ulfr, Mr. Turner has given from the Knytlinge Saga an account, which savours more of romance than of history.

rior to Harold. Unfortunately for the English earl, a vessel, in which he had sailed from Bosenham, was accidentally stranded in the mouth of the river Maye, on the opposite coast of Ponthieu. A barbarous custom had invested the lord of the district with a pretended right not only to the remains of the wreck, but also to the persons of the survivors: nor were imprisonment, threats, and torments spared to extort from the captives an exorbitant ransom. Harold and his companions were seized on the beach, conducted to the earl Guy, by whom they were immured within his castle of Beaurain. No circumstance could have been more propitious to the views of William. He demanded the prisoners: they were surrendered to him at Eu in Normandy: and the compliance of Guy was rewarded with a valuable donation of land. In the Norman court the earl was treated with respect and munificence: but he enjoyed only the semblance of liberty, and soon had reason to regret the dungeons of Beaurain. Compelled by the necessity of his situation, he consented to do homage for his lands and honours to William, as the apparent successor of Edward. But the jealousy of the Norman required more than the mere ceremony of homage. Before an assembly of his barons, Harold was constrained to swear that he would promote the succession of the duke to the English crown, that he would guard his interests in the court of Edward, and that he would admit a Norman garrison into the castle of Dover. At length, loaded with presents but distressed in mind, he was permitted to leave the territory of his rival. He had obtained from the gratitude of William the liberation of his nephew, Haco, one of the hostages, whom Edward had formerly required from Godwin: Wulfnoth, the other, was detained by the policy of the Norman, as a security for the faith of his brother<sup>75</sup>.

<sup>75</sup> See the account in William of Poitou, persons, who were present. Gul. Piet. 79, who received the particulars of the oath from 80. 85.



CHAP.  
VI.

That Harold was thus delivered up by the earl of Ponthieu, and was compelled to swear fealty to William, are indisputable facts: but the object which originally induced him to put to sea, is a subject of doubt and investigation. By the Norman writers, and those who follow them, we are told, that Edward, moved by gratitude and relationship, had appointed William his successor, and that Harold was sent to notify this appointment to the duke<sup>76</sup>. Nor, indeed, is it improbable that such a report should be circulated in Normandy, as a justification for the violence which was offered to Harold. Many of the English historians have preserved, or invented, a different account. If we may believe them, the earl intended to visit William, but his object was to solicit the liberty of the hostages, Haco and Wulfnoth<sup>77</sup>. It is, however, difficult to conceive that a man ambitious of a crown, would, for the freedom of two captives, trust himself and the success of his projects, to the mercy of a rival. Perhaps it were more safe to rely on the authority of those writers, who appear ignorant of both these reports; and who describe the voyage of Harold as an occasional excursion along the coast, from which he was driven by a storm on the barbarous territory of Ponthieu<sup>78</sup>.

Insurrection  
of the North-  
umbrians.  
1065.

It was about the end of summer, when the earl returned to England<sup>79</sup>, when his services were immediately required by an insurrection of the Northumbrians. Tostig had governed that people with the rapacity of a despot, and the cruelty of a barbarian. In the preceding year he had perfidiously murdered two of the noblest thanes in his palace at York: at his request Editha had ordered the assassination of Gospatric in Edward's

<sup>76</sup> Guil. Pict. 77. Order. Vit. 492. Wil. Gemet. 285.

<sup>77</sup> Eadm. 4. Sim. Dunel. 195. Hemingford, 456.

<sup>78</sup> Mat. Paris, 2. West. 218. Malm. 52.

<sup>79</sup> No writer that I know has fixed the date of Harold's detention in Normandy: but we learn from Pictaviensis, that the corn in Bretagne was almost ripe (Pict. 81. 85).

court: and the recent imposition of an extraordinary tax, as it was universally felt, had armed the whole population against his government. In the beginning of October the insurgents surprised York. Tostig fled: his treasures and armoury were pillaged: his guards, to the number of two hundred, both Danes and English, with their commanders, Amund and Ravenswath, were made prisoners, conducted out of the city, and massacred in cold blood on the north bank of the Ouse. Elated with their success the insurgents chose for their future earl Morcar, the son of Alfgar: and that nobleman, with the men of Lincoln, Nottingham, and Derbyshire, and his brother Edwin with those of Leicester, and a body of Welsh auxiliaries, advanced as far south as Northampton. Here they were met by Harold. When he inquired into the nature of their demands, they replied, that they were freemen, and would not tamely submit to oppression: that they required the confirmation of the laws of Canute, and the appointment of Morcar to the earldom of Northumberland. Harold returned, and obtained the royal assent to their requests: but during his absence and at their departure, they plundered the country, burnt the villages, and carried away several hundreds of the inhabitants, who were destined to a life of slavery, unless their ransom should be afterwards purchased by their friends. Tostig, dissatisfied with the pacification, repaired to Bruges, the usual asylum of his family<sup>80</sup>.

If, on this occasion, Harold appeared to desert the cause of his brother, we may attribute his moderation, not only to the formidable appearance of the insurgents, but also to a prudent regard for his own interest. The king was hastening to the grave: and the success of the earl's projects required his pre-

<sup>80</sup> Chron. Sax. 171. Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1065. Flor. 633.

CHAP.  
VI.

Death of Edward.

sence in London, a period of tranquillity, and the good will of the people. He returned to the metropolis on the 30th of November, five weeks before Edward breathed his last. The monarch previously to his decease had the satisfaction of witnessing the dedication of the church of Westminster, which had been the great object of his solicitude during his latter years. When the witan opposed his journey to Rome, Leo IX. authorized him to commute his intended pilgrimage for some other work of piety. With this view he set apart the tenth of his yearly revenue, and rebuilt from its foundation the church of St. Peter, at the western extremity of the capital. On the vigil of Christmas he was attacked by the fever which ultimately proved fatal. For three days he struggled against the violence of the disease, held his court as usual, and presided with affected cheerfulness at the royal banquets. On the festival of the innocents, the day appointed for the dedication of the new church, he was unable to leave his chamber. The ceremony was, however, performed. Editha took the charge of the decorations, and represented the royal founder. But his absence, and the idea of his danger, diffused a deep gloom among the thousands who had assembled to witness the spectacle. After lingering a week longer, Edward died on the 5th of January, and was buried the following day with royal pomp in the church which he had erected<sup>81</sup>.

1066.

<sup>81</sup> Chron. Sax. 171. Spelm. con. 628—637. Cum insigni regio. Hist. Ram. 460. Ailred Riv. 398, 399. Here it may be asked whether Edward, before his death, did or did not appoint a successor? It is evident that he had looked on his nephew, Edward the outlaw, as the rightful heir, and on that account sent for him from Hungary to England. At the death of that prince in 1057, we are told that fears concerning the succe-

sion began to be entertained (*spes regii sanguinis deinceps deficere capit*, Ing. 66. Malm. ii. 2): but that it was not till 1065, the last year of his reign, that Edward abandoned the hope of placing on the throne Edgar, the son of his nephew (Ing. 68). Whether during that year he appointed either William or Harold, must for ever remain uncertain. They both asserted it: but it was so much for the interest of each to have it believed, that neither



If we estimate the character of a sovereign by the test of popular affection, we must rank Edward among the best princes of his time. The goodness of his heart was adored by his subjects, who lamented his death with tears of undissembled grief, and bequeathed his memory as an object of veneration to their posterity. The blessings of his reign are the constant theme of our ancient writers: not, indeed, that he displayed any of those brilliant qualities, which attract admiration, while they inflict misery. He could not boast of the victories which he had won, or of the conquests which he had atchieved: but he exhibited the interesting spectacle of a king, negligent of his private interests, and totally devoted to the welfare of his people; and by his labours to restore the dominion of the laws, his vigilance to ward off foreign aggression, his constant, and ultimately successful solicitude to appease the feuds of his nobles, if he did not prevent the interruption, he secured at least a longer duration of public tranquillity, than had been enjoyed in England for half a century. He was pious, kind, and compassionate: the father of the poor, and the protector of the weak: more willing to give than to receive; and better pleased to pardon than to punish<sup>62</sup>. Under the preceding kings, force generally sup-

can deserve credit. It is observable that Ingulf, who was at the time absent on a pilgrimage to Jerusalem, tells us, not that Harold, but that Robert of Canterbury, was sent to announce to William his appointment (p. 68): and yet Ingulf could not have been ignorant that Robert had been driven from England thirteen years before. William of Poitou (p. 44), another contemporary writer, assigns the same mission to Robert, when, by the advice of the witan he conducted Wulfnoth and Haco as hostages to William. But we know that Robert, instead of conducting hostages, fled for his life: and that the hostages were given by Godwin after his departure. Can it be that Robert on his return to Normandy first suggested to William the idea

of claiming the succession, and hence was supposed to have offered it by the commission of Edward?

<sup>62</sup> An uninteresting story told by Mahmsbury has been brought forward to prove that the simplicity of Edward bordered on childishness, and that he was so ignorant as not to know that kings possessed the power of punishing offenders (*Hist. of Anglo-Saxons*, vol. iii. p. 315). The inference would not have been drawn, had not the original been misunderstood. The story is merely this. To a peasant who had broken the king's nets, Edward angrily said: "I will do as much to you, if I have an opportunity." *Tantum tibi nocebo, si potero.* Malm. 44.

CHAP.  
VI.

---

plied the place of justice, and the people were impoverished by the rapacity of the sovereign. But Edward enforced the laws of his Saxon predecessors, and disdained the riches which were wrung from the labours of the subject. Temperate in his diet, unostentatious in his person, pursuing no pleasures but those which his hawks and hounds afforded, he was content with the patrimonial demesnes of the crown: and was able to assert, even after the abolition of that fruitful source of revenue, the Dane-gelt, that he possessed a greater portion of wealth, than any of his predecessors had enjoyed. To him the principle that the king can do no wrong, was literally applied by the gratitude of the people, who, if they occasionally complained of the measures of the government, attributed the blame not to the monarch himself, of whose benevolence they entertained no doubt, but to the ministers, who had abused his confidence, or deceived his credulity<sup>83</sup>.

It was, however, a fortunate circumstance for the memory of Edward, that he occupied the interval between the Danish and Norman conquests. Writers were induced to view his character with more partiality from the hatred with which they looked on his successors and predecessors. *They* were foreigners, *he* was a native: they held the crown by conquest, he by descent: they ground to the dust the slaves whom they had made, he became known to his countrymen only by his benefits. Hence he appeared to shine with a purer light amid the gloom with which he was surrounded; and whenever the people under the despotism of the Norman kings had an opportunity of expressing their real wishes, they constantly called for the "laws and customs of the good king Edward."

He was the first of our princes, who touched for the king's

<sup>83</sup> Hist. Ram. 450. Elien. 515. Malm. 44. Ingul. 69.

evil. The surname of "the confessor" was given to him from the bull of his canonization, issued by Alexander III., about a century after his decease.

CHAP.  
VI.

---

## HAROLD.

By the death of Edward, Edgar the etheling became the last surviving male of the race of Cerdic: but, if his claim were ever mentioned, it was instantly abandoned<sup>84</sup>. A report had been circulated that Edward, on his death bed, had appointed Harold to be his successor<sup>85</sup>. He was proclaimed king in an assembly of the thanes and of the citizens of London; and the next day witnessed both the funeral of the late, and the coronation of the new, sovereign. On account of the suspension of Stigand, the ceremony was performed by Aldred, the archbishop of York<sup>86</sup>. To Edgar, in lieu of the crown, was given the earldom of Oxford.

Succession of  
Harold.  
1066.

The southern counties cheerfully acquiesced in the succession of Harold: he was alarmed and perplexed by the hesitation of the Northumbrians. Their pride refused to be bound by the act of those whose military qualities they deemed inferior to their own; and they looked around for a chieftain, who would solicit their aid, and accept the crown from their hands. Harold has-

<sup>84</sup> Quia puer tanto honori minus idoneus videbatur. Alur. Riev. 366.

<sup>85</sup> I am much inclined to believe this report, not only on the testimony of the English writers (Chron. Sax. 172. Hoved. 449. Eadmer, 5. Sim. Dun. 193. Al. Bev. 126. Flor. 633. Hist. Elien. 515): but because its truth is acknowledged by the enemies of Harold. Edvardi dono in ipsius fine. Guil. Pict. 135. Ægrotus princeps concessit. Order. Vit. 492.

<sup>86</sup> Ingulf, 68. Flor. 633. Hist. Elien. 515.

In a fact, which publicly took place in England, the native writers are more entitled to credit than foreigners. The Normans say Harold was crowned by Stigand (non sancta consecratione Stigandi, Guil. Pict. 105): and the statement is supported by the figures on the tapestry of Bayeux (Lancelot, 421). But they give us only the reports prevalent in Normandy: and William, anxious to interest the religion of his subjects in his own favour, would readily countenance the notion that his rival had been crowned by a suspended prelate.



CHAP.  
VI.

tened into the north: instead of an army he was accompanied by Wulstan, the venerable bishop of Worcester; by whose influence, combined with his own conciliatory conduct, he soon won the affections and secured the obedience of the Northumbrians. His marriage with Editha, the daughter of Alfgar, bound to his interests her two brothers, the powerful earls, Morcar and Edwin <sup>87</sup>.

William  
claims the  
crown.

The intelligence both of the death of Edward, and of the immediate coronation of Harold, had been conveyed to Normandy by the same messenger. William assembled his council, informed them of the event, and expressed his determination to pursue by arms his pretensions to the crown of England. An envoy was dispatched to remind Harold of his former oath of fealty, and promise of assistance. The king replied: that the oath had been extorted from him by force: that a promise to give a crown which did not belong to him, could not be binding: that he had been elected king by the free suffrage of the people: and that, when it should come to the trial, he would prove himself worthy of their choice. The message was such as Harold, the answer such as William, expected. Each had already determined to appeal to the sword: and the English no less than the Normans were astonished at the mighty preparations making to decide the important quarrel <sup>88</sup>.

Invasion by  
the king of  
Norway.

It was unfortunate for Harold that he had to contend at the same time, not only with William, but with his brother Tostig, the exiled earl of Northumberland, in whom he experienced a most bitter and enterprising adversary. The outlaw visited Normandy, and arranged a plan of co-operation with the duke: he sent messengers to the northern princes, and engaged the

<sup>87</sup> Ang. Sac. ii. 253.

<sup>88</sup> Ing. 68. Eadp. 5. Matt. Paris,

Malm. 56

assistance of Harald Hardrada, the king of Norway: he collected a fleet of sixty sail at Bruges, and entering the channel began the war by levying contributions in the isle of Wight. But he retired upon the approach of his brother, and sailing round the south foreland, directed his course to the north. In Lindesey he was defeated by Edwin: his mariners abandoned him in his distress: and Malcolm, king of Scotland, afforded him an asylum till the arrival of his Norwegian ally<sup>89</sup>. The armament under Hardrada was not ready for sea till the month of August; when the Norwegian monarch, leaving the regency of the kingdom to his son Magnus, embarked with his family and a gallant army in a fleet of three hundred sail. His queen Elizabeth and her two daughters, fearing the dangers of the campaign, were set on shore at the Orkneys: and Hardrada, according to agreement, was joined by Tostig with a few ships at the mouth of the Tyne. Their first object was to obtain possession of York; and accordingly they entered the Humber and ascended the Ouse. A desperate attempt to save the capital was made by the earls Edwin and Morcar. The Norwegian had drawn up his men with their right flank to the river, and their left to a morass. The impetuosity of the English burst through the line: but they in their turn were overwhelmed by a fresh body of forces from the ships: and more of the fugitives perished in the water, than had fallen by the sword. Edwin and Morcar escaped to York: negotiations were opened; and the mutual exchange of one hundred and fifty hostages shews, that the province was conditionally surrendered to the invaders<sup>90</sup>.

Harold had completed his preparations, and having selected a

Who falls in  
battle.

<sup>89</sup> Chron. Sax. 172. Malm. 52. Hunt. 210. Snorre, iii. 146. Order. Vit. apud Duchesne, 469. 492. Gemetic. 285. <sup>90</sup> Chron. Sax. 172. Snorre, 153—155. Flor. 634. Higden, 284.

CHAP.  
VI.

---

position between Pevensey and Hastings, awaited with confidence the threatened descent of the Norman. The unexpected invasion of Hardrada disconcerted his projects. Trusting, however, to his fortune, and encouraged by the tempestuous state of the weather, he lost not a moment in marching against the aggressor, and arrived in the neighbourhood of York within four days after the late battle. Unconscious of danger Hardrada had left one part of his forces on board the fleet, while he marched with the other for the purpose of dividing and regulating the province which he had conquered. In this employment he was overtaken by the indefatigable Harold. Surprised, but not dismayed, the Norwegian sent three messengers to the fleet to hasten the march of his men, while he retired slowly to Stamford-bridge on the Derwent. There he drew up his warriors in a compact but hollow circle. The royal standard occupied the centre: the circumference was composed of spearmen. The whole was surrounded by a line of spears firmly fixed in the earth, and pointed outwards in an oblique direction.

The Icelandic historian has preserved some curious anecdotes respecting this celebrated battle. Hardrada wore a blue mantle and a glittering helmet. As he rode round the circle, his horse fell. "Who," exclaimed Harold, "is that chieftain on the ground?" Being told it was Hardrada, "He is," returned the king, "a gallant warrior: but his fall shews that his fate is approaching." Soon afterwards a messenger came from the English monarch with an offer of the earldom of Northumberland to Tostig. "The proposal," said the outlaw, "should have been made some months ago. But if I accept it, what will my brother give to the king of Norway?" "Seven feet of land for a grave," was the contemptuous reply. Tostig scorned to abandon his friend.



The English cavalry were accustomed to charge in irregular masses : and if they met with resistance, to disperse in every direction, and re-assemble upon a given point. The firm array of the Norwegians bade defiance to all their efforts ; and Harold with his great superiority of force might yet have been foiled, had not the ardour of the enemy seduced them to break their ranks, and pursue the fugitive cavalry. That instant the English rushed into the opening : and in the confusion Hardrada was shot through the neck with an arrow. He fell instantly : and Tostig assumed the command. A second offer from Harold was indignantly refused : the arrival of the expected aid revived the fainting spirits of the Norwegians : and a desperate but unavailing effort was made to wrest the victory out of the hands of the English. The battle was continued by the obstinacy of the enemy long after every reasonable hope of success had been extinguished : and it was only terminated by the death of Tostig, and of every celebrated chieftain in the Norwegian army. This action is considered as one of the most bloody that is recorded in our annals : and at the distance of fifty years the spot was still whitened with the bones of the slain<sup>91</sup>.

The courage of Harold was tempered with humanity. He sent for Olave, the younger son of Hardrada, who, accompanied by his bishop, and the earl of the Orkneys, obeyed the summons of the conqueror. He experienced a courteous reception ; swore to live in amity with England ; and was dismissed with twelve ships to revisit his native country. A few days were

<sup>91</sup> Snorre, 156—165. Ing. 69. Chron. Sax. 172. Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1066. Hunt. 210. Order. Vit. apud Maseres, 174. Tostig had married Judith, the daughter of Baldwin earl of Flanders. She afterwards espoused the son of Azo and Cunegunda,

Guelph I. or V. from whom in a direct line the present royal family of England is descended. But I do not find that her first husband Tostig ever took the title of king of England, as is supposed by Gibbon. Miscel. Works, iii. 192.

CHAP.  
VI.

necessarily employed by Harold in taking possession of the Norwegian fleet, securing the spoil, and refreshing his exhausted troops. He repaired to York: but the public rejoicing of the citizens could not tranquillize his impatience to learn the motions of his remaining and most formidable competitor. The king was seated at the royal banquet, and surrounded by his thanes, when a messenger entered the hall, and announced the arrival and descent of the Normans on the coast of Sussex. The battle of Stamford-bridge had been fought on the twenty-fifth, William effected his landing on the twenty-ninth, of September<sup>92</sup>.

William pre-  
pares to invade  
England.

That prince had employed eight months in the most active preparations for the invasion. By the gravest of his counselors it was deemed a most hazardous enterprise: but his confidence was not to be shaken by their suggestions; and the people, catching the spirit, seconded with all their zeal the exertions, of their duke. Nor was this enthusiasm confined to his own subjects. Bretons, Poitevins, Burgundians, and warriors from every province of France, crowded to his standard: and by the beginning of August he found himself at the head of fifty thousand cavalry, besides a smaller body of infantry<sup>93</sup>. All had been taught to believe, that they were called to fight in the cause, of justice against an usurper, of religion against a perjured traitor. Whatever claim other individuals might prefer to the crown of England, Harold, the *man*, the liege subject of William,

<sup>92</sup> Hunt. 210. Hist. Rames. 462. The printed chronicle (172) says, William landed on Michaelmas day: and this I conceive to be the meaning of Orderic, who says, he crossed the sea on the night preceding (175). I cannot, however, agree with Orderic (184), or with Gemmeticensis (vii. 34), that the battle of Stamford-bridge was fought on the 7th of

October. The English writers place it on the 25th of September.

<sup>93</sup> *Millia militum quinquaginta.* Pict. 106. *Virorum sexaginta milia.* Id. 112. *Quinquaginta milia militum, cum copia peditum.* Orderic, 174. These passages plainly prove that the *milites* fought on horseback.

could not lawfully withhold it from his lord. To strengthen these impressions the duke had sent an embassy to pope Alexander III., from whom he had received a consecrated banner. This might be no more than a return of politeness on the part of the pontiff: but to the troops it was represented as the sanction of their intended expedition<sup>94</sup>, by the head of their church.

To furnish transports for this numerous body of men, for their arms, horses, and provisions, every vessel in Normandy was put in requisition. But the supply was still inadequate: and many individuals sought the favour of their prince, by building others at their own expense in the different harbours and creeks. The general rendezvous was appointed at the mouth of the Dive, a small river which flows into the sea between the broader streams of the Orne and the Touques: and in the month of August its shallow estuary was covered with one thousand, or, according to some historians, with three thousand vessels of every size and description<sup>95</sup>. Still the success of the enterprise depended much on the caprice of the weather. As soon as the army was prepared to embark, the wind veered to the north-east: and for more than a month it continued stationary at the same point. It was not till the approach of the equinox that a breeze from the west released the fleet from its tedious confinement. The Norman eagerly seized the opportunity of putting to sea: but the wind gradually became more violent: the skill of the mariners was baffled by the turbulence of the elements and by the fears of the soldiers: and though a great part of the fleet reached St. Valery near Dieppe, the whole coast was covered with fragments of

<sup>94</sup> Pict. 106, 107. Malm. 56.

<sup>95</sup> Pict. 109. Gemet. p. 665. Malm. iii. 56. The duke's ship was a present from his wife Matilda. On the prow was an image of gold, representing a boy, who with his right

hand pointed to England, and with his left held a trumpet of ivory to his mouth. Lyt. Hist. vol. i. app. out of an ancient MS. p. 463 also at the end of Taylor's Gavel-kind.



CHAP.  
VI.Lands in Eng-  
land.Conduct of  
Harold.

wreck and the bodies of the drowned<sup>96</sup>. This was a severe check to the impatience of William. He laboured to interest heaven in his behalf: the shrine of St. Valery was carried in procession: and the whole army joined in public supplications for a favourable wind. At last their wishes were gratified; and the duke led the way with a lantern suspended from the head of the mast, as a guide to his followers during the darkness of the night: but so unequal was their speed, that when he had reached the English shore, the others were scattered in different directions over a line of twenty leagues from one coast to the other. In this situation they would have offered an easy victory to the fleet of Harold: but unfortunately it had previously dispersed to procure provisions; and the different squadrons had been detained in port by the violence of the weather<sup>97</sup>. The Normans landed without opposition at Pevensey, marched immediately to Hastings, and threw up fortifications, at both places, to protect their transports, and secure a retreat in case of disaster<sup>98</sup>. Nor was the precaution useless. Within a few days the two ports were blockaded by the whole navy of England<sup>99</sup>.

In this emergency the conduct of Harold has been severely censured. It is alleged that intoxicated with his late success he deemed himself invincible: that by his avarice in appropriating to himself the spoils of the Norwegians, he deprived the country of the services of his veterans; and that by his imprudence he

<sup>96</sup> Pict. 108. Order. 175.

<sup>97</sup> Flor. 634. The fleet separated on the 8th of August: but assembled again within a fortnight after the arrival of the Normans.

<sup>98</sup> *Quæ sibi forent receptaculo, et navibus propugnaculo.* Order. Vit. apud Maseres, 175. The *custodia navium* is also mentioned by Pictaviensis, p. 112. Hence the assertion of later writers, that he burnt all his ships, must

be unfounded. I suspect the fear of losing them was the reason that he never ventured from the coast till after the decisive battle of Hastings.

<sup>99</sup> The Norman writers, anxious to exaggerate the forces of the conquered, make the English fleet amount to 700 sail. Pict. 127. Vit. 177.

wantonly staked the independence of England on the exertions of a handful of men, hastily collected, and unpractised in warfare. Perhaps these charges have no other foundation than the prejudices of writers, who sought to console their own pride and that of their readers by ascribing the subjugation of the country to the incapacity of its ruler. On the receipt of the intelligence the king flew to the capital. It is probable that before his march to the north he had left directions for troops to assemble at London in the case of invasion: it is certain that thousands hastened to his standard, and that in six days he thought himself a match for his rival<sup>100</sup>. In the beginning of October he was feasting at York: on the fourteenth of the same month he had reached the camp of the Normans. But no celerity could surprise the vigilance of William. His scouts brought him advice of the approach of the English. He made immediate preparations for the impending combat: recalled the detachments which had been sent out to plunder, and retiring to his tent, attended at mass, and received the communion<sup>101</sup>.

<sup>100</sup> Within these six days we are told that messages were exchanged between the two rivals. An English monk, on the part of Harold, acknowledged the prior right of William, but maintained that Edward had, on his death bed, left the crown to Harold, and that the last disposition had revoked the former. A monk of Fecamp replied, on the part of William, that Edward had given him the crown by the advice of his witan: that Godwin, Stigand, Leofric, and Siward had sworn to allow no other prince to succeed: that hostages had been given for the execution of their oaths: that Harold had afterwards, at the command of Edward, taken upon himself a similar obligation, and that William had no objection to submit his claim to the decision of the laws, either English or Norman: or that, if his rival preferred it, he was ready to meet him in single combat. Harold merely

replied, that God should judge between them. Pict. 112—126. I distrust the whole of this story. Reasons have already been adduced to make it doubtful, whether Edward the confessor ever promised the succession to William: and the arrival of Edward the outlaw as the presumptive heir to the crown in 1057, shews that the assertions said to have been made by the monk of Fecamp, are absolutely false.

<sup>101</sup> This circumstance probably gave occasion to the statement of Malmesbury (56, 57), that the English spent the night before the battle in drinking, the Normans in prayer. The fact is, that Harold hastened to take the enemy unawares: and partly succeeded, as several detachments had gone out to plunder in the morning before his approach was known. Pict. 127.

CHAP.  
VI.

In the casuistry of that age no crime was reckoned more shameful or more atrocious than the treason of a vassal against his lord: and William seems to have been powerfully impressed with the notion, which had been so industriously propagated among his troops, that heaven would not fail to avenge upon Harold the violation of his oath. When he was told that the king of England accompanied the army, he expressed his astonishment that a man, conscious of the guilt of perjury, should venture his person in battle<sup>102</sup>. The same sentiment was prevalent among the English. The brothers of Harold earnestly intreated him to absent himself from the field. "You have sworn," they said, "fealty to William: you cannot lawfully fight against a prince, to whom in the name of God, you have promised submission. Leave to us the direction of the battle. We are bound by no oaths. We know nothing of the Nor-man except as the enemy of our country." The king laughed at their apprehensions<sup>103</sup>.

Battle of  
Hastings.

The spot which he had selected for this important contest was called Senlac, nine miles from Hastings, an eminence opening to the south, and covered on the back by an extensive wood<sup>104</sup>. As his troops arrived he posted them on the declivity in one compact and immense mass. In the centre waved the royal standard, the figure of a warrior in the act of fighting, worked in thread of gold, and ornamented with precious stones. By its side stood Harold and his two brothers Gurth and Leofwin: and around them the rest of the army, every man on foot. In this arrangement the king seems to have adopted, as far as circumstances would permit, the plan which had lately proved

<sup>102</sup> Taylor's Ann. 192.

<sup>103</sup> Order. Vit. 176. Malm. 56.

<sup>104</sup> Some writers have supposed the name was derived from Sanguelac or the lake of

blood, in allusion to the carnage made in this battle. But Orderic assures us that Senlac was the ancient name. *Locus, qui Senlac antiquitus vocabatur.* Order. 178.



so fatal to the Norwegians, and which now, from the same causes, was productive of a similar result. Probably he feared the shock of the numerous cavalry of the Normans. Both men and horses were completely cased in armour, which gave to their charge an irresistible weight, and rendered them almost invulnerable by ordinary weapons. For the purpose of opposing them with more chance of success Harold had brought with him engines to discharge stones into their ranks, and had recommended to his soldiers to confine themselves in close fight to the use of the battle-axe, a heavy and murderous weapon.

On the opposite hill, William was employed in marshalling his host. In the front he placed the archers and bowmen: the second line was composed of heavy infantry clothed in coats of mail: and behind these the duke arranged in five divisions, the hope and the pride of the Norman force, the knights and men at arms. That he would strive both by words and actions to infuse into this multitude of warriors from different nations an ardour similar to his own, is not improbable: but the two harangues, which William of Poitou, and Henry of Huntingdon, have put into his mouth, may with equal probability be attributed to the historians themselves. About nine in the morning the army began to move, crossed the interval between the two hills, and slowly ascended the eminence on which the English were posted. The papal banner, as if auspicious of victory, was carried in the front by Toustain the fair, a dangerous honour which two of the Norman barons had successively declined<sup>105</sup>.

At the moment when the armies were ready to engage, the Normans raised the national shout of "God is our help," which was as loudly answered by the adverse cry of "Christ's rood.

<sup>105</sup> Piet. 127. Hunt. 210, 211. Orderic, 178.

CHAP.  
VI.

---

“ the holy rood.” The archers, after the discharge of their arrows, retired to the infantry, whose weak and extended line was unable to make any impression on their more numerous opponents. William ordered the cavalry to charge. The shock was dreadful: but the English in every point opposed a solid and impenetrable mass. Neither buckler nor corslet could withstand the stroke of the battle-axe, wielded by a powerful arm and with unerring aim: and the confidence of the Normans melted away at the view of their own loss, and the bold countenance of their enemies. After a short pause the horse and foot of the left wing betook themselves to flight: their opponents eagerly pursued: and a report was spread that William himself had fallen. The whole army began to waver; when the duke with his helmet in his hand, rode along the line, exclaiming: “ I am still alive, and, with the help of God, I still shall conquer.” The presence and confidence of their commander revived the hopes of the Normans: and the speedy destruction of the English, who had pursued the fugitives, was fondly magnified into an assurance of victory. These brave but incautious men had, on their return, been intercepted by a numerous body of cavalry: and on foot and in confusion they quickly disappeared beneath the swords or rather the horses of the enemy. Not a man survived the carnage.

William led his troops again to the attack: but the English column, dense and immoveable, as a rock amidst the waves, resisted every assault. Disappointed and perplexed, the Norman had recourse to a stratagem, suggested by his success in the earlier part of the day. He ordered a division of horse to flee: they were pursued: and the temerity of the pursuers was punished with instant destruction. The same feint was tried with equal success in another part of the field. These losses

might diminish the numbers of the English : but the main body obstinately maintained its position : and bade defiance to every effort of the Normans<sup>106</sup>.

CHAP.  
VI.

---

During the engagement William had given the most signal proofs of personal bravery. Three horses had been killed under him : and he had been compelled to grapple on foot with his adversaries. Harold also had animated his followers, both by word and example, and had displayed a courage worthy of the crown, for which he was fighting. His brothers Gurth and Leofwin had perished already : but as long as *he* survived, no man entertained the apprehension of defeat or admitted the idea of flight. A little before sunset an arrow, shot at random, entered his eye. He instantly fell ; and the knowledge of his fall relaxed the efforts of the English. Twenty Normans undertook to seize the royal banner : and effected their purpose with the loss of half their number. One of them, who maimed with his sword the dead body of the king, was afterwards disgraced by William for his brutality. At dusk the English broke up and dispersed through the wood. The Normans followed their track by the light of the moon, when ignorance of the country led them to a spot intersected with ditches, into which they were precipitated in the ardour of pursuit. The fugitives, recalled by the accident, inflicted a severe vengeance on their adversaries. As William, attracted by the cries of the combatants, was hastening to the place, he met Eustace of Boulogne and fifty knights fleeing with all their speed. He called on them to stop : but the earl, while he was in the act of whispering into the ear of the duke, received a stroke on the back, which forced the blood out of his mouth and nostrils. He was carried in a state of insensibility to his tent : William's intrepidity hurried him on to the scene of

Death of  
Harold.



CHAP.  
VI.

danger. His presence encouraged his men: succours arrived: and the English, after an obstinate resistance, were repulsed<sup>107</sup>.

Thus ended this memorable and fatal battle. On the side of the victors almost sixty thousand men had been engaged, and more than one-fourth were left on the field. The number of the vanquished and the amount of their loss, are unknown. By the vanity of the Norman historians the English army has been exaggerated beyond the limits of credibility: by that of the native writers it has been reduced to a handful of resolute warriors<sup>108</sup>: but both agree that with Harold and his brothers perished all the nobility of the south of England; a loss which was never repaired. The king's mother begged as a boon the dead body of her son: she offered as a ransom its weight in gold<sup>109</sup>: but the resentment of William had rendered him callous to pity, and insensible to all interested considerations. He ordered the corpse of the fallen monarch to be buried on the beach; adding with a sneer; "he guarded the coast while he was alive; let him continue to guard it after death." By stealth, however, or by purchase, the royal remains were removed from this unhallowed site, and deposited in the church of Waltham, which Harold had founded before he ascended the throne<sup>110</sup>.

<sup>107</sup> Pict. 132—134. Orderic, 182—185. Hunt. 211. Malm. 57.

<sup>108</sup> See Pict. 128. Orderic, 178, and in opposition, Ingulf, 69. Chron. Sax. 172. Flor. 634. Malms. 53.

<sup>109</sup> Baron Maseres has calculated the average weight of the human body at somewhat less than 11,000 guineas. Pict. 138. not.

<sup>110</sup> Pictaviensis (135), and Orderic (185), say that he was buried on the beach; most of our historians (Malm. 57. West. 224. Paris, 3), that the body was given to his mother without ransom, and interred by her orders at Waltham. A more romantic story is told by the author of the Waltham MS. in the Cotton library, Jul. D. 6, who wrote about

a century afterwards. If we may believe him, two of the canons, Osgod Cnoppe, and Ailric, the *childe-maister*, were sent to be spectators of the battle. They obtained from William, to whom they presented ten marks of gold, permission to search for the body of their benefactor. Unable to distinguish it among the heaps of the slain, they sent for Harold's mistress, Editha, surnamed "the fair," and the "swan's-neck." By her his features were recognised. The corpse was interred at Waltham with regal honours, in the presence of several Norman earls and gentlemen.—Mr. Turner first called the attention of his readers to this MS. Hist. of Eng. i. 60.

## CHAP. VII.

(APPENDIX I.)

POLITY OF THE ANGLO-SAXONS — FEUDAL CUSTOMS — RANKS IN  
SOCIETY — COURTS OF LAW — CRIMES — SLAVES.

EVERY account of the civil polity of the Anglo-Saxons must necessarily be imperfect. We can only view the subject through the intervening gloom of eight centuries: and the faint light which is furnished by imperfect notices, scattered hints, and partial descriptions, may serve to irritate, but not to satisfy curiosity. It would be in vain to seek for information in the works of foreign writers: and the native historians never imagined that it could be requisite to delineate institutions with which they had been familiarized from their childhood, and which they naturally judged would be perpetuated along with their posterity.

CHAP.  
VII.

Of the military character and predatory spirit of the Saxons an accurate notion may be formed from the Danish adventurers of the ninth and tenth centuries. Both were scions from the same Gothic stock: but the latter retained for a longer period the native properties of the original plant. Hengist and Cerdic, and their fellow chieftains, were the sea-kings of their age, animated with the same spirit, and pursuing the same objects as the barbarians, whose ferocity yielded to the perseverance of Alfred, but subdued the pusillanimity of Ethelred. The

Manners of  
Anglo-Saxons.

CHAP.  
VII.

reader has only to transfer to the Saxons the Danish system of warfare, its multiplied aggressions, its unquenchable thirst of plunder, and its unprovoked and wanton cruelties, and he will form a correct picture of the state of Britain, from the first defection of Hengist to the final establishment of the octarchy. The adventurers did not think of colonizing the countries which they conquered, till they had become weary of devastation : and then they introduced institutions, to which they had been habituated in their original settlements.

Feudal cus-  
toms.

Of these the most important, and that which formed the groundwork of all the rest, may be discovered among the Germans in the age of Tacitus. From him we learn that every chieftain was surrounded by a number of retainers, who did him honour in time of peace, and accompanied him to the field in time of war. To fight by his side they deemed an indispensable duty ; to survive his fall an indelible disgrace<sup>1</sup>. It was this artificial connexion, this principle which reciprocally bound the lord to his vassal, and the vassal to his lord, that held together the northern hordes, when they issued forth in quest of adventures. They retained it in their new homes : and its consequences were gradually developed, as each tribe made successive advances in power and civilization. Hence sprang the feudal system with its long train of obligations, of homage, suit, service, purveyance, reliefs, wardships, and scutage. That it was introduced into England by the Norman conqueror, is the opinion of respectable writers : and the assertion may be true, if they speak of it only in its mature and most oppressive form. But all the primary germs of the feudal services may be descried among the Saxons, even in the earlier periods of their government : and they flourished in full luxuriance long before the extinction

<sup>1</sup> Tac. Germ. 13, 14.



of the dynasty. As the subject is curious, I may be allowed to enter a little into detail.

CHAP.  
VII.

That the feudal relation between the lord and his man or vassal, was accurately understood, and that its duties were faithfully performed by the Anglo-Saxons, is sufficiently evident from the tragic tale of Cynewulf and Cyneheard, which has been already narrated in the history of the kings of Wessex<sup>2</sup>. When Cynewulf was surprised in the dead of the night at Merton, his attendants refused to abandon, or even to survive their lord: and when on the next morning the eighty-four followers of Cyneheard were surrounded by a superior force, they also spurned the offer of life and liberty, and chose rather to yield up their breath in a hopeless contest, than to violate the fealty, which they had sworn to a murderer and an outlaw<sup>3</sup>. An attachment of this romantic and generous kind cannot but excite our sympathy. It grew out of the doctrine, that of all the ties which nature has formed or society invented, the most sacred was that which bound the lord and the vassal; whence it was inferred that the breach of so solemn an engagement was a crime of the most disgraceful and unpardonable atrocity. By Alfred it was declared inexpiable: the laws pronounced against the offender the sentence of forfeiture and death<sup>4</sup>.

Lord and vassal.

It was not, however, an institution which provided solely for the advantage of one party. The obligations were reciprocal. The vassal shared with his fellows in the favours of his lord, and lived in security under his protection. It was a contract, cemented by oath, for the benefit of each. "By the Lord," said the inferior, placing his hands between those of his chief, "I promise to be faithful and true; to love all that thou lovest,

Homage.

<sup>2</sup> See history, p. 151.

<sup>3</sup> Chron. Sax. anno 750, p. 57.

<sup>4</sup> Chron. Sax. 58. Leg. Sax. p. 33, 34,

<sup>5</sup> 142, 143. Even the word *vassal* seems

to have been known in England as early as the reign of Alfred. Asser, his instructor, calls the thanes of Somerset, *nobiles vasalli* Sumertunensis plagæ. Asser, 33.

CHAP.  
VII.

“ and shun all that thou shunnest, conformably to the laws of  
 “ God and man ; and never in will or weald (power), in word or  
 “ work, to do that which thou loathest, provided thou hold me  
 “ as I mean to serve, and fulfil the conditions to which we agreed  
 “ when I subjected myself to thee, and chose thy will<sup>5</sup>.”

This last proviso furnished the usual pretext for the dissolution of these engagements. To it every powerful chieftain appealed as often as he dared to disobey the orders of his sovereign, the “ *king-lord*,” as he was called, in contradistinction to inferior lords. The sub-vassal, indeed, could not be compelled by the tenor of his oath to bear arms against the head of the state : but he never presumed to doubt of the rectitude of his immediate chief, and always accompanied him to the field, whether it were against the enemies, or the sovereign of his country. We are told that Godwin and his sons were “ loath to march “ against their king-lord :” yet their “ men” followed them in sufficient numbers to render doubtful the issue of the contest ; and on the submission of their leaders were only required to transfer their homage to “ the hands” of the king. It should, however, be observed that these vassals were divided into two classes ; vassals by choice, who chose their own lord, paid him an acknowledgment for his protection, and at his death gave their fealty to some other superior<sup>6</sup> : and vassals by tenure, who held of their lord, estates for life, or estates of inheritance, with the obligation of military service<sup>7</sup>. Of both descriptions several notices

<sup>5</sup> Leg. 401. 50. 63. Brompt. 859.

<sup>6</sup> In Latin they were called *commendati*. They were common in France (Baluz. capit. i. 443. 536), and seem to have been very numerous in England. Thus when Alfred bequeaths several of his lands to his son Edward, “ he prays the families at Chedder “ in Somersetshire to choose Edward on the “ same terms, as had formerly been agreed “ between Alfred and them” (Test. Ælf.).

We often find them described in Domesday, as free men, who could go with their lands to whomsoever they pleased. They are most frequently mentioned in Norfolk and Suffolk. Thus in Shotley were 210 soemen. Of these four were the *commendati* of Harold, two of Gurth, the rest of different barons under king Edward. Domes. 287. a.

<sup>7</sup> The possession of land by military tenure is noticed by Bede in his letter to Egbert

may be discovered among the relics of Anglo-Saxon antiquity.

---

Division of  
lands.

Whatever may have been the conduct of the other northern tribes, there cannot be a doubt that the conquerors of Britain shared among themselves the lands of the conquered. This is sufficiently attested by the state of landed property among them in every subsequent stage of their history ; and by the general surveys which had originally been taken. Every district and every kingdom had been distributed by computation into so many lands of families, otherwise denominated hides or sowlings. Of these we are informed by venerable Bede (720), that the isle of Wight contained twelve hundred, the kingdom of Sussex seven thousand, that of Mercia, north and south of the Trent, twelve thousand. It appears that in such divisions much the larger portion was given to the king, and the remainder was shared among the chieftains, his immediate vassals. A subdivision then took place. Each principal proprietor, acting in the same manner, erected a petty empire for himself, and retaining a considerable part for his own use, allotted the rest, in different proportions, and on different tenures, to his followers<sup>6</sup>. Though in the progress of several centuries this distribution must have been considerably disturbed, its original features were still retained ; and if on the one hand the royal demesne was diminished by frequent grants, its losses were as often repaired by the extinction of families,

(p. 309). Allusions to vassals of that description frequently occur in the laws (23. 69. and 22. 144) : they are expressly mentioned by Canute. " If a ' man' desert his lord on " service by sea or land, he shall forfeit all that " he has, and his own life. Let the lord take " his chattels, and *the land which he gave to him* " (his fee) ; and the king take his bockland, if " he have any (land not held of a lord) ; but if " he fall in presence of his lord in battle, let the " heriot be forgiven, and his heirs take the land

" and chattels, and shift them most rightfully" (Leg. 145). Thus Ælfred, the ealdorman, bequeaths to his son only one manor of his bockland, because he hoped the king would give him the folcland (the fee) : but in case the king should refuse the folcland, he leaves him another manor (Lye, App. No. ii). Thus also Turketul on the death of his father received his paternal inheritance from the gift of the king. Ing. 36. See Heming. Chart. 81.

<sup>6</sup> See Bed. iv. 13, 16. Edd. c. 40.



CHAP.  
VII.

and the forfeitures of criminals. As the princes of Wessex gradually suppressed the independence of the other tribes, they claimed for themselves the lands allotted to the different crowns; and at the close of the dynasty their possessions were immense in every division of the kingdom.

That this is not merely a fanciful theory will appear from an inspection of Domesday. That authentic record presents a correct picture of the state of the country, not only under the Norman William, but also under his Anglo-Saxon predecessor, Edward. Taking the county of Kent as a specimen, we find that out of four hundred and thirty places described as lying within its precincts, not fewer than one hundred and ninety-four, nearly one-half, belonged to the crown; and that the remainder was unequally divided among the archbishop of Canterbury, the bishop of Rochester, the two abbots of St. Austin's and St. Martin's, the queen Editha, the earls Godwin, Harold, and Lewin, Alnod child, Brixi child, and Sbern Biga. These eleven were the great tenants in chief, the king's principal thanes, the real peers of the county. But besides the property and privileges, which they claimed in that capacity, most of them were in possession of parcels of land which they held in common with many inferior thanes, as sub-tenants, some under the crown, some under its immediate vassals, thus pointing out by the difference of their tenures, what originally was the king's demesne, and what was the demesne of the great lords in whose places they now stood<sup>9</sup>.

If exceptions in favour of particular persons prove the existence of a general rule, it will follow that all the lands of the Anglo-Saxons were originally burthened with the obligation of

<sup>9</sup> See Hensham's summary table of lands in Kent, compiled from the autograph of Domesday. It is observable, that the conqueror,

when he distributed the county among his followers, still kept up the same number of eleven tenants in chief. Ibid. p. 20.

military service. The barbarians had acquired their new settlements by the sword; and they were expected to retain them by the same means. But after their conversion to Christianity, a broad distinction was drawn between the clergy and laity, “the mass-thanes and the world-thanes.” As the former were the servants of God, it was their duty to be employed in the offices of devotion and of charity; and they were consequently forbidden to mingle in the fray of arms, or shed the blood of their fellow-men. Hence, in numerous instances, their estates were successively exonerated from every species of service. This indulgence in Northumbria speedily degenerated into a dangerous abuse: and laymen, assuming the habits of monks, obtained from the weakness or the covetousness of the prince the grant of similar exemptions. Venerable Bede (anno 734) made an effort to check the evil: he described in a letter to the archbishop of York and brother of the king, its probable consequences; and expressed his apprehensions that the continual diminution of the military tenures would leave the kingdom without a competent force for its defence<sup>10</sup>. The Mercian princes were less improvident; and while they abolished all other burthens in favour of the ecclesiastical bodies, generally reserved the three important obligations of the *fæsten-geweorc* or reparation of fortresses, the *bryge-geweorc* or construction of bridges, and the *fyrð-færelde* or military service<sup>11</sup>. But even these were annulled by the more easy piety of Ethelwulf (855) not only in his own dominions but in those of the kings his vassals. The clergy, however, during the invasions of the Danes, had the patriotism to wave this valuable privilege; and there is still extant a charter, in which Burrhed, king of Mercia (868) publicly

<sup>10</sup> Epist. ad Egbert. Antist. 309.<sup>11</sup> Wilk. Con. i. 100. Heming. Chart. 109. Bed. App. 767.

CHAP. thanks them for having spontaneously furnished that military  
 VII. aid, to which they were no longer liable by law <sup>12</sup>.

These exemptions sufficiently shew the existence of military services towards the commencement, while Domesday fully confirms it at the close, of the Saxon government. They seem to have been exacted from all vassals, both those who chose their own lords, and those who held lands of others <sup>13</sup>. By what rule they were originally imposed, it is impossible to discover : but at a later period they were fixed on the basis of immemorial usage, which appears to have varied in almost every county and borough. Perhaps we shall not recede far from the truth, if we judge of the rest of the kingdom from Berkshire, in which we learn that one *miles* was furnished for every five hides of land : that he served during two months ; and that, if his own possessions did not amount to the legal quantity, he received pay at the rate of four shillings to the hide from the other proprietors. It may be observed that the same number of hides was required by the law for the dignity of thane, who by the Norman compilers of Domesday is called in their feudal language, *miles regis dominicus*.

Firdwite.

The performance of these services was enforced by numerous enactments in the laws of the Saxon kings, from the time of Ina (700) to the reign of Canute (1030). On some occasions the defaulter was punished with the forfeiture of his lands, at others with the payment of a stated fine. In Worcestershire if he were a vassal by choice, his real property was placed at the mercy of the king ; if the tenant of another, his lord was bound to find a substitute, or pay a fine of forty shillings, which in either case he levied on the defaulter. The burghers of Oxford were at liberty to send twenty soldiers, or to

<sup>12</sup> Ingulf, 17. 21.

<sup>13</sup> Gale, iii. 763.



pay twenty pounds : at Warwick whoever disobeyed the summons, was mulcted one hundred shillings : in Colchester every house paid six pence in lieu of all military service. In these and numerous other instances of a similar description, we may easily recognise the rudiments of the prestation, called *scutage* by the Norman feudalists <sup>14</sup>.

Nor were the three great services already mentioned the only *Purveyance* burthens to which landed property was subjected among our Saxon ancestors. In different charters we read of sheriff's-aids, of the *hidage* or land tax, of the fees of *caldormen* and public officers, and of a variety of impositions, the nature of which it is now hopeless to investigate. But among the number was a grievance, which bears a near resemblance to the *purveyance* of later times, the obligation of furnishing forage, provisions, and lodging to the attendants of the king in his progresses through the country, and not only to them, but also to their servants, horses, hounds, and hawks. Other prestations were fixed and certain : this was indeterminate and occasional, and on that account was more galling and oppressive <sup>15</sup>. Canute attempted to abolish it towards the close of his reign, and ordered his reeves to supply from the *demesne* lands whatever might be necessary for the support and comfort of his household <sup>16</sup>.

The king appears to have claimed the power, not only of dis- *Heriots*. posing of the benefice or fee after the death of the tenant, but also of controlling the distribution of his other possessions. Hence the vassal in his will was always anxious to obtain the confirmation of his superior, and to make provision for the payment of what was termed by the Saxons the *heriot*, by the Normans the *relief*. Of both these practices we meet with numerous

<sup>14</sup> Leg. 23. 135. Domesday, *passim*.<sup>16</sup> Leg. 143.<sup>15</sup> Ingulf, 17. 35. Heming. Chart. 31. 58.

CHAP.  
VII.

instances. Thus Elfhelm, after leaving his heriot to the king, concludes his will in these words: "and now I beseech thee, "my beloved lord, that my last testament may stand, and that "thou do not permit it to be annulled. God is my witness "that I was always obedient to thy father, faithful to him, both "in mind and might, and ever true and loving to thee<sup>17</sup>." So also archbishop Ælfrie first "bequeaths to his lord his best ship, "and the sail-yards thereto, and sixty helmets, and sixty coats "of mail," and then wills, *if it were his lord's will, &c.*<sup>18</sup>. By the laws it was provided that the heriot should be paid within twelve months from the death of the last possessor; and was apportioned to the rank which he bore in the state. That of an earl was four horses saddled, four unsaddled, four helmets, four coats of mail, eight spears, eight shields, four swords, and one hundred mancuses of gold: of a king's thane one half of the last: of an inferior thane his horse, his arms, and an offer of his hounds or hawks<sup>19</sup>. If he died intestate, the payment of the heriot preserved the estate in his family: if he fell in battle for his lord, the heriot was remitted<sup>20</sup>.

Marriage li-  
cences.

There is reason to believe that the Saxon like the Norman kings (and their example was probably imitated by the inferior lords) claimed occasionally the wardship of heiresses, and disposed of them in marriage<sup>21</sup>. The laws, though their language is not suffi-

<sup>17</sup> Lye, App. ii.

<sup>18</sup> Mores Ælfrie. 62. See many other instances of presents left to the king. Hicks, dissert. epist. 51. Thus Ælfrie leaves two marks of gold to "his king-lord Harol, and "one to his lady." Mores, p. 92.

<sup>19</sup> Leg. 144. 223 245. It has been said that heriots were introduced by Canute, because they are not mentioned in the laws of his predecessors. But he seems merely to record an ancient custom. They are noticed as such under Edgar (Hist. Eben. 180): and

Elfhelm, whose heriot has been already mentioned, lived many years before Ethelred. Longo retroacto tempore. Ibid. 128. Edgar himself describes them as an ancient institution in the charter, in which he frees the monasteries from the obligation. "Solitus census, quem indigenæ Heriotua usualiter vocitant, qui pro hujus patriæ potentibus post obitum regibus dari solet." Seldeni, Spirileg. ad Eadm. p. 153.

<sup>20</sup> Leg. 144, 145.

<sup>21</sup> Hist. Rames. 403. 441.

ciently explicit, seem to allude to such a custom. They provide that no maid or widow shall be compelled to marry against her will, and very inconsistently forbid the female to be sold in marriage, while they allow a present to be accepted from her husband<sup>22</sup>. This custom prevailed also in the royal burghs. In Shrewsbury no woman could marry without a licence from the king. With her first husband she paid a fine of ten shillings : if she took a second, the sum was doubled<sup>23</sup>.

From the tenures of land we may pass to the distinction of ranks, and the administration of justice. With a few shades of accidental difference both these were substantially the same in all the nations of Gothic origin. Among the Anglo-Saxons the free population was divided into the *eorl* and *ceorl*, the men of noble and ignoble descent<sup>24</sup>. The former were said to be *ethel-born* : and with a people acknowledging no other merit than martial prowess, it is probable that this distinction attached to those only, whose fathers had never exercised the occupations of husbandry or of the mechanical arts. It was merely personal : it conferred neither property nor power : but it served to gratify pride : and numerous complaints attest the arrogance with which the noble Saxon looked down on his inferior, and the reluctance with which “the full-born” bore the superiority of the “less-born,” whom merit or favour had raised above them<sup>25</sup>. The termination *ing* added to the name of the progenitor designated his posterity. The *Uffingas* were the descendants of *Uffa*, the *Oiscingas* the descendants of *Oisc*<sup>26</sup>. But the more lofty title of *etheling*, the son of the noble, was reserved for the members of the reigning family ; and these in each of the Saxon

Ranks.  
The *eorl*

<sup>22</sup> Leg. 109, 122, 144, 145.

<sup>23</sup> Domesday, Scirep-scire.

<sup>24</sup> By not attending to this meaning of the word *ceorl*, and rendering it *earl*, the transla-

tors of the Saxon laws have made several passages unintelligible. See Leg. 3, 35, 65.

<sup>25</sup> Leg. 83, 144. Bed. 296.

<sup>26</sup> Bed. ii. 5, 15.



CHAP.  
VII.

---

dynasties pretended to derive their pedigree from Woden, a real or fabulous conqueror, who was adored by his votaries as the god of battles. The supposed divinity of their parent secured to them the veneration of their pagan followers: and when christianity had dissipated the illusion, the superiority of their earthly descent was still acknowledged by all their contemporaries<sup>27</sup>.

King.

Among the ethel-horn the first place was occupied by the cyning or king. In the succession to the crown the reader must already have observed occasional deviations from the direct line of hereditary descent. But whether the new monarch were the immediate or the collateral heir of his predecessor, he was always elected by the witan before his coronation. The Saxons could not comprehend how a freeman could become the dependant of another, except by his own consent: but the election rendered the cyning the lord of the principal chieftains, and through them of their respective vassals. As his estates were nearly equal to theirs all together, so was his annual revenue and the number of his thanes: forming in the aggregate a power sufficient to humble the proudest, or to reduce the most factious of his subjects. Thrice in the year the great tenants of the crown were reminded of their dependence. At the festivals of Christmas, Easter, and Whitsuntide they were summoned to pay him their homage. They appeared before him in the guise of dependents, while he was seated on his throne with the crown on his head, and a sceptre in each hand. During eight days they were feasted at his expense, and on their dismissal received presents from his bounty<sup>28</sup>. He exercised an undisputed authority over the national forces by sea and land. He was the

<sup>27</sup> Chron. Sax. 13. 15. Gale, iii. 134. Voden, de cujus stirpe multarum provinciarum regum genus origines duxit. Bed. i. 15.

<sup>28</sup> Chron. Sax. 163. Hist. Ram. 395. Sceptris simul et coronâ. Ailred. Riev. 398. Regalia instrumenta sustinuit. Id. 399.

supreme judge: and was accustomed to receive appeals from every court of judicature. Of the fines which were levied on offenders the principal portion was paid into his treasury: he could commute the punishment of death, and was accustomed to liberate a prisoner in every burgh and jurisdiction into which he entered<sup>29</sup>. The ealdorman, sheriffs, borough-reeves, and judges were appointed by him: they held their offices at his pleasure; and might be displaced as his caprice might suggest or his justice might direct<sup>30</sup>. His "peace" or protection secured the man to whom it was granted from the pursuit of his enemies. At his coronation and for eight days afterwards it was extended to the whole kingdom: each year it was equally observed during the octaves of the three great festivals, in which he was accustomed to hold his court: and at all times it was enjoyed by every person within the circuit of four miles from his actual residence, by travellers on the four highways, and by merchants or their servants as long as they were employed on the navigable rivers. Some infractions of this peace subjected the offender to a heavy amercement: others of a more heinous description placed his life and property at the mercy of the king<sup>31</sup>.

<sup>29</sup> Leg. 20. 65. 109. 201.

<sup>30</sup> Chron. Sax. 49. Asser, 70.

<sup>31</sup> Leg. 63. 199. The real distance to which the king's peace extended from his actual residence was whimsically fixed at three miles, three furlongs, three roods, nine feet, nine hands (inches?), and nine barley corns. Leg. 63. The object of this institution, as also of another called "the peace of God," was to diminish the number of outrages perpetrated under the pretext of retaliation. The latter is said to have been first established in Aquitaine about the year 1032: though its rudiments appear in the decrees of several councils before the close of the tenth century (Bouquet, x. 49. 147), and it is enforced in the laws of king Ethelred at the beginning of

the eleventh (Leg. 108, 109). In England it included the Ember days, Advent, Lent, the vigils and festivals of Christ, the Virgin Mary, the apostles and of all saints, and every Sunday, reckoning from the hour of nine on Saturday to the dawn of light on the Monday morning (Leg. 108, 109. 121. 197). In France it began every week on the evening of the Wednesday, and lasted till the Monday (Glaber apud Du Cange in voce Treva). During these days it was forbidden under severe penalties for any man to slay, maim, or assault his enemy, or to distrain or plunder his lands. Ut nullus homo alium assaliat, aut vulneret, aut occidat, nullus nãmium aut prãdam capiat. Order. Vit. anno 1096.

CHAP.  
VII.

---

---

Queen.

The consort of the cyning was originally known by the appellation of "queen," and shared in common with her husband the splendour of royalty. But of this distinction she was deprived by the crime of Eadburga, the daughter of Offa, who had administered poison to her husband Brictric, king of Wessex. In the paroxysm of their indignation the witan punished the unoffending wives of their future monarchs by abolishing with the title of queen all the appendages of female royalty. Ethelwulf, in his old age, ventured to despise the prejudices of his subjects. His young consort, Judith, was crowned in France, and was permitted to seat herself by his side on the throne<sup>32</sup>. But during several subsequent reigns no other king imitated his example: and the latest of the Anglo-Saxon queens, though they had been solemnly crowned, generally contented themselves with the more modest appellation of "the lady"<sup>33</sup>. But whatever were their legitimate honours, they could not be deprived of the influence which was naturally attached to their situation: and no one presumed to solicit a favour from the monarch without offering a present to his wife<sup>34</sup>. From several passages it appears that separate estates were allotted for the support not only of the queen but also of her children, and the princes of the blood.

## Ealdorman.

After the royal family the highest order in the state was that of the ealdormen or earls. From the nature of their office they were sometimes styled viceroys<sup>35</sup>; by Bede they are dignified with the title of princes and satraps<sup>36</sup>. The districts which they

<sup>32</sup> Asser, 10.<sup>33</sup> Chron. Sax. 132, 164, 165, 168. A letter in More's *Elfric* begins thus: "Wolstan archbishop greets Canute king his lord, and *Elfgiva the lady*," p. 104. She gives herself the same title. In *Elfgiva the lady*, king "Edward's mother." Ibid. 98. In one charter Edgar's queen designates herself by the

singular expression; ego Alfhryth præsati regis conlaterana. Bed. App. 777.

<sup>34</sup> Gale, iii. 457. Hicks, Dissert. 51.<sup>35</sup> Subregali. Bed. App. 765--767.<sup>36</sup> Principes, Satrapæ, Primates, Optimates, Duces. All these titles are rendered by Alfred ealdormen.



governed in the name of the king, were denominated their shires, confined originally to a small tract of country, but gradually enlarged to the extent of our present counties. The policy of the West-Saxon kings, after the subjugation of the neighbouring states, still added to their authority by comprising several shires within the same earldom. Thus the whole kingdom of Mercia was intrusted by Alfred to the administration of the ealdorman Ethered<sup>37</sup>: that of Northumbria by Edgar to the fidelity of the earl Osulf<sup>38</sup>. It was the duty of the ealdorman, as the representative of the monarch, to lead the men of his shire to battle; to preside with the bishop in the courts of the county; and to enforce the execution of justice<sup>39</sup>. Of the fines and rents paid to the king within his jurisdiction he appears to have received one-third<sup>40</sup>. This office was originally in the gift of the crown, and might be forfeited by misconduct: but it was so frequently continued in the same family, that at last instead of being solicited as a favour, it began to be claimed as a right<sup>41</sup>.

Bede makes frequent mention of another order of men whom Gesith. he calls comites. By Alfred, in his translation, they are uniformly termed “gesiths<sup>42</sup>,” a word, which signifies attendants or companions. Eddius appears to speak of them under the description of regales socii, and sodales regis<sup>43</sup>: whence I should conclude that they were officers of the royal household, bound, as we are informed, to attend the king, and to wait on him in rotation<sup>44</sup>. In Bede they appear to occupy the intermediate place between the ealdorman and the thanes: in the laws they

<sup>37</sup> Asser, 50. 52.

<sup>38</sup> Mailros, 118.

<sup>39</sup> Chron. Sax. 78. Leg. 78. 136.

<sup>40</sup> Domesday, Hunte-dun-scire, Snotingham-scire.

<sup>41</sup> Chron. Sax. 169, 170.

<sup>42</sup> Bed. iii. 14. v. 4.

<sup>43</sup> Edd. vit. Wilf. c. 2.

<sup>44</sup> Asser, 65. I observe that the writers after the conquest, when they copy the Saxon writers, substitute *Milites* for *Socii*: and seem to understand by them the same persons whom they called *mægnals* or *mænals*, persons, whom their lord always conducted with him, wherever he went.

CHAP.  
VII.

are sometimes put on an equality with the latter, sometimes are ranked between them and the ceorls<sup>45</sup>.

We also meet with the titles of "heretoch and hold," denoting military commands of importance: and of "child," which has been conceived to mean the principal thane of a particular district. But the real rank and powers of these officers have not been satisfactorily ascertained<sup>46</sup>.

## Thane.

The thanes, so called from *thegnian* to serve, were a numerous and distinguished order of men, divided into several classes of different rank, and with different privileges. We read of greater and lesser thanes: of the thanes of the king, and the thanes of caldormen and prelates. The heriot of the higher was fourfold that of the lower thane: and while the former acknowledged no other superior than the king, the latter owed suit to the court of his immediate lord<sup>47</sup>. It is certain that they held their lands by the honourable tenure of military service, *Milites* is the term by which they are usually designated in the Norman writers: and every expression in Bede denoting a military character is invariably rendered thane by his royal translator<sup>48</sup>. The law required one combatant from every five hides of land; and the acquisition of property to the same extent was sufficient to raise a ceorl to the rank of a thane<sup>49</sup>. But without it, though he might accompany the king to the field, though he should possess

<sup>45</sup> Leg. 10. 22, 23. 71, 72. This difference may be explained on the supposition that the greater thanes had their *gesiths*, as well as the king.

<sup>46</sup> We read of Wulfnoth child of Sussex (Chron. Sax. 137), Edric child in Herefordshire (Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1067), Alric child in East-Anglia (Hist. Elien. 470), Alnod child in Kent, Brixi child in Kent (Domesday, Chenth). I suspect the appellation merely denotes a person, who from his childhood was heir apparent to some high

office. It was given to Edwy before his accession to the crown (Lye, App. iv.), and to Edgar Etheling, who, as he never became king, retained it during the whole reign of William the conqueror. Chron. Sax. 173. 182. Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1068. 1075. It was something like the present Spanish title of 'Infant.'

<sup>47</sup> Leg. 47. 118. 144.

<sup>48</sup> Bed. iii. 14. iv. 13. v. 13.

<sup>49</sup> Leg. 70.

a helmet, a coat of mail, and a golden-hilted sword, he was still condemned to remain in the subordinate and humble condition of a ceorl. A politic exception was admitted in favour of the merchants, who were accustomed to form companies or guilds, and possessed their lands in common. To sail thrice to a foreign land with a cargo of his own wares, intitled the merchant to the rank and privileges of the thaneship<sup>50</sup>. Of these privileges the most valuable was the amount of the were, an advantage, which will be more fully explained hereafter.

The gerefas or reeves were officers of high importance appointed by the king and the great proprietors in their respective demesnes. They were to be found in every separate jurisdiction: but the principal were the reeves of the shires, ports, and boroughs. It was their duty to collect the tolls, to apprehend malefactors, to require sureties, to receive the rents, and on several occasions to act in the place of their lords<sup>51</sup>. They were assessors, sometimes the chief judges in different courts; and were commanded under a severe penalty to regulate their decisions by the directions of the doom-book<sup>52</sup>. Gerefa.

The lowest class of freemen was that of ceorls, or husbandmen. Of these some possessed bocland, but not in sufficient quantity to raise them to the rank of thanes: others held lands of their lords by the payment of rent, or other free but inferior services. The relief of the latter was fixed at one year's rent. As long as they were exact in the performance of the customary services, they could not be expelled from their estates: though they were at liberty to return them to their lords whenever it suited their convenience<sup>53</sup>. In many charters, and in Domes- The ceorl.

<sup>50</sup> Leg. 71. These regulations have been attributed to Athelstan, but the text describes them as the ancient customs of the nation.

<sup>51</sup> Leg. 9. 12. 48. 69.

<sup>52</sup> Leg. 48.

<sup>53</sup> Leg. 225. Bracton, i. 11.



CHAP.  
VII.

day, may be seen the different species of services, which prevailed in different districts. As a freeman a ceorl could not be put in bonds, nor subjected to the ignominious punishment of whipping<sup>54</sup>. His life was protected by a were of two hundred shillings.

Administra-  
tion of justice.

Among a people but lately emerged from barbarism the administration of justice is always rude and simple : and though the absence of legal forms and pleading may casually insure a prompt and equitable decision, it is difficult without their aid to oppose the arts of intrigue and falsehood, or the influence of passion and prejudice. The proceedings before the Anglo-Saxon tribunals would not have suited a more advanced state of civilization : they were ill-calculated to elicit truth, or to produce conviction : and in many instances which have been recorded by contemporary writers, our more correct or more artificial notions will be shocked by the credulity or the precipitancy of the judges. The subject, however, is curious and interesting. These ancient courts still subsist under different names : and the intelligent observer may discover in their proceedings the origin of several institutions, which now mark the administration of justice in the English tribunals.

The lowest species of jurisdiction known among the Anglo-Saxons was that of " Sac and Soc," the derivation of which has puzzled the ingenuity of antiquaries, though the meaning is sufficiently understood. It was the privilege of holding pleas and imposing fines within a certain district, and with a few variations was perpetuated in the manorial courts of the Norman dynasty. It seems to have been claimed and exercised by all the greater and by several of the lesser thanes : but was differently modified by the terms of the original grant, or by im-

<sup>54</sup> Leg. 3. 11. 15. The penalty for binding a freeman was 20 shillings.

memorial usage. Some took cognizance of all crimes committed within their soke: the jurisdiction of others was confined to offences of a particular description: some might summon every delinquent, whether native or stranger, before their tribunal, while others could inflict punishment on none but their own tenants. From the custom of holding these courts in the hall of the lord, they were usually termed the hall-motes<sup>55</sup>.

Superior to the hall-mote was the mote of the hundred, a large division of the county. It was assembled every month under the presidency of the caldorman or the reeve, accompanied by the principal clergymen and freeholders. Once in the year was convened an extraordinary meeting, when every male above the age of twelve was compelled to attend: the state of the gilds and tythings (or associations of ten families) was ascertained: and no man was permitted to remain at large, who could not provide a surety for his peaceable demeanour. In these courts offenders were tried, and civil causes decided. But their utility was not confined to their judicial proceedings. In a period when few possessed the humble acquirements of reading and writing, the stability of pecuniary transactions was principally dependent on the honesty and character of the witnesses; and the testimony of the hundred was deemed on that account conclusive in questions of litigated right or disputed obligation. Hence men frequented these meetings in the course of private business: and contracts were made, exchanges ratified, purchases completed, and monies paid, in the presence of

Hundred-  
motes.

<sup>55</sup> Leg. 241, 242. 256. Hist. Elien. 490. 501. Domesday, passim. These courts absorbed much of the business, which would otherwise have been carried before the courts

of the hundred and county, and from them are derived our present courts baron with civil, and courts leet with criminal, jurisdiction.

CHAP.  
VII.

the court. But sometimes, when interests of greater importance were at stake, or the parties belonged to different districts, the authority of a single hundred was thought insufficient. On such occasions, that the controversy might be brought before a more numerous and less partial tribunal, the ealdorman convoked an assembly of the contiguous hundreds, or of the third part of the county. The former was termed the court of the lathe, and the latter of the trything<sup>56</sup>.

Shire-motes.

Of still higher dignity and more extensive jurisdiction was the shire-mote, or court of the county. It was held twice in the year, in the beginning of May and October. Every great proprietor was compelled to attend, either in person or by his steward, or to send in his place his chaplain, bailiff, and four principal tenants. The bishop and ealdorman, or earl, presided with equal authority, and their assessors were the sheriff and the most noble of the royal thanes. In their proceedings they began with those causes which related to the dues and immunities of the church; passed to the fines and forfeitures belonging to the crown; and ended with the controversies of individuals. In the last case it was the duty of the court to attempt a reconciliation by proposing a compromise: or, if the proposal were rejected, to pronounce a definitive judgment<sup>57</sup>. It was also on these occasions that the laws were recited, which had been enacted in the great council of the nation. We have still extant a letter to king Athelstan from the members of a county court, the bishops, the thanes, and the men of Kent, who recapitulate the laws which

<sup>56</sup> Leg. 50. 60. 78. 117. 203, 204, 205. 240. Hist. Elien. 473. 475. 481. The lathes still exist in some of the southern counties. From the trythings is supposed to be derived the local denomination of riding, the

third part of a county. In burghs were held burghmotes, corresponding with the motes of the hundred. Leg. Sax. 78.

<sup>57</sup> Leg. 78. 204, 205. 240.



he had notified to them, promise obedience, and conclude with the most forcible expressions of attachment to his person<sup>58</sup>.

CHAP.  
VII.

That the shires and hundreds, with their respective courts, were originally established by the policy of Alfred, is asserted by a well-informed writer, who lived at the time of the Norman conquest<sup>59</sup>. There is, however, reason to doubt much, if not the whole, of his statement. Alfred might improve, but he certainly could not invent, a system which existed some centuries before his reign. 1. The division of *shires* was common to all the northern nations<sup>60</sup>: some are known to have existed in England under their present names since the first settlement of the Saxons<sup>61</sup>: and others are mentioned in the laws and by the writers prior to the supposed division by Alfred<sup>62</sup>. The great inequality in their measurement, and the great irregularity in their distribution, prove that they were not the uniform work of one monarch: but that they owe their origin to different princes, who divided the country as necessity might require, or policy might suggest. 2. The hundreds also appear to have been a continental institution. From Tacitus we learn that the Germans of his age divided their territories into pagi; that each pagus furnished a band of one hundred combatants for battle: and that each band was termed "the hundred of the pagus" by which it was furnished<sup>63</sup>. Whether in the establishment of hundreds the Saxons followed this or any other particular rule, is uncertain. It has been supposed that the name was given to the district occupied by a hundred families of freemen. This

Origin of  
shires.

Of hundreds.

<sup>58</sup> Brompt. 850. The decisions of the witan in civil causes were also sent to the shire-mote. Hist. Elien. 469.

<sup>59</sup> Ingulf, 28. He has been followed by Malmsbury and others.

<sup>60</sup> Baluze, capit. i. 19. 39. 103.

<sup>61</sup> Kent, Sussex, Essex.

<sup>62</sup> Leg. 16. 20. 21. Chron. Sax. 56. 74. 75. 78. Asser, 3. 8. 11. Asser was the contemporary and instructor of the king. It is evident from his silence that he was ignorant of any new institution of shires or hundreds.

<sup>63</sup> Tac. Germ. vi.

CHAP.  
VII.

hypothesis has been generally admitted, because it satisfies the mind, and spares the trouble of ulterior investigation; but it will appear very questionable to those who have examined the notices in Domesday, and compared the disproportionate limits of even neighbouring hundreds<sup>64</sup>.

## Tythings:

Ingulf has also attributed to Alfred the institution of tythings, which by the very name import either a subdivision of the hundred, or an association of ten neighbouring families. By law every freeman was to be enrolled in one of these associations, all the members of which were made perpetual bail for each other. If one of the number fled from justice, the remaining nine were allowed the respite of a month to discover the fugitive: when, if he were not forthcoming, the pecuniary penalty of his crime was levied on his goods, and, in case of deficiency, on the goods of the tything, unless it could be proved that its members had connived at his escape<sup>65</sup>.

## King's court.

From these local courts, the hall-mote, the hundred-mote, and the shire-mote, appeals were allowed to the superior authority of the monarch. Alfred was accustomed to inspect the minutes of their proceedings, to confirm or annul their decisions, and occasionally to punish the judges for their partiality or ignorance. By his office the king was the supreme magistrate

<sup>64</sup> Hundredus continet centum villas. Brompt. 956. It is plain from Bede that villa, which his translator always renders *tune*, comprehended not only the mansion of the proprietor, but also the cottages of his tenants and slaves. Whitaker maintains that ten of these townships formed a tything or manor,

and ten manors a hundred. Whit. Manchester, ii. 114—120. But it will be difficult to reconcile this opinion with the statements in Domesday. I will take for example the hundreds in the lathe of Sutton in Kent. All the others are similar.

Hundreds.	Sowlings.	Acres of Meadow.	Manors.
Greenwich .....	8 $\frac{1}{2}$ .....	131 .....	9
Lesnes .....	19 $\frac{1}{2}$ .....	52 .....	4
Bromley .....	8 .....	14 .....	2
Rokesley .....	27 $\frac{1}{2}$ .....	78 .....	14
Axtane .....	65 $\frac{1}{2}$ .....	476 .....	36
Westerham .....	4 $\frac{1}{2}$ .....	16 .....	2

<sup>65</sup> Leg. Sax. 136. 201, 202, 241.

of the state: but he had other duties to perform; and it was forbidden to bring any cause before him, till it had been previously submitted to the decision of the inferior judges. This prohibition was, however, frequently disregarded: and few princes refused to exercise their judicial functions, as often as they were solicited by a favourite, or tempted by a present. Wherever the king was present, a court might be speedily assembled. To the thanes and clergymen who attended on his person, he added the prelates and nobility of the neighbourhood, and with their assistance either pacified the parties, or pronounced a definitive judgment. But these occasional courts, respectable as they might be, were eclipsed by the superior splendour and dignity of the “mickle synoths or witenagemots,” the great meetings, or the assemblies of the counselors, which were regularly convened at the festivals of Christmas, Easter, and Whitsuntide, and occasionally, at other times, as difficult circumstances or sudden exigencies might require. Who were the constituent members of this supreme tribunal, has long been a subject of debate: and the dissertations, to which it has given rise, have only contributed to involve it in greater obscurity. It has been pretended that not only the military tenants had a right to be present, but that the ceorls also attended by their representatives, the borsholders of the tythings. The latter part of the assertion has been made without a shadow of evidence, and the former is built on very fallacious grounds. It is indeed probable that in the infancy of the Anglo-Saxon states most of the military retainers may have attended the public councils: yet even then the deliberations were confined to the chieftains; and nothing remained for the vassals but to applaud the determination of their lords. But in later times, when the several principalities were united into one

Witena-  
gemot.

Its members



CHAP.  
VII.

monarchy, the recurrence of these assemblies, thrice in every year within the short space of six months, would have been an insupportable burthen to the lesser proprietors : and there is reason to suspect that the greater attended only when it was required by the importance of events, or by the vicinity of the court. The principal members seem to have been the spiritual and temporal thanes, who held immediately of the crown, and who could command the services of military vassals. It was necessary that the king should obtain the assent of these to all legislative enactments : because without their acquiescence and support it was impossible to carry them into execution. To many charters we have the signatures of the witan. They seldom exceed thirty in number ; they never amount to sixty. They include the names of the king and his sons, of a few bishops and abbots, of nearly an equal number of ealdormen and thanes, and occasionally of the queen, and of one or two abbesses<sup>66</sup>. Others, the *fideles* or vassals, who had accompanied their lords, are mentioned as looking on and applauding : but there exists no proof whatever, that they enjoyed any share in the deliberations<sup>67</sup>.

Its authority.

The legal powers of this assembly have never been accurately ascertained : probably they were never fully defined. To them, on the vacancy of the crown, belonged the choice of the next sovereign : and we find them exercising this claim not only at the decease of each king, but even during the absence of Ethelred in Normandy. They compelled him to enter into a

<sup>66</sup> See Ingulf, 32. 44. 45. Gale, iii. 517. Hemmingford, passim. From a passage in the history of Ely (p. 513), it has been inferred that an estate of forty hides intitled its possessor to a seat in the witan.

<sup>67</sup> *Præsentibus archiepiscopis et episcopis, Angliæ universis, nec non Beorredo rege Mer-*

*ciæ, et Edmundo Estanglorum rege, abbatum et abbatissarum, ducum, comitum, procerumque totius terræ, aliorumque fidelium infinita multitudo, qui omnes regium chirographum laudaverunt, dignitates vero sua nomina subscripserunt.* Ing. 17.

solemn compact with the nation, before they would acknowledge him a second time for king of England<sup>68</sup>. In ordinary cases their deliberations were held in the presence of the sovereign : and as individually they were his vassals, as they had sworn “ to love what he loved, and shun what he shunned,” there can be little doubt that they generally acquiesced in his wishes. In the preambles to the Saxon laws the king sometimes assumes a lofty strain. He decrees : the witan give their advice. He denominates himself the sovereign : they are *his* bishops, *his* caldormen, *his* thanes. But on other occasions this style of royalty disappears, and the legislative enactments are attributed to the witan in conjunction with the king<sup>69</sup>. The same diversity appears in treaties concluded with foreign powers. Some bear only the name of the king : in others the witan are introduced as sanctioning the instrument by their concurrence<sup>70</sup>. In their judicial capacity they compromised or decided civil controversies among themselves : summoned before them state criminals of great power and connexions ; and usually pronounced the sentence of forfeiture and outlawry against those whom they found guilty<sup>71</sup>. As legislators they undertook to provide for the defence of the realm, the prevention and punishment of crimes, and the due administration of justice<sup>72</sup>.

In all these tribunals the judges were the free tenants, owing suit to the court, and afterwards called its peers. But the real authority seems to have resided in the president, and the principal of his assessors, whose opinion was generally echoed and applauded by the rest of the members<sup>73</sup>. Their proceedings were simplified and facilitated by a custom, which has already

Judicial proceedings.

<sup>68</sup> Chron. Sax. 145.

<sup>69</sup> Leg. 14. 34. 48. 73. 102. 113.

<sup>70</sup> Leg. 47. 51. 104. Chron. Sax. 132.

<sup>71</sup> Chron. Sax. 164. 194.

<sup>72</sup> Ingulf, 10. 16. Chron. Sax. 126. 130. 165.

<sup>73</sup> Qui liberas in eis terras habent, per quos debent causæ singulorum alterna prosecutione

CHAP.  
VII.In civil ac-  
tions.

been mentioned. In all cases in which property, whether real or personal, was concerned; if a man claimed by gift or purchase; if stolen goods were found in his possession, or he had forcibly entered on the lands of others; he was bound to produce the testimony of the court and witnesses, before whom the transaction, on which he grounded his own right, must, if it had been lawful, have taken place. On this testimony in civil actions the judges frequently decided; but if either party advanced assertions of such a nature that they could not be proved by evidence, he was put on his oath, and was ordered to bring forward certain freeholders, his neighbours, acquainted with his character and concerns, who should swear that, in their consciences, they believed his assertion to be true. The number of these was in many cases fixed by the law, in others left to the discretion of the court. Sometimes four or five sufficed: sometimes forty or fifty were required: occasionally men came forward spontaneously, and offered themselves by hundreds to swear in behalf of a favoured, or much injured individual<sup>74</sup>. But it should be observed that the value of each oath was estimated by the rank and opulence of the individual. The oath of a king's thane was equal to the oaths of six ceorls, the oath of an ealdorman to those of six thanes. The king and the archbishop,

tractari. *Leg. Sax.* 248. If the judges differ in opinion, the decision is in one law left with the majority, in another with those of highest rank. *Si in judicio inter pares oritur dissensio, vincat sententia plurimorum.* *Ibid.* 237.—*Vincat sententia meliorum.* *Ibid.* 248. On this subject I do not hesitate to appeal to the treatise called "*Leges Henrici primi.*" Though compiled under the Normans, it gives in reality an account of the Saxon jurisprudence. This is asserted by the author. *De his omnibus pleniorum suggerunt ventura (the sequel) notitiam, sicut Edvardi beatissimi principis extitisse temporibus certis*

*indiciis et fida relatione cognovimus, p. 241.* The same appears also from the numerous passages which are evidently translations from Saxon laws still extant: whence it is fair to conclude that much of the rest has been drawn from other documents which have perished in the long lapse of seven hundred years.

<sup>74</sup> Thus a thousand persons offered to swear in behalf of the thane Wolfnoth. *Hist. Elien.* 479. It was called by the Saxons the lada, by later writers wager of law. How far it is allowed in modern times may be seen in *Blackstone*, i. ii. c. 22. sect. vi.



as their word was deemed sacred, were exempted from the obligation of swearing: and the same indulgence was sometimes extended to the higher orders of the nobility<sup>75</sup>. If the matter still remained doubtful, a jury was selected of twelve or of six-and-thirty free tenants, who left the court, deliberated among themselves, and returned a verdict, which decided the question<sup>76</sup>. I will mention an instance in which recourse was had to each mode of proceeding, and judgment was given on grounds, that to us must appear irregular and unsatisfactory. In a court held at Wendlebury, in which the ealdorman Ailwin, and the sheriff Edric presided, an action was brought against the monks of Ramsey, by Alfnoth, for the purpose of recovering the possession of two hides at Stapleford. After much litigation the decision was left to a jury of thirty-six thanes, who were chosen equally by the plaintiff and the defendants. While they were out of court deliberating on their verdict, Alfnoth publicly challenged the monks to prove their claim by oath. The challenge was accepted; but when they were prepared to swear, the ealdorman arose, observed that he was the patron of the abbey, and offered himself to take the oath in its favour. This decided the cause. The court, through respect for its president, was satisfied with his word, adjudged the two hides to the monks, and condemned Alfnoth in the forfeiture of his lands and chattels. By the interest of his friends the latter part of the judgment was revoked, on condition that he would never more disturb the abbey in the possession of Stapleford<sup>77</sup>.

In criminal prosecutions the proceedings, though grounded In criminal prosecutions.

<sup>75</sup> Leg. Sax. ii. 72. 262. Much ridicule has been thrown on this custom: but where inquiry was excluded, it was perhaps wise to attach a greater value to the oaths of persons, who by their rank and opulence were the

furthest removed from the ordinary temptations to perjury.

<sup>76</sup> Hist. Ram. 415, 416. Regist. Roff. 32.

<sup>77</sup> Hist. Ram. *ibid*.

CHAP.  
VII.Purgation by  
oath.

on the same principles, were in many respects different. It was ordered by law, that as soon as the hundred-mote was assembled (the same probably held with respect to other similar tribunals) the reeve with the twelve oldest thanes should go out to inquire into all offences committed within the jurisdiction of the court, and should be sworn "not to foresay (present) any "one who was innocent, nor to conceal any one who was "guilty"<sup>78</sup>." On their presentment the accused was frequently condemned; if he pleaded not guilty, and the plea were admitted, there remained two ways by which he might prove his innocence: the purgation of lada or swearing, and the ordeal or judgment of God. In cases in which the law had not determined, he was at liberty to choose either: but to check the presumption of the guilty, it was provided that if the trial failed, the criminal should be subjected to a more rigorous punishment. In the purgation by oath, he began by calling on God to witness that he was innocent both in word and work of the crime laid to his charge. He then produced his compurgators, who swore that "they believed his oath to be upright and "clean"<sup>79</sup>." It was required that these compurgators or jurors should be his neighbours, or resident within the jurisdiction of the court, freeholders who had never been arraigned for theft, nor ever convicted of perjury, and who were now acknowledged for "true men" by all present. According to the custom of the district, and the magnitude of the offence, their number

<sup>78</sup> Leg. Sax. 117. This is evidently the origin of our grand juries. Mr. Reeves in his valuable history of the English law, says, that the earliest mention of a trial by jury, that bears a near resemblance to that which this proceeding became in after times, is in the constitution of Clarendon under Henry II., which orders that if nobody appears to accuse an offender before the archdeacon, the sheriff,

at the request of the bishop, faciet jurare duodecim legales homines de vicineto, seu de villa, quod inde veritatem secundum conscientiam suam manifestabunt, p. 87. This appears to me to be no more than an inquest resembling that of the Saxon times mentioned in the preceding law of Ethelred.

<sup>79</sup> The oaths are in Wilkins, Leg. Sax. 63, 64.

varied from four to seventy-two. They were sometimes appointed by the judges, sometimes drawn by lot, often brought into the court by the party himself, an indulgence which enabled him to rest his fate on the decision of his friends and dependents, whom he might already have prejudiced in his favour. In Wessex he was permitted to choose thirty jurors, of whom fifteen were rejected by the judges: in East-Anglia and Northumbria he produced forty-eight, out of whom twenty-four were appointed by ballot<sup>80</sup>. If they corroborated his oath by their own in the form established by law, his innocence was acknowledged.

If, on the contrary, recourse was had to the ordeal, pledges were given for the trial, and the time was fixed by the court. As the decision was now left to the Almighty, three days were spent by the accused in fasting and prayer. On the third he was adjured by the priest not to go to the ordeal, if he were conscious of guilt; he was then communicated with these words: "may this body and blood of Christ be to thee a proof of innocence this day:" when he again swore that he was guiltless of the crime of which he had been accused. The ordeals, which were most in use, were those by hot water and fire. For the former a fire was kindled under a caldron in a remote part of the church. At a certain depth below the surface, which was augmented in proportion to the enormity of the crime, was placed a stone or piece of iron of a certain weight. Strangers were excluded: the accuser and the accused, each attended by twelve friends, proceeded to the spot; and the two parties were ranged in two lines opposite each other. After the litanies had been recited, a person was deputed from each line to examine the

Purgation by  
ordeal.

<sup>80</sup> Leg. Sax. 8. 12. 27. 47. 125. 262. 264. covered our petit juries, in their rudest state.  
In these conjurators may, I think, be dis-



CHAP.  
VII.

caldron, and if they agreed that the water boiled, and the stone was placed at the proper depth, the accused advanced, plunged in his arm, and took out the weight. The priest immediately wrapped a clean linen cloth round the part which was scalded, fixed on it the seal of the church, and opened it again on the third day. If the arm were perfectly healed, the accused was pronounced innocent: if not, he suffered the punishment of his offence. In the ordeal by fire, the same precautions were employed in respect of the number and position of the attendants. Near the fire a space was measured equal to nine of the prisoner's feet, and divided by lines into three equal parts. By the first stood a small stone pillar. At the beginning of the mass a bar of iron of the weight of one or three pounds, according to the nature of the offence, was laid on the fire; at the last collect it was taken off, and placed on the pillar. The prisoner immediately grasped it in his hand, made three steps on the lines previously traced on the floor, and threw it down. The treatment of the burn, and the indications of guilt or innocence, were the same as those in the ordeal by hot water<sup>61</sup>.

Obstacles to  
the admini-  
stration of  
justice.

Before I dismiss this subject, I may observe that the national manners opposed many obstacles to the impartial administration of justice. The institution of lord and vassal secured to the litigants both abettors and protectors: and the custom of making presents on all occasions, polluted the purity of every tribunal. In criminal prosecutions conviction was generally followed

<sup>61</sup> Leg. Sax. 26, 27. 53. 61. 131. It is evident from our ancient writers, that many persons established their innocence by these trials, whence it has been inferred that the clergy were in possession of a secret, by which they either prevented, or rapidly cured, the burn. Yet it is difficult to conceive that such a secret, so widely diffused, and so frequently

applied, could have escaped the knowledge of judges and legislators, anxious to prevent the commission of crime; or if it did not, to account for the conduct of such persons in continuing for several centuries to enforce the trial by ordeal for the discovery of guilt, while they knew that the whole process was an imposture.

by pecuniary punishments: of which a part, if not the whole, was the perquisite of the principal judge, or of the lord of the court. In civil causes the influence of money was employed to retard or accelerate the proceedings, to defeat the upright, or support the iniquitous, claimant. Bribery, under the disguise of presents, found its way to the prince on the throne, as well as the reeve in his court. When Athelstan the priest was prosecuted for theft and sacrilege by his bishop, he sold an estate at a nominal price to the ealdorman Wulstan, on condition that he would prevent the trial: and when Alfwin, abbot of Ramsey, despaired of protecting the interests of his monastery against the superior influence of Alfric, he gave twenty marks of gold to king Edward, five to queen Editha, for the interposition of the royal authority in his favour<sup>82</sup>. We repeatedly meet with complaints of the expense and uncertainty of judicial proceedings; and many individuals deemed it more prudent to sit down in silence under their present losses, than to injure themselves still more deeply by purchasing the protection of their friends and judges<sup>83</sup>.

The crimes to which the Anglo-Saxons were principally addicted, were homicide and theft. Among men of violent passions, often intoxicated, always armed, quarrels, riots, and murders were inevitable: and as long as the laws refused to exact blood for blood, the right of inflicting punishment naturally devolved upon the family of the slain. Hence arose those deadly, and hereditary feuds, which for so many centuries disgraced the legislation, and disturbed the tranquillity, of the European nations. One murder provoked another: the duty of revenge was transmitted as a sacred legacy to posterity: and the chieftains of the same people often regarded each other as more

Crimes of the  
Anglo-Saxons.

Homicide.

<sup>82</sup> Hist. Ram. 457. Hist. Elien. 482.<sup>83</sup> Ibid. 414. 457. 458.

CHAP.  
VII.

Punished by  
fine.

Weres.

deadly enemies than the very invaders against whom they were arrayed. Of this the reader has already seen a memorable instance in the alternate murders, which for several generations harassed two of the most powerful families in Northumberland. To an evil so deeply felt, and so loudly lamented, the legislature wanted courage to apply any other remedy than that of pecuniary compensation: the usual expedient of the savage, who has committed homicide, and is reduced to the necessity either of constantly trembling for his own life, or of purchasing with presents the forbearance of his adversary. This inadequate species of atonement had been discovered by Tacitus among the ancient Germans<sup>84</sup>: it was matured into a complete but singular system by our Anglo-Saxon ancestors. Every freeman was numbered in one of the three classes termed *twyhind*, *syxhind*, and *twelfhind*. The first comprised the *ceorls*, the third the royal thanes: under the second were numbered the intermediate orders of society. The *were* of these classes, the legal value of their lives, and legal compensation for their murder, advanced in proportion from two to six, and from six to twelve hundred shillings. But that of an ealdorman was twice, of an *etheling* three times, of a king six times the *were* of a royal thane<sup>85</sup>. To explain the manner in which the *were* was demanded and paid, let us suppose that a thane of the *twelfhind* class had been murdered. The homicide might, if he pleased, openly brave the resentment of those whose duty it was to revenge the murder: or he might seek to fortify himself against their attempts

<sup>84</sup> *Suscipere tam inimicitias seu patris, seu propinqui, quam amicitias necesse est. - Luitur etiam homicidium certo armentorum ac pecorum numero, recipitque satisfactionem universa domus. Tac. Germ. xxi.*

<sup>85</sup> *Leg. 53. 61. 71.* On account of the progressive rise of the *were*, all above the rank

of *ceorls* were called *dear-born*. *Leg. 20.* The *were* was the great privilege of the higher classes. For every offence against them was punished in proportion to their *were*, and in consequence their persons and properties were better secured than those of their inferiors. *Leg. 25. 37. 39, 40.*



within the walls of his own house ; or he might flee for protection to one of the asylums appointed by the laws. In none of these cases were his enemies permitted to proceed immediately to the work of vengeance. The object of the legislature was to gain time, that the passions might cool, and the parties be reconciled. If he were found in the open air, it was unlawful to put him to death, unless he obstinately refused to surrender. If he shut himself up in his house, it might indeed be surrounded to prevent his escape, but a week must be suffered to elapse before any hostile attempt could be made. If he sought an asylum, the palace of a king, etheling, or archbishop, afforded him a respite of nine days, a consecrated church, and the house of an ealdorman, or bishop, a respite of seven days. Sometimes he preferred to fight, and much innocent blood was shed : for it was the duty of the vassal on such occasions to succour his lord, and of the lord to hasten with his retainers to the aid of his vassal. Sometimes he surrendered himself a captive into the hands of his enemies, who were compelled to keep him unhurt for the space of thirty days. If, during that interval, he could procure sureties for the payment of the *were*, he was set at liberty : otherwise his person and his life were abandoned to the mercy of his captors<sup>86</sup>. When the *were* was offered, the following was the proceeding according to law. Twelve sureties, of whom eight were paternal and four maternal relatives of the murderer, gave bond for the faithful payment of the mulct : and immediately both parties swore on their arms “ to keep the king’s peace ” towards each other. After the lapse of three weeks, one hundred and twenty shillings, the *healsfang*, or price of liberation from captivity, were divided among the father, the sons, and the

Mode of pay-  
ment.

<sup>86</sup> Leg. 43, 44. 110.

CHAP.  
VII.

brothers of the slain. Three weeks later an equal sum, under the name of *manbote*, was paid to the lord, as a compensation for the loss of his vassal<sup>87</sup>. After another interval of three weeks the *fight-wite*, or penalty for fighting, which differed in its amount according to circumstances, was received by the king, or the lord within whose jurisdiction the murder had been committed. Another delay of twenty-one days was allowed before the first general payment of the *were* to all the relations of the deceased: and then terms were amicably adjusted for the liquidation of the remainder by instalments in money or cattle. When the atonement was completed, the families were reconciled, and all remembrance of the offence was supposed to be obliterated<sup>88</sup>.

## Theft and robbery.

Robbery was another species of crime, the constant repetition of which disturbed the peace of society, and bade defiance to the wisdom and severity of the legislature. It prevailed among every order of men. We meet with it in the clergy as well as the laity; among thanes no less than ceorls. These depredators frequently associated in bands. Within the number of seven they were termed in law *thcofas*: above that number but below thirty-six they formed a *hlöthe*: if they were still more numerous, they were denominated an army: and to each of these different designations a different punishment was assigned<sup>89</sup>. In an open and thinly inhabited country it was easy for plunderers of this description to drive away by stealth, or carry off by force, the cattle from distant farms. To impede the disposal of property which had been stolen in this manner, the legislature encumbered every legal sale with a multiplicity of oaths and forms: and to promote its discovery, offered to the owner every facility, which might enable him to pursue the offenders through the neighbour-

<sup>87</sup> The *manbote* for one of the *twyhind* class was thirty, of the *sixkind*, eighty shillings. Leg. 25.

<sup>88</sup> Leg. 53, 54, 75, 269, 270.

<sup>89</sup> Leg. 17.

ing counties<sup>90</sup>. But the frequency proves the inutility of these enactments: and from the increasing severity of the punishment we may infer that the evil was stubborn and unconquerable. At first the thief was condemned to make threefold reparation: afterwards to pay the amount of his were, or suffer banishment or death: then his property was confiscated to the crown, and his life was placed at the mercy of the king: lastly he was ordered to be put to death without the possibility of pardon, and one-third of his property was to be given to the king, a second to the gild or tything from which he had stolen, and the remainder to his widow and children<sup>91</sup>. This severity was however mitigated by Athelstan; and the life of the thief was spared, if he were under the age of fifteen, or had stolen to a less amount than the value of a shilling<sup>92</sup>. Canute abolished the punishment of death altogether. His object was to chastise the offender, but at the same time to allow him time to repent. On the first conviction the thief was condemned to make double reparation to the man whom he had injured, to pay his were to the king, and to find sureties for his future behaviour. A repetition of the crime subjected him to the loss of a hand, or a foot, or of both. If he reverted again to his former practices, the incorrigible offender was either scalped, or suffered the loss of his eyes, nose, ears, and upper lip. So strangely blended were lenity and cruelty in the judicial punishments of our ancestors<sup>93</sup>.

Their punishment.

The several classes, whose manners have been hitherto described, constituted the Anglo-Saxon nation. They alone were possessed of liberty, or power, or property. They formed, however, but a small part of the population, of which, perhaps, not less than two-thirds existed in a state of slavery<sup>94</sup>. That

Number of slaves.

<sup>90</sup> Leg. 18. 41. 48. 58. 66. 69. 80, 81.

<sup>93</sup> Leg. 138.

<sup>91</sup> Leg. 2. 7. 12. 17. 65.

<sup>94</sup> The number of freemen in the county of Kent, according to the enumeration in Domes-

<sup>92</sup> Leg. 70.



CHAP.  
VII.

all the first adventurers were freemen, there can be little doubt: but in the course of their conquests it is probable that they found, it is certain that they made, a great number of slaves. The posterity of these men inherited the lot of their fathers: and their number was continually increased by the free-born Saxons, who had been reduced to the same condition by debt, or had been made captives in war, or had been deprived of liberty in punishment of their crimes, or had spontaneously surrendered it to escape the horrors of want<sup>95</sup>. The degradation and enslavement of a freeman were performed before a competent number of witnesses. The unhappy man laid on the ground his sword and his lance, the symbols of the free, took up the bill and the goad, the implements of slavery, and falling on his knees, placed his head in token of submission under the hands of his master<sup>96</sup>.

Their different  
classes.

All slaves were not, however, numbered in the same class. In the more ancient laws we find the *esne* distinguished from the *theow*; and read of female slaves of the first, the second, and the third rank. In later enactments we meet with *bordars*, *cocksets*, *pardings*, and other barbarous denominations, of which, were it easy, it would be useless to investigate the meaning. The most numerous class consisted of those, who lived on the land of their lord, near to his mansion, called in Saxon *his tune*, in Latin *his villa*. From the latter word they were by the Normans denominated *villeins*, while the collection of cottages in which they dwelt, acquired the name of *village*. Their respective services were originally allotted to them according to

day, amounted to 2,424; of *villeins* to 6,837; of *bordars* to 3,512. The *burghers* were 1,991: and of these the greater part were only a privileged kind of slaves. Taking these only at 1000, the number of freemen

to that of slaves will be 4,415 to 11,319. To these ought to be added their wives and families.

<sup>95</sup> Leg. 15, 16. 22.

<sup>96</sup> Leg. 291.

the pleasure of their proprietor. Some tilled his lands, others exercised for him the trades to which they had been educated. In return they received certain portions of land with other perquisites, for the support of themselves and their families. But all were alike deprived of the privileges of freemen. They were forbidden to carry arms; they were subjected to ignominious punishments; they might be branded and whipt according to law<sup>97</sup>. Their persons, families, and goods of every description, were the property of their lord. He could dispose of them as he pleased, either by gift or sale: he could annex them to the soil or remove them from it: he could transfer them with it to a new proprietor; or leave them by will to his heirs. Out of the hundreds of instances preserved by our ancient writers, one may be sufficient. In the charter by which Harold of Buckenhale gives his manor of Spalding to the abbey of Croyland, he enumerates among its appendages Colgrin his bailiff, Harding his smith, Lefstan his carpenter, Elstan his fisherman, Osmund his miller, and nine others, who probably were husbandmen; and these with their wives and children, their goods and chattels, and the cottages in which they live, he transfers in perpetual possession to the abbey<sup>98</sup>.

It should, however, be observed, that the hardships of their condition were considerably mitigated by the influence of re-

<sup>97</sup> Leg. 15. 53. 103. It appears that slaves, no less than freemen, were sureties for the behaviour of each other. In the reign of Athelstan, when the punishment of theft was the most severe, a law was made respecting the offences committed by slaves against others than their masters. A man thief was ordered to be stoned to death by twenty of his fellows, each of whom was punished with three whippings, if he failed three to hit the culprit. A woman thief was burnt by eighty women

slaves, each of whom brought three billets of wood to the execution. If she failed, she was likewise subjected to the punishment of three whippings. After the death of the offender, each slave paid three pennies as a fine, to the proprietor. Leg. Athel. apud Brompt. 849.

<sup>98</sup> Ingulf, 86. John bought Gunilda from Gada for half a pound of silver, and gave her to the church of St. Peter. Lye, app. v. Wulfric bought Elfigiha for half a pound. Egilsig bought Wynric for an yre of gold. Ib

CHAP.  
VII.

lipien. The bishop was appointed the protector of the slaves within his diocese, and his authority was employed in shielding them from oppression. Their lords were frequently admonished that slave and freeman were of equal value in the eyes of the Almighty: that both had been redeemed at the same price; and that the master would be judged with the same rigour as he had exercised towards his dependants<sup>99</sup>. In general the services of the slave were fixed and certain: if he performed them faithfully, he was allowed to retain his savings, and many of those who cultivated portions of land, or had received permission to exercise their trades in the burghs, acquired a comparative degree of opulence, which enabled them to purchase their liberty from the kindness or the avarice of their lords<sup>100</sup>. Even the laws suppose some kind of property in the slave, since they allow him to commute the legal punishment of whipping for a fine of six shillings, and fix the relief of a villein on a farm at the price of his best beast<sup>101</sup>.

**Manumission.** The prospect of obtaining their freedom was a powerful stimulus to their industry and good behaviour. Besides those who were able to purchase it themselves, many obtained it from the bounty of benefactors<sup>102</sup>. Some were emancipated by the justice and gratitude of their masters: others owed their freedom to motives of religion<sup>103</sup>. When the celebrated Wilfrid had received from Edelwalch, king of Sussex, the donation of the isle of Selsey, with two hundred and fifty male and female slaves, the bishop instructed them in the christian faith, baptized them,

<sup>99</sup> Spelm. Con. 405.

<sup>100</sup> Thus "Elfy the red bought himself out for one pound." Lye, app. v. Brightmær purchased the freedom of himself, his wife Ælgiva, their children and grandchildren, for two pounds. Hicks, Diss. Epis. 9.

<sup>101</sup> Leg. ii. 224.

<sup>102</sup> Siwin bought Sydefleda into perpetual freedom for five shillings and some pence. Ægilmar bought Sethryth for three mancuses to be free after the death of himself and his wife. Lye, app. v.

<sup>103</sup> Hicks, Dissert. p. 12, 13



and immediately restored them to liberty<sup>104</sup>. Their manumission was an act of charity frequently inculcated by the preachers; and in most of the wills, which are still extant, we meet with directions for granting liberty to a certain number of slaves. But the commiseration of the charitable was more excited by the condition of the *wite theow* (those who had been reduced to slavery by a judicial sentence) than of such as had been born in that state, and had never tasted the blessings of liberty. By the bishops in the council of Calcuith it was agreed to free at their decease every slave of that description; and similar provisions are inserted in the wills of the lady Wynflæda, of Athelstan son of king Ethelred, and Ælfric archbishop of Canterbury<sup>105</sup>. Their manumission, to be legal, was to be performed in public, in the market, in the court of the hundred, or in the church at the foot of the principal altar. The lord taking the hand of the slave offered it to the bailiff, sheriff, or clergyman, gave him a sword and a lance, and told him that the ways were open, and that he was at liberty to go wheresoever he pleased<sup>106</sup>.

Before I conclude this subject, it is proper to add that the sale and purchase of slaves publicly prevailed during the whole of the Anglo-Saxon period. These unhappy men were sold like cattle in the market: and there is reason to believe that a slave was usually estimated at four times the price of an ox<sup>107</sup>. To the importation of foreign slaves no impediment had ever been opposed: the export of native slaves was forbidden under severe penalties<sup>108</sup>. But habit and the pursuit of gain had taught the Northumbrians to bid defiance to all the efforts of the legis-

Trade in  
slaves.

<sup>104</sup> Bed. iv. 13.

<sup>105</sup> Wilk. Con. 171. Mores, p. 63. Lye, app. v. Hicks, præf. xxii. See also Hist. Ram. 407.

<sup>106</sup> Leg. ii. 229. 270.

<sup>107</sup> The toll in the market of Lewes was one penny for the sale of an ox, four pennies for that of a slave. Domesday.

<sup>108</sup> Leg. 17. 93. 107. 134.

CHAP.  
VII.

lature. Like the savages of Africa, they are said to have carried off, not only their own countrymen, but even their friends and relatives; and to have sold them as slaves in the ports of the continent<sup>109</sup>. The men of Bristol were the last to abandon this nefarious traffic. Their agents travelled into every part of the country: they were instructed to give the highest price for females in a state of pregnancy: and the slave ships regularly sailed from that port to Ireland, where they were secure of a ready and profitable market. Their obstinacy yielded, however, not to the severity of the magistrates, but to the zeal of Wulstan, bishop of Worcester. That prelate visited Bristol several years successively: resided for months together in the neighbourhood: and preached on every Sunday against the barbarity and irreligion of the dealers in slaves. At last the merchants were convinced by his reasons, and in their gild solemnly bound themselves to renounce the trade. One of the members was soon after tempted to violate his engagement. His perfidy was punished with the loss of his eyes<sup>110</sup>.

## Burghers.

We have still to consider a class of men, partly free, and partly slaves, the inhabitants of the cities, burghs, and ports, which were the property sometimes of one, sometimes of several opulent individuals. The burghers were in general tradesmen and mechanics, divided into two classes: the one of men, who held their houses by a fixed rent, and were at liberty to quit them when they pleased: the other of villeins, or the descendants of villeins, who had been permitted to migrate from the country for the benefit of trade, and lived in houses, which were considered as portions of the manors to which the original settlers had belonged. These burghers were still annexed to the soil,

<sup>109</sup> Malms. 8.<sup>110</sup> Ang. Sac. ii. 258.

and transferable with it: and were still compelled to do service in like manner with their brethren in the country. But all possessed superior advantages. They were better protected from the attack of an enemy: they enjoyed the benefit of a market for the sale of their wares. They formed guilds, or corporations, which guaranteed the good conduct of their members, and were under the government of the reeve of the chief lord. But the privileges and burthens, the customs and services of the inhabitants of different burghs, and frequently of those in the same burgh, were so various, complex, and contradictory, that it is impossible to arrange them under distinct heads, or to describe them with accuracy. They originated in the wants, the caprice, the favour of the several proprietors; and those who desire a more ample gratification of their curiosity on this subject must have recourse to the authentic pages of Domesday<sup>111</sup>.

<sup>111</sup> I will add a few instances. Several burghs possessed a common pasture for the use of the inhabitants: others lands and houses which paid rent to the guild.—In Lincoln were 12 citizens, called lawmen, who possessed the jurisdiction of Sac and Soc in particular districts.—Oxford originally belonged to the king, and the earl Algar. The burgesses farmed the customs, fines, tolls, &c. of them both, by the payment of a yearly rent of

£20. and six casks of honey to the king, and of £10. to the earl, besides the profits arising from his mill. They sent 20 men to the army, or paid £20. Those of Dover were free from all suit, service, and fines to king's court, and from toll throughout the realm: and in return furnished him once every year with 20 ships, each manned with 21 mariners, to serve during a fortnight. Vide Domesday passim, or Gale, iii. 759—778.

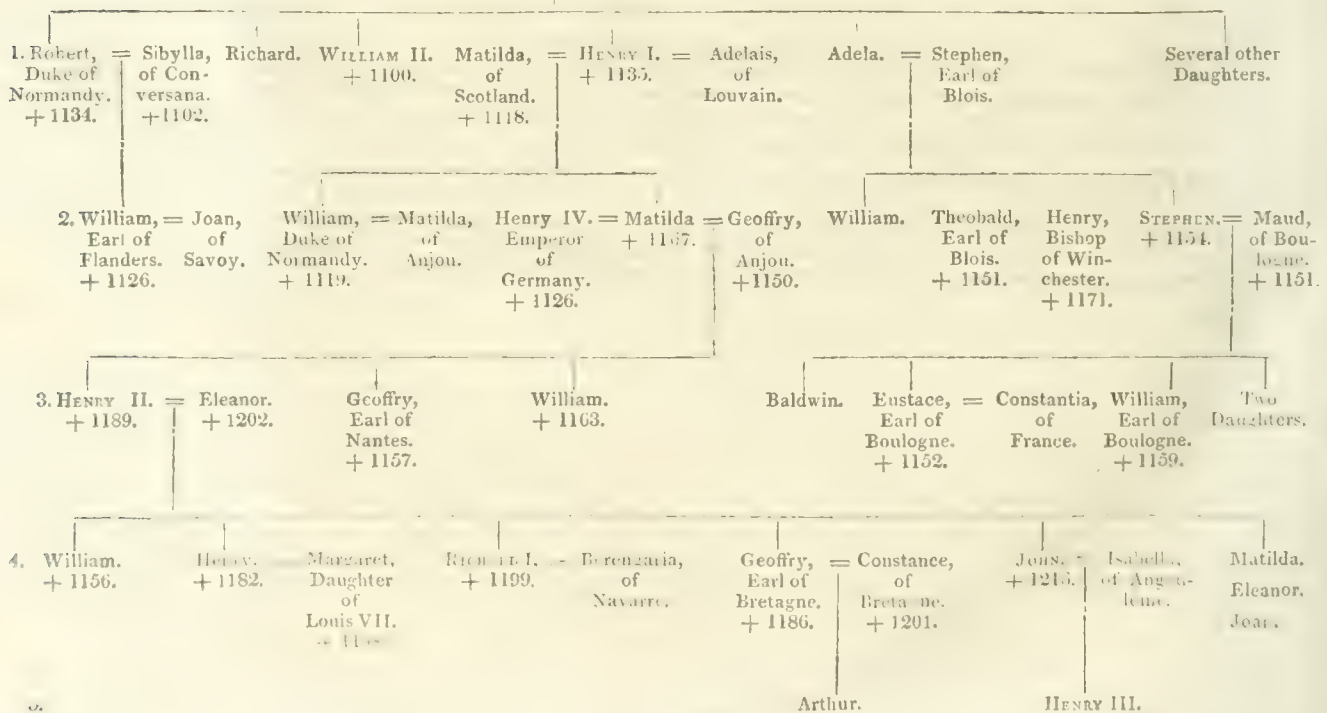


WILLIAM I.

## CONTEMPORARY PRINCES.

EMPEROR OF GERMANY.	KING OF SCOTLAND.	KING OF FRANCE.	KINGS OF SPAIN.	POPES.
HENRY IV.	MALCOLM III.	PHILIP I.	SANCHO II. died in 1073.	ALEXANDER II. died in 1073.
			ALPHONSO VI.	GREGORY VII. . . . . 1085.
				VICTOR III. . . . . 1087.

WILLIAM, Duke of Normandy	=====	Matilda, Daughter of Baldwin V. Earl of Flanders.
+ 1087.		+ 1083.



## CHAP. VIII.

## WILLIAM I.

SURNAMED THE CONQUEROR.

WILLIAM IS CROWNED—RETURNS TO NORMANDY—INSURRECTIONS—  
 TOTAL SUBJUGATION OF THE KINGDOM—DEPRESSION OF THE  
 NATIVES—KNIGHTS FEES—INCIDENTS OF MILITARY TENURES—  
 INNOVATIONS IN JUDICIAL PROCEEDINGS—DOMESDAY—KING'S  
 REVENUE—INSURRECTION OF NORMAN BARONS—REBELLION OF  
 ROBERT, THE KING'S SON—WAR WITH FRANCE—WILLIAM'S  
 DEATH—AND CHARACTER.

AMONG the most formidable of the sea-kings in the beginning of the tenth century was Rollo, who, from his activity, had acquired the surname of “the ganger.” The north of France was the theatre of his exploits: and the maritime provinces which had already been ravaged by Hastings, were laid desolate by the repeated invasions of this restless barbarian. But the man, before whom so many armies had fled, was subdued by the zeal, or the eloquence of an ecclesiastic. In 912, Franco,

CHAP.  
VIII.

---

Settlement of  
the Normans  
in Gaul.

CHAP.  
VIII.

---

the archbishop of Rouen, persuaded him to embrace the faith of the gospel, and to acknowledge himself the vassal of the French crown. As the price of his acquiescence he received the hand of Gisle, the daughter of Charles the simple, and with her that extensive tract of land, which is bounded by the ocean, the river Epte, and the two provinces of Maine and Bretagne. From its new settlers this territory acquired the appellation of Normandy, or the land of the Northmen.

Rollo left his dominions to his posterity, a race of able and fortunate princes, who assumed indifferently the titles of earl, or marquess, or duke. The necessity of cultivating a desert introduced habits of industry and subordination among the colonists. Their numbers were repeatedly multiplied by the accession of new adventurers ; and that spirit of enterprise and contempt of danger which had distinguished their fathers in the pursuit of plunder, soon enabled them to reach, and even to outstrip their neighbours in the career of civilization. For their rapid improvement they owed much to the wisdom and justice of their princes: still more to the influence of religion, which softened the ferocity of their manners, impelled them to cultivate the useful and ornamental arts, and opened to their curiosity the stores of ancient literature. Within less than one hundred and fifty years from the baptism of Rollo, the Normans were ranked among the most polished, as well as the most warlike, nations of Europe.

The fifth in succession from Rollo was Robert II., who contributed to restore to his throne Henry, king of France, and received from the gratitude of that monarch the Vexin as an addition to his patrimonial dominions. In the eighth year of his government curiosity or devotion induced him to undertake



a pilgrimage to the holy land. His reputation had gone before him. In every country he was received with respect: at Constantinople the Grecian emperor paid him distinguished honours: on his approach to Jerusalem the gates of the city were gratuitously thrown open by the command of the emir. But his constitution sank under the fatigues of the journey, and the heat of the climate. He died on his return at Nice in Bythinia.

To Robert, in the year 1027, Herleva, the daughter of an officer of his household, had brought an illegitimate son, William, afterwards duke of Normandy, and king of England. This child strongly interested his affections; and before his departure, in an assembly of the barons at Fescamp, he had prevailed on them to acknowledgè the young prince, who was then in his eighth year, as heir apparent to the duchy. The earl Gilbert was appointed his guardian; and the king of France solemnly engaged to protect the rights of his orphan vassal. But the guardian was slain: the interests of William were neglected: and his dominions, during the time of his minority, exhibit one continued scene of anarchy and bloodshed, originating in the lawless violence, and conflicting rapacity of the barons. At the age of nineteen William first took the field, to support his claim to the succession against the legitimate descendants of Richard II. the father of Robert: and with the aid of Henry defeated, in the valley of Dunes, Guy of Burgundy, his most formidable competitor. But during the campaign the French king learned to fear the growing abilities of his pupil. He turned his arms against the young prince, joined his forces to those of William of Arques, a second pretender to the dukedom, and afterwards on two occasions marched a numerous army into Normandy to the assistance of different insurgents. But the activity and bravery of William baffled all the

Birth of William.  
1027.

CHAP.  
VIII.

William  
marches to  
Dover.  
1066.

efforts, and at last extorted the respect, of his adversaries : his alliance was courted by the neighbouring princes : Baldwin of Flanders gave him his daughter Matilda in marriage : and when he undertook the invasion of England, he was universally considered as one of the boldest knights, and most enterprising sovereigns, in christendom<sup>1</sup>.

The progress of that invasion, from its origin to the battle of Senlac, has been related in the preceding chapter. From Senlac William returned to Hastings. He had fondly persuaded himself that the campaign was terminated ; and that the natives, disheartened by the fall of their king, and the defeat of their army, would hasten to offer him the crown<sup>2</sup>. A few days dissipated the illusion. London was put in a state of defence by the industry of the citizens ; the inhabitants of Romney repulsed a division of the Norman fleet, which attempted to enter the harbour : and a numerous force, which had assembled at Dover, threatened to act on the rear of the invaders, if they proceeded towards the capital. The first object of William was to disperse the latter ; and in his march he severely chastised the town of Romney. The force at Dover melted away at his approach ; and the fears of the garrison induced them to offer him the keys of the place<sup>3</sup>.

And to London.

This acquisition was an invaluable advantage to the Normans. The dysentery prevailed to an alarming degree in the army ; and the castle of Dover, which at that time was deemed impregnable, offered a secure receptacle for the multitude of the sick. Eight days were employed in adding to its means of defence, and

<sup>1</sup> Guil. Pict. 40 — 104. Ed. Maseres.

<sup>2</sup> Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1066.

<sup>3</sup> Pict. 137, 138. He thus describes the castle of Dover. Situm est id castellum in rupe mari contigua, quæ naturaliter acuta, un-

dique ad hoc ferramentis elaborate incisa, in speciem muri directissima altitudine, quantum sagittæ jactus permetiri potest, consurgit, quæ in latere unda marina alluitur.

in repairing the damages caused by an undisciplined soldiery, who, in defiance of their leader, had set fire to the houses, that during the confusion they might plunder the inhabitants. At length, having supplied his losses by reinforcements from Normandy, the conqueror commenced his march in the direction of London. By some writers we are gravely told, that during his progress, he saw himself gradually enveloped by what bore the appearance of a moving forest: that on a sudden the branches, which had been taken for trees, fell to the ground, and in their fall disclosed a host of archers with their bows ready bent, and their arrows directed against the invaders: that Stigand, archbishop of Canterbury, and Egelnoth, abbot of St. Augustines, advancing from the crowd, demanded for the men of Kent the confirmation of their ancient laws and immunities, and that the demand was readily granted by the fears of the astonished Norman<sup>4</sup>. This story is the fiction of later ages, and was unknown to the more ancient writers, from whom we learn that, on his departure from Dover, William was met by the inhabitants of Kent with offers of submission, and received from them hostages as a security for their obedience<sup>5</sup>.

The witan had assembled in London immediately after the death of Harold. The population of this capital was numerous and warlike; and the number of its defenders had been increased by the thanes of the neighbouring counties. By their unanimous choice, the etheling Edgar, the rightful claimant, was placed on the throne. But Edgar was young, and devoid of abilities; the first place in the council devolved on Stigand the metropolitan; and the direction of the military operations was committed to the two powerful earls, Edwin and Morcar. Their

Edgar appointed king.

<sup>4</sup> Thorn. 1786.

<sup>5</sup> Occurrunt ultro Cantuarii haud procul a Dovera, jurant fidelitatem, dant obsides.—

Pict. 138. He was with the army at the time.



CHAP.  
VIII.

---

first effort was unsuccessful; and the confidence of the citizens was relaxed by the feeble resistance which a numerous body of natives had opposed to an inferior force of five hundred Norman horse. William contented himself with burning the suburbs; he was unwilling or afraid to storm the walls; and resolved to punish his opponents by destroying their property in the open country. Leaving London, he spread his army over the counties of Surry, Sussex, Hampshire, and Berkshire. Every thing valuable was plundered by the soldiers; and what they could not carry away, was committed to the flames.

But submits  
to William.

In the meantime mistrust and disunion reigned among the advisers of Edgar. Every new misfortune was attributed to the incapacity or the treachery of the leaders. It was even whispered that Edwin and Morcar sought not so much the liberation of their country, as the transfer of the crown from Edgar to one of themselves. The two earls left the city; and their departure, instead of lessening, augmented the general consternation. The first who threw himself on the mercy of the conqueror was Stigand, who met William as he crossed the Thames at Wallingford, swore fealty to him as his sovereign, and was received with the flattering appellation of father and bishop. His defection was followed by that of others: and the determination of those who wavered, was accelerated by the rapidity with which the Norman pursued his plan. Buckinghamshire and part of the county of Hertford had been already laid waste, when a deputation arrived, consisting of Edgar, Edwin, and Morcar, on the part of the nobility, of the archbishop of York, and the bishops of Worcester and Hereford on that of the clergy, and of the principal citizens of London in the name of their fellows. At Berkhamstead they swore allegiance to the conqueror, gave hostages, and made him an offer of the crown.

He affected to pause: nor did he formally accept the proposal till the Norman barons had ratified it by their applause. He then appointed for his coronation the approaching festival of Christmas<sup>6</sup>.

The Normans, proud of their superior civilization, treated the natives as barbarians<sup>7</sup>. William placed no reliance on their oaths, and took every precaution against their hostility. But most he feared the inhabitants of London, a population brave, mutinous, and confident in its numbers. Before he would expose his person among them, he ordered the house, which he was to occupy, to be surrounded with military defences; and on the day of his coronation in Westminster abbey, stationed in the neighbourhood a numerous division of his army. As Stigand had been suspended, the ceremony was performed by Aldred, archbishop of York; and that prelate put the question to the English, the bishop of Constance to the Normans, whether they were willing that William should be their sovereign. Both nations expressed their assent with loud acclamations: and at the same moment, as if at a preconcerted signal, the troops in the precincts of the abbey set fire to the nearest houses, and began to plunder the city. The tumult within the church, was not exceeded by that without. The Normans pictured to themselves a general rising of the inhabitants: the natives imagined that they had been drawn together as victims destined for

Tumult at the  
king's coronation,  
Dec. 25.

<sup>6</sup> I am aware that this account is very different from that which is generally given, in which Stigand appears to act the part of a patriot, and the success of William is attributed to the influence of the bishops, unwilling to offend the pope. But for all this there is no other authority than the mere assertion of Malmsbury, that after the departure of Edwin and Morcar, the other nobles would have chosen Edgar, if the bishops had seconded

them. *Cæteri Edgarum eligerent, si episcopos assertatores haberent* (Malm. f. 57). The narrative in the text is founded on the testimony of Pictaviensis (p. 141), Orderic (p. 187), the *Chronicon Lambardi* (ad ann. 1066), Malmsbury (*De Pont.* i. f. 116), and the ancient writer quoted by Simeon (col. 195), Florence (p. 634), and Hoveden (f. 258).

<sup>7</sup> Pictaviensis terms them without ceremony *feri ac barbari*, p. 150—153.

CHAP.  
VIII.

---

slaughter. William, though he trembled for his life, refused to interrupt the ceremony. In a short time he was left with none but the prelates and clergy at the foot of the altar. The English, both men and women, had fled to provide for their own safety: and of the Normans some had hastened to extinguish the flames, the others to share in the plunder<sup>8</sup>. The service was completed with precipitation: and the conqueror took the usual oath of the Anglo-Saxon kings, with this addition, that he would govern as justly as the best of his predecessors<sup>9</sup>.

Its cause.

To William, who sought to reconcile the two nations, this unfortunate occurrence was a subject of deep regret. It inflamed all those jealousies and resentments which it was his aim to extinguish, and taught the natives to look upon their conquerors as perfidious and implacable enemies. To apologize for the misconduct of the Normans it was alleged, that the acclamations of loyalty in the church had been mistaken by the guard for shouts of insurrection. But in that case, it was asked, why did they not fly to the defence of the king? Why did they pretend to put down a rising in one quarter, by exciting a conflagration in another? There can be little doubt that the outrage was designed, and that it originated in the love of plunder. At Dover the Normans, though under the very eye of their leader, could not be restrained from pillage: at London the superior opulence of the citizens offered irresistible attractions to their rapacity. This suspicion is confirmed by the subsequent conduct of the king. He assembled his barons, and admonished them, that by oppression they would drive the natives to rebellion, and bring indelible disgrace on themselves and their country. For the rest of the army he published numerous

<sup>8</sup> Pict. p. 144, 145. Orderic, p. 189.

<sup>9</sup> Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1066. Flor. p. 634.



regulations. The frequenting of taverns was prohibited: the honour of the females was protected by the severest penalties: and proportionate punishments were affixed to every species of insult, rapine, and assault. Nor were these orders suffered to evaporate in impotent menaces; commissioners were appointed to carry them into effect<sup>10</sup>.

William had hitherto been called "the bastard"<sup>11</sup>: from this period he received the surname of "the conqueror:" a term, which in the language of the age did not necessarily involve the idea of subjugation, but was indifferently employed to designate a person who had *sought* and obtained his right. In this sense it coincided with the policy of the new king, who affected to owe his crown not to the power of his arms, but to the nomination of Edward, and the choice of the natives. He has been represented as of a temper reserved and morose, more inclined to acts of severity than of kindness: but if such were his natural disposition, he had the art to conceal, or the resolution to subdue it. All the first measures of his reign tended to allay the animosity, and to win the affections, of the English. No change was attempted in their laws or customs, but what the existing circumstances imperiously required. The citizens of London obtained a grant of new and valuable privileges: and the most decisive measures were employed to put down the bands of robbers, which began to infest the country. In the collection of the royal revenue the officers received orders to avoid all unauthorized exactions, and to exercise their duty with lenity and moderation. For the protection of trade the king's peace was granted to every traveller on the highway, and

His kind behaviour to the English.  
1967

<sup>10</sup> Pict. 149. He adds: *Etiam illa delicta, quæ fierent consensu impudicarum, infamiæ prohibendæ causa vetabantur.* Ibid.—*Orderric*, p. 195.

<sup>11</sup> It was not deemed a term of reproach. William gave it to himself in many of his letters. *Ego Willielmus cognomento bastardus.* See *Spelman, Archaiol.* 77.

CHAP.  
VIII.

to every merchant and his servants resorting to any port or market. Access to the royal presence was refused to no one. William listened graciously to the complaints of the people; heard their causes in person; and, though his decisions were directed by the principles of justice, they were tempered by the feelings of mercy. From London he retired to Barking, where his court was attended by crowds of English thanes. At their request he received their homage: and in return granted to all the confirmation, to several an augmentation, of their estates and honours<sup>12</sup>. But nothing was more grateful to the national feelings than the attention which he paid to the etheling Edgar. To console the young prince for the loss of that crown to which he was intitled by his birth, he admitted him into the number of his intimate friends, and bestowed on him an extensive property, not unfitting the last descendant of an ancient race of kings. From Barking he made a progress through the neighbouring counties. His route was distinguished by the numerous benefits, which he scattered around him: and his affability and condescension to the spectators proved how anxious he was to procure their favour and to merit their esteem<sup>13</sup>.

And rewards  
to his officers.

The constitution of the feudal armies was ill adapted to the preservation of distant conquests. The duration of their service was limited to a short period: and William was aware that, at the expiration of the term, his followers would expect to be discharged, and re-conveyed to their own country. It was, however, manifest that the obedience of the natives could be secured only by a strong military force. At the king's sollicita-

<sup>12</sup> *Pietaviensis* mentions by name Edgar, Edwin, Morcar, and Coxo, quem singulari et fortitudine et probitate regi et optimo cuique Normanno placuisse audivimus, p. 150. *Orderic* adds Turchil de Limis, Siward and Al-

dred, the sons of Ethelgar pronepotis regis, Edric the wild, the grandson or nephew of Edric the infamous, and many other noblemen, p. 195.

<sup>13</sup> *Pict.* 160. *Orderic*, 194—196.

tion several chieftains consented to remain with their retainers, and their compliance was rewarded with grants of valuable estates, to be holden by the tenure of military service. Whence the donations were made, whether from the royal demesnes, or from the lands of those who fell at the battle of Senlac, is uncertain: but we are told that the transaction was conducted according to the strict rules of justice, and that no Englishman could reasonably complain that he had been despoiled to aggrandize a Norman<sup>14</sup>.

This force was distributed among the more populous towns and districts. Wherever the king placed a garrison, he erected a fortress for its protection. But London and Winchester were the chief objects of his solicitude. He would not leave Barking, till a castle had been completed in London, probably on the very site which is now occupied by the Tower: and the care of raising a similar structure at Winchester was intrusted to the vigilance of Fitz-Osbern, the bravest and most favoured of his officers. "For that city," says his biographer, "is noble and "powerful, inhabited by a race of men opulent, fearless, and "perfidious<sup>15</sup>." Yet, if we recollect that these Norman castles were built in the short space of three months, and that too in the depth of winter, we must consider them as little better than temporary defences, which had been hastily erected in favourable situations.

<sup>14</sup> Pict. 150. At the same time he ordered the foundations of a monastery to be laid on the spot, where he gained the victory over Harold: from which circumstance it was called Battle abbey. As it was there that he won the crown, he wished the new establishment to enjoy all the privileges of the royal chapel: and having obtained the consent of

the metropolitan and of the bishop of the diocese, declared it in a full assembly of prelates and barons exempt from "all episcopal rule "and exaction." It became, in the language of later times, nullius diocesis. See the charter, Brady, ii. app. p. 15.

<sup>15</sup> Id. 151.



CHAP.  
VIII.

---

The king re-  
turns to Nor-  
mandy.

Some writers have indulged in speculation on the motives which could have induced William, immediately after these arrangements, to quit the kingdom which he had so recently acquired, and to revisit his patrimonial dominions. It has been supposed that his real but secret object was the ruin of the English nobility. While he was present, their obedience excluded every decent pretext of spoliation: but during his absence they might be goaded to arms by the oppression of his officers, and at his return he might with apparent justice punish their rebellion, and satisfy his own rapacity and that of his barons. Such indeed was the result: but we often attribute to policy events, which no deliberation has prepared, and which no foresight could have divined. There is nothing in the ancient writers to warrant a supposition, so disgraceful to the character of William. The men of Normandy were anxious to welcome their victorious sovereign: they had repeatedly importuned him to return: and vanity might prompt him to grant their request, and to exhibit himself with the pomp of a king among those, whom he had hitherto governed with the inferior title of duke. In the month of March he collected his army on the beach near Pevensey: distributed to each man a liberal donative, and embarked with a prosperous wind for the coast of Normandy. He was received by his countrymen with enthusiastic joy: wherever he proceeded, the pursuits of commerce and agriculture were suspended: and the solemn fast of Lent was universally transformed into a season of festivity and merriment. In his train followed, not only the Norman barons, the faithful companions of his victory, but also many English thanes and prelates, the proudest ornaments of his triumph. The latter appeared in the honourable station of attendants on the

king of England; in reality they were captives, retained as securities for the fidelity of their countrymen<sup>16</sup>. We are told that they attracted the admiration of the spectators, among whom were many French noblemen whom curiosity had drawn to the Norman court. In their persons the English were thought to exhibit the captivating elegance of female beauty. Their hair (long hair was a mark of birth with the northern nations) flowed in ringlets on their shoulders: and their mantles of the richest silks were ornamented with the profusion of oriental magnificence<sup>17</sup>. To enhance in the eyes of his guests and subjects the value of his conquest, William displayed before them the treasures which he had either acquired as plunder after the battle, or received at his coronation as presents. Of these a considerable portion, with the golden banner of Harold, was destined for the acceptance of the pope: the remainder was distributed among the churches of Normandy and the neighbouring provinces. The remark of the continental historian on this occasion, will amuse, perhaps surprise, the reader. Speaking of the riches brought from England, he says, "that land far surpasses the Gauls in abundance of the precious metals. If in fertility it may be termed the granary of Ceres, in riches it should be called the treasury of Arabia. The English women excel in the use of the needle, and in the embroidery of gold: the men in every species of elegant workmanship. Moreover the best artists of Germany reside among them: and merchants import into the island the most valuable specimens of foreign manufacture<sup>18</sup>." By exaggerating the ad-

<sup>16</sup> They were Stigand, archbishop of Canterbury, Egelnoth, abbot of St. Augustine's, Edgar the etheling, Edwin, earl of Mercia, Morcar, earl of Northumbria, Waltheof, earl of Northampton and Huntingdon, and "com-  
" plures alii altæ nobilitatis." Pict. 153.

Order. 197.

<sup>17</sup> Nec enim puellari venustati cedebant. Pict. 161. Miræ pulchritudinis. Order. 197.

<sup>18</sup> Pict. 157. 158. He appears to have been astonished at the wealth of the English. He

CHAP.  
VIII.

vantages of the country, Pictaviensis may perhaps have sought to add to the fame of its conqueror: but one part of his description is fully supported by other evidence. The superiority of the English artists was so generally acknowledged, that articles of delicate workmanship in embroidery, or in the precious metals, were usually denominated by the other European nations “opera Anglica,” or English work<sup>19</sup>.

The regents,  
Odo,

During his absence the king had intrusted the reins of government to William Fitz-Osbern, and Odo, bishop of Bayeux. Odo was his uterine brother, the son of Herleva by her husband Herluin<sup>20</sup>. The favour of William had promoted him at an early age to the see of Bayeux: and he soon displayed extraordinary abilities both in the administration of his diocese, and in the councils of his sovereign. He possessed a splendid revenue, and spent it in a splendid manner, in beautifying his episcopal city, and in rewarding the services of his retainers. In obedience to the canons he forbore to carry arms: but he constantly attended his brother in battle, and assisted with his advice in every military enterprise. “He was,” says a historian, who had probably shared in his bounty, “a prelate of such rare and noble qualities, that the English, barbarians as they were, could not but love him and fear him<sup>21</sup>.” On the other hand we are assured by another Norman, but a less partial writer, that his character was a compound of vice and virtue: and that, instead of attending to the duties of his station, he made riches and power the principal objects of his pursuit<sup>22</sup>.

calls them filios Anglorum tam stemmatis quam opum dignitate reges appellandos. *Ibid.*

<sup>19</sup> Leo Marsicanus apud Muratori, *Antiq. Med. ævi*, diss. lviii.

<sup>20</sup> Herleva married Herluin after the death

of Robert. Her children by this marriage were Robert, earl of Mortagne, Odo, bishop of Bayeux, and a daughter, countess of Albe-marle. *Will. Gem.* vii. 3. viii. 37.

<sup>21</sup> *Pict.* 153.

<sup>22</sup> Orderic, 255.



To Odo had been assigned the government of Kent: the inhabitants of which, from their frequent intercourse with the continent, were deemed less savage than the generality of their countrymen<sup>23</sup>. The remainder of the kingdom was committed to the vigilance of Fitz-Osbern, a Norman baron, related on the mother's side to the ducal family. William and he had grown up together from their infancy: and the attachment of their childish years had been afterwards strengthened by mutual services. In every civil commotion Fitz-Osbern had supported his sovereign; to his influence was attributed the determination of William to invade England: and to the praise of consummate wisdom in the cabinet he added that of unrivalled courage in the field. He was considered as the pride of the Normans and the scourge of the English<sup>24</sup>.

---

and Fitz-Osbern.

The previous merits of these ministers must be received on the word of their panegyrist: but their subsequent conduct does not appear to merit the confidence which was reposed in them by their sovereign: and to their arrogance and rapacity should be attributed the insurrections, forfeitures, and massacres, which so long afflicted this unhappy country, and which at last reduced the natives to a state of beggary and servitude. As soon as they entered on their high office, they departed from the system of conciliation, which the king had adopted, and assumed the lofty mien, and the arrogant manners of conquerors. The complaints of the injured were despised: aggression was encouraged by impunity; and the different garisons insulted the persons, abused the wives and daughters, and rioted at free quarters on the property, of their neighbours<sup>25</sup>. The refusal of redress awakened the indignation of the English:

Insurrections

<sup>23</sup> Unde a minus feriâ hominibus incolitur.  
Pict. 152.

<sup>24</sup> Pict. 151

<sup>25</sup> Orderic, 209.

CHAP.  
VIII.

and, in this moment of national effervescence, if an individual had appeared able to combine and direct the general hostility, the Norman ascendancy would probably have been suppressed. But the principal chieftains were absent: and the measures of the insurgents, without system or connexion, were the mere result of sudden irritation, and better calculated for the purpose of present revenge than of permanent deliverance. Neither were the natives unanimous. Numbers attended more to the suggestions of selfishness than of patriotism: the archbishop of York and several of the prelates, many thanes, who had hitherto been undisturbed, and the inhabitants of most of the towns, whose prosperity depended on the public tranquillity, remained quiet spectators of the confusion around them. Some even lent their aid to put down the insurgents<sup>26</sup>.

Murder of  
earl Copsi.

Among the staunchest friends of the Normans was Copsi or Coxo, a thane who under Edward had governed Northumbria as the deputy of Testig. With the title of earl, William had intrusted to his fidelity the government of the whole country to the north of the Tyne; nor was Copsi faithless or ungrateful to his benefactor. It was in vain that his retainers exhorted him to throw off the yoke of the foreigners. For a long time they wavered between their attachment to their lord, and their attachment to their country. The latter prevailed: and Copsi fell by the swords of his vassals. By William his death was lamented as a calamity: by the Norman writers he is described as the most virtuous of the English<sup>27</sup>.

<sup>26</sup> Orderic, 206.

<sup>27</sup> Simeon, *Hist. Dunel.* iii. 14. *Pict.* 164. Orderic, 206. The native writers give a more circumstantial, and probably more accurate, account of his death. Osulf had enjoyed the same appointment from the gift of Morcar, but had been compelled by the Normans to

surrender it to Copsi. Five weeks afterwards, on the 12th of March, he surprised his competitor in Newburn. Copsi ran to the church, which was set on fire. The flames drove him to the door, where he was cut down by Osulf. *Sim.* 204. *Hoved.* 243.

In the west the conqueror had bestowed on Fitz-Osbern the earldom of Hereford. Edric the wild, or the savage<sup>28</sup>, whose possessions lay in that county, refused to acknowledge his authority. As often as the Normans attempted to enforce obedience, he repulsed them with loss: and as soon as the king had left England, called to his aid Blethgent and Rithwatlan, princes of the Britons. Their united forces shut up the enemy within their fortress, while they ravaged with impunity the western division of the county, as far as the river Lug<sup>29</sup>.

Edric ravages  
Hereford.

In the east the people of Kent solicited the support of Eustace, count of Boulogne. That nobleman had quarrelled with William: a court of Norman barons and English thanes had decided in favour of the king: and Eustace had left the island in sullen discontent. At the invitation of the insurgents, he unexpectedly crossed the channel; and a combined attack was made on the castle of Dover at a time when the larger portion of the garrison was absent. Unfortunately a panic seized the assailants, and they fled before a handful of men. Eustace reached his ships: most of his followers were taken: by their more perfect knowledge of the roads the natives escaped from the paucity of their pursuers<sup>30</sup>.

Eustace at-  
tacks Dover.

These desultory conflicts might indeed harass the Normans, but they contributed little to prevent the entire subjugation of the country, or to promote the great cause of independence. The more prudent reserved their efforts for a fairer prospect of success: and deputies were sent to Denmark to offer to Sveno Tiufveskeg, a crown which had been already worn by two of his predecessors, Canute and Hardecanute. In the meanwhile

English exiles  
at Constanti-  
nople.

<sup>28</sup> Cognomento Guilda, id est silvaticus. Orderic, 195. From silvaticus the French formed the word sauvage.

<sup>29</sup> Simeon, 197. Flor. 635.

<sup>30</sup> Pict. 163. Orderic, 205.



CHAP.  
VIII.

---

a body of natives, impatient under the yoke, adopted a plan, which wears the appearance of romance. They bade adieu to their country, sailed to the Mediterranean, and ultimately offered their services to the emperor Alexius. By him they were settled at Chevetot beyond the strait, and afterwards transferred to Constantinople, that they might assist in repelling the incursions of their common enemy, the Normans. For, while the princes of that nation laboured to extend the limits of their dominions at the expense of their neighbours, a few private adventurers had founded in the south of Italy a powerful kingdom. It was now ruled by Robert the Guiscard, the sixth of the twelve sons of Tancred of Hauteville, who, after establishing himself in Calabria, had, at the death of his eldest brother, been chosen also count of Apulia. His daughter had been betrothed to Constantine the heir of the emperor Michael: and when Alexius assumed the purple, Robert declared war against the usurper. The English exiles fought under the imperial banner in every action from the siege of Durazzo to the final retreat of the Normans from the walls of Larissa. At Castorio three hundred of their number were killed or taken. The remainder received for their residence a palace within the imperial city: their posterity for many generations served in the body guard of the emperors: and at the fall of Constantinople, in the thirteenth century, the Ingloi with the battle-axes of their ancestors, added to a body of Danes, formed the principal force, which the eastern successors of Augustus could oppose to the torrent of the crusaders<sup>31</sup>.

The king returns, Dec. 6.

The mind of William was exasperated by frequent messages from Odo and Fitz-Osbern: and he returned to England in December with a secret resolution to crush by severity a people,

<sup>31</sup> Orderic, 204. Anna Comnena. Alex. v. Villehardouin, lxxxix.

whom he could not win by kindness. During the Christmas holidays the English thanes waited on their sovereign. He embraced them as friends, inquired into their grievances, and granted their requests. But his hostility pierced through the veil which he had thrown over it: and the imposition of a most grievous tax awakened well-founded apprehensions<sup>32</sup>. Though the spirit of resistance, which had so much annoyed his deputies, seemed to disappear at his arrival, it still lingered in the northern and western extremities of the kingdom. Exeter from the time of Athelstan had gradually risen into a populous city: it was surrounded with a wall of considerable strength: and the inhabitants were animated with the most deadly hatred against the invaders. A band of mercenaries on board a small squadron of Norman ships, which was driven by a tempest into the harbour, had been treated with cruelty and scorn by the populace. Sensible of their danger the burgesses made preparations for a siege; raised turrets and battlements on the walls: and dispatched emissaries to excite a similar spirit in other towns. When William sent to require their oaths of fealty, and the admission of a garrison into the city, they returned a peremptory refusal: but at the same time expressed a willingness to pay him the dues, and to perform the services which had been exacted by their native monarchs. The conqueror was not accustomed to submit to conditions dictated by his subjects: he raised a numerous force, of which a great portion consisted of Englishmen; and marched with a resolution to inflict severe vengeance on the rebels. At some distance he was met by the magistrates, who implored his clemency, proffered the submission of the inhabitants, and gave hostages for their fidelity. With five hundred

<sup>32</sup> Alur Bev. 127.

CHAP.  
VIII.

---

horse he approached one of the gates. To his astonishment it was barred against him: and a crowd of combatants bade him defiance from the walls. It was in vain that, to intimidate them, he ordered one of the hostages to be deprived of his eyes. The siege lasted eighteen days: and the royalists suffered severe loss in different assaults. The citizens at last submitted, but on conditions which could hardly have been anticipated. They took indeed the oath of allegiance, and admitted a garrison: but their lives, property, and immunities were secured; and to prevent the opportunity of plunder, the besieging army was removed from the vicinity of the gates<sup>33</sup>. Having pacified Cornwall, the king returned to Winchester, and sent for the dutchess Matilda to England. She was crowned at the ensuing festival of Whitsuntide.

Edwin rebels.

But the presence of William was now required in the north. No Englishman had rendered him more important services than Edwin, whose influence had induced one-third of the kingdom to admit his authority. The Norman, in the warmth of his gratitude, promised the earl his daughter in marriage: an engagement which he refused to fulfil as soon as he felt himself secure upon the throne. Inflamed with resentment, Edwin flew to arms: the spirit of resistance was diffused from the heart of Mercia to the confines of Scotland: and even the citizens of York, in opposition to the intreaties and predictions of their archbishop, rose in the sacred cause of independence. Yet this mighty insurrection served only to confirm the power of the Norman, whose vigilance anticipated the designs of his enemies. Edwin and Morcar were surprised before they were prepared: and their submission was received with a promise of forgiveness, and a resolution of vengeance. York opened

Submits.

<sup>33</sup> Compare Orderic (p. 210, 211), with the *Chronicon Lombardi* (ad ann. 1067).



its gates to the conqueror: Archil, a powerful Northumbrian, and Egelwin, bishop of Durham, hastened to offer him their homage: and Malcolm, the king of Scotland, who had prepared to assist the insurgents, swore by his deputies to do faithful service to William. During this expedition and in his return, the king fortified castles at Warwick, Nottingham, York, Lincoln, Huntingdon, and Cambridge<sup>34</sup>.

In the spring of the same year, Githa the mother of Harold, and several ladies of noble birth, fearing the rapacity and the brutality of the Normans, escaped with all their treasures from Exeter, and concealed themselves for a while in one of the little isles of Stepholme and Flatholme in the mouth of the Severn<sup>35</sup>. Thence they sailed for the coast of Flanders: and eluding the notice or frustrating the pursuit of their enemies, found a secure retreat at St. Omer. Githa's grandsons, Godwin, Edmund, and Magnus, the children of the unfortunate Harold, had obtained a protector in Dermot, king of Leinster; and, to revenge the sufferings of their family, landed with a body of men in the mouth of the Avon, made an unsuccessful attempt on Bristol, killed Ednoth an opponent in Somersetshire, and after ravaging the counties of Devon and Cornwall, returned in safety to Ireland<sup>36</sup>.

A more illustrious fugitive was the etheling Edgar, who undertook to convey his mother Agatha, with his sisters Margaret and Christina, to Hungary, their native country. But a storm drove them into the frith of Forth: and Malcolm, who had formerly been a wanderer in England, hastened to receive them, conducted them to his castle of Dunfermline, and by the attention

Githa escapes.

Edgar in  
Scotland.

<sup>34</sup> Orderic, 213—217. Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1067.

<sup>35</sup> Orderic, 221. Chron. Lamb. *ibid.*—Githa had seven sons by the great earl Godwin. The reader has already seen the premature fate of five, Sweyn, Tosti, Harold,

Gurth, and Leofwin. Alfgar after the conquest became a monk at Rheims in Champagne; Wulfnoth, so long the prisoner of William, only obtained his liberty to embrace the same profession at Salisbury. Orderic, 186.

<sup>36</sup> Chron. Lamb. *ibid.* Flor. 635.

CHAP.  
VIII.

Massacre at  
Durham.  
1069.

which he paid to the royal exiles, endeavoured to evince his gratitude for the protection, which in similar circumstances he had experienced from their relative Edward the confessor <sup>37</sup>.

William's late expedition to York had produced only a delusive appearance of tranquillity. The spirit of resistance was still alive: and, if the royal authority was obeyed in the neighbourhood of the different garrisons, in the open country it was held at defiance. In several districts the glens and forests swarmed with voluntary fugitives, who, disdaining to crouch beneath a foreign yoke, had abandoned their habitations, and supported themselves by the plunder of the Normans, and royalists <sup>38</sup>. After the death of Copsi, the king had sold his earldom to Cospatric, a noble thane <sup>39</sup>: but now he transferred it to a more trusty officer, Robert de Cumin, who with five or seven hundred horse hastened to take possession. On the left bank of the Tees he was met by Egelwin, bishop of Durham, who informed him that the natives had sworn to maintain their independence, or to perish in the attempt: and advised him not to expose himself with so small an escort to the resentment of a brave and exasperated people. The admonition was received with contempt. Cumin entered Durham, took possession of the episcopal residence, and abandoned the houses of the citizens to the rapacity of his followers. During the night the English assembled in great force: about the dawn they burst into the city. The Normans, exhausted by the fatigue of their march, and the debauch of the last evening, fell for the most part unresisting victims to the fury of their enemies: the rest retired in haste to their leader at the palace of the bishop. For a while they kept their pursuers at

Jan. 28.

Jan. 29.

<sup>37</sup> Chron. Lamb. ibid. Matt. Paris, 4.

<sup>38</sup> By the foreign soldiers these marauders were called, the savages. Orderic, 215.

<sup>39</sup> Cospatric was the grandson of the earl Uhtred by Elgiva, a daughter of king Ethelred. Sim. 204, 205.

bay from the doors and windows: but in a short time the house was in flames, and Cumin with his associates perished in the conflagration. Of the whole number two only escaped from the massacre <sup>40</sup>.

This success revived the hopes of the English. The citizens of York rose upon the Norman garrison, and killed the governor with many of his retainers. They were immediately joined by Cospatric with the Northumbrians, and by Edgar with the exiles from Scotland. William Mallet, on whom the command had devolved, informed the king that without immediate succour he must fall into the hands of the enemy. But that prince was already on his march; he surprised the besiegers. Several hundreds perished, the city was abandoned to the rapacity of the soldiers; and the cathedral was profaned and pillaged. Having built a second castle, and appointed his favourite Fitz-Osbern to the command, the king returned in triumph to Winchester <sup>41</sup>.

Siege of  
York.

This was the most busy and eventful year in the reign of William. In June, the sons of Harold, with a fleet of sixty-four sail, returned from Ireland, and landed near Plymouth. While occupied in the pursuit of plunder, they were surprised by Brian, son of the earl of Bretagne. The leaders escaped to their ships; almost all their followers perished in two engagements fought the same day <sup>42</sup>.

In July arrived the threatened expedition from Denmark. Sveno had spent two years in making preparations: he had summoned to his standard adventurers from every nation inhabiting the shores of the Baltic; and had intrusted the command

Arrival of the  
Danes.

<sup>40</sup> Sim. Hist. ecc. Dunel. iii. 15. De gest. reg. 198. Orderic, 218. Alur. Bev. 128.

<sup>41</sup> Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1098. Orderic, 218.

<sup>42</sup> Chron. Lamb. ibid. Orderic, 219. Two

of Harold's sons retired to Denmark: their sister, who accompanied them, was afterwards married to the sovereign of Russia. Saxo Gram. 207.



CHAP.  
VIII.

York taken.

William in the  
north.

of a fleet of two hundred and forty sail to the care of his eldest son Canute, aided by the councils and experience of Sbern his uncle, and Christian his bishop. The Normans claim the praise of having repulsed the invaders at Dover, Sandwich, Ipswich, and Norwich: perhaps the Danes only touched at these places to inform the natives of their arrival, or to distract the attention of their enemy. In the beginning of August they sailed to the Humber, where they were joined by Edgar, Cospatric, Waltheof, Archil, and the five sons of Carl, with a squadron of English ships. Archbishop Aldred died of grief at the prospect of the evils which threatened his devoted country. The Normans at York, to clear the ground in the vicinity of their castles, set fire to the neighbouring houses; the flames were spread by the wind; and in a conflagration of three days, the cathedral and a great part of the city were reduced to ashes. During the confusion the Danes and English arrived, and totally defeated the enemy, who had the imprudence to leave their fortifications, and fight in the streets. Three thousand Normans were slain: for the sake of ransom, William Mallet with his family, Gilbert of Ghent, and a few others, were spared<sup>43</sup>.

The king was hunting in the forest of Dean, when he received the first news of this disaster. In the paroxysm of his passion he swore by the splendour of the Almighty, that not one Northumbrian should escape his revenge. Acquainted with the menaces of Sveno, he had made preparations adequate to the danger: auxiliaries had been sought from every people between the Rhine and the Tagus; and to secure their services, besides a liberal allowance for the present, promises had been added of future and more substantial rewards. It was not the intention

<sup>43</sup> Orderic, 221—223. Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1066. Alur. Ber. 128.

of the confederates to hazard an engagement with so numerous and disciplined a force. As it advanced, they separated. Waltheof remained for the defence of York: Cospatric led his Northumbrians beyond the Tyne; the Danes retired to their ships, and sailed to the coast of Lindesey. To surprise the latter, William with his cavalry made a rapid march to the Humber. They were informed of his design, and crossed to the opposite coast of Holderness. But if the strangers were unwilling to meet him in battle, they were accessible to money: and Sbern, the real leader of the expedition, is said to have sold his friendship to William for a considerable present. The report perhaps originated in the suspicions of a discontented people; but it is certain that from this period, the Danes, though they lingered for some months in the waters of the Humber, never attempted any enterprise of importance: and that Sbern, at his return to Denmark, was banished by his sovereign on charges of cowardice or treachery <sup>44</sup>.

The transient gleam of success, which at first attended the arms of the confederates at York, had rekindled the hopes and the hostility of the natives. The flames of insurrection burst forth in every district which William left in his march to the north. Exeter was besieged by the people of Cornwall: the malcontents in Devon and Somerset made an assault upon Montacute: the men of Chester and a body of Welshmen, to whom were soon added Edric the wild and his followers, took the town, and attempted to reduce the castle of Shrewsbury. The inactivity of the Danes fortunately permitted him to retrace his steps. At Stafford he defeated a considerable body of insurgents; and Edric, hearing of his approach, set fire to Shrews-

Defeats the  
insurgents

<sup>44</sup> Orderic, 223. Malm. 60.

CHAP.  
VIII.

---

bury, and retired towards Wales. Exeter held out till the arrival of Fitz-Osbern and Brian to its relief; and others of the royal lieutenants displayed their zeal and activity in restoring tranquillity in different counties. The sufferings of both parties in this desultory warfare were severe: the troops in their marches and countermarches pillaged the defenceless inhabitants without distinction of friend or foe: and the interruption of agricultural pursuits was followed by an alarming scarcity during the ensuing years. From Nottingham the king turned once more towards the north. At Pontefract he was detained for three weeks by the swell of the river Aire: a ford was at last discovered: he reached York, and ordered it to be carried by assault. Though Waltheof defended the city with obstinacy; though he slew with his own hand several Normans, as they rushed in through the gate-way, he was compelled to abandon it to the conqueror, who immediately repaired the castles, and appointed garrisons for their defence. Still the natives flattered themselves, that the winter would compel him to return into the south: to their disappointment he sent for his crown from Winchester, and during the Christmas kept his court with the usual festivities at York <sup>45</sup>.

Lays waste  
Yorkshire and  
Durham.

Elated with victory, and unrestrained by the motives of religion, or the feelings of humanity, William on this occasion devised and executed a system of revenge, which has covered his name with eternal infamy. As his former attempts to enforce obedience had failed, he now resolved to exterminate the refractory natives, and to place a wilderness as a barrier between his Normans and their implacable enemies. With this view he led his retainers from York: dispersed them in small divisions over

<sup>45</sup> Orderic, 223—225. Malm. 58



the country, and gave them orders to spare neither man nor beast, but to destroy the houses, corn, implements of husbandry, and whatever might be useful or necessary to the support of human life. The work of plunder, slaughter, and conflagration commenced on the left bank of the Ouse, and successively reached the Tees, the Were, and the Tyne. The more distant inhabitants crossed over the last river: the citizens of Durham, mindful of the fate of Cumin, did not believe themselves safe, till they were settled in Holy island, the property of their bishop. But thousands, whose flight was intercepted, concealed themselves in the forests or made their way to the mountains, where they perished by hunger or disease. The number of men, women, and children, who fell victims to this barbarous policy, is said to have exceeded one hundred thousand. For nine years not a patch of cultivated ground could be seen between York and Durham: and at the distance of a century eye-witnesses assure us, that the country was strewed with ruins, the extent and number of which still attested the sanguinary ambition and implacable animosity of the conqueror<sup>46</sup>.

The English chieftains, terrified by this severe infliction, abandoned themselves to despair. Edgar, with the bishop of Durham, and his principal associates, sailed from Weremouth to Scotland: Cospatric by messengers solicited and obtained his pardon: Waltheof, who by his valour had excited the admiration and merited esteem of the Normans, visited the king on the banks of the Tees; received from him the hand of his niece

Submission of  
insurgents.  
1070.  
Jan.

<sup>46</sup> Orderic, 225. Malm. 58. Simeon, 199. Alur. Bev. 128, 129. I may add the observation of the first writer, who was himself a Norman. In multis Guillelmum nostra libenter extulit relatio: sed in hoc laudare non audeo . . . . . misericordia motus, miserabilis populi mœroribus et anxietatibus magis con-

doleo, quam frivolis adulationibus inutiliter studeo. Præterea indubitanter assero, quod impune non remittetur tam feralis occisio. Summos enim et imos intuetur omnipotens iudex, æque omnium facta discutiet, et puniet districtissimus vindex. Ibid

CHAP.  
VIII.

Judith in marriage; and recovered his former honours, the earldoms of Northampton, and Huntingdon<sup>47</sup>. From the Tees, William, on what account we are not informed, returned by a road, which had never been trodden by an armed force. It was in the heart of winter: a deep snow covered the ground: and the rivers, mountains, and ravines continually presented new and unexpected obstacles. In the general confusion, order and discipline disappeared; even the king himself wandered from the track, and passed an anxious night in total ignorance, both where he was himself, and what direction the army had taken. After surmounting numerous difficulties, and suffering the severest privations, the men reached York; but most of the horses had perished in the snow<sup>48</sup>.

This adventure might have checked the ardour of a less resolute leader: but William professed the most sovereign contempt of hardships: and within a few weeks undertook a longer and more perilous expedition. In the beginning of March, amid storms of snow, sleet, and hail, he led his army from York to Chester, over the mountains which divide the two coasts of the island. The foreign mercenaries began to murmur: by degrees they burst into open mutiny, and clamorously demanded their discharge. "Let them go, if they please," answered the king, with apparent indifference, "I do not want their services." At the head of the army, and frequently on foot, he gave the example to his followers, who blushed not to equal the exertions and alacrity of their prince. At Chester he built a castle, pacified the country, and received Edric the wild into favour. Thence he proceeded to Salisbury, where he rewarded, and

<sup>47</sup> Judith was the daughter of the countess of Albemarle, William's uterine sister. Will. Gemet. viii. 37.

<sup>48</sup> Orderic, 226. In the text of this writer

Hexham has inadvertently been admitted instead of York. It is evident that the latter is the true reading.

disbanded the army. The only punishment inflicted on the mutineers was, that they were compelled to serve forty days longer than their fellows<sup>49</sup>.

CHAP.  
VIII.

---

The departure of the Normans did not put an end to the calamities of the northern counties. While the natives opposed William, Malcolm of Scotland considered them as friends: the moment they submitted, he became their enemy. Passing through Cumbria, he poured his barbarians into the north of Yorkshire, to glean whatever had escaped the rapacity of the Normans. Cospatric, who watched his motions, retaliated by a similar inroad into Cumbria, and returned with a plentiful harvest of plunder to his castle of Bamborough. Malcolm had marched from Cleveland, along the coast as far as Wermouth, when he received the intelligence. From that moment the war assumed a more sanguinary aspect. The Scots, who were impelled not only by the hope of plunder but also by the thirst of revenge, crossed the Tyne; burnt the churches and villages; massacred the infants and the aged; and forced along with them all the men and women able to bear the fatigue of the journey. So numerous were the captives, that according to a historian, who was almost a contemporary, they furnished every farm in the south of Scotland with English slaves. When Malcolm had terminated this expedition he offered his hand to Margaret, the sister of Edgar. The princess, who was in her twenty-second year, turned with disgust from a husband covered with the blood of so many innocent victims. She pleaded an inclination to embrace a conventual life: but her objections were overruled by the authority of Edgar and his counsellors:

Ravages of  
Malcolm.

<sup>49</sup> Orderic, 227-231. Simeon, 202.



CHAP.  
VIII.

All places of  
trust given to  
Normans.

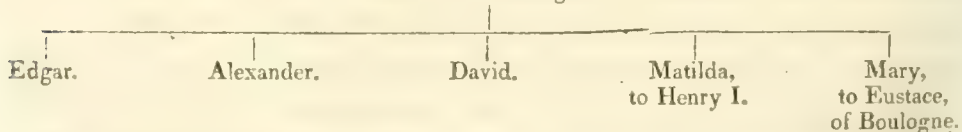
and the mild virtues of the wife insensibly softened the ferocity, and informed the mind, of her husband<sup>50</sup>.

William was now undisputed master of England. From the channel to the borders of Scotland his authority was universally acknowledged: in every county, with the exception of Cospatrick's government, it was enforced by the presence of a powerful body of troops. In each populous burgh a strong fortress had been erected<sup>51</sup>: in case of insurrection the Normans found an asylum within its walls: and the same place confined the principal natives of the district, as hostages for the obedience of their countrymen<sup>52</sup>. It was no longer necessary for the king to court popularity. He now made it the principal object of his government to depress the natives, and to exalt the foreigners: and within a few years every dignity in the church, every place of emolument or authority in the state, and almost all the property in the land, had passed into the possession of Normans. From the commencement of the invasion the English had been accustomed to deposit in the monasteries their most valuable effects. They vainly hoped that these sanctuaries would be respected by men, who professed the same religion: but on his

<sup>50</sup> Simeon, 200. Flor. 636. Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1067. Alur. Bev. 130, 131. Vit. S. Marg. in vit. SS. Scotiæ, ed. Pink. Of

their eight children three were kings of Scotland, one was queen, and one mother to a queen, of England.

Malcolm = Margaret.



<sup>51</sup> The erection of the following castles is mentioned by ancient writers: of Pevensey, Hastings, and London, and the reparation of that of Dover in 1066: of Winchester in 1067: of Chichester, Arundel, Exeter, Warwick, Nottingham, York, Lincoln, Huntingdon, and Cambridge, in 1068: of a second

at York, one at Chester, and another at Stafford, in 1070. See Orderic, Vit. edit. Maseres, p. 228.—Note.

<sup>52</sup> This fact, sufficiently probable in itself, is confirmed by the history of Turgot in Simeon (206), and Hoveden (261).

return from the north William confiscated the whole, under the pretext that it belonged to his enemies. The royal commissioners carried off not only the plate and jewels, but, what was felt still more severely, the charters of immunities and evidences of property: and not only these, but also, in many instances, the treasures of the monasteries themselves, their sacred vessels, and the ornaments of their churches<sup>53</sup>.

At the king's request pope Alexander had sent three legates to England, Ermenfrid, bishop of Sion, and the cardinals Peter and John. Ermenfrid was no stranger to the country. He had visited in the same capacity the court of Edward the confessor<sup>54</sup>. The purport of their commission was the reformation of the English clergy: the object of the king was to remove from situations of influence the native bishops and abbots. Councils were held at Winchester and Windsor. Stigand, who had attempted to annex the see of Winchester to that of Canterbury, and had been suspended for many years from his functions, was deposed<sup>55</sup>: two or three other prelates were justly deprived of their churches on account of their immorality: and several experienced the same fate for no other crime than that of being Englishmen. Wulstan, the celebrated bishop of Worcester, was not molested, a favour, which probably he owed less to his unblemished character, than to the protection of Ermenfrid, whose friend and host he had been on a former occasion<sup>56</sup>.

English prelates deposed.

<sup>53</sup> Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1070. Simeon, 200. West. 226. Matt. Paris, 5.

<sup>54</sup> Flor. 631. Ang. Sac. ii. 250. It is singular that Hume should describe Ermenfrid as the first legate, who had ever appeared in England, when, besides some other instances in the Anglo-Saxon times, that prelate himself had many years before come to England in the same capacity.

<sup>55</sup> Stigand is said by Malmsbury (De Pont.

116) to have been treated with great severity: but his account is refuted by Rudborne, who informs us that the deposed primate was confined at large within the castle of Winchester, and permitted to take with him all his treasures. These at his death fell into the hands of the king, who presented a small portion to the church of that city. Ang. Sac. i. 250.

<sup>56</sup> Ang. Sac. ii. 250.

CHAP.  
VIII.

By the Norman writers that legate is applauded as the inflexible maintainer of ecclesiastical discipline; by the English he is censured as the obsequious minister of the royal pleasure.

Norman prelates.

Nor was this system of proscription confined to the bishops. In the succeeding years it gradually descended to inferior situations in the church, till hardly a single native remained possessed of influence or wealth. Of their successors many were needy and rapacious foreigners, indebted for their promotion not to their own merit, but to the favour or gratitude of their patrons<sup>57</sup>: but to the praise of William it should be observed, that with one or two exceptions he admitted none to the higher ecclesiastical dignities, who were not distinguished by their talents and virtues<sup>58</sup>. On the whole this change of hierarchy, though accompanied with many acts of injustice, was a national benefit. It served to awaken the English clergy from that state of intellectual torpor in which they had so long slumbered, and to raise them gradually to a level with their foreign brethren in point of mental cultivation. The new bishops introduced a stricter discipline; excited a thirst for learning; and expended the wealth which they acquired in works of public magnificence, or of public charity.

Lanfranc.

The most illustrious of the number, both for his abilities and for his station, was Lanfranc, a native of Pavia, and during many years professor of laws in that city. From Pavia he travelled into Normandy, opened a school at Avranches, and diffused a taste for knowledge among the clergy. In 1042, motives of piety induced him to withdraw from the applause of the public, and to sequester himself in the poor and lonely abbey of Bec. But talents like his could not be long hidden in obscurity: the

<sup>57</sup> Orderic, 262—264.

<sup>58</sup> Id. 233.



commands of the abbot Herluin, compelled him to resume the office of teaching; and more than a hundred scholars attended his lectures. In 1063 William made him abbot of the monastery of St. Stephen, which he had lately founded at Caen; and in 1070 appointed him, with the assent of his barons, to the archiepiscopal see of Canterbury. Lanfranc objected his ignorance of the language and the manners of the *barbarians*; nor could his acquiescence be obtained without the united solicitations of the legate, the queen Matilda, and the abbot Herluin. The new archbishop was constantly respected by the king and his successor: and frequently employed the influence which he possessed, in the support of justice, and the protection of the natives. To his firmness and perseverance the church of Canterbury owed a great part of her possessions, which he wrested from the tenacious grasp of the conquerors<sup>59</sup>. He rebuilt the cathedral, which had been destroyed by fire; repaired in many places the devastations occasioned by the war, and founded, without the walls of the city, two opulent hospitals, one for lepers, the other for the infirm. At his death in 1079 he was nearly one hundred years of age<sup>60</sup>.

The monk Guitmond, the celebrated disciple of Lanfranc, refused to imitate the conduct of his master. When he was solicited by William to accept an English bishopric, he boldly replied, that after having spontaneously abandoned wealth and distinction, he would never receive them again from those who pretended to give what was not their own: and that, if the chance of war had placed

<sup>59</sup> While Stigand was in disgrace, Odo had taken possession of many of the manors belonging to the archbishopric. At Lanfranc's request a shire-mote was held at Pinneden, in which Geoffry, bishop of Coutance, presided by order of William. After a hearing of three days, the lands in question were adjudged to

the church. See the proceedings in Selden's *Spicilegium ad Eadm.* p. 197. With equal success the archbishop contended for the superiority of his see over that of York, against Thomas lately promoted to the latter. *Malm.* 112—117.

<sup>60</sup> Orderic, 241—245. *Malm.* 117, 118.

CHAP.  
VIII.

the crown on the head of William to the prejudice of the legitimate heir, it still could not authorize him to impose on the English ecclesiastical superiors against their will. The freedom of this answer displeased the barons: and when the king offered him the archbishopric of Rouen, they not only prevented his promotion, but expelled him from Normandy. He sought an asylum in the papal court, and died archbishop of Aversa in Italy <sup>61</sup>.

Ingulf.

Among those who were thus promoted by the partiality of the conqueror, I may mention another individual, whose authority has been frequently adduced in these pages. Ingulf was an Englishman, born in London, and studied first at Westminster, afterwards at Oxford <sup>62</sup>. When William visited Edward the confessor, Ingulf attached himself to the service of the duke, and was employed by him as his secretary. From Normandy he travelled a pilgrim to Jerusalem, returned, and received the monastic habit at Fontanelles. It chanced that Wulfketul, abbot of Croyland, was deposed and imprisoned at the instance of Ivo Tailbois. The king bestowed the abbey upon his former secretary. But though Ingulf was indebted to foreigners for his promotion, he always retained the heart of an Englishman. He firmly resisted the pretensions of the Normans in his neighbourhood: obtained several indulgences for his predecessor: and to

<sup>61</sup> Orderic, 264—270.

<sup>62</sup> *Primum Westmonasterio, postmodum Oxoniensi studio traditus eram. Cumque in Aristotele arripiendo profecissem, &c.* Ingulf, 73. This passage is found in every manuscript: yet Mr. Gibbon doubts its authenticity, because Oxford in 1048 lay in ruins, and the works of Aristotle were unknown (*Posthumous Works*, iii. 534). But 1°. It was in 1010 that Oxford was burnt. Three years after it rose from its ashes, and became a place of importance. See the

Saxon chronicle, p. 139. 143. 146. 151. 154, 155. 2°. In another place Ingulf tells us that he had studied logic (p. 62): and instead of doubting his assertion, I would rather believe from him that Aristotle was known more early than is generally thought. Alcuin, who wrote two centuries before Ingulf, informs us that Aristotle was studied at York (*De Pont. Eborac.* v. 1550), and wrote a treatise himself on the *Isagogæ*, *Categoriæ*, *Syllogismi*, *Toppica*, and *Periermenia*. *Canis.* ii. part i. p. 488.

sooth the feelings of the old man, always assumed the modest title of his vicegerent. He has left us a detailed account of the abbey of Croyland from its foundation: and has interwoven in his narrative many interesting particulars of national history<sup>63</sup>.

CHAP.  
VIII.

---

In 1071, the embers of civil war were rekindled by the jealousy of William. During the late disturbances Edwin and Morcar had cautiously abstained from any communication with the insurgents. But if their conduct was unexceptionable, their influence was judged dangerous. In them the natives beheld the present hope, and the future liberators of their country: and the king judged it expedient to allay his own apprehensions, by securing their persons. The attempt was made in vain. Edwin concealed himself; solicited aid from the friends of his family; and eluding the vigilance of the Normans, endeavoured to escape towards the borders of Scotland. Unfortunately the secret of his route was betrayed by three of his vassals: the temporary swell of a rivulet from the influx of the tide, intercepted his flight: and he fell, with twenty of his faithful adherents, fighting against his pursuers. The traitors presented his head to William, who rewarded their services by a sentence of perpetual banishment. The fate of his brother Morcar was different. He fled to the protection of Hereward, who had presumed to rear the banner of independence amidst the fens and morasses of Cambridgeshire<sup>64</sup>.

Death of  
Edwin.  
1071.

The memory of Hereward was long dear to the people of England. The recital of his exploits gratified their vanity and resentment: and traditionary songs transmitted his fame to succeeding generations. His father, the lord of Born in Lin-

Opposition of  
Hereward.

<sup>63</sup> Ingulf, p. 73.

<sup>64</sup> Orderic, 249. Ing. 70. Hunt. 211. Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1072. All ancient writers concur in the fact that Edwin and

Morcar were persecuted by William: I have selected such circumstances as appeared the most probable.



CHAP.  
VIII.

colnshire, unable to restrain the turbulence of his temper, had obtained an order for his banishment from Edward the confessor : and the exile had earned in foreign countries the praise of a hardy and fearless warrior. He was in Flanders at the period of the conquest : but when he heard that his father was dead, and that his mother had been dispossessed of the lordship of Born by a foreigner, he returned in haste, collected the vassals of the family, and drove the Norman from his paternal estates. The fame of this exploit increased the number of his followers : every man, anxious to avenge his own wrongs, or the wrongs of his country, hastened to the standard of Hereward : a fortress of wood was erected in the isle of Ely for the protection of their treasures : and a small band of outlaws, instigated by revenge, and emboldened by despair, set at defiance the whole power of the conqueror<sup>65</sup>.

He plunders  
Peterborough.  
1070.  
June 2.

Hereward, with several of his followers, had received the sword of knighthood from his uncle Brand, abbot of Peterborough. Brand died before the close of the year 1069 : and William gave the abbey to Turolde, a foreign monk, who, with a guard of one hundred and sixty horsemen, proceeded to take possession. He had already reached Stamford, when Hereward resolved to plunder the monastery. The Danes, who had passed the winter in the Humber, were now in the Wash : and Sbern, their leader, consented to join the outlaws. The town of Peterborough was burnt : the monks were dispersed : the treasures which they had concealed, were discovered : and the abbey was given to the flames. Hereward retired to his asylum : Sbern sailed towards Denmark<sup>66</sup>.

Makes Turolde  
prisoner.

To remove these importunate enemies Turolde purchased the services of Ivo Taillebois, to whom the conqueror had given the

<sup>65</sup> Ingulf, 67. 70, 71.

<sup>66</sup> Ing. 70. Chron. Sax. 176, 177.

district of Hoyerland. Confident of success the abbot and the Norman commenced the expedition with a numerous body of cavalry. But nothing could elude the vigilance of Hereward. As Tailbois entered one side of a thick wood, the chieftain issued from the other; darted unexpectedly upon Turolde; and carried him off with several other Normans, whom he confined in damp and unwholesome dungeons, till the sum of two thousand pounds had been paid for their ransom<sup>67</sup>.

For a while the pride of William disdained to notice the efforts of Hereward: but when Morcar and most of the exiles from Scotland had joined that chieftain, prudence compelled him to crush the hydra, before it could grow to maturity. He stationed his fleet in the Wash, with orders to observe every outlet from the fens to the ocean: by land he distributed his forces in such manner as to render escape almost impossible. Still the great difficulty remained to reach the enemy, who had retired to their fortress, situated in an expanse of water, which in the narrowest part was more than two miles in breadth. The king undertook to construct a solid road across the marshes, and to throw bridges over the channels of the rivers, a work of considerable labour, and of equal danger, in the face of a vigilant and enterprising enemy. Hereward frequently dispersed the workmen: and his attacks were so sudden, so incessant, and so destructive, that the Normans attributed his success to the assistance of Satan. At the instigation of Tailbois, William had the weakness to employ a sorceress, who was expected, by the superior efficacy of her spells, to defeat those of the English magicians. She was placed in a wooden turret at the head of the work: but Hereward, who had watched his

William be-  
siegues Here-  
ward.  
1071

<sup>67</sup> Pet. Blesen. p. 125.

CHAP.  
VIII.

opportunity, set fire to the dry reeds in the neighbourhood : the wind rapidly spread the conflagration : and the enchantress with her guards, the turret with the workmen, were enveloped, and consumed in the flames<sup>68</sup>.

Gets possession of Ely.

These checks might irritate the king : they could not divert him from his purpose. In defiance of every obstacle the work advanced : it was evident that in a few days the Normans would be in possession of the island : and the greater part of the outlaws voluntarily submitted to the royal mercy. Their fate was different. Of some he accepted the ransom, a few suffered death : many lost an eye, a hand, or a foot ; and several, among whom were Morcar and the bishop of Durham, were condemned to perpetual imprisonment. Hereward alone could not brook the idea of submission. He escaped across the marshes, concealed himself in the woods, and as soon as the royal army had retired, resumed hostilities against the enemy. But the king, who had learned to respect his valour, was not adverse to a reconciliation. The chieftain took the oath of allegiance, and was permitted to enjoy in peace the patrimony of his ancestors<sup>69</sup>.

Subdues Scotland.  
1072.

William was now at leisure to chastise the presumption of Malcolm, who had not only afforded an asylum to his enemies, but had seized every opportunity to enter the northern counties, exciting the natives to rebellion, and ravaging the lands of those who refused. With a determination to subdue the whole country, the king summoned to his standard all his retainers, both Norman and English : and while his fleet crept along the coast,

<sup>68</sup> Ibid.

<sup>69</sup> For the siege of Ely see Ingulf, p. 71. Flor. 637. Sim. 203. Hunt. 211. Paris, 6. Chron. Sax. 181. Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1072. Some writers say that Morcar, like

his brother, was killed by treachery : but the preponderance of authority is in favour of his imprisonment. See also Orderic, p. 247. and Ing. 68.



directed his march through the Lothians. Opposition fled before him. He crossed the Forth: he entered "Scotland:" he penetrated to Abernethy on the Tay: and Malcolm thought it better to preserve his crown as a vassal, than to lose it by braving the resentment of his enemy. He made an offer of submission, the conditions of which were dictated by William: and the Scottish king, coming to the English camp, threw himself on the mercy of the conqueror. He was permitted to retain the government as a vassal of the English crown: and in that quality swore fealty, performed the ceremony of homage, and gave hostages for his fidelity<sup>70</sup>. The king in his return halted at Durham, to erect a castle for the protection of Walcher, the new bishop: and summoned before his tribunal Cospatric, the earl of Northumberland. He was charged with old offences,

<sup>70</sup> I am fully aware that several Scottish writers, anxious to save the honour of Malcolm, seek to persuade us that the Abernethy in question is some unknown place on the borders, not Abernethy on the Tay; that the two kings settled their differences in an amicable manner, and that the homage of Malcolm was not performed for Scotland, but for lands given to him in England. It is, however, impossible to elude the testimony of the original and contemporary historians. 1. The king's object was to conquer Scotland (ut eam sibi subjugaret. Sim. 203. Flor. 637). 2. He advanced to Abernethy on the Tay ("He led "ship-force and land-force to Scotland; and "the land on the sea-half he beleaguered with "ships, and led in his army at the ge-wade"—not the Tweed, as Gibson unaccountably translates it, but "the ford" or wading-place. Chron. Sax. 181. This ford was over the Forth, the southern boundary of Scotland in that age. Thus Ethelred tells us that the king passed through Lothian, and some other place, and then through Scotland to Abernethy. Laodamam, Calatriam—a word altered in copying—Scotiam usque ad Abernethy.

Ethel. 342). 3. All opposition was fruitless. "Hethere found naught that him better was." Chron. Sax. 181. This passage has been explained to signify that he found nothing of service, neither provisions nor riches: but the real meaning is that he found no man better than himself, that is, no man able to resist him with success, as Siward is said to have slain of his enemies "all that was best." Chron. Lamb. ann. 1054. 4. At Abernethy Malcolm came and surrendered himself (Deditione factus est noster. Ethelred, 342. Se dedit. Malms. 58). 5. Scotland was subdued (Scotiam sibi subiecit, Ingulf, 79). Malcolm was obliged to do homage and swear fealty (Malcolmum regem ejus sibi hominum facere, et fidelitatem jurare coegit. Ing. ibid.); and in addition to give hostages for his fidelity (Obsides. Sim. 203. Gissal Sealde, and his man was, Chron. Sax. 181). It should be observed that of these writers the Saxon annalist had lived in William's court, Ingulf had been his secretary, Ethelred was the intimate acquaintance of David, the son of Malcolm, and the rest lived in the next century: They could not all be mistaken.

CHAP.  
VIII.

which it was supposed had been long ago forgiven, the massacres of the Normans at Durham and York. Banished by the sentence of the court, Cospatric retired, after several adventures, to Malcolm, and received from the pity or policy of that prince the castle and demesnes of Dunbar. His earldom was bestowed on Waltheof, who took the first opportunity to revenge the murder of his grandfather Aldred <sup>71</sup>. He surprised and slew the sons of Carl at a banquet in the villa of Seterington <sup>72</sup>.

Edgar sub-  
mits.  
1075.

Hereward was the last Englishman, who drew the sword in the cause of independence. The natives submitted to the yoke in sullen despair: even Edgar the etheling resigned the hope of revenge, and consented to solicit a livelihood from the mercy of the man, whose ambition had robbed him of a crown. He was still in Scotland, when the king of France offered him a princely establishment at Montreuil near the borders of Normandy; not that Philip cared for the misfortunes of the etheling, but that he sought to annoy William, who had become his rival both in power and dignity. Edgar put to sea with the wealth which he had brought from England, and the presents which had been made to him by the king, queen, and nobles of Scotland. But his small squadron was dispersed by a tempest: his ships were stranded on the coast: his treasures and some of his followers were seized by the inhabitants: and the unfortunate prince returned to solicit once more the protection of his brother-in-law. By him he was advised to seek a reconciliation with William, who received the overture with pleasure. At Durham the sheriff of Yorkshire met him with a numerous escort, in appearance to do him honour, in reality to secure his person <sup>73</sup>. Under this guard he traversed England, crossed the

<sup>71</sup> See the reign of Ethelred in the fifth chapter.

<sup>72</sup> Alur. Bev. 132. Sim. 203. 204.

<sup>73</sup> Chron. Lamb. ad ann. 1075.

sea, and was presented to William in Normandy, who granted him the first place at court, an apartment in the palace, and a yearly pension of three hundred and sixty-five pounds of silver. For several years the last male descendant of Cerdic confined his ambition to the sports of the field: in 1086 he obtained permission to conduct two hundred knights to Apulia, and from Apulia to the holy land. We shall meet him again in England during the reign of William Rufus<sup>74</sup>.

We may now pause to contemplate the consequences of this mighty revolution. The conqueror was undisputed master of the kingdom: opposition had melted away before him; and with the new dynasty had arisen a new system of national polity, erected on the ruins of the old. I. England presented the singular spectacle of a native population with a foreign sovereign, a foreign hierarchy, and a foreign nobility. The king was a Norman: the bishops and principal abbots, with the exception of Wulstan and Ingulf, were Normans: and, after the death of Waltheof, every earl, and every powerful vassal of the crown, was a Norman. Each of these, to guard against the disaffection of the natives, naturally surrounded himself with foreigners, who alone were the objects of his favour and patronage: and thus almost all, who aspired to the rank of gentlemen, all who possessed either wealth or authority, were also Normans. Individuals who in their own country had been poor and unknown, saw themselves unexpectedly elevated in the scale of society: they were astonished at their own good fortune: and generally displayed in their conduct all the arrogance of newly acquired power. Contempt and oppression became the portion of the natives, whose farms were pillaged, females

Consequences  
of the Norman  
conquest.

Depression of  
the natives.

<sup>74</sup> Malm. 58. Hoved. 264.



CHAP.  
VIII.

violated, and persons imprisoned at the caprice of these petty and local tyrants<sup>75</sup>. "I will not undertake," says an ancient writer, "to describe the misery of this wretched people. It "would be a painful task to me; and the account would be "disbelieved by posterity<sup>76</sup>."

William's  
riches.

The first donations which the king made to his followers, were taken either out of the demesne lands of the crown, or the estates of the natives who either had fallen in battle, or after the victory had refused to submit to the conqueror. The rest by taking the oath of allegiance to the new sovereign, secured to themselves for the present the possession of their property. But most of these engaged in some or other of the rebellions which followed: the violation of their fealty subjected them by law to the forfeiture of their estates: and new grants were made to reward the services of new adventurers. Nor were the grantees always satisfied with the king's bounty. Their insolence trampled on the rights of the natives: and their rapacity dispossessed their innocent but unprotected neighbours. The sufferers occasionally appealed to the equity of the king; but he was not eager to displease the men, on whose swords he depended for the possession of his crown, and if he ordered the restitution of the property which had been unjustly invaded, he seldom cared to enforce the execution of the decree which he had made. Harassed, however, by the importunate complaints of the English on the one hand, and the intractable rapacity of the Normans on the other, he commanded both parties to settle their disputes by compromise. The expedient relieved him from the performance of an office, in which his duty was opposed to his interests:

<sup>75</sup> Ex infimis Normannorum clientibus tribunos et centuriones ditissimos erexit. Orderic, 250. 253, 254, 255, 257, 259—262.

Eadmer, 57. Hunt. 212.

<sup>76</sup> Hist. Elieen. 516.

but it uniformly turned to the advantage of the oppressors. The Englishman was compelled to surrender the greater portion of his estate, that he might retain the remainder, not as the real proprietor, but as the vassal of the man, by whom he had been wronged<sup>77</sup>.

II. Thus, partly by grant and partly by usurpation, almost all the lands in the kingdom were transferred to the possession of Normans. The families which, under the Anglo-Saxon dynasty, had been distinguished by their opulence and power, successively disappeared. Many perished in the different insurrections: others begged their bread in exile, or languished in prison, or dragged on a precarious existence under the protection of their new lords. The king himself was become the principal proprietor in the kingdom. The royal demesnes had fallen to his share: and if these in some instances had been diminished by grants to his followers, the loss had been amply repaired from the forfeited estates of the English thanes. He possessed no fewer than one thousand four hundred and thirty-two manors in different parts of the kingdom<sup>78</sup>. The next to him was his brother Odo, distinguished by the title of the earl bishop, who held almost two hundred manors in Kent, and two hundred and fifty in other counties. Another prelate, highly esteemed, and as liberally rewarded by the conqueror, Geoffry, bishop of Coustances, left by his will two hundred and eighty manors to Roger Mowbray, his nephew. Robert, count of Mortaigne, the brother of William and Odo, obtained for his

Elevation of  
the foreigners.

<sup>77</sup> Compare the words of Gervase of Tilbury (Brad. i. 15), with the correct extract from the MS. of the Sharneburn family apud Wilk. Leg. Sax. 287.

<sup>78</sup> Manor (a Manendo, Orderic, 255) was synonymous in the language of the Normans with villa in Latin, and Tune in English. It

denoted an extensive parcel of land, with a house on it for the accommodation of the lord, and cottages for his slaves. He generally kept a part in his own hands, and bestowed the remainder on two or more tenants, who held of him by military service, or rent, or other prestations.

CHAP.  
VIII.

share nine hundred and seventy-three manors; four hundred and forty-two fell to the portion of Alan Fergant, earl of Bretagne; two hundred and ninety-eight to that of William Warrene; and one hundred and seventy-one to Richard de Clare. Other estates in greater or smaller proportions were bestowed on the rest of the foreign chieftains, according to the caprice or the gratitude of the new sovereign<sup>79</sup>.

In addition to the grant of lands, he conferred on his principal favourites another distinction honourable in itself, profitable to the possessors, and necessary for the stability of the Norman power. This was the earldom, or command of the several counties. Odo was created earl of Kent, and Hugh of Avranches earl of Chester, with royal jurisdiction within their respective earldoms. Fitz-Osbern obtained the earldom of Hereford, Roger Montgomery that of Shropshire, Walter Giffard that of Buckingham, Alan of Bretagne that of Richmond, and Ralph Guader that of Norfolk. In the Saxon times such dignities were usually granted for life: William made them hereditary in the same family<sup>80</sup>.

Their retain-  
ers.

It should, however, be observed that the Norman nobles were as prodigal as they were rapacious. Their vanity was flattered by the number and wealth of their retainers, whose services they purchased and requited with the most liberal donations. Hence the estates which they received from the king, they doled out to their followers in such proportions, and on such conditions, as were reciprocally stipulated. Of all his manors in Kent, the earl bishop did not retain more than a dozen in his

<sup>79</sup> Orderic, 250—255.

<sup>80</sup> The earls, besides their estates in the county, derived other profits from their earldoms, particularly the third penny of what was due to the king from proceedings at law.

Warrene, from his earldom of Surrey, received annually 1000 pounds (Orderic. interscript. Norm. 804); but in this sum must be included the profits arising from his lands.



own possession<sup>81</sup>. Fitz-Osbern was always in want : whatever he obtained he gave away : and the king himself repeatedly chided him for his thoughtlessness and prodigality<sup>82</sup>. Hugh of Avranches was surrounded by an army of knights, his retainers, who accompanied him wherever he went, pillaging the farms as they passed, and living at the expense of the people<sup>83</sup>. Thus it happened that not only the immediate vassals of the crown but the chief of their sub-vassals were also foreigners : and the natives who were permitted to retain the possession of land, gradually sank into the lowest classes of laymen.

III. So general and so rapid a transfer of property from one people to another could not be effected without producing important alterations in the condition of the tenures by which lands had been hitherto held. Of these tenures that by military service was esteemed the most honourable. In the preceding pages the reader will have noticed the rudiments of military tenures among the Anglo-Saxons : he will soon discover them under the Normans improved into a much more perfect, but also more onerous system. Whether the institution of Knights' fees was originally devised, or only introduced by the policy of the conqueror, may perhaps be doubted. It is indeed generally supposed that he brought it with him from Normandy, where it certainly prevailed under his successors : but I am ignorant of any ancient authority by which its existence can be proved either in that or any other country, previously to its establishment in this island. William saw that as his crown had been won, so it could be preserved, only by the sword. The unceasing hostility of the natives must have suggested the expediency of providing a force, which might at all moments be

Establish-  
ment of  
knights' fees.

<sup>81</sup> Domesday, Chenth.<sup>82</sup> Malms. 59.<sup>83</sup> Orderic, 253.

CHAP.  
VIII.

prepared to crush the rebellious, and overawe the disaffected : nor was it easy to imagine a plan better calculated for the purpose than that, which compelled each tenant in chief to have a certain number of knights or horsemen always ready to fight under his banner, and obey the commands of the sovereign. From the laws of the conqueror we may infer that this subject was discussed and determined in a great council of his vassals at London. " We will," says he, " that all the freemen of our  
 " kingdom possess their lands in peace, free from all tallage,  
 " and unjust exaction : that nothing be required or taken from  
 " them but their free service which they owe to us of right, as  
 " has been appointed to them, and granted by us with heredi-  
 " tary right for ever by the common council of our whole king-  
 " dom." " And we command that all earls, barons, knights,  
 " serjeants, and freemen be always provided with horses and  
 " arms as they ought, and that they be always ready to perform  
 " to us their whole service, in manner as they owe it to us of  
 " right for their fees and tenements, and as we have appointed  
 " to them by the common council of our whole kingdom, and  
 " as we have granted to them in fee with right of inheritance<sup>84</sup>." This free service which was so strongly enforced, consisted, as we learn from other sources, in the quota of horsemen completely armed, which each vassal was bound to furnish at the king's requisition, and to maintain in the field during the space of forty days. Nor was it confined solely to the lay tenants. The bishops and dignified ecclesiastics, with most of the clerical and monastic bodies, were compelled to submit to the same burthen. A few exemptions were indeed granted to those, who could prove that they held their lands in *francalmoigne* or free alms ; but the others, whose predecessors had been accustomed to fur-

<sup>84</sup> Wilk. Leg. 217. 228,

nish men to the armies during the invasions of the Danes, could not refuse to grant a similar aid to the present sovereign, to whom they all owed their dignities and opulence. This regulation enabled the crown at a short notice to raise an army of cavalry, which is said to have amounted to sixty thousand men<sup>85</sup>.

The tenants in chief imitated the sovereign in exacting from their retainers the same free service, which the king exacted from them. Thus every large property, whether it were held by a vassal of the crown, or a sub-vassal, became divided into two portions of unequal extent. One the lord reserved for his own use under the name of his demesne, cultivated part of it by his villeins, let out parts to farm, and gave parts to different tenants to be holden by any other than military service<sup>86</sup>. The second portion he divided into parcels called knights' fees, and bestowed on military tenants, with the obligation of serving on horseback at his requisition during the usual period<sup>87</sup>. But in these sub-infeudations each mesne lord was guided solely by his own judgment or caprice. The number of knights' fees established by some was greater, of those established by others was smaller, than the

<sup>85</sup> Order. 258. In a passage in Sprot, which is evidently mutilated, the number of knights' fees is fixed at 60,215, of which 28,015 are said to have belonged to the monks alone, independently of the rest of the clergy (Sprot, Chron. 114). Hence it has been inferred that they possessed almost one half of the landed property in the kingdom. But it is evident that there exists some error in the number. From the returns in the *Liber Niger Scaccarii* under Henry II. it appears that the number of knights' fees belonging to the monasteries was comparatively trifling: and, if the monks had really been compelled to give away to laymen the immense quantity of land necessary to constitute 28,015 knight's fees, we should certainly meet with complaints on the subject in some of their writers. I do not believe that one of them has ever so much as

alluded to the subject.

<sup>86</sup> Some lands were held in villenage even by freemen, who bound themselves to render such services as were usually rendered by villeins: others were held in soccage, that is by rent or any other free but conventional service, with the obligation of suit to the court of the lord. Burgage tenure was confined to the towns, and was frequently different even in the same town, according to the original will of the lord.

<sup>87</sup> Thus the obligation of military service was ultimately laid on the smaller portion of the land. The estates belonging to the abbey of Ramsey contained 390 hides (see the fragment printed after Sprot, p. 195—197). Yet the quantity of land which had been converted into knights' fees did not exceed 60. *Ibid*, p. 215—217. *Lib. Nig.* i. 256.



CHAP.  
VIII.

number of knights, whom they were bound to furnish by their tenures. Thus the bishop of Durham, and Roger de Burun owed the crown the same service of ten knights: but the former had enfeoffed no fewer than seventy, the latter only six. The consequence was that the prelate had always more than sufficient to perform his service, while Roger was compelled to supply his deficiency with hired substitutes, or the voluntary attendance of some of the freeholders on his demesne <sup>88</sup>.

But besides military service these tenures imposed on the vassal a number of obligations and burthens, without the knowledge of which it will be impossible to understand the nature of the transactions recorded in the following pages.

Fealty and  
homage.

1. Fealty was incident to every, even the lowest, species of tenure <sup>89</sup>. Besides fealty the military tenant was obliged to do homage, that he might obtain the investiture of his fee. Unarmed and bare-headed, on his knees, and with his hands placed between those of his lord, he repeated these words: "Hear, my lord; I become your liege man of life, and limb, and earthly worship: and faith and truth I will bear to you to live and die. So help me God." The ceremony was concluded with a kiss: and the man was thenceforth bound to respect and obey his lord: the lord to protect his man, and to warrant to him the possession

<sup>88</sup> Lib. Nig. i. 224. 306. 310. But what was the extent of a knight's fee? A hide of land contained four yard-lands; but the yard-land in different places was estimated at 16, 24, and even 40 acres, perhaps on account of the different value of the soil. We are told that four hides made an entire fee (Apud Sprot, p. 183): yet when we come to the fees themselves, we find none containing fewer than five hides, and some that contain more. Ibid. p. 216. In the return of Richard de Haia, we are told that knights do service for five caracutes or hides of land, and that some have that number, others not. Lib. Nig. 278.

<sup>89</sup> Even the villein took an oath of fealty to

his lord for the cottage and land which he enjoyed from his bounty, and promised to submit to his jurisdiction both as to body and chattels. Spelm. Arch. 226. But this oath of fealty became in the lapse of ages the cause of a great improvement in the condition of villeins. It entitled them to some consideration from their lords. Their tenements were suffered to descend to their children, who took the same oath, and performed the same services: and the land continued in the same family for so many generations, that the villein at length was deemed to have obtained a legal interest in it. Thus it is supposed that tenure by copyhold was established.

of his fec<sup>90</sup>. Hitherto in other countries the royal authority could only reach the sub-vassals through their lord, who alone had sworn fealty to the sovereign: nor did they deem themselves deserving of punishment, if they assisted him in his wars, or his rebellion against the crown. Such the law remained for a long period on the continent: but William, who had experienced its inconvenience, devised a remedy in England; and compelled all the free tenants of his immediate vassals to swear fealty to himself<sup>91</sup>. The consequence was an alteration in the words of the oath: the king's own tenants swore to be true to him against all manner of men: their sub-tenants swore to be true to them against all men but the king and his heirs. Hence, if they followed their lord in his rebellion, they were adjudged to have violated their allegiance, and became subjected to the same penalties as their leader.

2. In addition to service in the time of war, the military tenants of the crown were expected to attend the king's court at the three great festivals: and, unless they could shew a reasonable cause of absence, were bound to appear on other occasions, whenever they were summoned. But if this in some respects were a burthen, in others it was an honour and an advantage. In these assemblies they consulted together on all matters concerning the welfare or safety of the state, concurred with the sovereign in making or amending the laws, and formed the highest judicial tribunal in the kingdom. Hence they acquired the appellation of the king's barons: the collective body was called the baronage of England: and the lands which they held of the crown, were termed their respective baronies. By degrees, however, many of the smaller baronies became divided and sub-

Attendance at  
the king's  
court.

<sup>90</sup> Spelm. Arch. 296. Glan. ix. 1. Ex parte domini protectio, defensio, warrantia, ex parte tenentis reverentia et subjectio. Bract. ii. 35.

<sup>91</sup> Chron. Sax. 187. Alur. Bev. 136

CHAP.  
VIII.

divided by marriages and descents: and the poverty of the possessors induced them to exclude themselves from the assemblies of their colleagues. In the reign of John the distinction was established between the lesser and the greater barons: and as the latter only continued to exercise the privileges, they at length were alone known by the title of barons<sup>92</sup>.

Escheats.

3. According to a specious, but perhaps erroneous theory, fees are beneficiary grants of land, which originally depended for their duration on the pleasure of the lord, but were gradually improved into estates for life, and at last converted into estates of inheritance. But whatever might have been the practice in

<sup>92</sup> I am aware that in the opinion of some respectable antiquaries, a barony consisted of 13 knights' fees and one-third. But their opinion rests on no ancient authority, and is merely an inference drawn from Magna Charta, which makes the relief of a barony equal to the reliefs of  $13\frac{1}{3}$  knights' fees. But the distinction of greater and lesser barons was then established; and the former, harassed with arbitrary reliefs (Glanville, ix. 4), had insisted that a certain sum should be fixed by law. If this prove that a barony consisted of  $13\frac{1}{3}$  knights' fees, the same reasoning will prove that an earldom consisted of 20, which is certainly false. I may observe, 1. that our ancient writers frequently comprise all the tenants of the crown under the name of barons. 2. That in the *Dialogus de Scaccario*, their fees are divided into lesser and greater baronies (l. ii. c. 9). 3. That in the *Liber Niger Scaccarii* fee and barony are used synonymously; and some baronies are held by the service of thirty or forty knights, others by that of three or four. I will mention one instance, which proves both. Thus in the time of Henry I. Nicholas de Grainville held his barony in Northumberland by the service of three knights. His successor William left only two daughters, who divided the barony between them. To the questions put from the king, Hugh of Ellington, who married one of the sisters, answers that he holds half of the barony by the service of one knight and a

half; and Ralph de Gaugi, the son of the other sister, that he holds half of the fee by the service of one knight and a half (*Lib. Nig.* 332. 338). 4. In the constitutions of Clarendon under Henry II. it is determined that all bishops and parsons, holding of the king in chief, hold in barony, and are bound to attend the king's court like other barons (*Leg. Sax.* 324). Hence it may be fairly inferred that laymen holding in chief, originally at least, held also in barony. 5. In the 14th of Edward II. a petition with respect to scutage was presented by "the prelates, earls, barons, and others," stating "that the archbishops, bishops, prelates, earls, and barons, and other great lords of the land, held their baronies, lands, tenements, and honours in chief of the king by certain services, some by three knights' fees, and others by four, some by more and some by less, according to the ancient feoffments, and the quantity of their tenure, of which services the king and his ancestors have been seized by the hands of the aforesaid archbishops, prelates, earls, and barons, &c." From the whole document it appears that, as the ecclesiastical tenants are sometimes distinguished from each other, and sometimes comprehended under the general designation of prelates; so the lesser tenants in chief are sometimes distinguished from the earls and barons, and sometimes comprehended with them under the general title of barons. *Rot. Parl.* i. 383, 384.



former ages, the fees created by William and his followers, were all granted in perpetuity, to the feoffees and their legitimate descendants. There were however two cases in which they might escheat or fall to the lord: when by failure of heirs the race of the first tenant had become extinct<sup>93</sup>; or by felony or treason the actual tenant incurred the penalty of forfeiture<sup>94</sup>. On this account an officer was appointed by the crown in every county to watch over its rights, and take immediate possession of all escheated estates.

4. When the heir entered into possession of the fee, he was Reliefs. required to pay a certain sum to the lord under the name of a heriot among the Saxons, a relief among the Normans. By modern feudalists we are told that this was meant as an acknowledgment, that the fee was held from the bounty of the lord: but it may be fairly doubted whether their doctrine have any foundation in fact. Originally the heriot was demanded as due from the last tenant, and was discharged out of his personal estate<sup>95</sup>: he generally made provisions for the payment in his will: and it often appears in the form of a legacy, by which the vassal sought to testify his respect for the person, and his gratitude for the protection, of his lord<sup>96</sup>. By Canute the amount

<sup>93</sup> Glanv. vii. 17.

<sup>94</sup> Failure in military service was forbidden by the conqueror under the penalty of "full forfeiture." Leg. 217. 228. Canute had before enacted that if a vassal fled from his lord in an expedition, he should forfeit to the lord whatever he held of him, and to the king his other estates. Leg. 145.

<sup>95</sup> Edgar defines the heriot "a payment accustomed to be made to the king for the great men of the land after their death." Apud Seld. Spicil. 153. Canute promises, if a man die intestate, to take no more of his property than the heriot: and if he die in battle for his lord, to forgive the heriot. Leg.

144. 146. William determines that the relief for a vavasar shall be the horse of the deceased, such as it was at his death. Leg. 223.

<sup>96</sup> We have several wills with such provisions. In that of Ælfhelm the first bequest is the heriot, 100 mancuses of gold, two swords, four shields, four spears, two horses with their equipments, and two without: and then an estate is ordered to be sold for 100 mancuses of gold to pay the heriot. Apud Lye, app. N<sup>o</sup> ii. It appears that under the Saxons some persons had obtained an exemption from this payment. There were a few in Kent. Nomina eorum de quatuor levis non relevantium terram, similium Alnodo cilt.

CHAP.  
VIII.

of the heriot was limited according to the rank of each tenant : by William that amount was considerably diminished. When he confirmed the law of Canute, he entirely omitted the demand of money, and contented himself with a portion of the horses and arms, the hounds and hawks of the deceased<sup>97</sup>. But the new regulation was soon violated : avarice again introduced pecuniary reliefs : and the enormous sums which were exacted by succeeding kings, became the frequent subject of useless complaint and ineffectual redress.

Aids.

5. The conqueror had solemnly pledged his word that he would never require more from his vassals than their stipulated services. But the ingenuity of the feudal lawyers discovered that there were four occasions on which the lord had a right to levy of his own authority a pecuniary aid on his tenants ; when he paid the relief of his fee, when he made his eldest son a knight, when he gave his eldest daughter in marriage, and when he had the misfortune to be a captive in the hands of his enemies<sup>98</sup>. Of these cases the first could not apply to the tenants of the crown, because the sovereign, holding of no one, was not subject to a relief ; but this advantage was counterbalanced by the frequent appeals which he made to their generosity, and which, under a powerful prince, it was dangerous to resist. They claimed, however, and generally exercised, the right of fixing the amount of such aids, and of raising them as they thought proper, either by the impost of a certain sum on every knights' fee, or

Otherwise all paid it, who had the jurisdiction of sac and soc. *De terris eorum habet relevamen qui habent suam sacram et socam.* Domesd. 1. a 2.

<sup>97</sup> Compare the laws of Canute (*Leg. Sax.* 144) with those of the conqueror (p. 223). Both equally refer to the personal estate of the deceased. If a knight were so poor that he

left not horses and armour, William decided that his relief should be 100 shillings. This always remained the relief of a knight's fee. But the relief for a barony continued arbitrary (*Glanv.* ix. 4) : obviously because baronies or fees held in chief of the king were some of greater and others of smaller value.

<sup>98</sup> *Glanv.* ix. 8. *Spelm. Arch.* 53.

the grant of a certain portion from the moveables of each individual, varying according to circumstances from a fortieth to a fifth of their estimated value.

6. Fees of inheritance necessarily required limitations as to Descents. alienation and descent. The law would not permit the actual tenant to defeat the will of his lord, or the rights of his issue. Whatever he had acquired by purchase, or industry, or favour, remained at his own disposal: but the fee which he had received to transmit to his descendants, he could neither devise by will, nor alienate by gift or sale. After his death it went, whether he would or not, to the nearest heir, who inherited the whole, and was bound to perform the services originally stipulated<sup>99</sup>. It was, however, long before the right of representation in descents could be fully established. That the eldest son of the first tenant was the legitimate heir, was universally admitted: but considerable doubts were entertained, whether at the death of the second, the fee should descend to his son or his brother: for, if the former were the nearest in blood to the late possessor, the latter was nearest to the original feoffee. This uncertainty is the more deserving of the reader's attention, as in the descent of the crown it explains the occasional interruptions, which he has beheld in the line of representation, and the part which the thanes or barons took in the election of the sovereign. If the son of the last king were a minor, the claim of the young prince was often opposed by that of his uncle, whose appeal to the great council was generally sanctioned by the national approbation<sup>100</sup>.

7. The descent of fees brought with it two heavy grievances, Wardships

<sup>99</sup> Leg. 266. Glanv. vii. 3.

<sup>100</sup> Thus though Ethelred left two sons, Alfred succeeded to the throne. In the same

manner Edred succeeded his brother Edmund, in preference to his nephews Edwy and Edgar.



CHAP.  
VIII.

wardships and marriages, which were unknown in most feudal constitutions, and in England experienced long and obstinate opposition. That attempts had been made to introduce them at an early period, is not improbable: from the charter of Henry I. it is certain that both had been established under the reign of his brother William Rufus, perhaps even of his father, the conqueror<sup>101</sup>. After a long struggle it was finally decided that, when the heir was a minor, he should not hold the fee, because his age rendered him incapable of performing military service. The lord immediately entered into possession, and appropriated the profits to himself, or gave them to a favourite, or let them out to farm. Nor was this all. He separated the heir from his mother and relations, and took him under his own custody, on the ground that it was his interest to see that the young man was educated in a manner which might hereafter fit him for the performance of military service<sup>102</sup>. He was, however, obliged to defray all the expenses of his ward: and to grant to him, when he had completed his twenty-first year, the livery of his estate without the payment of the relief<sup>103</sup>.

## Marriages.

8. But frequently the heirs were females; and, as *they* could not perform military service, every precaution was taken to guard against the prejudice, which might be suffered from their succession. Their father was forbidden to give them in marriage without the consent of the lord; who, however, was bound to grant his consent, unless he could shew a reasonable cause of refusal. When the tenant died, the fee descended to the daughter, or if they were more than one, to all the daughters

<sup>101</sup> Chart. Hen. I. apud Wilk. Leg. 233. From the words of the charter the reader would not infer, that they were recent institutions.

<sup>102</sup> Quis, says Fortescue, infantem talem in actibus bellicis, quos facere ratione tenuræ suæ

ipse astringitur domino feodi, melius instruere poterit aut velit quam dominus ille, cui ab eo servitium tale debetur, &c. De Laud. Leg. Ang. p. 105.

<sup>103</sup> Glanv. vii. 9. Spelm. 565.

in common. The lord had the wardship: as each completed her fourteenth year, he compelled her to marry the man of his choice; or, if he allowed her to remain single, continued to act as her guardian, and could prevent her from marrying without his advice and consent. After marriage the husband exercised all the rights of his wife, did homage in her place, and performed the accustomed services. The pretext for these harassing regulations, was a necessary attention to the interests of the lord, whose fee might otherwise come into the possession of a man unable or unwilling to comply with the obligations: but avarice converted them into a constant source of emolument, by selling the marriages of heiresses to the highest bidder<sup>104</sup>.

IV. From the feudal tenures I may be allowed to pass to a few other innovations, which chiefly regard the administration of justice. 1. In the king's court all the members, in the inferior courts, the president and principal assessors, were Normans, who, while they were bound to decide in most cases according to the laws, were unable to understand the language of the natives. For their instruction and guidance the statutes of the Anglo-Saxon kings were translated into Norman. But where the judges were unacquainted with more than one language, it was necessary that the pleadings should be in that idiom. In inferior tribunals much business was of necessity transacted in the language of the people: but in the king's court, which from its superior dignity and authority gradually drew all actions of importance to itself, causes were pleaded, and judgments given in the Norman tongue. This, added to the consideration that all

Changes in  
judicial pro-  
ceedings.

Use of the  
Norman lan-  
guage.

<sup>104</sup> Glanv. vii. 12. This grievance, with the whole system, was at last abolished by the statute of the 12th of Charles II. by which "all tenures by knight-service of the king, or of any other person, and by knight service

"in capite, and soccage in capite of the king, "and the fruits and consequences thereof were "taken away or discharged, and all tenures of "honours, manors, lands, &c. were turned "into free and common soccage."

CHAP.  
VIII.

persons enjoying influence and patronage were foreigners, made the study of that language a necessary branch of education: and those who hoped to advance their children either in church or state, were careful that they should possess so useful an acquirement <sup>105</sup>.

Excessive  
mulets.

2. If the Anglo-Saxon laws abounded with pecuniary penalties, in the Norman code they were equally numerous and still more oppressive. By the former these mulets were fixed and certain, apportioned with the most scrupulous exactitude to the supposed enormity of the offence: in the latter almost every transgression subjected the delinquent to an *amerciamment*: that is, placed his personal estate at the *mercy* of his lord, who might take the whole, or only a part, at his pleasure. The king, indeed, ordered the Anglo-Saxon customs to be observed: the prejudices or interest of the judges led them to impose the *amerciament*s of the Normans. This was an evil grievously felt by the people: and to procure a remedy for the abuse seems to have been one of the principal objects of those, who so frequently, for more than a century, petitioned that the laws “of the good king Edward” might be inviolably observed.

Penalty for  
murder.

3. Though the natives were at last compelled to submit to the invaders, they often gratified their revenge by private assassination. To provide for the security of his followers, the king did not enact a new, but revived an old, statute: and the same penalty which Canute imposed for the destruction of a Dane, was imposed by William for the violent death of a Norman. If the

<sup>105</sup> Ingulf. 71. 88. He attributes the preference which the Normans gave to their own tongue to their hatred of the English. *Ipsam etiam idioma tantum abhorrebant, quod leges terræ, statutaque Anglicorum regum lingua Gallica tractarentur, et pueris etiam in scholis principia literarum grammatica Gallice et non*

*Anglice traderentur*, p. 71. Their ignorance of the English tongue appears to me a much better reason; but still less can I believe with Holkot that the king entertained the absurd idea of abolishing the English language. *Ead. Spicil.* 189.



assassin was not delivered to the officers of justice within the space of eight days, a mulct of forty-six marks was levied on the lord of the manor, or the inhabitants of the hundred, in which the dead body had been found. But the two nations by inter-marriages gradually coalesced into one people: at the close of a century it was deemed unnecessary, because it would have been fruitless, to inquire into the descent of the slain: and the law, which had been originally framed to guard the life of the foreigner, was enforced for the protection of every freeman<sup>106</sup>. In legal language the penalty was denominated the "murder," a term which has since been transferred to the crime itself.

4. Both nations were equally accustomed to appeal in their courts to the judgment of God: but the Normans despised the fiery ordeals of the English, and preferred their own trial by battle as more worthy of freemen and warriors. The king sought to satisfy them both. When the opposite parties were countrymen, he permitted them to follow their national customs: when they were not, the appellee, if he were a foreigner or of foreign descent, might offer wager of battle, or, should this be declined, might clear himself by his own oath, and the oaths of his witnesses according to the provisions of the Norman law. But if he were a native, it was left to his option to offer battle, to go to the ordeal, or to produce in his defence the usual number of lawful compurgators<sup>107</sup>.

Wager of  
battle.

5. In all the other christian countries in Europe the bishops were accustomed to give judgment in spiritual causes in their own particular courts: in England they had always heard and decided such causes in the courts of the hundred. William disap-

Separation of  
the secular  
and spiritual  
courts.

<sup>106</sup> Leg. 224. 228. 280. Sic permixtæ sunt nationes, ut vix discerni possit hodie, de liberis loquor, quis Anglicus quis Normannus sit ge-

nere. Dial. de Scac. 26. Of course villeins or slaves were still reputed Englishmen. Ibid

<sup>107</sup> Ibid. 218. 230.

CHAP.  
VIII.

proved of this custom, and by advice of all his prelates and princes forbade the bishops and archdeacons to hear spiritual causes for the future in secular courts, authorized them to establish tribunals of their own, and commanded the sheriffs to compel obedience to the citations of the ecclesiastical judge. By some writers this innovation has been attributed to the policy of the clergy, who sought by the establishment of separate tribunals to render themselves independent on the secular power : by others to that of the barons, whose object it was to remove from the civil courts the only order of men, who dared to oppose a barrier to their rapacity and injustice. Perhaps the true cause may be found in the law itself, which merely seeks to enforce the observance of the canons, and to assimilate the discipline of the English to that of the foreign churches<sup>108</sup>. But whatever might be the design of the legislature, the measure was productive of very important consequences. The separation created a strong rivalry between the two jurisdictions, which will occupy the attention of the reader in a subsequent chapter, and by removing so respectable a magistrate as the bishop from the courts of the hundred, became one of the principal causes, why they gradually sunk into disrepute, and ultimately into desuetude.

Much of the  
Anglo-Saxon  
polity pre-  
served.

V. These innovations will perhaps dispose the reader to conclude that the partiality or interest of William led him to remodel the whole frame of the Anglo-Saxon polity. But the inference is not warranted by the fact. As the northern tribes were all propagated from the same original stock, so their institutions, though diversified by time, and climate, and accident, bore a strong resemblance to each other, and the customs of the conquerors were readily amalgamated with those of the con-

<sup>108</sup> Ibid, 292.

quered. Of all the feudal services enforced by the Normans, there is not perhaps one of which some obscure traces may not be discovered among the Anglo-Saxons. The victors might extend or improve, but they did not invent or introduce, them. The ealdormen of former times, the greater and lesser thanes, the ceorls and theowas seem to have disappeared: but a closer inspection will discover the same orders of men existing under the new names of counts or earls, of barons, of knights and esquires, of free tenants, and of villeins and neifs. The national council, though it hardly contained a single native, continued to be constituted as it had been formerly, of the principal landed proprietors, the immediate vassals of the crown: it assembled at the same stated periods: it exercised the same judicial and legislative powers. The administration of justice was vested in the ancient tribunals, the king's court, the shire-motes, hundred-motes, and hall-motes: the statutes of the Anglo-Saxon kings, with the provincial customs known by the names of West-Saxon law, Mercian law, and Northumbrian law, were repeatedly confirmed<sup>109</sup>; and even the rights and privileges of every smaller district and petty lordship were carefully ascertained, and ordered to be observed.

VI. It could not be supposed that the Normans in the provinces, foreigners as they were, and indebted for their possessions to the sword, would respect customs which they deemed barbarous, which they thought prejudicial to their interests. But, while they tyrannised over the natives, they often defrauded the crown of its ancient rights; and the king, treading in the footsteps of the great Alfred, to put an end to all uncertainty, ordered an exact survey to be made of every hide of land in the kingdom. Commissioners were sent into the counties, with

Compilation  
of Domesday.

<sup>109</sup> Leg. Sax. 219. Ing. 88. Hov. 343.



CHAP.  
VIII.

authority to impanel a jury in each hundred, from whose presentments and verdicts the necessary information might be obtained. They directed their inquiries to every interesting particular, the extent of each estate, its division into arable land, pasture, meadow, and wood: the names of the owner, tenants, and sub-tenants, the number of the inhabitants and their condition, whether it were free or servile: the nature and the obligations of the tenure, the estimated value before and since the conquest, and the amount of the land-tax paid at each of these periods<sup>110</sup>. The returns were transmitted to a board sitting at Winchester, by which they were arranged in order, and placed upon record. The commissioners entered on their task in the year 1080, and completed it in 1086. The fruit of their labours was the compilation of two volumes, which were deposited in the exchequer, and have descended to posterity with the appropriate title of the Domesday, or book of judgment<sup>111</sup>.

The king's  
revenue.

VII. From the preceding notices the reader will be able to form some notion of many of the sources, from which the king's revenue was derived. 1. The rents of the crown lands were generally paid in kind, and allotted to the support of the royal household. 2. From his military tenants he received considerable sums under the different heads of reliefs, aids, ward-

<sup>110</sup> In these inquiries the king was often deceived by the partiality of the jurors. Ingulf observes that this was the case with respect to the lands of his abbey. *Taxatores penes nostrum monasterium benevoli et amantes non ad verum pretium nec ad verum spatium nostrum monasterium librabant, miserecorditer præcaventes in futurum regiis exactionibus, et aliis oneribus piissima nobis benevolentia providentes*, p. 79. He gives several other instances of false returns. See also Orderic, 678.

<sup>111</sup> The first volume is a large folio of vellum, and in 382 double pages, written in a

small character, contains thirty-one counties, beginning with Kent, and ending with Lincolnshire. The other is a quarto volume of 450 double pages in a large character, but contains only the counties of Essex, Norfolk, and Sussex. There is no description of the four northern counties: but the West Riding of Yorkshire is made to comprehend that part of Lancashire which lies to the north of the Ribble, with some districts in Westmoreland and Cumberland: while the southern portion of Lancashire is included in Cheshire. Rutland is similarly divided between Nottinghamshire and Lincolnshire.

ships, and the marriages of heiresses. For unless the female ward purchased at a considerable price the permission to wed the man of her own choice, he always disposed of her in marriage by private sale, and obtained a greater or smaller sum in proportion to the value of her fee<sup>112</sup>. 3. Escheats and forfeitures continually occurred, and, whether the king retained the lands himself, or gave them after some time to his favourites, they always brought money into the exchequer. 4. The fines paid by litigants for permission to have their quarrels terminated in the king's courts, the mulcts, or pecuniary penalties imposed by the laws, and the amerciements, which were sometimes customary, generally arbitrary, according to the caprice or discretion of the judges, amounted in the course of each year to enormous sums. 5. He levied tolls at bridges, fairs, and markets, exacted certain customs on the export and import of goods, and received fees, and rents, and tallages, from the inhabitants of the burghs and ports<sup>113</sup>. Lastly, William revived the odious tax called the danegelt, which had been abolished by Edward the confessor. It was frequently levied for his use, and, in some years at least, at the rate of six shillings on every hide of land. From all these sources money constantly flowed into the exchequer, till the king was reputed to be the most opulent prince in Christendom. His daily income, even with the exception of fines, gifts, and amerciements, amounted, if we may believe an ancient historian, who seems to write from authentic documents, to £1061. 10s. 1½d.<sup>114</sup>:

<sup>112</sup> As an instance Geoffry de Mandeville in the second year of Henry III. gave 20,000 marks to marry Isabella, countess of Gloucester. Madox, 322.

<sup>113</sup> Orderic, 258. The tallage was an aid raised by the king's own authority on his demesne lands. The burghs and cities frequently offered a gift in lieu of the tallage,

which was occasionally refused. Thus in the 39th of Henry III. the citizens of London offered two thousand marks; but were compelled to pay a tallage of three thousand. Brady, i. 178. Other lords raised tallages in a similar manner. The word has the same meaning as our present 'excise,' a cutting off.

<sup>114</sup> Orderic, 258.

CHAP.  
VIII.

Rebellion of  
Norman barons.  
1075.

a prodigious and almost incredible sum, if we reflect that the pound of that period was equal in weight to three nominal pounds of the present day, and that the value of silver was perhaps ten times as great as in modern times.

After the surrender of Morcar, William had led an army into Normandy to support his interests in the province of Maine. His absence encouraged the malcontents in England to unfurl the banner of insurrection. But the rebels were no longer natives: they were Normans, dissatisfied with the rewards which they had received, and offended by the haughty and overbearing carriage of the king<sup>115</sup>. At their head were Roger Fitz-Osbern, who had succeeded his father in the earldom of Hereford, and Ralph de Guader, a noble Breton, earl of Norfolk. The latter, in defiance of the royal prohibition, had married the sister of the former: and the two earls, aware of William's vengeance, resolved to anticipate the danger. It was their object to prevent his return to England: to partition the kingdom into the three great divisions of Wessex, Mercia, and Northumbria; to take two of these for themselves, and to give the third to Waltheof, whose accession to the confederacy would, they expected, secure the co-operation of the natives. Waltheof refused to engage in the enterprise: but imprudently suffered himself to be sworn to secrecy. The plan of the conspirators was soon discovered to William de Warrenne, and Richard de Bienfait, the grand justiciaries: in a battle at Bicham in Norfolk, the rebels were defeated, and every prisoner made in

<sup>115</sup> They accused him of having banished for life Warleng, earl of Mortagne, for an offensive expression, and of having procured by poison the death of Conan, earl of Bretagne, and of Walter, earl of Pontoise. Orderic, p. 303, 304. But it appears from William of

Jumiege (vii. 19) that the words of Warleng were sufficient evidence of a conspiracy against his sovereign; and the other charges were but reports which had never been substantiated. See Maseres, Orderic, 305. Note.



the pursuit was punished with the loss of his right foot. The victors besieged Guader in his castle of Norwich during three months: at length, despairing of succour, he consented to quit the kingdom with his followers within a certain period; and after visiting Denmark, returned to his patrimonial estates in Bretagne<sup>116</sup>.

William had now returned from Normandy, and summoned a council of his barons at London. In this court Guader was outlawed: Fitz-Osbern was convicted of treason, and sentenced, according to the Norman code, to perpetual imprisonment, and the loss of his property. His father's services indeed pleaded forcibly in his favour: but his proud and ungovernable temper disdained to ask for mercy<sup>117</sup>. Waltheof was next arraigned. His secret had been betrayed by the perfidy of Judith, who had fixed her affections on a Norman nobleman, and was anxious to emancipate herself from her English husband. By the Anglo-Saxon law treason was punished with death and forfeiture: but the guilt of Waltheof was rather of that species, which has since been denominated misprision of treason. He had been acquainted with the conspiracy, and had not as a faithful vassal disclosed it to his sovereign. His judges were divided in opinion: and the unfortunate earl continued during a year, a close prisoner in the castle of Winchester. Archbishop Lanfranc laboured to procure his release: but the intrigues of his wife, and of the noblemen who sought his estates, defeated the efforts of the primate. Waltheof was condemned to die, and executed

Their fate

Execution of  
Waltheof.  
1076.

<sup>116</sup> Lanfran. ep. 318. The battle was fought in campo, qui Fagaduna dicitur, which I conceive to be a translation of the English name Beecham. Orderic, 318.

<sup>117</sup> When the king sent him a valuable present of clothes, he kindled a fire in his prison, and burnt them (Ord. p. 322). From another passage in the same writer we learn that earls

were distinguished by a particular dress (Id. p. 327). It is probable the articles sent to Fitz-Osbern were of that description. They consisted of a vest of silk, *interula serica*, a mantle, *chlamys*, and a shorter cloak of the skins of martens, *rheno de pretiosis pellibus peregrinorum murium*. Ord. p. 322.

CHAP.  
VIII.

at an early hour the next morning, before the citizens could be apprized of his intended fate. By the natives his death was sincerely deplored. They deemed him the victim of Norman injustice, and revered his memory as that of a martyr<sup>118</sup>.

The reader will be pleased to learn that the perfidy of Judith experienced a suitable retribution. William ordered her to marry a foreign nobleman, named Simon: but she refused to give her hand to a husband that was deformed. The king knew how to punish her disobedience. Simon married the eldest daughter of Waltheof<sup>119</sup>, and received the estates of her father: Judith was left to languish in poverty, unpitied by the English or the Normans, and the object of general hatred or contempt<sup>120</sup>.

The murder  
of Walcher.

The remaining transactions of the king's reign may be divided into those which regarded his English, and those which regarded his transmarine dominions. I. He led a powerful army into Wales, established his superiority over the natives of that country; and restored to freedom several hundreds of English slaves<sup>121</sup>. Malcolm of Scotland had renewed his ravages in Northumberland; and Robert, the eldest son of the conqueror, was sent to chastise his perfidy. But the two princes did not meet: and the only result of the expedition was the foundation of Newcastle on the left bank of the Tyne<sup>122</sup>. The earldom of the country had been given, after the condemnation of Waltheof, to Walcher, a native of Lorraine, who had been lately raised to the episcopal see of Durham. The bishop was of a mild and

<sup>118</sup> I have chiefly followed Orderic (p. 302 — 327), who minutely describes the whole affair. According to some of our chroniclers Waltheof was more guilty, having at first embarked in the conspiracy. Malm. 58. Hunt. 211.

<sup>119</sup> This lady's name was Matilda. After the death of Simon she married David, who

became king of Scotland in 1125. In her right he was earl of Huntingdon, which dignity for some centuries afterwards was annexed to the crown of Scotland. Script. Nor. p. 702.

<sup>120</sup> Ingulf, 73.

<sup>121</sup> Chron. Sax. 184. Hunt. 212.

<sup>122</sup> Simeon, 211. Brompt. 977. West 228.

easy disposition: his humanity revolted from the idea of oppressing the inhabitants himself: but his indolence prevented him from seeing or from restraining the oppressions of his officers. Liulf, a noble Englishman, had ventured to accuse them before the prelate: and in the course of a few days he was slain. Walcher publicly declared his innocence of the homicide; compelled the murderers to offer the legal compensation, and engaged to act as mediator between them and the relations of Liulf. Both parties met by agreement at Gateshead: but the bishop perceiving indications of violence among the natives, retired into the church. It was set on fire. He first compelled the murderers to go out, who were immediately slain. Unable to bear the violence of the flames, he wrapped his mantle round his head, and appeared at the door. A voice immediately exclaimed: "Good rede, short rede<sup>123</sup>; slay ye the bishop!" and he fell pierced with a number of wounds. The king commissioned his brother Odo to avenge the fate of Walcher. The guilty absconded at his approach: but Odo thinking it unnecessary to discriminate between guilt and innocence, executed without investigation such of the natives as fell into his hands, and ravaged the whole country<sup>124</sup>.

1080.  
May.

This prelate, who had so long enjoyed the friendship, was at last destined to experience the resentment, of his brother. Odo, not content with the rank which he held in Normandy and England, aspired to the papacy. The fortune of the Guiscard had excited the most extravagant expectations in the minds of his countrymen: and it was believed that with a Norman pope, the whole of Italy must fall under the yoke of the Normans. By what means Odo was to obtain the papal dignity, we are not

Imprisonment  
of Odo.  
1082.

<sup>123</sup> An old proverb—meaning that the shortest counsel is the best.

<sup>124</sup> Sim. 47. Malm. 62. Chron. Sax. 184 Flor. 639. Alur. Bev. 135.



CHAP.  
VIII.

told: but several of William's favourite officers had pledged themselves to follow the prelate. The scheme was defeated by the promptitude of the king, who seized the treasures designed for the enterprise, and ordered his attendants to apprehend his brother. They hesitated out of respect to the episcopal character. William arrested him himself: and, when Odo remonstrated, he replied: "It is not the bishop of Bayeux, but the earl of Kent that I make my prisoner." He remained in close confinement, till the death of the king<sup>125</sup>.

Projected in-  
vasion of  
Canute.  
1085.

The conqueror had reached the zenith of his power, when a new and formidable antagonist arose in the north, Canute, the son of Sveno, who had succeeded to the throne of Denmark. Like the king of England he was an illegitimate child: but the disgrace of his birth was lost in the splendour of his abilities. He determined to claim the English crown, as successor of his namesake, Canute the great: Olave, king of Norway, sent a fleet of sixty sail to his aid: and his father-in-law, Robert, earl of Flanders, promised to join him with six hundred ships. William felt considerable alarm: conscious that he could not depend on the affections of his subjects, he collected adventurers from every nation of Europe: the treasures which he had amassed with unfeeling avarice, were employed in the hire of auxiliaries; and the natives were astonished and dismayed at the multitudes of armed foreigners, whom he introduced into the island<sup>126</sup>. For more than a year Canute lingered in the

<sup>125</sup> Chron. Sax. 184. Flor. 641. Malm. 63. Orderic apud Du Chesne, 573. The distinction between the bishop of Bayeux, and earl of Kent was suggested by Lanfranc. Knyghton, 2359.

<sup>126</sup> Chron. Sax. 186. If the reader be surprised that William could engage such numbers of foreigners in his service, he should

recollect that the Gothic nations were still attached to the habits of their fathers. From Tacitus (Germ. xiii. xiv.) we learn that the young men, as soon as they had solemnly received their arms, entered into the service of some celebrated chieftain: or, if their own tribe were at peace, sought military glory in some foreign nation. It was the same in the

port of Haithaby <sup>127</sup>. His wishes were continually disappointed, and his commands disobeyed. The prevalence of contrary winds, or the deficiency of provisions, or the absence of the principal officers, prevented his departure. At length a mutiny burst forth, and the armament was dispersed. Some have ascribed the failure of the expedition to the influence of the presents, which William had distributed among the Danes: while others have referred it to the perfidious ambition of Olave, the brother of Canute <sup>128</sup>.

II. When the king undertook the invasion of England, he had reason to fear for the security of his own dominions during his absence: and on that account had attempted to allay the jealousy of the king of France, by stipulating, in the event of success, to resign Normandy to his eldest son Robert. The young prince was accordingly invested with the nominal government of the dutchy under the superintendence of his mother Matilda: and on two occasions was permitted to receive the homage of the Norman barons as their immediate lord. But when he had grown up, and claimed what he conceived to be his right, William gave him a peremptory refusal <sup>129</sup>.

War between  
William and  
his son Robert.

Robert's discontent, which was kept alive by the secret suggestions of his friends, was roused into a flame by the imprudence of his brothers, William and Henry. These princes were proud of their superior favour with their father, and jealous of

eleventh century. The young men, destined to the profession of arms, became the retainers of one of their chiefs at home, or travelled to seek their fortune abroad. Hence mercenaries were always to be obtained. As every baron sought to surround himself with knights and their esquires, the increased demand had increased their number: and as the duration of their services was frequently very limited, thou-

sands were at all times ready to obey any call that promised wealth and glory.

<sup>127</sup> Now Haddeby, on the right bank of the river Schle, opposite to Schleswig. See Ethelwerd, 474.

<sup>128</sup> Chron. Sax. 187. Flor. 641. Malm. 60. Ælnoth, vit. Can. xiii. Chron. Petro. 51. Saxo, 217.

<sup>129</sup> Orderic, 349.

CHAP.  
VIII.

---

the ambitious pretensions of Robert. While the court remained for a few days in the little town of L'Aigle, they went to the house which had been allotted for the residence of their brother : and from a balcony emptied a pitcher of water on his head, as he walked before the door. Alberic de Grentmesnail exhorted him to avenge the insult : with his drawn sword he rushed up stairs : the alarm was instantly given : and William hastened to the spot, where he succeeded with difficulty in separating his children. But Robert secretly withdrew the same evening, made an unsuccessful attempt to surprise the castle of Rouen, and meeting with supporters among the Norman barons, levied war upon his father<sup>130</sup>. He was, however, soon driven out of Normandy, and compelled to wander during five years in the neighbouring countries, soliciting aid from his friends, and spending on his pleasures the monies which they advanced. From his mother Matilda he received frequent and valuable presents : but William, though he excused her conduct on the plea of maternal affection, severely punished her messengers as wanting in duty to their sovereign. At last the exile fixed his residence in the castle of Gerberoi, which he had received from the king of France ; and supported himself and his followers by the plunder of the adjacent country. William laid siege to the castle : and on one occasion the father and son accidentally engaged in single combat without knowing each other. The youth of Robert was more than a match for the age of William. He wounded his father in the hand, and killed the horse under him. Tokig, who brought the king a second horse, and several of his companions, were left dead on the field. William in despair of success retired from the siege : but his resentment

<sup>130</sup> Orderic, 351.



was gradually appeased, and a reconciliation apparently effected, by the tears and intreaties of Matilda <sup>131</sup>. CHAP.  
VIII.

As the king advanced in years, he grew excessively corpulent : and to reduce his bulk, submitted by the advice of his physicians to a long course of medicine. Philip of France, in allusion to this circumstance, said in a conversation with his courtiers, that the king of England was *lying in* at Rouen. When this insipid jest, which cost the lives of hundreds, who never heard of it, was reported to William, he burst into a paroxysm of rage. His martial spirit could not brook the indignity of being compared to a woman ; and he swore that at *his churching* he would set all France in a blaze <sup>132</sup>. He was no sooner able to sit on horseback, than he summoned his troops, entered the French territory, pillaged every thing around him, and took by surprise the city of Mante, which during his minority had been severed from his patrimonial dominions. By the orders of the king, or through the wantonness of the soldiery, the town was immediately set on fire, and many of the inhabitants perished in the conflagration. William rode to view the scene, when his horse, chancing to tread on the embers, by a violent effort to extricate himself, threw the king on the pommel of the saddle ; and the bruise produced a rupture accompanied with fever and inflammation. He was conveyed back in a dangerous state to the suburbs of Rouen, where he lingered for the space of six weeks. William invades France.  
1087.

Aug. 10.

During his illness he enjoyed the full use of his faculties, and conversed freely with his attendants on the different transactions of his reign. A few days before his death he assembled the His last illness.

<sup>131</sup> According to Florence (619), as soon as Robert knew his father, he dismounted, and helped him on horseback : I have preferred the narrative of the Chronicon Lambardi

(ad ann. 1079), as the more ancient authority.

<sup>132</sup> It was customary for the woman, who was churched, to bear in her hand a lighted taper.

CHAP.  
VIII.

---

prelates and barons round his bed, and in their presence bequeathed to his son Robert, who was absent, Normandy with its dependencies. It was, he observed, the inheritance which he had received from his fathers: and, on that account, he was willing that it should descend to his eldest son. To England he had no better right, than what he derived from the sword: the succession therefore to that kingdom he would leave to the decision of God: though it was his most ardent wish that it might fall to the lot of his second son. At the same time he advised William to repair to England, and gave him a recommendatory letter directed to archbishop Lanfranc. He had hitherto made no mention of Henry, the third brother: and the impatience of the prince urged him to inquire of his father what portion was left to him. "Five thousand pounds of silver," was his answer. "But what use can I have for the money," said the prince, "if I have not a home to live in?" The king replied: "Be patient: and thou shalt inherit the fortunes of both thy brothers<sup>133</sup>." William immediately began his journey for England: Henry hastened to the treasury and received his money.

After the departure of the two princes it was suggested to the king that if he hoped for mercy from God, he ought to show mercy to man, and to liberate the many noble prisoners whom he kept in confinement. He first endeavoured to justify their detention, partly on the ground of their treasons, partly on the plea of necessity; and then assented to the request, but excepted his brother Odo, a man, he observed, whose turbulence would be the ruin of both England and Normandy. The friends of the prelate, however, were importunate: and at last by repeated

<sup>133</sup> Ord. 655—660. This prophecy was probably invented after Henry's accession to the throne.

solicitations extorted from the reluctant monarch an order for his immediate enlargement. CHAP.  
VIII.

Early in the morning of the ninth of September the king heard the sound of a bell, and eagerly inquired what it meant. He was informed that it tolled the hour of prime in the church of St. Mary. "Then," said he, stretching out his arms, "I commend my soul to my lady, the mother of God, that by her holy prayers she may reconcile me to her son my lord Jesus Christ:" and immediately expired. From the events which followed his death the reader may judge the unsettled state of society at the time. The knights and prelates hastened to their respective homes to secure their property: the citizens of Rouen began to conceal their most valuable effects: the servants rifled the palace and hurried away with their booty: and the royal corpse for three hours lay almost in a state of nudity on the ground. At length the archbishop ordered the body to be interred at Caen: and Herluin, a neighbouring knight, out of compassion, conveyed it at his own expense to that city. His death.  
Sept. 9.

At the day appointed for the interment, prince Henry, the Norman prelates, and a multitude of clergy and people, assembled in the church of St. Stephen, which the conqueror had founded. The mass had been performed: the corpse was placed on the bier: and the bishop of Evreux had pronounced the panegyric of the deceased, when a voice from the crowd exclaimed, "He whom you have praised was a robber. The very land on which you stand is mine. By violence he took it from my father: and in the name of God I forbid you to bury him in it." The speaker was Asceline Fitz-Arthur, who had often but fruitlessly sought reparation from the justice of William. After some debate the prelates called him to them, His burial.



CHAP.  
VIII.

paid him sixty shillings for the grave, and promised that he should receive the full value of his land. The ceremony was then continued, and the body of the king deposited in a coffin of stone<sup>134</sup>.

The king's  
character.

William's character has been drawn with apparent impartiality in the Saxon chronicle, by a contemporary and an Englishman. That the reader may learn the opinion of one, who possessed the means of forming an accurate judgment, I shall transcribe the passage, retaining, as far as it may be intelligible, the very phraseology of the original.

“ If any one wish to know what manner of man he was, or  
“ what worship he had, or of how many lands he were the lord,  
“ we will describe him as we have known him : for we looked on  
“ him, and some while lived in his herd. King William was a  
“ very wise man, and very rich, more worshipful and strong than  
“ any of his fore-gangers. He was mild to good men, who  
“ loved God : and stark beyond all bounds to those who with-  
“ said his will. On the very stede, where God gave him to win  
“ England, he reared a noble monastery, and set monks therein,  
“ and endowed it well. He was very worshipful. Thrice he  
“ bore his king-helmet every year, when he was in England ; at  
“ Easter he bore it at Winchester, at Pentecost at Westminster,  
“ and in mid-winter at Gloucester. And then were with him  
“ all the rich men over all England : archbishops, and diocesan  
“ bishops, abbots, and earls, thanes and knights. Moreover he  
“ was a very stark man, and very savage : so that no man durst  
“ do any thing against his will. He had earls in his bonds, who  
“ had done against his will : bishops he set off their bishoprics,

<sup>134</sup> Eadmer, p. 13. Order. 661, 662. In 1562, when Coligni took the city of Caen, his tomb was rifled by the soldiers, and some of his bones were brought to England. See Baker, p. 31.

“ abbots off their abbotries : and thanes in prisons : and at last  
 “ he did not spare his own brother Odo. Him he set in prison.  
 “ Yet among other things we must not forget the good frith  
 “ which he made in this land <sup>135</sup> : so that a man, that was good  
 “ for aught, might travel over the kingdom with his bosom full  
 “ of gold without molestation : and no man durst slay another  
 “ man, though he had suffered never so mickle evil from the  
 “ other. He ruled over England : and by his cunning he was  
 “ so thoroughly acquainted with it, that there is not a hide of  
 “ land, of which he did not know, both who had it, and what  
 “ was its worth : and that he set down in his writings. Wales  
 “ was under his weald, and therein he wrought castles : and he  
 “ wielded the isle of Man withal : moreover he subdued Scot-  
 “ land by his mickle strength : Normandy was his by kinn : and  
 “ over the earldom called Mans he ruled : and if he might have  
 “ lived yet two years, he would have won Ireland by the fame of  
 “ his power, and without any armament. Yet truly in his time  
 “ men had mickle suffering, and very many hardships. Castles he  
 “ caused to be wrought, and poor men to be oppressed. He  
 “ was so very stark. He took from his subjects many marks of  
 “ gold, and many hundred pounds of silver : and that he took,  
 “ some by right, and some by mickle might, for very little  
 “ need. He had fallen into avarice, and greediness he loved  
 “ withal.” “ He let his lands to fine as dear as he could : then  
 “ came some other and bade more than the first had given,  
 “ and the king let it to him who bade more. Then came a  
 “ third, and bid yet more, and the king let it into the hands of  
 “ the man, who bade the most. Nor did he reck how sinfully  
 “ his reeves got money of poor men, or how many unlawful

<sup>135</sup> Frith is the king's peace or protection, the violation of which subjected the offender  
 which has been frequently mentioned, and to a heavy fine.

CHAP.  
VIII.

“ things they did. For the more men talked of right law, the more they did against the law.” “ He also set many deer-friths<sup>136</sup>: and he made laws therewith, that whosoever should slay hart or hind, him man should blind. As he forbade the slaying of harts, so also did he of boars. So much he loved the high-deer, as if he had been their father. He also decreed about hares, that they should go free. His rich men moaned, and the poor men murmured: but he was so hard, that he recked not the hatred of them all. For it was need they should follow the king’s will withal, if they wished to live, or to have lands, or goods, or his favour. Alas, that any man should be so moody, and should so puff up himself, and think himself above all other men! May Almighty God have mercy on his soul, and grant him forgiveness of his sins<sup>137</sup>.”

To this account may be added a few particulars gleaned from other historians. The king was of ordinary stature, but inclined to corpulency. His countenance wore an air of ferocity, which, when he was agitated by passion, struck terror into every beholder. The story told of his strength at one period of life, almost exceeds belief. It is said, that sitting on horseback he could draw the string of a bow, which no other man could bend even on foot. Hunting formed his favourite amusement. The reader has seen the censure passed upon him for his deer-friths and game laws: nor will he think it undeserved, if he attend to the following instance. Though the king possessed sixty-eight forests, besides parks and chases, in different parts of England, he was not yet satisfied, but for the occasional accommodation of his court, afforested an extensive tract of country lying between the city of Winchester and the sea coast. The inhabitants were

<sup>136</sup> Deer-friths were forests in which the deer were under the king’s protection or *frith*.

<sup>137</sup> Saxon Chron. 189—191.



expelled: the cottages and the churches were burnt: and more than thirty square miles of a rich and populous district were withdrawn from cultivation, and converted into a wilderness, to afford sufficient range for the deer, and ample space for the royal diversion. The memory of this act of despotism has been perpetuated in the name of the New Forest, which it retains at the present day, after the lapse of seven hundred and fifty years.

William's education had left on his mind religious impressions which were never effaced. When indeed his power or interest was concerned, he listened to no suggestions but those of ambition or of avarice: but on other occasions he displayed a strong sense of religion, and a profound respect for its institutions. He daily heard the mass of his private chaplain, and was regular in his attendance at the public worship: in the company of men celebrated for holiness of life, he laid aside that haughty demeanour, with which he was accustomed to awe the most powerful of his barons<sup>138</sup>; he willingly concurred in the deposition of his uncle Malger, archbishop of Rouen, who disgraced his dignity by the immorality of his conduct<sup>139</sup>, and showed that he knew how to value and recompense virtue, by endeavouring to place in the same church the monk Guitmond, from whom he had formerly received so severe a reprimand<sup>140</sup>. On the decease of a prelate, he appointed officers to protect the property of the vacant archbishopric or abbey, and named a successor with the advice of the principal clergy<sup>141</sup>. Lanfranc, in his numerous struggles against the rapacity of the Normans, was constantly patronised by the king, who appointed him with certain other commissioners to compel the sheriffs of the several

<sup>138</sup> Chron. Sax. 189. Eadmer, 13.<sup>139</sup> Gul. Pict. 98.<sup>140</sup> Orderic, 269. See p. 411.<sup>141</sup> Id. 233.

CHAP.  
VIII.

His conduct  
with respect  
to ecclesiasti-  
cal concerns.

counties to restore to the church whatever had been unjustly taken from it since the invasion<sup>142</sup>.

There were, however, three points, according to Eadmer, in which the king unjustly invaded the ecclesiastical rights.

1. During his reign the christian world was afflicted and scandalized by the rupture between Gregory VII. and the emperor Henry IV., who in opposition to his adversary created an antipope, Guibert, bishop of Ravenna. The conflicting claims of these prelates, and the temporal pretensions of Gregory, afforded a pretext to William to introduce a new regulation. He would not permit the authority of any particular pontiff to be acknowledged in his dominions, without his previous approbation: and he directed that all letters issued from the court of Rome should, on their arrival, be submitted to the royal inspection. 2. Though he zealously concurred with archbishop Lanfranc in his endeavours to reform the manners both of the clergy and the laity, yet so jealous was he of any encroachment on his authority, that without the royal licence he would not permit the decisions of national or provincial synods to be carried into effect<sup>143</sup>. 3. After the separation of the ecclesiastical courts from those of the hundred, he enacted such laws as were necessary to support the jurisdiction of the former: but at the same time forbade them either to implead, or to excommunicate any individual, holding in chief of the crown, till the nature of the offence had been certified to himself<sup>144</sup>.

A friendly intercourse by letters and presents subsisted

<sup>142</sup> See the original commission in Brady, ii. app. p. 3—6.

<sup>143</sup> Thus in the synod of London the bishops ask the king's permission to transfer the episcopal sees from one town to another: yet the translation of the see of Dorchester to Lincoln

is said, in the original charter, to be made by the advice and authority of pope Alexander, his legates, the archbishop Lanfranc, and the other prelates. Monast. Ang. iii. 258.

<sup>144</sup> Eadmer, 6.

between William and the pope Alexander II. Alexander was succeeded by the celebrated Hildebrand, who assumed the name of Gregory VII. The king congratulated the new pontiff on his advancement to the papacy, and in return was commended by him for his attachment to the holy see, for the zeal with which he enforced the celibacy of the clergy<sup>145</sup>, and for his piety in not exposing to sale, like other kings, the vacant abbeys and bishoprics<sup>146</sup>. The Peter-pence had been annually paid during the pontificate of Alexander; but after his death it had for some unknown reason been suspended during a few years<sup>147</sup>. Gregory, who considered it as a feudal prestation, had commissioned his legate Hubert to require not only the payment of the money, but as a consequence of that payment the performance of homage. Such a requisition to a prince of William's imperious temper must have been highly irritating. But his answer, though firm, was respectful. He acknowledged the omission of the payment, and promised that it should be rectified: but to the demand of homage he returned an absolute refusal. He had never promised it himself: his predecessors had never performed it: nor did he know of any other ground on which it could be claimed with justice<sup>148</sup>. Though Gregory was disappointed, yet, beset as he was with enemies, he had the prudence to suppress his feelings, and till his death in 1085, continued to correspond with the king, who acknowledged him as the legitimate successor of St. Peter, and refused to admit a legate from the antipope Guibert<sup>149</sup>.

<sup>145</sup> In the synod of Winchester it had been decreed that such priests in country places as were married, might retain their wives, but that no one for the future should be ordained, who did not make a vow of celibacy. Wilk. con. i.

<sup>146</sup> Ep. Greg. VII. l. i. ep. 70, 71. ix. 5.

<sup>147</sup> Baron. ad ann. 1068, n. 1. ad ann. 1079,

n. 25. Selden, Spicil. ad Ead. 164. The Peter-pence was not peculiar to England. It had been established in Gaul by Charlemagne. Greg. VII. ep. ix. 1.

<sup>148</sup> Ibid.

<sup>149</sup> Baron. ad ann. 1080, n. 23. Greg. VII. ep. vii. 23. 25.



CHAP.  
VIII.

---

---

Famine and  
pestilence dur-  
ing his reign.

During William's reign the people of England were exposed to calamities of every description. It commenced with years of carnage and devastation: its progress was marked by a regular system of confiscation and oppression: and this succession of evils was closed with famine and pestilence. In 1086 a summer, more rainy and tempestuous than had been experienced in the memory of man, occasioned a total failure of the harvest: and the winter introduced a malignant disease, which attacked one half of the inhabitants, and is said to have proved fatal to many thousands. Even of those who escaped the infection, or recovered from the disease, numbers perished afterwards from want, or unwholesome nourishment. "Alas," exclaims an eye-witness, "how miserable, how rueful a time was that. The wretched victims had nearly perished by the fever: then came the sharp hunger, and destroyed them outright. Who is so hard-hearted as not to weep over such calamities <sup>150</sup>?"

<sup>150</sup> Chron. Sax. 188.

## CHAP. IX.

## WILLIAM II.

## CONTEMPORARY PRINCES.

EMPEROR OF GERMANY.	KINGS OF SCOTLAND.	KING OF FRANCE.	KING OF SPAIN.	POPES.
HENRY IV.	MALCOLM III. . . died in 1093. DONALD BANE, deposed 1094. DUNCAN . . . . . died in 1094. DONALD BANE . . . . . 1097. EDGAR.	PHILIP I.	ALPHONSO VI.	URBAN II. died in 1099. PASCHAL II.

WILLIAM SUCCEEDS—HIS WARS WITH HIS BROTHER ROBERT—HE OBTAINS NORMANDY WHILE ROBERT GOES TO THE HOLY LAND—INVADES SCOTLAND—AND WALES—HIS RAPACITY—HE PERSECUTES ARCHBISHOP ANSELM—IS KILLED IN THE NEW FOREST—HIS CHARACTER.

THE conqueror had left three sons by Matilda. Robert, the eldest, resided a voluntary exile in the town of Abbeville, and supported himself and his associates by frequent incursions into his native country<sup>1</sup>. On the death of his father he repaired in haste to Rouen, and was acknowledged without opposition for

CHAP.  
IX.

Robert suc-  
ceeds to Nor-  
mandy.  
1087.

<sup>1</sup> Robert was corpulent, and below the ordinary stature. From this circumstance his father called him Gambaron, and Courthose;

that is, literally, Round-legs, and Short-hose: surnames which he retained as long as he lived.

CHAP.  
IX.

---

duke of Normandy. This prince was open, generous, and brave; but at the same time thoughtless, fickle, and voluptuous. His credulity made him the dupe of the false and designing: and his prodigality often reduced him to a state of poverty and dependence. If his courage was occasionally roused into action, his exertions were but temporary, and he soon relapsed into habits of ease and indulgence. Pleased with the acquisition of the ducal coronet, he let slip the golden opportunity of placing on his head the crown of England: in a few years he lost the duchy of Normandy by his indolence and misconduct; and at last he terminated his life in a dungeon, the prisoner of his youngest brother.

William, surnamed Rufus or "the red," was the next in age, and with the ambition had inherited the promptitude and policy of his father. He was the conqueror's favourite, had accompanied him in all his journeys, and fought by his side in all his battles. From the bed of the dying monarch he hastened to England, accompanied by Bloet, a confidential messenger, and the bearer of a recommendatory letter to Lanfranc, who, though he had been William's preceptor, had conferred on him the honour of knighthood<sup>2</sup>, and secretly supported his pretensions, refused to declare in his favour, till the prince had promised upon oath (many of his friends also swore with him) that he would govern according to law and justice, and would ask and follow the advice of the primate<sup>3</sup>.

A council of the prelates and barons was then summoned to proceed to the election of a sovereign. Though the principles

William hastens to England.

<sup>2</sup> This ceremony is thus described. *Eum lorica induit, et galeam capiti ejus imposuit, eque militiæ cingulum in nomine domini cinxit.* Orderic, 665.

<sup>3</sup> Eadm. 13. William's pretensions rested solely on the wish in his favour expressed by

his father, who, though he could not prevent his eldest son from succeeding to Normandy, because it was the patrimony of the family, might, it was contended, dispose of the crown of England as he pleased, because he had not inherited it from his father, but had acquired it



CHAP  
IX.

of hereditary succession were still unsettled, yet the English history furnished no precedent, in which the younger had been preferred to the elder brother. But of the friends of Robert many were in Normandy; others were silenced by the presence, or won by the promises, of William: and Lanfranc directed the whole influence of the church in his favour. In the third week from the death of his father he was chosen king, and was immediately crowned with the usual solemnities<sup>4</sup>.

He is crown-  
ed.  
Sep. 26.

The third and remaining son was named Henry. His portion of five thousand pounds did not satisfy his ambition: but if necessity compelled him to acquiesce for the present, he silently watched the course of events, and resolved to seize the first opportunity of aggrandizement, which fortune or the misconduct of his brothers might throw in his way.

Henry lives  
in privacy

It has been mentioned that the conqueror on his death-bed had consented to the liberation of his prisoners. Of these the Normans recovered their former estates and honours both in England and on the continent: Ulf, the son of Harold, and Duncan, the son of the king of Scots, repaired to Rouen, received from Robert the order of knighthood, and were dismissed with valuable presents: the earl Morcar, and Wulfnoth, the brother of Harold, followed William to England with the vain hope of obtaining suitable establishments in their own country. But the cautious policy of the new monarch had prepared for them a different reception. They were arrested at Winchester, and confined in the castle<sup>5</sup>.

Fate of the  
captives.

Odo of Bayeux had always hated Lanfranc as his personal enemy; and William now became the object of his aversion,

Conspiracy  
against Wil-  
liam.  
1088.

<sup>4</sup> Chron. Sax. 192.

<sup>5</sup> Sim. 214. Hoved. 264. Alur. Bev. 136.  
William had excepted Roger Fitz-Osbern

from this act of clemency. He remained in  
prison till death. Orderic, apud Maseres,  
322.

CHAP.  
IX.

---

because the young prince listened to the councils of Lanfranc. By his intrigues he soon formed a party in favour of Robert. It required no great eloquence to persuade those, who had possessions both in England and Normandy, that it was for their interest to hold their lands of one and the same sovereign : and if a choice were to be made between the two brothers, there could be no doubt that the easy and generous disposition of Robert deserved the preference before the suspicious temper and overbearing carriage of William. According to custom the king held his court at the festival of Easter. The discontented barons employed the opportunity to mature their plans, and departed to raise the standard of rebellion in their respective districts, Odo in Kent, William, bishop of Durham, in Northumberland, Geoffry of Coutances in Somerset, Roger Montgomery in Shropshire, Hugh Bigod in Norfolk, and Hugh de Grentmesnil in the county of Leicester. The duke of Normandy was already acquainted with their intention : but instead of waiting for his arrival, or of uniting their forces against their enemy, they contented themselves with fortifying their castles, and ravaging the king's lands in the neighbourhood <sup>6</sup>.

Banishment  
of Odo.

In this emergency William owed the preservation of his crown to the native English, whose eagerness to revenge the wrongs which their country had received from the Norman chieftains, led them in crowds to the royal standard. The earl bishop, conceiving that the first attempt of his nephew would be directed against the strong castle of Rochester, had intrusted that fortress to the care of Eustace, earl of Boulogne, with a garrison of five hundred knights : and retiring to Pevensey, awaited with impatience the promised arrival of Robert. The king followed him

<sup>6</sup> Chron. Sax. 193, 194. Orderic, 665, 666. Sim. 214. Paris, 12

thither, shut him up within the walls, and after a siege of seven weeks, compelled him to surrender. His life and liberty were granted him on the condition that he should swear to deliver up the castle of Rochester, and to quit England for ever. Odo was conducted with a small escort to the fortress: but Eustace easily discerned the contradiction between his words and his looks, and pretending that he was a traitor to the cause, made both the bishop and his guard prisoners. The success of this artifice inflamed the indignation of William: messengers were dispatched to hasten reinforcements<sup>7</sup>: and the place was vigorously attacked and as obstinately defended, till the ravages of a pestilential disease compelled the earl of Boulogne to propose a capitulation. It was with difficulty that the Normans in the king's service, prevailed on him to spare the lives of the garrison; but the request of Odo, that at his departure the besiegers should abstain from every demonstration of triumph, was contemptuously refused. The moment he appeared, the trumpets were ordered to flourish: and as he passed through the ranks, the English sounded the words, "halter and gallows" in his ears. He slunk away, muttering threats of vengeance, and embarking on board the first vessel he could procure, directed his course to Normandy<sup>8</sup>.

The hopes of the insurgents were now at an end. The characteristic indolence of Robert had caused him to procrastinate

Insurgents  
reduced.

<sup>7</sup> All freemen from towns and manors, were ordered to attend under the penalty of being pronounced "nithings." Chron. Sax. 195. Nithing or nithering nequam sonat. Malm. 68. Paris, 12. Similar instances are to be met with on other occasions, when the king under the same penalty summons all persons able to bear arms. It was what in Normandy was called the *Arriere bann*. Besides ordinary

expeditions, in which the prince could claim only the services of his own tenants, he might also publish l'*arrierban*, auquel trestous, grans et petits, pourtant que ils soient convenables pour armes porter, sont tenu sans excusation nulle, a fair lui aid et profit a tout leur poair. Du Fresne, iii. 832.

<sup>8</sup> Chron. Sax. 195. Orderic, 667—669. Sim. 215. Alur. Bev. 137.



CHAP.  
IX.

his voyage to England, till the favourable opportunity had passed away: and the scanty succours which he had sent to his partisans, had been intercepted by the English mariners. Montgomery had made his peace with the king: the city of Durham had surrendered to an army of royalists; and the tenants of Wulstan, bishop of Worcester, had defeated the rebels in that neighbourhood, and slain no fewer than five hundred men. The principal insurgents, reduced to despair, escaped to Normandy: their estates were divided among the faithful friends of the king<sup>9</sup>.

State of Nor-  
mandy.

In describing the sequel of William's reign I shall desert the chronological order of events, and collect them under appropriate heads: an arrangement which will relieve the attention of the reader, at the same time that it abridges the toil of the writer. I. Normandy at this period presented a wide scene of anarchy and violence. Robert held the reins of government with a feeble grasp, and his lenity and indecision exposed him to the contempt of his turbulent barons. The conqueror had compelled them to admit his troops into their castles: but at his death they expelled the royal garrisons, levied forces, and made war on each other. The new duke would not, or dared not, interfere. He consumed his revenue in his pleasures: and by improvident grants diminished the ducal demesnes. His poverty compelled him to solicit the assistance of Henry, to whom he sold for three thousand pounds the Cotentin, almost the third part of the dutchy: and his jealousy induced him to order the arrest and confinement of the same prince, as soon as he returned from England, where he had gone to claim the dower of his mother Matilda. To William, who sought to be revenged on Robert, and who never refused to

William in-  
vades the  
dutchy.  
1090.

<sup>9</sup> Chron. Sax. *ibid.* Sim. 215. Malm. 67, 68.

employ the aid of bribery or fraud, this disturbed state of things offered an alluring prospect: and by means of a judicious distribution of presents, his forces obtained possession of St. Valeri, of Albemarle, and of almost every fortress on the right bank of the Seine. Alarmed at so dangerous a defection, the duke solicited the interference of the king of France, who marched a powerful army to the confines of Normandy, but on the receipt of a considerable sum from England, reconducted it into his own dominions<sup>10</sup>.

At the same time Robert nearly lost Rouen, the capital of Normandy. Conan, the wealthiest and most powerful of the citizens, had engaged to deliver it up to William, and the duke, to defeat the project, solicited the aid of Henry, whom he had lately released, and of several of his barons. On the third of November at the same hour Gilbert de L'aigle was seen to the south of the city leading a body of men to the assistance of Robert: while Reginald de Warrenne appeared on the north with three hundred knights in the service of the king of England. The adherents of Conan instantly divided to receive their friends, and repulse their foes: Robert and Henry descended from the castle with their followers; and the streets of the city were filled with confusion and bloodshed. So doubtful was the issue, that the duke, at the request of his friends, withdrew to a place of safety: but at last the English were expelled; and Conan was conducted a captive into the fortress. By Robert he was condemned to perpetual confinement: but Henry, who was well acquainted with the lenity of his brother, requested and obtained the custody of the prisoner. He immediately led him to the highest tower, bade him survey the beauty of the surrounding

Attempt to  
take Rouen.

<sup>10</sup> Alur. Bev. 138.

CHAP.  
IX.

scenery, and then seizing him by the waist, hurled him over the battlements. The unhappy Conan was dashed to pieces: the prince turning to the by-standers coolly observed, that treason ought never to go unpunished<sup>11</sup>.

Peace be-  
tween the two  
brothers.  
1091.

In the following January William crossed the sea with a numerous army. By the Normans, who derived advantage from the calamities of their country, his arrival was hailed with welcome: but the barons, who held lands under both the brothers, laboured to effect a reconciliation; and a treaty of peace was negociated under the mediation of the French monarch. The policy of William again triumphed over the credulity of Robert. He retained possession of the fortresses which he had acquired in Normandy: but promised to indemnify his brother by an equivalent in England, and to restore to their estates his friends, who had been attainted for the late insurrection. By an additional article it was stipulated that, on the decease of either of the two princes, the survivor should succeed to his dominions<sup>12</sup>.

Expulsion of  
Henry.

The principal sufferers by this treaty were Edgar the etheling, and prince Henry. Edgar had been the confidential friend of Robert: at the demand of William he was deprived of his estates in Normandy, and compelled to seek an asylum with his brother-in-law, the king of Scotland. The abilities and pretensions of Henry had long been subjects of alarm to both the king and the duke. They now united their forces, took possession of his castles, and besieged him on mount St. Michel, a lofty rock, which by the influx of the tide was insulated twice in the day. The place was deemed impregnable: but the want of water caused it to be evacuated by the garrison at the end of a fort-

<sup>11</sup> Compare Malmsbury (p. 88), with Orde-  
rie (p. 690).

<sup>12</sup> Chron. Sax. 196, 197. Al. Bev. 138.  
2



night; and Henry with difficulty obtained permission to retire into Bretagne. For two years he wandered in the Vexin, suffering the privations of poverty, and attended only by a knight, a chaplain, and three esquires. At length he accepted from the inhabitants of Damfront the government of their town: and gradually recovered the greater part of his former possessions<sup>13</sup>.

The siege of mount St. Michel was distinguished by an occurrence, which has been celebrated by our historians as a proof of William's magnanimity. Riding alone he espied at a distance a few cavaliers, belonging to the enemy, whom he immediately charged with his usual intrepidity. In the shock he was beaten to the ground: and his horse, which had been wounded, dragged him some paces in the stirrup. His adversary had already raised his sword to plunge it in the breast of the fallen monarch, when William exclaimed: "Hold, fellow, I am the king of England." Awed by his voice, his opponents raised him from the ground: a fresh horse was offered him: and the king vaulting into the saddle, inquired which of them was his conqueror. The man apologized for his ignorance. "Make no excuse," replied William, "you are a brave and worthy knight. Henceforth you shall fight under my banner<sup>14</sup>."

By what pretexts the king eluded the execution of his treaty with Robert, we are ignorant. It was in vain that the duke accompanied him to England to receive the promised indemnity; in vain that he repeated his demand by successive messengers. At length he dispatched two heralds, who, having obtained an audience, renounced, in the name of their master, the friendship of William, and declared him a false and perjured knight. To defend his honour the king followed them to Nor-

War renewed  
in Normandy.

1094.

<sup>13</sup> Orderic. 696. 698.

<sup>14</sup> Malm. 68.

CHAP.  
IX.

---

mandy, and pleaded his cause before the twenty-four barons, who, at the signature of the treaty, had sworn, twelve on the one side, and twelve on the other, to enforce its execution. They decided in favour of Robert: and from their decision William appealed to the sword. Success attended his first efforts: but the balance was turned by the arrival of the king of France to the assistance of his vassal, and by the subsequent surrender of Argentsey and Hulme, with fifteen hundred knights, their esquires and followers. William had again recourse to his usual expedient of bribery: and the manner in which he raised the money deserved the praise of ingenuity. He had demanded reinforcements from England: and twenty thousand men were assembled: but when they had been drawn up to embark, each soldier was ordered to pay ten shillings for the king's use, and to march back to his own home<sup>15</sup>. With the money thus acquired William purchased the retreat of the French king, and despising the unassisted efforts of his brother, returned, after an inglorious campaign, to his English dominions<sup>16</sup>.

Robert mortgages his dominions.

But that which the king had so long endeavoured to obtain by force, was at last spontaneously surrendered by the chivalrous spirit of Robert. It was the era of the crusades. Urban II., who filled the papal chair, had received the most urgent letters from the patriarch of Jerusalem, and the emperor of Constantinople. The former painted in lively colours the sufferings of the oriental christians under the yoke of their mohammedan masters: the latter sought to alarm the western nations by describing the danger to which the imperial city itself was exposed from the near approach of the Saracens. Their representations were suc-

<sup>15</sup> This sum was what each had received from his lord, or was supposed to carry with him, for his support during the campaign. Pecuniam, quæ ipsis ad victum data fuerat,

unicuique decem solidos, abstulit. Alur. Bev. 141.

<sup>16</sup> Chron. Sax. 198. 200, 201.

cessful ; and the pontiff determined to oppose the enthusiasm of the christians to the enthusiasm of the infidels. The spirit of adventure, which had distinguished the tribes of the north, was still alive in the breasts of their descendants : and he judged rightly that it would prove invincible, if it were sanctified and directed by the impulse of religion. When, in the council of Clermont, he advised an expedition for the recovery of the holy land, the proposal was received with the unanimous cry, that it was the will of God. Those who had listened to the animating voice of the pontiff, in their return to their homes diffused the same fervour among their countrymen : and thousands hastened from every corner of Europe, to shed their blood in the cause of the cross, and to rescue from pollution the sepulchre of Christ. The adventurous mind of Robert burnt to share in the enterprise : but to appear among the confederate princes with the splendour due to his birth and station, required an expense to which his poverty was unequal. As his only resource he applied to the avarice of his brother : and in consideration of the sum of ten thousand marks offered him the government of his dominions during the five following years. The proposal was instantly accepted. William summoned a great council, and, alleging his poverty, appealed to the generosity of his faithful barons : they, on their return home, required in the same manner the aid of their tenants : and the whole amount, wrung in reality from the lowest orders in the state, was paid into the exchequer, and transmitted to Normandy. Robert departed with a joyful heart in quest of dangers and glory : William sailed to the continent, and demanded immediate possession of Normandy, and of Le Maine<sup>17</sup>.

1096.

<sup>17</sup> Chron. Sax. 204. Order. 713. 764. Al. Bev. 142. Malm. 70.



CHAP.  
IX.

William op-  
posed in  
Maine.

1099.

By the Normans he was received without opposition: the Mançeaux unanimously rejected his authority in favour of Helie de la Flèche. Helie was the nephew of Herbert the last earl, by the youngest of his three sisters. The eldest had been married to Azo, marquis of Liguria; and the second was betrothed to Robert, the son of the conqueror. Though she died before the marriage could be celebrated, Robert claimed the succession, conquered Le Maine with the aid of his father, and did homage for the earldom to Fulk of Anjou, the superior lord. The Mançeaux rebelled: the son of the eldest sister sold his claim to Helie for ten thousand shillings: and the young adventurer by his own prowess and the favour of the natives obtained possession of the earldom. Though he had taken the cross, the claims and menaces of William detained him at home: but one day, having incautiously entered a wood with no more than seven knights, he was made prisoner by Robert Talavace; and the king immediately marched at the head of fifty thousand horsemen into his territories. Fulk had already arrived to protect his vassals: a few skirmishes were succeeded by a negociation: and Helie obtained his liberty by the surrender of Mans. The earl, dispossessed of his dominions, offered his services to William: at the instigation of Robert earl of Mellent they were indignantly refused. "If you will not have me for a friend," exclaimed Helie, "you shall learn to fear me as an enemy." "Go," replied the king, "and do thy worst<sup>18</sup>."

Hastens to  
that province.  
1100.

The next summer William was hunting in the New Forest in Hampshire, when a messenger arrived to inform him, that Helie had defeated the Normans, and surprised the city of Mans: that the inhabitants had again acknowledged him for their earl: and

\* Orderic. 769, 771—773.

that the garrison, shut up in the castle, would soon be reduced to extremity. The impatience of the king could hardly wait for the conclusion of the tale, when, crying out to his attendants, "Let those that love me, follow," he rode precipitately to the sea shore, and embarked in the first vessel which he found. The master remonstrated that the weather was stormy, and the passage dangerous. "Hold thy peace," said William, "kings are never drowned." He landed the next day at Barfleur, assembled his troops, and advanced with such rapidity, that Helie could scarcely find time to save himself by flight. The king ravaged the lands of his enemies, and returned to England<sup>19</sup>.

II. Of the hostilities between England and Scotland the blame must rest with the king of Scots, who lost his life in the contest. William was in Normandy prosecuting his designs against Robert, when Malcolm suddenly crossed the frontiers, and gratified the rapacity of his followers with the spoil of the northern counties. After the reconciliation of the two brothers, the king of England undertook to revenge this insult. As he marched through Durham, he restored the bishop of that see. His fleet was dispersed in a storm; but his cavalry traversed the Lothians, and penetrated as far as the great river, which the Scots called "the water"<sup>20</sup>. The hostile armies were ranged on the opposite shores, and the two kings had mutually defied each other, when a peace was concluded through the mediation of Robert of Normandy on the one side, and of Edgar, the etheling, on the other. Malcolm submitted to do homage to the

War with  
Scotland.  
1091.

Submission of  
Malcolm.

<sup>19</sup> Orderic, 774. Chron. Sax. 207. Malm. 70. This writer tells us that Helie was again taken, and being addressed by the king in these words: "I have you at last, sir," replied, "Yes, chance has been in your favour: but were I at liberty, I know what I would do." "Go then," said William, "and if

"you get the better, by the face of Lucca" (his usual oath), I will demand no return "for your freedom." This appears to me no more than a second version of the conversation mentioned above. On the death of William, Helie recovered his earldom. Orderic, 784.

<sup>20</sup> Order. 701.

CHAP.  
IX.

English monarch, and to render him the services which he had rendered to his father; and William engaged to grant to the Scottish king the twelve manors, and the annual pension of twelve marks of gold, which he had enjoyed under the conqueror<sup>21</sup>. Nor was the interest of the etheling forgotten in the negociation. He was permitted to return to England, and obtained a distinguished place in the court of William.

The war re-  
newed.  
1092.

Two hundred years had elapsed since Carlisle was laid in ruins by the Northmen. When the conqueror returned from his Scottish expedition, he found it in the possession of one of his barons, and admiring the situation, ordered it to be fortified. William adopted the policy of his father. He visited the spot, expelled Dolphin, the lord of the district, peopled the city with a colony of Englishmen from the southern counties, and built a castle for their protection<sup>22</sup>. It is possible that, as Cumberland was formerly held by the heir of the Scottish crown, Malcolm might consider the settlement of an English colony at Carlisle, as an invasion of his rights: it is certain that a new quarrel was created between the two nations, of which we know not the origin or particulars. The Scottish king was invited or summoned to attend William's court at Gloucester; and at his arrival found himself excluded from the royal presence, unless he would consent to plead his cause, and submit to the judgment of the English barons. Malcolm indignantly rejected the proposal. The kings of Scotland, he said, had never been accustomed "to

1093.  
Aug. 8.

<sup>21</sup> The mention of these twelve manors will bring to the reader's recollection the twelve villæ, which Edgar had given to Kenneth, that he might have habitations of his own when he was on his journey to attend the English court (See the reign of Edgar, p. 241). Some question has been raised as to the place where the kings met, because the

Chronicle says, that Malcolm "came out of Scotland into Lothian in England." Chron. p. 197. Perhaps the difficulty will disappear, when we recollect that by the writers of this age the name of Scotland was confined to the territory lying north of the Forth.

<sup>22</sup> West. 227. Chron. Sax. 198.



“do right” to the kings of England but on the borders of the two realms, and according to the joint decision of the barons of both countries<sup>23</sup>. He retired in anger, assembled his retainers, and burst with a numerous force into Northumberland, where he perished, a victim to the wiles of his enemy, perhaps to the treachery of his own subjects. The Scottish army was surprised by Robert Mowbray. Malcolm fell by the sword of Morel, Mowbray’s steward: his eldest son Edward shared the fate of his father; and of the fugitives who escaped the pursuit of their foes, the greater number was lost in the waters of the Alne and the Tweed. The bodies of the king and his son were buried by peasants in the abbey of Tinnmouth, and the mournful intelligence hastened the death of his consort queen Margaret, who survived her husband only four days<sup>24</sup>.

Nov. 13

The children of Malcolm, too young to assert their rights, sought the protection of their uncle the etheling Edgar in England: and the Scottish sceptre was seized by the ambition of Donald Bane, the brother of the deceased monarch. He found a competitor in Duncan, an illegitimate son of Malcolm, who had long resided as an hostage in the English court. The nephew, with the aid of William, to whom he swore fealty, proved too strong for the uncle, and Donald secreted himself in the highlands, till the murder of Duncan by Malpeit, earl of Mearns, replaced in his hands the reins of government. He

Succession to  
the crown of  
Scotland.

1094.

<sup>23</sup> Rectitudinem facere. Alur. Bev. 139. Sim. Dun. 218. Flor. 645. This expression has been explained to do homage. It means to answer for any alleged failure in the performance of feudal services.

<sup>24</sup> Chron. Sax. 197—199. Sim. 218. Orderic, 701. The Scottish historians pretend that Malcolm was killed at the siege of Alnwick by the perfidy of the governor, who, affecting to present him the keys of the place

at the end of a spear, pushed the spear into his brain. It may be granted that there was something disgraceful in the transaction from the expressions of Orderic (701), and of the Chronicle (beswykene 199): but the Scottish account seems inconsistent with the fact, that the bodies of Malcolm and Edward were found on the ground by peasants, and buried by them at Tynemouth, a considerable distance from Alnwick.

CHAP.  
IX.

1097.

held them only three years : and the etheling with the consent of the English king conducted an army into Scotland, seated his nephew Edgar on the throne, and restored the children of his sister Margaret to their former honours. Donald, who had been taken in his flight, and committed to prison, died of grief<sup>25</sup>.

Inursions of  
the Welsh.

1095.

III. Ever since Harold had effected the reduction of Wales, the natives had acknowledged themselves the vassals of the king of England : but their ancient hostility was not yet extinguished, and the prospect of plunder, with the chance of impunity, led them repeatedly to ravage the neighbouring counties. To repress their inroads the conqueror had ordered castles to be built on the borders, which he intrusted to the care of officers, denominated marquesses, or lords of the marches<sup>26</sup>. These marches were the constant theatre of predatory warfare, and barbarian revenge. But in 1094 the natives of every district in Wales rose in arms : the isle of Anglesey was reduced : and Cheshire, Shropshire, and Herefordshire, from one extremity to the other, were desolated with fire and sword. The next year the insurgents surprised the castle of Montgomery, and massacred the inhabitants. The resentment of William urged him to retaliate : and, in imitation of Harold, he undertook to traverse the whole principality at the head of an army. But the heavy cavalry of the Normans was ill adapted to the invasion of a rugged and mountainous country. The Welsh had the wisdom not to oppose his progress : but they hovered on his flanks, drove forward his rear, and cut off his detachments : and when the

<sup>25</sup> Chron. Sax. 199. 201. 206. Malm. 89. Sim. 219. Flor. 646. The contemporary chroniclers represent Duncan as soliciting and obtaining from William a grant of the kingdom of Scotland. Ut ei regnum sui patris

concederet, petit et impetravit ; illique fidelitatem juravit. Sim. Dun. 219. Flor. 646. See also Ethelred, 343.

<sup>26</sup> Orderic, 670.

king, after a slow and tedious march of five weeks, had reached the mountains of Snowdun, he found to his mortification that the loss of the conquerors exceeded that of the vanquished. The next year the lords of the marches prosecuted the war by ravaging the lands in the neighbourhood: and the following summer the king resumed his operations, but with similar results. The loss of men, of horses, and of baggage, convinced him of the inutility of the enterprise. He retired out of Wales in despair, adopted the policy of his father, and by drawing a chain of castles round the country, endeavoured to put a stop to the incursions of these restless and inaccessible enemies <sup>27</sup>.

IV. The most powerful of the Anglo-Norman barons was Robert Mowbray, earl of Northumberland. He had inherited from his uncle the bishop of Coutances no fewer than two hundred and eighty manors: the first families in the nation were allied to him by blood or affinity: and his command in the north had placed at his disposal the services of a numerous and warlike population. By his orders four Norwegian merchantmen of considerable value had been detained and plundered: and when the king, at the petition of the owners, summoned him to answer for the offence, the royal mandate was repeatedly slighted and disobeyed. William resolved to chastise the insolence of his vassal: his rapidity disconcerted the friends of the earl: the principal of the Northumbrian chieftains were surprised and made prisoners; and the strong castle of Tinmouth after a siege of two months was compelled to surrender. Still from the walls of Bamborough Mowbray continued to defy the arms of his sovereign: nor did William undertake the hopeless task of reducing that impregnable fortress: but, in the vicinity erected another castle, which he appropriately denominated

Rebellion of  
Robert Mow-  
bray.  
1095.

<sup>27</sup> Chron. Sax. 203, 4, 5. Sim. 219. Malm. 68.



CHAP.  
IX.

---

Malvoisin, or the bad neighbour. At length the earl was decoyed from his asylum. An insidious offer to betray into his hands the town of Newcastle, induced him to quit Bamborough in the dead of the night with no more than thirty horsemen. The garrison of Malvoisin immediately followed: the gates of Newcastle were shut: and the earl fled from his pursuers to the monastery of St. Oswin. During five days he valiantly defended himself against the repeated assaults of a superior enemy: on the sixth he was wounded in the leg, and made prisoner. The captive by the royal order was conducted to Bamborough, and his countess Matilda was invited to a parley. From the walls she beheld her lord in bonds with the executioner by his side, prepared to put out his eyes, if she refused to surrender the fortress. Her affection (they had been married only three months) subdued her repugnance: the gates were thrown open: and Morell, the governor, to ingratiate himself with the conqueror, revealed the particulars of an extensive and dangerous conspiracy to place on the throne Stephen of Albemarle, brother to Judith of infamous memory. Hugh, earl of Shrewsbury, purchased his pardon for three thousand pounds: Walter de Lacy escaped to the continent: Odo, earl of Holderness, forfeited his estates and was imprisoned: Mowbray himself was condemned to perpetual confinement, and lived near thirty years in the castle of Windsor. William, count of Eu, a near relation of the king, fought his accuser, was vanquished, and lost his eyes. The fate of William of Alderic, the king's godfather, excited more commiseration. He was sentenced to be hanged: but the integrity of his life, and his asseverations at the gallows, convinced the public that he was innocent<sup>28</sup>.

<sup>28</sup> Chron. Sax. 202—204. Sim. 221. Brompt. 992. The count D'Eu cæcatus et Orderic, 703, 704. Alur. Bev. 141, 142. extesticulatus est. Malm. 70.

V. At the death of the conqueror the royal treasury at Winchester contained sixty thousand pounds of silver, besides gold, and precious stones<sup>29</sup>: and if to this sum we add the annual revenue of the crown, we may safely pronounce William to have been at his accession a most opulent monarch. But no accumulation of wealth however large, no supply however abundant, could equal the waste of his prodigality. He spurned at restraint: and in his dress and table, in his pleasures and presents, left behind him the most extravagant of his contemporaries<sup>30</sup>. Immense sums were lavished in purchasing or rewarding the services of foreigners, who, whatever might be their country or their character, were assured of receiving a gracious welcome from the king of England<sup>31</sup>. When his resources began to fail, the deficiency was supplied by extortion: nor was there any expedient, however base or unjust, which he hesitated, for a moment, to adopt if it served to replenish his coffers. The authority which archbishop Lanfranc derived from his age and station, contributed to check for a few years the royal extravagance; but the death of that prelate in 1089 removed every restraint; and, in the place of an importunate monitor, the king substituted a rapacious and remorseless minister. Ralf (afterwards surnamed the Flambard, or devouring torch) was a Norman clergyman of obscure birth, of ready wit, dissolute morals, and insatiable ambition. He had followed the court of the conqueror, and first attracted notice in the capacity of a public informer. From the service of Maurice, bishop of London, he passed to that of William: and the king soon discovered his merit, and gradually

Character of  
Ralf Flambard.

<sup>29</sup> Ingulf, 106.

<sup>30</sup> Malm. 69. He tells us that the king refused a pair of hose because they had cost only three shillings; and put on a worse pair, when his chamberlain assured him that they had

cost a mark. Ibid.

<sup>31</sup> He was, according to Suger, *mirabilis militum mercator et solidator*. Vit. Lud. Grossi, 283.

CHAP.  
IX.

raised him to the highest situation in the kingdom, by appointing him to the offices of royal chaplain, treasurer, and justiciary. The minister was sensible that to retain the favour, it was necessary to flatter the vices, of his master: and his ingenuity was successfully employed in devising new methods of raising money. The liberty of hunting was circumscribed by additional penalties: to multiply fines new offences were created: capital punishments were commuted for pecuniary mulcts: and another survey of the kingdom was ordered, to raise the land tax of those estates which had been under-rated in the record of Domesday. By these arts Flambard earned the eulogium, which was pronounced on him by the king, that he was the only man, who to please a master, was willing to brave the vengeance of the rest of mankind <sup>32</sup>.

Conspiracy  
against him.

If, however, he eluded that vengeance, his preservation was owing more to fortunate contingencies than to the protection of William. One day, as he was walking by the side of the Thames, Gerold, a mariner who had formerly been in his service, but now pretended to be a messenger from the bishop of London, requested him to step into a boat, and visit that prelate, whom he represented as lying at the point of death in a villa on the opposite bank. Unsuspicious of danger Flambard complied: but when the boat had conveyed him a little way down the river, he was forcibly put on board a ship, and carried out to sea. Fortunately a storm arose: the men, who had engaged to murder him, quarrelled; Gerold was induced by promises and intreaties to put him on shore; and on the third day, to the terror and amazement of his enemies, he appeared in his usual place at court. As a compensation he obtained

<sup>32</sup> Malm. 69. 158. Orderic, 678. 786.



the bishopric of Durham : but the king was not in the habit of conferring benefits without a return : and the favourite, to prove his gratitude, made him a present of one thousand pounds <sup>33</sup>.

In the payment of this sum Flambard had been caught in his own toils : though, if any man could expect gratuitous promotion under a prince like William, it was one, who to his other claims of remuneration added the merit of having discovered a new and productive source of revenue in the custody and sale of the vacant abbeys and bishoprics. Before the conquest, on the demise of an abbot or prelate, the care of the temporalities devolved on the diocesan, or the archbishop : under the conqueror it was intrusted to a clergyman who was appointed by the king, and compelled to render an exact account of his administration to the next incumbent <sup>34</sup>. Flambard pronounced both these customs an infringement of the rights of the crown. He contended that the prelacies were fiefs held of the king, the revenues of which, on the death of the actual tenant, ought to revert to the sovereign, till he, of his special grace, bestowed them on a new abbot or bishop. Acting on these principles he took every vacant prelacy under his own care. Inferior officers were appointed to administer the temporalities for the benefit of the crown : by these the lands and profits were farmed out to speculators by public auction : and the existing tenant, sensible that he might at any moment be ejected at the suit of a higher bidder, lost no time in converting his bargain into a source of the greatest possible advantage. The reader may readily conceive the extortions and dilapidations, which were the invariable consequences of so iniquitous a system. The monks and the clergy belonging to the church

The king  
keeps the  
bishoprics  
vacant.

<sup>33</sup> Ang. Sac. i. 706. Knyghton, 2369. Simeon, 224.

<sup>34</sup> Orderic, 516. 679. Pet. Bles. contin. 111. Alur. Bev. 143.

CHAP.  
IX.

---

were often compelled to seek a precarious subsistence from the charity of strangers ; and the *men* of the prelate, the ecclesiastical tenants, were generally reduced to the lowest degree of penury. Nor did the mischief end here. Wealth so easily acquired, was not easily surrendered : William kept the vacant bishoprics and abbeys for several years in his own possession : and, if he consented at last to name a successor, it was previously understood that the new prelate should pay a sum into the exchequer, proportionate to the value of the benefice<sup>35</sup>.

Names An-  
selm to Can-  
terbury.  
1093.

During Lent, in the fourth year after the demise of Lanfranc, the king was taken dangerously ill : and he, who in health had set at defiance the laws of God and man, began to tremble at the probable approach of death. The celebrated Anselm, a native of Aoust in Piedmont, and abbot of Bec in Normandy, had at this period accidentally arrived in England, where he had been invited by Hugh, earl of Chester. His reputation induced William to send for him to Gloucester : and by his advice the sick monarch engaged to amend his conduct, restored to different churches the estates of which he had unjustly deprived them, forgave by proclamation all offences committed against the crown ; and promised to his people, in the event of his recovery, an upright administration of justice. During his health he had frequently been solicited to nominate a successor to Lanfranc ; and had as frequently replied that he would never part with the temporalities of Canterbury till his death. The bishops seized the present moment to renew their importunities : and William, in the fervour of his repentance, exclaimed that he gave that office to Anselm. The pious monk at this unexpected declaration was filled with alarm and sadness : the vexations

<sup>35</sup> Orderic, 763. 774. The king at his death had in his hands one archbishopric, four bishoprics, and eleven abbeys, all of which had been let out to farm. Bles. lxi.

and inquietudes to which he was likely to be exposed, rushed on his mind: and he felt himself unequal to a perpetual contest with a prince of insatiable avarice, and impetuous passions, and without any principles of morality, or any respect for religion. But it was in vain, that he repeatedly refused to acquiesce in the royal choice. He was dragged to the bed of the king: a crosier was brought into the room: this emblem of the archiepiscopal dignity was forced into his hand; and the *Te-deum* was sung in thanksgiving for the event. Anselm still protested against the violence of his election, and declared that it was of no avail, since he was the subject not of the king of England, but of the duke of Normandy. But the consent of Robert was easily obtained: the archbishop of Rouen ordered him to obey, and the reluctant abbot, after a long and violent struggle, submitted to the advice of his friends, and the commands of his superiors<sup>36</sup>.

What Anselm had foretold was soon realized. William recovered, became ashamed of his weakness, revoked the pardons which he had granted, and displayed his former rapacity and despotism. Nor were his morals less reprehensible than his system of government. His court had become a constant scene of debauchery. In order that he might indulge his passions with less restraint, he refused to marry: the young nobility courted the favour of their sovereign by imitating his example: and in the society of flatterers and prostitutes the decencies of life and the prohibitions of religion were equally exposed to outrage and derision<sup>37</sup>. Such conduct added force to the objections of Anselm, who, though he was already invested with the

<sup>36</sup> Eadmer, 15—19.

<sup>37</sup> Malm. 69. Orderic, 682. 763. *Luxuriæ scelus tacendum exercebat, non occulte, sed ex impudentia coram sole.* Hunt. 216. Paris, 46. Anselm adds: *nefandissimum*

*Sodomæ scelus noviter in hac terra divulgatum, jam plurimum pullulavit, multosque sua immanitate fœdavit.* Ead. 24. From this passage I should infer that it was introduced by the Normans.



CHAP.  
IX.

---

temporalities of the archbishopric, allowed seven months to elapse before he could be induced to do homage to the king, and receive the archiepiscopal consecration. He had previously required that all the lands of his see should be restored, and that William should follow his advice in matters regarding the welfare of his soul. To these requests an evasive answer was returned: "That the just expectations of the archbishop should " not be disappointed <sup>38</sup>."

Persecutes  
Anselm.

From the subsequent treatment of Anselm a plan appears to have been already arranged for subduing the independent spirit of the new archbishop, and for rendering him the obsequious slave of the king. On the very day in which he entered Canterbury, and as he was going in procession to his cathedral, Flambard arrested him in the street, and summoned him to answer in the king's court for some imputed breach of the royal prerogative <sup>39</sup>. His tenants, during several months, were compelled to pay their rents into the exchequer: and those to whom William had alienated the archiepiscopal manors, were encouraged to retain them under the authority of the crown <sup>40</sup>. Though Anselm found himself reduced to such poverty, that the expenses of his household were defrayed by the abbot of St. Alban's <sup>41</sup>, he was given to understand that the king expected a present in return for his promotion. With great difficulty he raised the sum of five hundred pounds: but it was scornfully refused as unworthy the royal acceptance. "Do not, my lord," said the primate, "spurn my offer. Though the first, it will " not be the last, present of your archbishop. Use me like a " freeman, and I devote myself, with all that I have, to your

<sup>38</sup> Ead. 19, 20. 23.

<sup>39</sup> Ead. 20. By similar threats and persecutions he extorted from Bloet, bishop of Lincoln, no less than 5000 pounds of silver.

Bromp. 988.

<sup>40</sup> Bromp. *ibid.* Ead. 20. Ep. Ansel. iii. 24.

<sup>41</sup> Paris, Vit. Abbat. 1004.

“ service: but if you treat me as a slave, you will have neither me nor mine.”—“ Go,” replied the king in a rage, “ I want neither thee nor thine.” Anselm departed; and, to prove that he was not actuated by a spirit of parsimony, distributed the whole sum to the poor<sup>42</sup>.

He was now, in the phraseology of the court, out of the king’s favour: but it was privately intimated to him, that on the offer of one thousand pounds all former causes of offence would be forgotten. The mind of Anselm, superior to the temptations of hope and fear, neglected the suggestion. The bishops had assembled at Hastings, to take their leave of the king previously to his departure for Normandy: and the primate earnestly requested them to reconcile him with his sovereign. William dictated the terms: that he should pay five hundred pounds immediately, and engage to pay five hundred more within a certain term. Anselm replied that he was without money himself, and that his vassals, impoverished by the royal exactions, were unable to supply him with the sum required. “ Then,” exclaimed the king, “ as I hated him yesterday, so I hate him more to-day, and will hate him still more bitterly the longer I live. He shall never be acknowledged by me for archbishop. Let him go. He need not wait here to give me his blessing when I sail. I will not receive it<sup>43</sup>.”

There were at the time two competitors for the papacy, the antipope Clement, and Urban II. the legitimate successor of Gregory. This was a favourable opportunity for William, who, affecting to hesitate between the two, refused to acknowledge

Dispute about  
the succession  
to the papacy.  
1094.

<sup>42</sup> Ead. 21, 22. It was, according to Anselm himself in his letter to the archbishop of Lyons, pecunia non parva. He probably borrowed it: for the lands of his church were in such a

state that it was three years before he was able to maintain the usual archiepiscopal establishment. Ead. 108.

<sup>43</sup> Id. 23—25.

CHAP.  
IX.

either, that he might enjoy with less restraint the revenues of the vacant prelacies<sup>44</sup>. But Anselm, in common with the Norman clergy, had admitted the authority of Urban: before he consented to his election, he notified the circumstance to the king: and now solicited permission to receive from the pontiff the pallium, the distinguishing badge of the archiepiscopal dignity. At the very mention of Urban, William burst into a paroxysm of rage. “Could he be ignorant that to acknowledge any prelate for pope, before he had been acknowledged by the sovereign, was a breach of allegiance? This was the peculiar prerogative of the kings of England: it distinguished them from other monarchs, none of whom possessed it. To dispute this right was to tear the crown from his head. Anselm should answer for his presumption before his peers<sup>45</sup>.” The enemies of the archbishop now predicted that he would either be compelled to resign the mitre, or to disgrace himself by abjuring the authority of the pontiff. The court was held at Rockingham. Every artifice was employed to shake his resolution: he was assailed with threats and promises: he was accused of ingratitude: he was reviled with the appellation of traitor. The last charge called him from his seat. “If any man,” he exclaimed, “pretend that I violate the faith which I have sworn to the king, because I will not reject the authority of the bishop of Rome, let him come forward, and he will find me prepared in the name of God to answer him as I

<sup>44</sup> It was not that the English church rejected the papal supremacy, but that the bishops had not been permitted to inquire into the claims of the competitors, and therefore suspended their obedience. *Quis eorum canonice, quis secus fuerit institutus, ab Anglis usque id temporis ignorabatur.* Ead. 32. *Dubitabant propter illam quæ nata est*

*dissensionem, et propter dubitationem illum suscipere quasi certum differebant.* Epis. Ansel. iii. 36.

<sup>45</sup> Ead. 25, 26. Of this prerogative, though it had sprung up under his father, Flambard said, that it was præcipuum in omni dominatione sua, et quo eum *cunctis regibus præstare certum erat.* Id. 29.



“ought<sup>46</sup>.” The challenge was not accepted: but the king, turning to the bishops, ordered them to depose him. They answered that it was not in their power. He commanded them to abjure his authority, and they complied. He then called on the lay barons to imitate the example of the prelates, but they, to his utter discomfiture, refused. Disconcerted and enraged, he put off the decision of the question for two months, and calling the bishops around him, successively interrogated each in what sense he had abjured the authority of Anselm. Some replied unconditionally; and these he called his friends, and ordered to sit down. Others said that they had abjured it only inasmuch as the primate acknowledged a pope, who had not yet been acknowledged by the English church. These were commanded to quit the hall, with the assurance that they had forfeited the royal favour. To repurchase it, each was compelled to make the king a valuable present<sup>47</sup>.

If I have entered into these details, it was that the reader might the more easily appreciate the character of William, and notice the proceedings in these arbitrary courts of justice. There was something ludicrous in the result of the contest. The king sent clandestinely a messenger to Rome, acknowledged without solicitation the authority of Urban, privately procured from him the pallium, and after several fruitless attempts to sell it, at last allowed it to be given to the archbishop. But, though Anselm was in this instance successful, he had still reason to regret the tranquillity of his cell. The hatred which rankled in the breast of the king was often visible in his conduct: and he

The king is re-  
conciled with  
Anselm.  
1095.

<sup>46</sup> Id. 28, 29. Anselm has been blamed for having given to the pope, during the debate, the titles of bishop of bishops, prince of all men, and angel of the great council. Whoever will peruse the original, will be

convinced that the charge has been made by mistake. It is to Christ, not to the pope, that the archbishop has applied these expressions. See Eadmer, p. 27.

<sup>47</sup> Id. 30, 31.

CHAP.  
IX.

Archbishop  
goes to Rome.  
1097.  
Oct. 15.

suffered no opportunity to escape of thwarting the endeavours, and wounding the feelings, of the primate. In defiance of his remonstrances William retained possession of the vacant benefices; prevented the convocation of synods; refused to restore the manors belonging to the see of Canterbury; and after an expedition into Wales, cited the archbishop before him, for having sent his retainers to the army without a competent supply of arms and provisions. The charge is said to have been false<sup>48</sup>. But Anselm, exhausted by groundless provocations, instead of pleading his cause, solicited permission to retire to Rome<sup>49</sup>. An answer was returned that he might use his own discretion: but that if he left the realm, the king would immediately take possession of his revenues. The primate entered the chamber, and approaching William, said: "Sir, I am going: but as this is probably the last time that we shall meet, I come as your father and archbishop, to offer you my blessing." The king bowed his head: Anselm made over him the sign of the cross, and instantly retired. At Dover the royal officers treated him with studied indignity: in France and Italy he was received with every demonstration of respect<sup>50</sup>.

<sup>48</sup> *Falso a malignis dicebatur.* Eadmer in vit. Ansel. 883.

<sup>49</sup> The conqueror had required that no bishop should visit Rome without his permission: a regulation which excited the loud complaint of Gregory VII. *Nemo omnium regum etiam paganorum contra sedem apostolicam hoc præsumpsit attentare.* Epis. Greg. VII. 1.

<sup>50</sup> Ead. 32—34. 36—41. The archbishop in his letter to the pope thus sums up his reasons for leaving the kingdom. "The king would not restore to my church those lands belonging to it, which he had given away after the death of Lanfranc: he even continued to give more away notwithstanding my opposition: he required of me grievous

services, which had never been required of my predecessors: he annulled the law of God, and the canonical and apostolical decisions by customs of his own creation. In such conduct I could not acquiesce without the loss of my own soul: to plead against him in his own court was in vain: for no one dared to assist or advise me. This then is my object in coming to you: to beg that you would free me from the bondage of the episcopal dignity, and allow me to serve God again in the tranquillity of my cell: and that in the next place you would provide for the churches of the English according to your wisdom and the authority of your station." Eadm. 43.

CHAP.  
IX.

---

The king's  
death in the  
New Forest.  
1100.

After the departure of Anselm William persevered in the same rapacious and voluptuous career, till he was suddenly arrested by death in the New Forest, where his brother Richard had formerly perished. For some time predictions of his approaching fate had been circulated among the people, and were readily believed by those, whose piety he had shocked by his debaucheries, or whose hatred he had provoked by his rapacity<sup>51</sup>. Nor was he without apprehension himself. On the first of August he passed a restless night: and his imagination was so disturbed by dreams, that he sent for his servants to watch near his bed. Before sunrise Fitz-Hamen entered the chamber, and related to him the vision of a foreign monk, which was interpreted to pre-sage some calamity to the king. "The man," he exclaimed with a forced smile, "dreams like a monk. Give him a hundred shillings." He was, however, unable to conceal the impression which these portents had made on his mind: and, at the request of his friends, abandoned his design of hunting, and devoted the morning to business. At dinner he ate and drank more copiously than usual: his spirits revived: and shortly afterwards he rode out into the forest. There most of his attendants successively left him, separating in pursuit of game: and about sunset he was discovered by some countrymen, lying on the ground, and weltering in blood. An arrow, the shaft of which was broken, had entered his breast. The body was conveyed in a cart to Winchester, where it was hastily buried the next morning<sup>52</sup>. Out of respect to his rank a grave was allotted him in the cathedral: but it was deemed indecent to honour with religious rites the obsequies of a prince, whose life had been so impious, and whose death was too sudden to encourage a hope that he had found time to repent<sup>53</sup>.

Aug. 2.

<sup>51</sup> Orderic, 781.

<sup>52</sup> Malm. 71.

<sup>53</sup> Orderic, 782.



CHAP.  
IX.

By whose hand the king fell, and whether the arrow was directed against him by accident or design, are questions which cannot be satisfactorily answered. The report, which obtained credit at the time, was, that William, following a wounded deer with his eyes, held his hand near his face to intercept the rays of the sun, and that at the same moment an arrow from the bow of Walter Tyrrel, a French knight, glancing from a tree, struck him in the breast. It was added that the unintentional homicide, spurring his horse to the shore, immediately crossed to the continent: and a pilgrimage which he afterwards made to the holy land, was attributed to remorse, and construed into a proof of his guilt. But Tyrrel always denied the charge: and after his return, when he had nothing to hope or fear, deposed upon oath in the presence of Suger, abbot of St. Denis, that he never saw the king on the day of his death, nor entered that part of the forest in which he fell<sup>54</sup>. If William perished by treason (a supposition not very improbable) it was politic in the assassin to fix the guilt on one, who was no longer in the kingdom. This at least is certain, that no inquiry was made into the cause or the manner of his death: whence we may infer that his successor, if he were not convinced that it would not bear investigation, was too well pleased with an event which raised him to the throne, to trouble himself about the means by which it was effected.

His character. Of the violent character of William, his rapacity, despotism, and voluptuousness, the reader will have formed a sufficient notion from the preceding pages<sup>55</sup>. In person he was short and

<sup>54</sup> Quem cum nec timeret nec speraret, jurejurando sapius audivimus quasi sacrosanctum asserere, quod ea die nec in eam partem sylva, in qua rex venebatur, venerit, nec eum in sylva omnino viderit. Suger, vit. Lud. Gros. p. 283. Tyrrel was an inhabitant of Pontoise. Ord. 78.

<sup>55</sup> I will only add the character given of him by a celebrated foreign, but contemporary, writer. Lascivie et animi desideriis deditus, pauperum intolerabilis oppressor, ecclesiarum crudelis exactor, et irreverentissimus rector et dissipator. Suger, *ibid.*

corpulent, with flaxen hair, and a ruddy complexion: from which last circumstance he derived the name of Rufus, or the red king. In ordinary conversation his utterance was slow and embarrassed: in the hurry of passion precipitate and unintelligible. He assumed in public a haughty port, rolling his eyes with fierceness on the spectators, and endeavouring by the tone of his voice and the tenor of his answers to intimidate those who addressed him. But in private he descended to an equality with his companions, amusing them with his wit, which was chiefly pointed against himself, and seeking to lessen the odium of his excesses, by making them the subjects of laughter.

He built at the expense of the neighbouring counties a wall His buildings. round the Tower, a bridge over the Thames, and the great hall at Westminster. The latter was finished the year before his death: and when he first visited it after his return from Normandy, he replied to his flatterers, that there was nothing in its dimensions to excite their wonder: it was only the vestibule to the palace which he intended to raise. But in this respect he seems to have followed, not to have created, the taste of the age. During his reign structures of unusual magnificence arose in every part of the kingdom: and the most opulent proprietors sought to distinguish themselves by the castles which they built, and the monasteries which they founded.

CHAP. X.

HENRY I.

SURNAMED BEAUCLERK, OR THE SCHOLAR.

CONTEMPORARY PRINCES.

EMPERORS OF GERMANY.	KINGS OF SCOTLAND.	KINGS OF FRANCE.	KINGS OF SPAIN.	POPES.
HENRY IV. ..1106.	EDGAR .....1106.	PHILIP I. 1108.	ALPHONSO VI. 1109.	PASCHAL II. 1118.
HENRY V.....1125.	ALEXANDER I. 1124.	LOUIS VI.	ALPHONSO VII.1133.	GELASIUS II. 1119.
LOTHAIRE II.	DAVID I.		ALPHONSO VIII.	CALIXTUS II. 1124.
				HONORIUS II. 1130.
				INNOCENT II.

ACCESSION OF HENRY—INVASION BY DUKE ROBERT—HENRY IN NORMANDY—MAKES ROBERT PRISONER—DISPUTE CONCERNING INVESTITURES—WAR IN NORMANDY—STORY OF JULIANA, THE KING'S DAUGHTER—SHIPWRECK OF HIS SON WILLIAM—SETTLEMENT OF THE CROWN ON MATILDA—HIS ADMINISTRATION OF JUSTICE—RELIEF TO THE TENANTS OF THE CROWN LANDS—EXTORTION OF MONEY—DISPUTE RESPECTING LEGATES—DEATH AND CHARACTER OF HENRY—HIS MINISTERS—STATE OF LEARNING.

CHAP.  
X.

FOUR years were now elapsed, since Robert of Normandy had abandoned his dominions to earn a barren wreath of glory in the fields of Palestine. Accompanied by Hugh of Verman-

Robert in  
Palestine



dois, and Robert of Flanders, he had passed the Alps, received the benediction of the pontiff at Lucca, and joined the crusaders under the walls of Constantinople. At the siege of Nice he held an important command: in the battle of Dorylæum his exhortations and example sustained the fainting courage of the christians: at the reduction of Antioch the praise of superior prowess was shared between him and Godfrey of Bouillon<sup>1</sup>: and if, during a reverse of fortune, he slunk with several others from the pressure of famine and the prospect of slavery, this temporary stain was effaced by his return, his exploits in the field, and his services in the assault of Jerusalem. The crown of that city was given to Godfrey, the most worthy of the confederate chieftains: but if we may believe the English historians, it had been previously offered to Robert, who, with more wisdom than he usually displayed, preferred his European dominions to the precarious possession of a throne surrounded by hostile and infidel nations<sup>2</sup>.

By the priority of birth, and the stipulation of treaties, the crown of England belonged to Robert. He had already arrived in Italy on his way home: but, ignorant of the prize that was at stake, he loitered in Apulia to woo Sibylla, the fair sister of William of Conversana<sup>3</sup>. Henry, the younger brother, was on the spot: he had followed Rufus into the forest: and the moment that he heard the king was fallen, spurring his horse, he rode to Winchester, to secure the royal treasures. William de Breteuil, to whose custody they had been intrusted, arrived at the same time, and avowed his determination to preserve them for

Coronation of  
Henry.

1100

<sup>1</sup> It was believed that Godfrey with a stroke of his sword had divided the body of a Turk from the shoulder to the opposite haunch; and that Robert by the descent of his falchion had cloven the head and armour of his

adversary from the crown to the breast.

<sup>2</sup> Gerv. Tilb. apud Bouquet, XIV. 13.

<sup>3</sup> Her father Geoffry was the nephew of Robert the Guiscard. Orderic, 780.

CHAP.  
X.

---

Aug. 5.

Robert, the rightful heir. The prince immediately drew his sword; and blood would have been shed, had not their common friends interposed, and prevailed on Breteuil to withdraw his opposition. As soon as Henry had obtained possession of the treasures and castle, he was proclaimed king: and riding to Westminster was crowned on the Sunday, the third day after the death of his brother. The ceremonial was the same as had been observed in the coronation of the Anglo-Saxon kings, and was performed by Maurice, bishop of London, in the absence of Anselm and the vacancy of the archiepiscopal see of York<sup>4</sup>.

His charter.

On the same day care was taken to inform the nation of the benefits, which it would derive from the accession of the new monarch. To strengthen the weakness of his claim by connecting it with the interests of the people, he published a charter of liberties, copies of which were sent to the several counties, and deposited in the principal monasteries. In this instrument, 1°. he restored to the church its ancient immunities, and promised neither to sell the vacant benefices, nor to let them out to farm, nor to retain them in his own possession for the benefit of his exchequer, nor to raise tallages on their tenants. 2°. He granted to all his barons and immediate vassals (and required that they should make the same concession to *their* tenants) that they might dispose by will of their personal property: that they might give their daughters and female relatives in marriage without fee or impediment, provided the intended husband were not his enemy: that for breaches of the peace and other delinquencies they should not be placed at the king's mercy, as in the days of his father and brother, but should be condemned in the sums assigned by the Anglo-Saxon laws: that their heirs

<sup>4</sup> Orderic, 782. Malm. 83. Chron. Sax. 208.

should pay the customary reliefs for the livery of their lands, and not the arbitrary compensations which had been exacted by his two predecessors: that heiresses should not be compelled by the king to marry without the consent of the barons: that widows should retain their dowers, and not be given in marriage against their will: and that the wardship of minors should, together with the custody of their lands, be committed to their mothers, or nearest relations. 3°. To the nation at large he promised to put in force the laws of Edward the confessor, as they had been amended and published by his father: to levy no moneyage which had not been paid in the Saxon times: and to punish with severity the coiners and venders of light monies. He exempted from the Danegelt the demesne lands of all his military tenants, forgave all fines due to the exchequer, and the pecuniary mulcts for "murder" committed before his coronation; and ordered, under the heaviest penalties, reparation to be made for all injustices committed in consequence of the death of his brother. Such are the provisions of this celebrated charter: which is the more deserving of the reader's notice, because, as it professes to abolish the illegal customs introduced after the conquest, it shews the nature of the grievances which the nation had suffered under the two Williams. Henry, however, retained both the royal forests and the forest laws: but as a kind of apology he declared, that in this reservation he was guided by the advice, and had obtained the consent, of his barons. He added at the same time a most beneficial charter in favour of the citizens of London<sup>5</sup>.

<sup>5</sup> Leg. Sax. 233. Ric. Hagul. 310. 311. Henry's charter is a very important document, as it professes to restore the law to the same state in which it had been settled by William the conqueror. Lagam regis Edvardi vobis

reddo cum emendationibus quibus eam pater meus emendavit consilio baronum suorum. Leg. 234. Hence we may infer that at that period the crown derived no emolument from the custody of the vacant benefices: that it



CHAP.  
X.His reforma-  
tion,

and marriage.

Hitherto the moral conduct of Henry had been as questionable as that of his late brother: policy now taught him to assume the zeal and severity of a reformer. He dismissed his mistresses, drove from his court the men, who had scandalized the public by their effeminacy and debaucheries<sup>6</sup>: and sent to hasten the return of archbishop Anselm with expressions of the highest regard and veneration for his character. At the solicitation of the prelates he consented to marry: and the object of his choice was Matilda or Maud, the daughter of Malcolm, king of Scots, by Margaret, the sister of Edgar the etheling: a princess whose descent from the Anglo-Saxon monarchs was expect-

posed no impediment to the marriages of the female relations of its tenants: that the great council of tenants decided on the marriages of heiresses: that widows were allowed to marry according to their own choice: that the custody of the heir and his lands was given to the mother and his near relations: that the amount of reliefs was fixed by law, and that there were estates, called *rectæ hæreditates*, which paid no relief at all: that the disposition of personal property by will was valid without the consent of the sovereign: that the personalty of intestates was divided by the nearest relatives: and that *amerciaments*, by which the personal estate of the delinquent was placed at the mercy of the king, were entirely unknown. All the contrary practices had grown up during the last years of the conqueror, and the reign of Rufus, particularly under the administration of Flambard. To the charter is added a law treatise in 94 chapters, drawn up by an unknown writer, evidently with the intention of instructing the judges in the law, as it stood in the time of Edward the confessor, and as it was amended by William the conqueror, and had now been restored by Henry. *Leg. Sax.* 236—283. It is hardly necessary to add, that when the king found himself firmly seated on the throne, he renewed all the grievances which he had previously abolished.

<sup>6</sup> *Effæminatos curia propellens, lucernarum usum noctibus in curia restituit, qui fuerat*

*tempore fratris intermissus.* Malm. 88. Why lights had been prohibited in the palace of William, or were now restored by Henry, I am unable to explain. But the *effæminati* are so frequently mentioned by our ancient writers, that they demand some notice. They were the fashionable young men of the time, and received that appellation from their manner of dressing, which approached to that of women. They wore tunics with deep sleeves, and mantles with long trains. The peaks of their shoes (*pigaciæ*) were stuffed with tow, of enormous length, and twisted to imitate the horn of a ram or the coils of a serpent: an improvement lately introduced by Fulk, earl of Anjou, to conceal the deformity of his feet. Their hair was divided in front, and combed on the shoulders, whence it fell in ringlets down the back, and was often lengthened most preposterously by the addition of false curls. This mode of dressing was opposed by the more rigid among the clergy, particularly the manner of wearing the hair, which was said to have been prohibited by St. Paul: "if a man nourish his hair, it is a shame to him." 1 Cor. xi. 14. But after a long struggle fashion triumphed over both the clergy and the apostle. See Malmesbury (88. 99), Eadmer (23. 106), and Orderic (682). The latter adds, that they were addicted to the most abominable vices; *sodomiticis spurcitius fædi catamitæ.* Ibid.

ed to add stability to his throne, and secure the succession to his posterity. An objection was, however, made to their union, which nearly defeated his hopes. The princess in her childhood had been intrusted to the care of her aunt Christina, abbess of Wilton, who, to preserve the chastity of her niece from the brutality of the Norman soldiers, had compelled her to wear the veil, and to frequent the society of the nuns. Hence it was contended that according to the ecclesiastical canons she was no longer at liberty to marry: but in a synod of the prelates the objection was over-ruled in conformity with a former decision of archbishop Lanfranc on a similar occasion. The marriage was celebrated, and the queen crowned with the usual solemnity by Anselm, who had now returned to England, and resumed the administration of his diocese<sup>7</sup>.

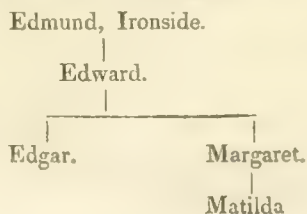
Nov. 11

To satisfy the clamour of the people, Henry had committed to the Tower Flambard, bishop of Durham, the obnoxious minister of the late king. The prelate lived sumptuously in his confinement on the allowance which he received from the exchequer, and the presents which were sent him by his friends: and by his wit, cheerfulness, and generosity, won the good will, while he lulled the vigilance, of his keepers. In the beginning of February he received a rope concealed in the bottom of a pitcher of wine. The knights, who guarded him, were as usual invited to

Confinement  
and escape of  
Flambard.  
1101

<sup>7</sup> Eadmer, 56—58. Alured Bev. 144. From the proceedings in the council held on this occasion it appears, that at the time of the conquest there was no security for females, unless they took refuge in a convent. *Suo*

*pudori metuentes monasteria virginum petivere, acceptoque velo sese inter ipsas a tanta infamia protexare.* Ead. *ibid.* Matilda traced her descent from the Anglo-Saxon kings in this manner:



CHAP.  
X.

dine: they drank copiously till it was late in the evening: and soon after they had lain down to rest, Flambard, with the aid of his rope, descended from the window, was conducted by his friends to the sea shore, and thence escaped into Normandy<sup>8</sup>. In Normandy he found duke Robert, who had married Sibylla, and returned to his dutchy within a month after the death of his brother. By his former subjects he had been received with welcome: but his claim to the English crown, though he meant to enforce it, was postponed to a subsequent period. Pleasure, not power, was his present object: he wished to exhibit to his Normans the fair prize which he had brought from Apulia: and her fortune, a very considerable sum, was consumed in feasting and pageantry<sup>9</sup>. But the arrival and suggestions of Flambard awakened his ambition, and turned his thoughts from pleasure to war. His vassals professed their eagerness to fight under a prince, who had gained laurels in the holy war: tenders of assistance were received from England: and a powerful force of men at arms, archers, and footmen, was ordered to assemble in the neighbourhood of Tresport. On the English barons, who had engaged to espouse his cause, Robert de Belesme, William de Warenne, Ivo de Grentesmenil, and Walter Giffard, he bestowed some of the strongest fortresses in Normandy. His object was to secure their co-operation: but he had reason to regret a measure, which weakened his power, and ultimately caused his ruin<sup>10</sup>.

Robert claims  
the crown.

Henry's pre-  
parations.

Henry beheld with disquietude the preparations of his brother: but trembled still more at the well known disaffection of his barons. By Robert de Meulant, the most trusty and favoured of his ministers, he was advised to make every sacrifice for the

<sup>8</sup> Orderic, 786.

<sup>9</sup> Malms. 86. Sibylla died in 1102 of poison administered, it was believed, by Agnes, dowager countess of Buckingham, who, as she possessed the affections, was also

ambitious to share the honours, of the duke. Orderic, 810. Malmsbury's account is different.

<sup>10</sup> Idem, 787.



preservation of his crown ; to promise whatever should be asked ; to divide among the suspected the choicest of the royal demesnes, and to wait till the hour of danger was past, when he might resume these concessions, and punish the perfidy of the men, who had presumed to sell to their sovereign those services which they already owed him by their oaths. At Whitsuntide Henry held his court : every petition was granted : the charter was renewed : and in the hands of Anselm, as the representative of the nation, the king swore faithfully to fulfil all his engagements. His army was collected at Pevensey on the coast of Sussex : Robert, conducted by the mariners, whom Flambard had debauched from their allegiance, reached the harbour of Portsmouth. To secure the city of Winchester became to each prince an object of the first importance. If Robert were nearer, he was delayed by the debarkation of his troops, and Henry overtook him on his march. By the neighbourhood of the two armies the spirit of revolt was again awakened among the Anglo-Norman barons : but the natives remained faithful to Henry, and Anselm devoted himself to his interests. He harangued the troops on the duty of allegiance, recalled from the camp of Robert some of the deserters, confirmed the wavering loyalty of others, and threatened the invaders with the sentence of excommunication. After several fruitless and irritating messages, Henry demanded a conference with his brother. The two Pacification. princes met in a vacant space between the armies, conversed for a few minutes, and embraced as friends. The terms of reconciliation were immediately adjusted. Robert renounced all claim to the crown of England, and obtained in return a yearly pension of three thousand marks, the cession of all the castles which Henry possessed in Normandy, with the exception of Damfront, and the revocation of the judgment of forfeiture, which William

CHAP.  
X.

had pronounced against his adherents. It was moreover stipulated, that both princes should unite to punish their respective enemies, and that if either died without legitimate issue, the survivor should be his heir. Twelve barons on each side swore to enforce the observance of these articles<sup>11</sup>.

Henry pun-  
ishes his  
enemies.  
1102.

It was not, however, in the disposition of Henry to forget or forgive. Prevented by the treaty from chastising the public disaffection of his Anglo-Norman barons, he sought pretexts of revenge in their private conduct. Spies were appointed to watch them on their demesnes, and in their intercourse with their vassals: charges of real or pretended transgressions were repeatedly brought before the king's court, and each obnoxious nobleman in his turn was, justly or unjustly, pronounced a criminal and an outlaw. Of the great families, the descendants of the warriors who had fought with the conqueror, the most powerful successively disappeared: and in opposition to the others, Henry's jealousy selected from the needy followers of the court, men, whom he enriched with the spoils of the proscribed, and raised to an equality with the proudest of their rivals. To these he looked as to the strongest bulwarks of his throne: for since they owed their fortunes to his bounty, their own interest, if not their gratitude, would bind them firmly to his support<sup>12</sup>.

Revolt of  
Robert de  
Belesme.

Among the outlaws were Robert Malet, Ivo de Grentesmenil<sup>13</sup>, Warenne, earl of Surrey, William, earl of Morton and Cornwall, and Robert de Belesme, earl of Shrewsbury. The last,

<sup>11</sup> Eadmer, 58. Orderic, 788. Chron. Sax. 209, 210.

<sup>12</sup> Orderic, 804, 805.

<sup>13</sup> Ivo was accused of having made war on his neighbours, quod in illa regione crimen est inusitatum, nec sine gravi ultione fit ex-

piatum. Orderic, 805. This was the great merit of the conqueror and his sons. They compelled their barons to decide their controversies in his court, instead of waging war against each other.

the son of the great Montgomery, deserves some notice. He was the most powerful subject in England, haughty, rapacious, and deceitful. In these vices he might have many equals: in cruelty he rose pre-eminent among the savages of the age. He preferred the death to the ransom of his captives; it was his delight to feast his eyes with the contortions of the victims, men and women, whom he had ordered to be impaled: he is even said to have torn out the eyes of his godson with his own hands, because the father of the boy had committed some trivial offence, and had escaped from his vengeance<sup>14</sup>. Against this monster, not from motives of humanity but of policy, Henry had conceived the most violent hatred. He was cited before the king's court: the conduct of his officers in Normandy as well as in England, his words no less than his actions, were severely scrutinized: and a long list of five-and-forty offences was objected to him by his accusers. The earl, according to custom, obtained permission to retire, that he might consult his friends: but instantly mounted his horse, fled to his earldom, summoned his retainers, and boldly bade defiance to the power of his prosecutor. Henry cheerfully accepted the challenge, and began the war with the investment of the castle of Arundel, which, after a siege of three months, surrendered by capitulation. Belesme, in the interval, had fortified Bridgenorth on the left bank of the Severn, and placed in it a garrison of seven hundred men: but the townsmen, intimidated by the menaces of the king, rose upon their defenders, and opened the gates to the royal forces. Shrewsbury still remained in his possession. From that city to Bridgenorth the country was covered with wood; and the only road ran through a narrow defile between

<sup>14</sup> Orderic, 815. 841. Ang. Sac. ii. 698, 699. Malms. 89.



CHAP.  
X.

---

two mountains, the declivities of which he had lined with his archers. Henry ordered the infantry, sixty thousand men, to open a passage : in a few days the trees were felled : and a safe and spacious road conducted the king to the walls of Shrewsbury. At his arrival despair induced Belesme to come forth on foot : he offered the keys of the place to the conqueror ; and surrendered himself at discretion. His life was spared : but he was compelled to quit the kingdom, and to promise upon oath never to return without the royal permission <sup>15</sup>.

Duke Robert  
in England.  
1103.

Hitherto the duke had religiously observed the conditions of peace. He had even on the first notice of Belesme's rebellion, ravaged the Norman estates of that nobleman. Sensible, however, that the real crime of the outlaws was their former attachment to his interest, he unexpectedly came to England at the solicitation of the earl of Surrey, and incautiously trusted himself to the generosity of an unfeeling brother. He was received indeed with the smile of affection, but soon found that he was in reality a captive : instead of interceding in favour of others, he was reduced to treat for his own liberty : and as the price of his ransom, gladly resigned his annuity of three thousand marks, which, to save the honour of the two princes, was received as a present by the queen Matilda<sup>16</sup>. After such treatment Robert could not doubt of the hostility of his brother : and in his own defence sought the friendship, and accepted the services, of the outlaw Belesme, who still possessed thirty-four castles in Normandy. Henry received the intelligence with pleasure, pronounced the alliance between himself and Robert at an end, received, perhaps procured, invitations from the enemies of the duke, and resolved to transfer the Norman coronet to his own head<sup>17</sup>.

Henry in-  
vades Nor-  
mandy.  
1105.

<sup>15</sup> Orderic, 806—808. Malms. 88. Chron. Sax. 210. Flor. 650, 651. ric, 805. Flor. 652.

<sup>17</sup> Chron. Sax. 212. Orderic, 808. 813.

<sup>16</sup> Chron. Sax. 211. Malms. 88. Orde-

He had even the effrontery to assume credit for the purity of his motives, and to hold himself out as the saviour of an afflicted country. It may, indeed, be, as his panegyrists assert, that the duke was weak and improvident: that he spent his time and his money in the pursuit of voluptuousness, and submitted to be robbed by his mistresses and the companions of his pleasures: that he suffered his barons to wage war on each other, and to inflict every species of calamity on his subjects<sup>18</sup>: still it will be difficult to believe that it was pity and not ambition, a hope to relieve the distresses of his countrymen, and not a desire to annex Normandy to his dominions, which induced Henry to unsheathe the sword against his unfortunate brother. The first campaign passed without any important result: in the second the fate of Normandy was decided before the walls of Tenchebrai. The king had besieged that fortress: and Robert on an appointed day approached with all his forces to its relief. The action was bloody and obstinate: but Helie de la Fleche, who fought on the side of Henry, unexpectedly attacked the enemy in flank; and the duke, the earl of Morton, Robert de Stuteville, Edgar the etheling<sup>19</sup>, and four hundred knights, fell into the hands of the conquerors. To some of his captives the king gave their freedom: others he released for a stipulated ransom; Morton and Stuteville were condemned to perpetual imprisonment. The fate of Robert was delayed for a few weeks. His presence was wanted to procure from his officers the surrender of their trusts: as soon as he ceased to be useful, he was sent to England, and kept in confinement till death. In the course of a few weeks Belesme, through the interest of Helie, obtained permission to retain a portion of his

Robert taken  
prisoner.

Sep. 28.

<sup>18</sup> Orderic, 815. 821. Malm. 86. 89.

(Chron. Sax. 214). It is the last time that

<sup>19</sup> Edgar was set at liberty by Henry mention is made of that prince.

CHAP.  
X.

---

estates: and Flambard purchased with the surrender of Lisieux, the restoration of his bishopric<sup>20</sup>. Henry summoned the Norman barons to that city, where he was acknowledged as duke without opposition<sup>21</sup>.

Dispute about  
investitures.

While the king had thus been employed in chastising his enemies, and stripping an unfortunate brother of his dominions, he was engaged in a less successful quarrel with Anselm and the court of Rome concerning the right of investiture. To understand the subject of the controversy, the reader should know that according to ancient practice the election of bishops had generally depended on the testimony of the clergy and people, and the suffrage of the provincial prelates. But the lapse of years, and the conversion of the barbarous nations, had introduced important innovations into this branch of ecclesiastical polity. The tenure of clerical, was assimilated to that of lay, property: the sovereign assumed the right of approving of the prelate elect; and the new bishop or abbot, like the baron or knight, was compelled to swear fealty, and to do homage to his superior lord. The pretensions of the crown were gradually extended. As it was the interest of the prince that the spiritual fiefs should not fall into the hands of his enemies, he reserved to himself the right of nomination; and in virtue of that right *invested* the individual whom he had nominated, with the ring and crosier, the acknowledged emblems of episcopal and abbatial jurisdiction. The church had observed with jealousy these successive encroachments on her privileges: in the general councils of Nice in 787, and of Constantinople in 869, the nomination of bishops by lay authority had been condemned: in 1067 the former prohibitions

Origin of that  
claim.

<sup>20</sup> Eadmer, 90. Malm. 89. Hunt. 217. Orderic, 820 - 822. The duke was made prisoner by Galdric the king's chaplain, who was rewarded for his services with the bishopric of Landaff. But this warlike prelate soon

incurred the hatred of the citizens, and was murdered in a field with five of his prebendaries. Orderic, 821.

<sup>21</sup> Orderic, 823. 833.



were renewed by Gregory VII.; and ten years afterwards Victor III. in a synod at Beneventum added the sentence of excommunication both against the prince who should presume to exercise the right of investiture, and the prelate who should condescend to receive his temporalities on such conditions. But it was in vain that the thunders of the church were directed against a practice enforced by sovereigns, who refused to surrender a privilege enjoyed by their predecessors, and defended by prelates who were indebted to it for their wealth and importance. The contest between the two powers continued during half a century: nor was it without mutual concessions that claims so contradictory could be amicably adjusted.

It should, however, be remembered that the right for which the sovereigns contended, had at this period degenerated into a most pernicious abuse. The reader is already acquainted with the manner in which it had been exercised by William Rufus, who for his own profit refused on many occasions to fill the vacant benefices, and on others degraded the dignities of the church by prostituting them to the highest bidder. In France and Germany similar evils existed even to a greater extent. In Normandy the indigence of Robert had suggested an improvement on the usual practice, by selling the reversion of bishoprics in favour of children, and granting for a proportionate sum more than one diocese to the same prelate<sup>22</sup>. Every good man was anxious to suppress these abuses; and the zeal of the pontiffs was stimulated by the more virtuous of the episcopal order. Among these we must number Anselm. During his exile he had assisted at the councils of Bari and Rome, in which the custom of investiture had been again condemned, and the sentence of

Its abuses.

Anselm opposes it.

<sup>22</sup> Ivon. Carnot. epist. 178, 179. 181.

CHAP.  
X.

---

excommunication against the guilty had been renewed. At his first interview with Henry, he intimated in respectful terms his inflexible resolution to observe the discipline approved in these synods : and the king avowed an equally fixed determination to retain, what he conceived to be, the lawful prerogative of his crown. He stood, however, at that moment on very slippery ground. Without the aid of the primate he knew not how to put down the partisans, or to resist the forces of his brother Robert : it was more prudent to dissemble than to throw the clergy into the arms of his competitor : and by mutual consent the controversy was suspended, till an answer could be procured from the pope ; which answer, as both had foreseen, was unfavourable to the pretensions of the monarch. It would exhaust the patience of the reader to descend into the particulars of this dispute : to notice all the messages that were sent to Rome, and the answers returned to England ; the artifices that were employed to deceive, and the expedients suggested to mollify, Anselm. At last by the king's request he undertook, aged and infirm as he was, a journey to Italy, to lay the whole controversy before the pontiff : on his return he received an order to remain in banishment till he should be willing to submit to the royal pleasure. The exile retired to his friend the archbishop of Lyons, under whose hospitable roof he spent the three following years. In the interval Henry was harassed by the intreaties of his barons and the murmurs of the people : his sister Adela, countess of Blois, and his queen Matilda, importuned him to be reconciled to the primate : and Paschal II. who had already excommunicated his advisers, admonished him that in a few weeks the same sentence would be pronounced against himself. The king, who was not prepared to push the dispute to this extremity, discovered a willingness to relent : Anselm met him at the

abbey of Bec : and both, in the true spirit of conciliation, consented to abandon a part of their pretensions. As fealty and homage were civil duties, it was agreed that they should be exacted from every clergyman before he received his temporalities : as the ring and crosier were considered to denote spiritual jurisdiction, to which the king acknowledged he had no claim, the collation of these emblems was suppressed<sup>23</sup>. On the whole the church gained little by the compromise. It might check, but did not abolish, the principal abuse. If Henry surrendered an unnecessary ceremony, he still retained the substance. The right which he assumed of nominating bishops and abbots was left unimpaired : and though he promised not to appropriate to himself the revenues of the vacant benefices, it was an engagement which he never hesitated to violate<sup>24</sup>.

The possession of Normandy soon involved the king in hostilities with the neighbouring princes. William, the only son of the captive duke, was but five years old at the time of the battle of Tenchebrai : and Henry, after caressing the boy, gave him to the custody of Helie de St. Saen, who had married an illegitimate daughter of Robert. But it was suggested by his advisers that the young prince might at some future period claim the domi-

War in Normandy.

<sup>23</sup> Fadmer, 56—91.

<sup>24</sup> This controversy continued to embitter the life of pope Paschal. About three years after the compromise with the king of England, Henry IV. of Germany, consented to abandon the right of investiture on condition that the pontiff would crown him in Rome. But as soon as he was admitted within the walls, he seized on Paschal, conveyed him to a castle in the neighbourhood, and kept him in confinement for two months. To obtain his liberty the pope confirmed to Henry the contested right, and solemnly swore never to excommunicate or molest him for his exercise of it. This acquiescence of Paschal was

severely condemned : provincial synods were assembled ; the emperor was excommunicated ; and the pope was harassed by complaints and reproofs. Unable to exculpate himself to the satisfaction of the more zealous of the prelates, he condescended to appear in the council of Lateran in 1112 without the ensigns of his dignity, and to submit his conduct to public inquiry. By order of the fathers the charter granted to Henry was burnt, and that prince was excommunicated. But Paschal himself, out of reverence to his oath, refused to pronounce the sentence, and persisted in that refusal till death. Baron, ad ann. 1111, 1112 Malm. 94.



CHAP.  
X.

1108.

nions of his father: and a trusty officer was dispatched to surprise the castle of St. Saen, and secure the person of William.

1113.

Helie was absent: but the ingenuity of his servants defeated the diligence of the royal messenger; and the tutor readily abandoned his estates to insure the safety of his pupil. The son of Robert was conducted by him from court to court: and every where his innocence and misfortunes gained him partisans and protectors. Of these the most powerful were Louis, king of France, and Fulk, earl of Anjou. Louis engaged to grant him the investiture of Normandy, Fulk to give him his daughter Sibylla in marriage: promises, the performance of which was for the present suspended, on account of his minority. In the meanwhile Helie de la Fleche died. Henry claimed his earldom of Mans as an appendage of Normandy: Fulk seized it in right of his wife, the only daughter of Helie. The former was assisted by his nephew Theobald, earl of Blois, the latter by his superior lord the king of France. During two years victory seemed to oscillate between these competitors: and each ephemeral success, by whomsoever it was gained, invariably produced the same effects, the pillage of the country, and the oppression of the inhabitants. At length a peace was concluded, by the conditions of which the interests of the Norman prince were abandoned, Matilda, a daughter of Fulk, was promised in marriage to William, the son of Henry, and the earl was permitted to keep possession of Mans, as the feudatory of the English monarch. During the war the king had arrested Belesme, and confined him for life in the castle of Wareham <sup>25</sup>.

It is con-  
cluded.

1115.

And renewed.  
1118.

As William of Normandy advanced in age, the hopes of his partisans increased. Baldwin, earl of Flanders, with whom he

<sup>25</sup> Orderic, 837—841.

had found an honourable retreat during the last five years, engaged to assist him with all his power: Louis, notwithstanding the peace, was induced to draw the sword in the same cause; even Fulk of Anjou agreed to join the confederates. All these princes had individually reasons to complain of Henry: they were willing to sanctify their resentment by espousing the interests of an injured orphan. Thus the embers of war were rekindled, and the flame stretched from one extremity of Normandy to the other. During more than three years fortune seemed to play with the efforts of the combatants. At first Louis was compelled to solicit the forbearance of the king of England: then success upon success waited on his arms: afterwards Baldwin died of a slight wound received at the siege of Eu: next Fulk of Anjou, induced by a considerable bribe, and the actual marriage of his daughter to Henry's son, withdrew from the allies; and at last the decisive though bloodless victory of Brenville, gave the superiority to the king of England. By accident Henry and Louis met in the vicinity of Noyon. Henry had five, Louis four hundred knights. The French fought on horseback: the English, with the exception of one-fifth of their number, fought on foot. During the engagement both princes displayed the most determined courage, and both were in the most imminent danger. Henry received two blows on the head: but though the violence of the shock forced the blood from his nostrils, such was the temper of his helmet that it resisted the edge of the battle-axe. The horse of Louis was killed under him, and it was with difficulty that he escaped on foot in the crowd of fugitives. His standard and one hundred and forty knights remained in the hands of the conquerors. William of Normandy was in the battle, but saved himself by flight<sup>26</sup>.

Battle of  
Brenville.  
1119.

<sup>26</sup> Orderic, 842—854. Chron. Sax. 821. Hunt. 217. Malm. 90.

CHAP.  
X.

---

---

Mediation of  
the pope.

An end was put to hostilities by the paternal industry of the pontiff, Calixtus II. Louis, attended by the son of Robert, had appeared in the council of Rhemes: and in a speech of some eloquence had accused Henry of cruelty, injustice, and ambition. The royal orator had been answered by the archbishop of Rouen: but this prelate was heard with impatience, and frequently interrupted by the partisans of France. At the termination of the council, Calixtus himself visited Henry, to whom he was allied by descent, and the king of England attempted to justify or palliate his conduct in the presence of the pope. He denied that he had taken Normandy from his brother. That brother had previously lost it by his indolence and folly. All that he himself had done was to wrest the ancient patrimony of his family from the hands of the traitors and rebels, into whose possession it had fallen. Nor was it true that Robert was kept in prison. He was treated as a prince who had retired from the cares and fatigues of government. He lived in a royal castle, was served with princely magnificence, and enjoyed every amusement that he desired. As for William, Henry assured the pontiff that he felt the affection of an uncle for the young prince: that it had been his intention to have educated him with his own son, and that he had frequently offered him an honourable asylum and three earldoms in England: offers which William had constantly refused at the suggestion of men, who were equally the enemies of the nephew and the uncle. Such flimsy reasoning could not deceive the penetration of Calixtus: but unwilling to urge a request, in which he foresaw he should not succeed, he diverted the conversation to the subject of the war, and obtained from Henry an avowal of the most pacific sentiments. The intelligence was immediately communicated to the different belligerents, and a treaty of peace was concluded under the auspices



of the pontiff. Henry retained what he principally sought, the possession of Normandy, and the king of France, as sovereign lord, received the homage of William, Henry's son, in lieu of that of the father<sup>27</sup>.

CHAP.  
X.

Treaty of  
peace.

In perusing the history of this war, written by the pen of Orderic, the mind is surprised at the opposite instances of barbarism and refinement, of cruelty and humanity, with which it abounds. I. The number of slain in the celebrated battle of Brenville amounted to no more than three: for, says the historian, christian knights contend not for revenge but for glory; they seek not to shed the blood, but to secure the person of their enemy<sup>28</sup>. Their great object was to throw him on the ground: and when this was effected, whether by a blow or by the death of his horse, the knight, enchased in ponderous armour, was unable to help himself, and lay the unresisting prize of his adversary. II. Offices of civility were interchanged in the midst of hostilities: and the captive, who had signalised his courage, was often released without ransom by a generous conqueror. The king, after his victory, restored to Louis his charger, with the trappings of gold and silver: and his son at the same time sent to the son of Robert valuable presents, that the young exile might appear among foreigners with the splendour due to his birth<sup>29</sup>. III. But their passions were violent and implacable: and in the pursuit of revenge their breasts seemed to be steeled against every sentiment of humanity. Eustace, lord of Breteuil, who had married Juliana, one of the king's illegitimate daughters, had solicited the grant of a strong fortress,

Remarks.

Story of  
Juliana.

<sup>27</sup> Orderic, 858, 859. 865, 866. Malm. 93. Orderic, 848.  
The grandmother of Calixtus was Alice, <sup>28</sup> Orderic, 854.  
daughter of Richard II. duke of Normandy. <sup>29</sup> Id. 855.

CHAP.  
X.

---

which was part of the ducal demesne. Henry entertained suspicions of his fidelity, but was unwilling to irritate him by an absolute refusal. It was agreed that two children, the daughters of Eustace and Juliana, should be given to Henry as hostages for the allegiance of their father: and that the son of Harenc, the governor of the castle, should be intrusted to that nobleman as a pledge for the cession of the place at the close of the war. Eustace was, however, dissatisfied: he tore out the eyes of the boy, and sent him back to his father. Harenc, frantic with rage, and impatient for revenge, demanded justice of Henry, who, unable to reach the person, bade him retaliate on the daughters, of Eustace. Their innocence, their youth, their royal descent, were of no avail: the barbarian deprived them of their eyes, and amputated their noses: and Henry, with an affectation of stoic indifference, loaded him with presents, and sent him back to resume his command. The task of revenge now devolved on Juliana, who deemed her father the author of the sufferings of her daughters. Unable to keep Breteuil against the royal forces, she retired into the citadel: abandoned by the garrison, she requested a parley with the king: and as he approached the wall, pointed an arrow and discharged it at his breast. Her want of skill saved her from the guilt of parricide: and necessity compelled her to surrender at discretion. Had Henry pardoned her, he might perhaps have claimed the praise of magnanimity: but the punishment, which he inflicted, was ludicrous in itself, and disgraceful to its author. He closed the gate, removed the draw-bridge, and sent her a peremptory order to quit the castle immediately. Juliana was compelled to let herself down without assistance from the rampart into the broad moat, which surrounded the fortress, and to wade through the water, which rose

to her waist. At each step she had to break the ice around her, and to suffer the taunts and ridicule of the soldiers, who were drawn out to witness this singular spectacle<sup>30</sup>.

The ambition of the king was now gratified. His foreign foes had been compelled to solicit peace: his Norman enemies had been crushed by the weight of his arms; and if further security were wanting, it had been obtained by the investiture of the dutchy which had been granted to his son William. After an absence of four years he resolved to return in triumph to England. At Barfleur he was met by a Norman mariner, called Fitz-Stephen, who offered him a mark of gold, and solicited the honour of conveying him in his vessel "the White Ship." It was, he observed, new, and manned with fifty of the most able seamen. His father had carried the king's father when he sailed to the conquest of England: and the service by which he held his fee, was that of providing for the passage of his sovereign. Henry replied that he had already chosen a vessel for himself; but that he would confide his son and his treasures to the care of Fitz-Stephen. With the young prince (he was in his eighteenth year) embarked his brother Richard and his sister Adela, both natural children of Henry, the earl of Chester and his countess the king's niece, sixteen other noble ladies, and one hundred and forty knights. They spent some hours on deck in feasting and dancing, and distributed three barrels of wine among the crew: but the riot and intoxication which prevailed about sunset, induced the more prudent to quit the vessel, and return to the shore. Henry had set sail as soon as the tide would permit. William, after a long delay, ordered Fitz-Stephen to follow his father.

CHAP.  
X.

---

Shipwreck of  
prince Wil-  
liam.  
1120.  
Nov. 26.

<sup>30</sup> Id. 854, 855. Eustace was a bastard, and had seized the lands of his father, to the prejudice of the lawful heir. Id. 810. Huntingdon attributes to Henry himself the punish-

ment inflicted on his grand-daughters. *Nepotium suarum oculos erui fecit.* Ang. Sac. ii. 699.



CHAP.  
X.

Immediately every sail was unfurled, every oar was plied : but amid the music and revelling the care of the helm was neglected, and the " White Ship " struck against a rock called the Catteraze. The rapid influx of the water admonished the gay and heedless company of their alarming situation. By Fitz-Stephen the prince was immediately lowered into a boat, and told to row back to the land : but the shrieks of his sister recalled him to the wreck, and the boat sank under the multitude that poured into it. Soon after the vessel itself went down, and three hundred persons were buried in the waves. A young nobleman, Geoffry de L'aigle, and Berold, a butcher of Rouen, alone saved themselves by clinging to the top of the mast. After a few minutes the unfortunate Fitz-Stephen swam towards them, inquired for the prince, and being told that he had perished, plunged under the water. Geoffry, benumbed by the cold of a November night, was soon washed away, and, as he sank, uttered a prayer for the safety of his companion : Berold retained his hold, was rescued in the morning by a fishing boat, and related the particulars of this doleful catastrophe. Henry had arrived at Southampton, and frequently expressed his surprise at the tardiness of his son. The first intelligence was conveyed to Theobald of Blois, who communicated it to his friends, but dared not inform the king. The next morning the fatal secret was revealed by a young page who threw himself in tears at his feet. At the shock Henry sank to the ground, but recovering himself, affected a display of fortitude, which he did not feel. He talked of submission to the dispensations of Providence : but the wound had penetrated deep into his heart : his grief gradually subsided into a settled melancholy ; and it is said that from that day he was never observed to smile<sup>31</sup>. Matilda, by

<sup>31</sup> Id. 867—869. Chron. Sax. 222. Simeon, 242.

the death of her husband, became a widow at the age of twelve, within six months after her marriage. By Henry she was treated with the affection of a parent: but at the demand of her father returned to Anjou, and ten years afterwards put on the veil in the convent of Fontevraud <sup>32</sup>.

By the generality of the nation the loss of the prince was not regretted. From the arrogance and violence of his youth men had learned to fear the despotism of his maturer years. He was already initiated in all the mysteries of iniquity: and had publicly avowed on every occasion his contempt and hatred of the English <sup>33</sup>. But Henry, deprived of his only legitimate son, had new plans to form, new precautions to take, against the pretensions and attempts of his nephew. On that prince every eye was now fixed: his virtues and misfortunes were the theme of general conversation: and few men doubted that he would ultimately succeed to the throne. Fulk of Anjou, whom the king had offended by refusing to return the dower of Matilda, affianced to him his younger daughter Sibylla, and gave him the earldom of Mans; while the most powerful barons of Normandy, Amauri of Montfort, and Walleran, the young earl of Mellent, undertook to assist him on the first opportunity with all their forces and influence. Henry by his spies was informed of the most secret motions of his enemies. In the court of Anjou he employed threats, and promises, and bribes, to prevent the intended marriage: he even undertook to prove that the two parties, William and Sibylla, were relations within the prohibited degrees of consanguinity <sup>34</sup>. In Normandy he suddenly landed with a

Projects of  
William of  
Normandy.

<sup>32</sup> Orderic, 875.

<sup>33</sup> *Displcebat autem mihi*, says a writer who knew him, *nimius circa cum cultus, et nimius in eo fastus — semper de fastigio superbo tumidus cogitabat*. Huntingdon, in *Ang. Sac.* ii. 696. I will add what he and another ancient writer say of him and his companions.

*Omnes aut fere omnes sodomitica labe dicebantur, et erant, irretiti*. Hunt. 218. *Filius regis et socii sui incomparabili superbia tumidi, luxuriæ et libidinis omni tabe maculati*. Gervas. 1339.

<sup>34</sup> *Chron. Sax.* 231. *Malms.* 99. *Ord.* 883. According to him they were related in the sixth

CHAP.  
X.  
War in Nor-  
mandy.  
1123.

numerous body of English forces ; summoned his barons to attend him ; and without communicating his intentions to any one, marched out of Rouen on a Sunday after dinner, with the whole army. Hugo of Montfort, one of the chief conspirators, was immediately called before the king, and ordered to surrender his castle. He assented with apparent cheerfulness, and was dispatched with an escort to give orders to the garrison : but in passing through a wood, he suddenly turned down an unfrequented path, escaped his pursuers, reached Montfort, and ordered his retainers to hold it against all the power of Henry. For some time they complied with the will of their lord : but at length despairing of succour, surrendered upon terms. From Montfort the king proceeded to Pont-Audemer, a strong fortress defended by one hundred and forty knights : but a tower of wood was constructed twenty-four feet higher than the walls : and the archers from its summit so annoyed the besieged, that after a defence of seven weeks, they were compelled to open the gates. The next year he was still more fortunate. As the insurgent barons were returning from a successful expedition, they were opposed by Ranulf of Bayeux, and William of Tankerville, with a body of men selected from the neighbouring garrisons. The battle was gained, and the war terminated by forty English archers. These, as the enemy charged, drew their bows : the foremost horses were slain : others fell over them : and the rest of the insurgents, seeing the confusion, immediately fled. Eighty knights in their armour were found lying on the ground : and among them were captured the chief promoters of the

1124.  
Mar. 25.

degree. But the allegation was most impudent on the part of the king. In whatever relation Robert stood towards Fulk, Henry must have stood in the same. Yet he had already mar-

ried his son to one of Fulk's daughters, and afterwards married his daughter to one of Fulk's sons.



rebellion. Fulk immediately abandoned the cause of his intended son-in-law, and peace was once more restored<sup>35</sup>.

CHAP.  
X.

William made  
earl of Flanders.

The life of William, the son of Robert, was an alternating series of elevation and depression. If the sudden fate of his cousin had awakened his hopes, they were soon defeated by the sagacity and promptitude of his uncle: but he was amply repaid for the disappointment by the bounty of Louis, who in lieu of Sibylla, bestowed on him the hand of his sister-in-law, and gave for her portion Chaumont, Pontoise, and the Vexin on the borders of Normandy; whence, by his proximity, he was enabled to encourage his partisans, and to keep alive the spirit of opposition to Henry<sup>36</sup>. Soon afterwards Charles the good, earl of Flanders, and the successor of Baldwin, was assassinated. He was at his devotions in a church at Bruges, when Burchard de Lisle suddenly assailed him with a body of armed men, and murdered him at the foot of the altar. On the first intelligence of this event, William of Ipres surrounded the walls with his retainers: the king of France followed with a formidable force: and after a siege of five weeks the gates were burst open, and the assassins were precipitated over the battlements of the castle. William had accompanied his benefactor, and received from him the investiture of the earldom, which he could justly claim as the representative of Matilda his grandmother, the daughter of Baldwin V.<sup>37</sup>. Thus again by the caprice of fortune was he raised to a high degree of power, and placed in a situation the most favourable for the conquest of Normandy. Henry began to tremble for the safety of his continental possessions<sup>38</sup>.

1127.  
March 1.

It is now time to notice the measures by which that monarch

Death of  
queen Matilda.

<sup>35</sup> Orderic, 875—880. Simeon, 250.  
Chron. Sax., 227.

<sup>37</sup> Ibid. Hunt. 919.

<sup>38</sup> *Se diadema regni amissurum pro certo putabat.* Hunt. Ang. Sac. ii. 699.

<sup>36</sup> Ord. 884.

CHAP.  
X.

had sought to perpetuate the succession in his own family. Matilda had brought him two children, a son, William, whose premature fate the reader has already witnessed, and a daughter, Alice, who afterwards assumed the name of her mother<sup>39</sup>. For the last twelve years of her life the queen resided at Westminster, deprived of the society of her husband, but surrounded with the parade of royalty, and an object of veneration in the eyes of the people, by whom she was generally denominated *Molde*, the good<sup>40</sup>. The purity of her character was beyond the reach of suspicion: acts of benevolence, and exercises of devotion, occupied her time: and to listen to the chants of minstrels and the verses of poets formed her principal amusement. One fault she is said to have had. She was liberal beyond her means: and her officers, to supply the current of her munificence, were occasionally compelled to oppress her vassals<sup>41</sup>. By her death in 1118 the king found himself at liberty to contract another marriage: but the restraints of wedlock did not accord with his love of pleasure, and inconstancy of affection; nor did he think of a second wife, till the loss of his son the etheling, had brought the succession within the grasp of his nephew. To defeat the hopes of that prince he offered his hand to Adelais, the daughter of Geoffry, duke of Louvain, and niece to pope Calixtus, a princess, whose chief recommendation was her beauty and youth<sup>42</sup>. Their union proved without issue: and after a delay

1118.  
May 1.

King's second  
marriage.  
1121.  
Feb. 2.

<sup>39</sup> She is called *Æthelice* in the Saxon Chronicle (230); the same name with Adela, Adelais, and Alice. About this period Matilda became a favourite appellation, probably because it was that of the conqueror's consort. The original name of Henry's queen was Editha, which she afterwards exchanged for Matilda.

<sup>40</sup> Rudborne, 276.

<sup>41</sup> Malm. 93.

<sup>42</sup> Eadmer, 136. Philippe de Thau, a

contemporary poet, calls her, "mult bele  
"femme," MS. Nero. A. 5. Huntingdon  
sings her praise in the following not inelegant  
lines:

Quid diadema tibi, pulcherrima, quid tibi  
gemma?

Pallet gemma tibi, nec diadema nitet:

Ornamenta cave: nec quidquam luminis  
inde

Accipis: illa micant lumine clara tuo.

Hunt. 218.

of three years, he formed the resolution of settling the crown on his daughter Maud, who had married Henry IV. of Germany, and by the death of her husband was lately become a widow. In the pursuit of this object it was necessary for the king to subdue the reluctance both of the princess herself, and of the English barons. Maud was unwilling to quit a country in which she possessed a noble dower, for a precarious and disputed succession: and the barons revolted from the idea of a female reign, a species of government new in the annals both of England and Normandy. The empress, however, submitted to the peremptory commands of her father, and was met on her arrival by her uncle David, king of Scotland. The acquiescence of the more powerful barons had been prepared by presents and promises: for greater security, Robert, the captive duke of Normandy, was removed from Devizes to Cardiff, from the custody of the bishop of Sarum to that of Robert of Caen, earl of Gloucester, the king's natural and favourite son: and a general assembly was summoned of the prelates, and chief tenants of the crown. Before them Henry lamented the premature death of his son, and proposed his daughter Maud as presumptive heiress to the succession. She united, he observed, in her veins the blood of the Anglo-Saxon, with that of the Norman, princes. By her mother she was descended, through a long line of sovereigns, from Egbert and Cerdic: her father was the reigning king, and her uncle and grandfather had been the two last monarchs of England. Whatever might be the sentiments of his hearers, no one ventured to incur his resentment by hazarding an objection: the empress was unanimously pronounced the next heir, in the event of her father dying without male issue: and first the clergy, then the laity, swore to maintain her succession. Among the laity the precedence was given to her uncle David on ac-

1126.

Crown settled  
on Matilda.  
1126.  
Dec. 25.



CHAP.  
X.

---

count of his regal character. The second place was disputed between Stephen, earl of Boulogne, and Robert, earl of Gloucester. The former was the king's nephew by his sister Adela, and had been born in lawful wedlock: the latter was Henry's son, but of spurious birth: and the point to be decided was, whether precedence was due to legitimacy of descent, or to proximity of blood. In the present times this would not admit of a doubt: even then, though the reigning family derived its claim from a bastard, the question was determined in favour of Stephen. But these noblemen had in view a secret, and more important object. Notwithstanding the precautions of Henry, the succession of Maud was considered as very uncertain: both Stephen and Robert looked forward to the crown: and on that account each was anxious to be declared the first prince of the blood <sup>43</sup>.

She is married  
to the earl of  
Anjou.

The reader has noticed the constant solicitude of Henry to secure the friendship of Fulk, count of Anjou. That nobleman had lately resigned his European states to his eldest son, and had accepted the more brilliant but precarious dignity of king of Jerusalem. Henry offered with eagerness the hand of Matilda to Geoffry the reigning earl. The marriage was negotiated in secret: its publication excited the loud complaints of the English and Norman barons. They claimed a right to be consulted in the disposal of their future sovereign: and many declared that they looked on themselves as released from the obligation of their oath by the duplicity of the king. He disregarded their murmurs, and applauded his own policy, which had thus connected the interests of the Plantagenets with the interests of his own family <sup>44</sup>.

<sup>43</sup> Malm. Novel. 99. Chron. Sax. 231.

<sup>44</sup> Malm. 99. Hunt. 219. They were

called Plantagenets from their device, a sprig of broom, or *plante de genêt*.

Still it was impossible for him to contemplate without disquietude the increasing fame and power of his nephew the earl of Flanders, whose ruin he deemed necessary both for his own tranquillity, and the future security of his daughter. William had justly, but perhaps imprudently, punished the murderers of his predecessor. Their friends sought to be revenged on the new earl: at their suggestion Thierry, landgrave of Alsace, advanced a claim to the succession: and Henry engaged to support him with all the power of England and Normandy. Lisle, Ghent, and several other places were perfidiously surrendered to Thierry: but William displayed his wonted activity and courage, and completely defeated his antagonist under the walls of Alost. Unfortunately, after the battle and at the very gate of the town, he received a thrust in the hand from the pike of a foot-soldier. The wound was slight, and therefore neglected: a mortification ensued: and the expiring prince was conveyed to the monastery of St. Omer. There, from his death-bed, he wrote to Henry, recommending to the clemency of his uncle, the Norman barons, who had followed the fortunes of him, whom they deemed their legitimate prince. The king, when he had nothing more to fear from the pretensions of his nephew (for William left no issue) granted his request, and by this affection of generosity, won the attachment of his Norman subjects <sup>45</sup>.

Thus, by the aid of accident and the resources of his own genius, had the king triumphed over every obstacle that appeared to oppose his wishes. Still it was not his lot to reap the fruit of his labours. The very measure on which he had founded his expectations of tranquillity, proved a constant source of disquietude. It was with reluctance that Maud had conde-

CHAP.  
X.

Death of the  
earl of Flanders.  
1128.

July 27.

Quarrel between Henry  
and his son-in-law.

<sup>45</sup> Hunt. 219. Ang. Sac. ii. 697. Chron. Sax. 232. Orderic, 885; 886

CHAP.  
X.

---

scended to marry Geoffry. To exchange the state of an empress for the lower condition of a countess of Anjou, and to be subjected to the wild and wayward caprice of a boy of sixteen, hurt and irritated her feelings. Geoffry, on the other part, had inherited the uncontrollable spirit of his progenitors: he disdained to sooth, and made it his aim to subdue, the pride of his wife. They quarrelled, separated, and Maud repaired to England to solicit the protection of her father. A year elapsed in fruitless negotiations. At length the earl condescended to express a wish for the return of his wife, and a reconciliation was apparently effected. If the successive births of three grandsons, Henry, Geoffry, and William, were to the king subjects of joy, he was equally chagrined by the conduct of his son-in-law, who demanded the present possession of Normandy in virtue of a previous promise, and manifested his displeasure at the refusal of Henry by repeated insults. Neither did Maud act the part of a mediatrix. Disliking her husband, she endeavoured to widen the breach by offending Geoffry herself, and seeking by her reports to irritate her father. These family broils detained the king in Normandy, and occupied his attention during the last years of his reign <sup>46</sup>.

His adminis-  
tration of jus-  
tice.

But though he resided so frequently on the continent, and was so anxious to secure his transmarine possessions, he did not neglect the government of his kingdom of England, by far the most valuable of his dominions. The administration of justice, and the preservation of the public tranquillity, were objects which he had constantly at heart, and which he earnestly recommended to the vigilance of his officers. I. The severity, with which he punished the more flagrant violations of the laws,

<sup>46</sup> Malm. 100. Hunt. 229. Hov. 275. Orderic, 900.



was a source of terror and amazement to his subjects, who believed him to be the "lion of justice," described in the pretended prophecies of Merlin<sup>47</sup>. When he came to the throne robbery and rapine were crimes prevalent in every province of the kingdom: before his death they became so rare, that "whosoever," says the Saxon chronicle in the language of the time, "bore his burthen of gold and silver, no man durst say to him aught but good"<sup>48</sup>. On one occasion, when the justiciary Ralph Basset held a court at Huncot in Leicestershire, no fewer than forty-four robbers were condemned and executed<sup>49</sup>. This was in the year 1024, when neither interest nor presents could save the malefactor from death or mutilation: but afterwards, whether it was that the necessity of rigour had decreased with the frequency of crime, or that the love of money began to predominate over the love of justice, pecuniary compensations, which had been abolished in the beginning of Henry's reign, were again accepted in lieu of corporal punishment<sup>50</sup>.

II. Under the Saxon dynasty the licence to coin money had been farmed out to different individuals in the principal boroughs, who with the dies received their instructions from the royal treasury. By the conqueror and his son Rufus the same custom had been continued: and these persons, by debasing the quality, or diminishing the weight, of the silver pennies, amassed considerable wealth, and at the same time screened themselves from punishment by frequent and valuable presents to the monarch. Henry, in the charter which he granted at his accession, had engaged to redress this grievance. By the Saxon laws the offender was condemned to suffer the amputation of the right hand, which, as a memorial of the crime, was affixed

He punishes  
the coiners.

<sup>47</sup> Brompt. 998. Joan. Salis. Polycrat, vi. 16.

<sup>48</sup> Chron. Sax. 237.

<sup>49</sup> Id. 928.

<sup>50</sup> Malm. 91.

CHAP.  
X.

1108.

with nails to the door of his house. To the loss of the hand or that of the eyes, which he sometimes substituted in its place, the king added the punishment of castration. The inhabitants of boroughs, the principal merchants of the time, were sworn to watch over the purity of the coin, and to prosecute delinquents: and the same penalty was denounced against those who attempted to pass, as against those who fabricated, pennies of inferior value<sup>51</sup>. Still the evil continued to increase, till in the twenty-fifth year of his reign, it had become so universal, that hardly one penny in twelve was taken in the market. The royal indignation now fell on the coiners. By a general precept they were all summoned to appear at the court of exchequer in Winchester. Each in rotation was examined before the bishop of Salisbury, the treasurer, who, if he judged him guilty, ordered him to be taken to a neighbouring apartment, where he immediately suffered the punishment prescribed by law. Of more than fifty, who obeyed the summons, four only escaped<sup>52</sup>. This severity would, it was hoped, intimidate the future fabricators of money: and we may presume that to remedy the evil of the moment a new coinage was issued, and the old withdrawn from circulation<sup>53</sup>.

And the followers of the court.

III. Another grievance, which had been constantly increasing during the two last reigns, had grown out of the royal claim of purveyance. Whenever the king moved from place to place, he was attended by a number of prelates, barons, and officers;

<sup>51</sup> Leg. Sax. 305. Hov. 274.

<sup>52</sup> Mon. Sax. 228, 229.

<sup>53</sup> The pennies had hitherto borne on the reverse the impression of a cross, which divided them into halves and quarters, and for convenience they were occasionally cut according to the lines of this cross into half-pennies and farthings. As many persons refused to

take good silver after the penny had been cut, the king ordered, that for the future both half-pennies and farthings should be coined circular, like the pennies, and be in that form a legal tender which no one should refuse with impunity (Eadmer, 94. Sim. 254. whose text should be corrected from Hoveden, 270).

each of whom was followed by a long train of dependants. All these expected to be maintained at the expense of the country through which they passed. Hence the progress of the court was like the progress of a hostile army : and the devastation which the king's followers are said to have caused would hardly deserve credit, had it not been attested by contemporary and unexceptionable writers. They were accustomed to enter without ceremony the houses of the farmers and husbandmen ; to live at free quarters ; and in the insolence of superiority, to sell, burn, or waste, what they could not consume. The miserable inhabitants saw their corn and cattle carried away, and their wives and daughters insulted before their faces ; and, if they dared to remonstrate, their presumption was punished, often by the conflagration of their houses, sometimes by mutilation, and occasionally by death. Hence the approach of the king to any district, was a signal to the natives to conceal their effects, and flee to the woods ; and the solitude of the country wherever he turned, at length convinced him of the magnitude of the evil, and warned him to apply an effectual remedy. A commission of judges was appointed : the attendants on the court were examined before them : and the more guilty were punished by the loss of an eye, or of a hand, or of a foot. The fate of these delinquents impressed a salutary terror on their fellows : and similar enormities were seldom repeated during the remainder of the king's reign <sup>54</sup>.

<sup>54</sup> Chron. Sax. 212. Malm. 91. Eadmer, 94. *Quæ justitia in pluribus visa, cæteros integritatem sui amantes, ab aliorum læsione deterrebat. Ibid.* From this and similar expressions in our ancient writers it would appear that the punishment of mutilation was thought more useful than that of death. The latter might strike more at the moment : but

the sight of it was confined to few, and the impression, which it made, was soon obliterated. But the culprit, who had suffered mutilation, carried about with him the evidence of his punishment during life, and daily admonished all who saw him, of the consequences of violating the laws.



CHAP.  
X.

Relieves his  
own tenants.

IV. If Henry thus relieved his subjects in general, he was equally just to the complaints of his own tenants. It has been already observed that in most counties a considerable portion of land was the property of the crown, the occupiers of which were bound to pay their rents in kind for the support of the royal household. This obligation imposed on the tenants, what they deemed a heavy burthen, the necessity of transporting in many cases, the produce of their farms to a considerable distance : but it was soon commuted for another, which they found it still more difficult to support. After the king began to reside principally on the continent, payments in kind were no longer wanted, and payments in money were demanded. Had these been determined according to an equitable rate, the change would have been a benefit : but they were left to the discretion or caprice of the royal officers, who were careful to enrich themselves by the oppression of the tenants. The latter harassed the king with repeated remonstrances, and on some occasions surrendered to him their ploughs, as a proof of their inability to continue the labours of agriculture under the existing burthens. Henry consulted his ministers, and a remedy was easily devised. A new survey was made of the royal demesnes : a certain and equitable rent in money was fixed by the commissioners : and the tenants were ordered to account annually with the sheriff of the county, whose duty it was to pay the receipts into the exchequer<sup>55</sup>.

His method  
of raising  
money.

V. It should, however, be observed, that the equity and humanity of the king were of a very questionable description. As long as his own interests were not concerned, he shewed no reluctance to check or punish the exactions or rapacity of others : but in the pursuit of his own aggrandizement, he scrupled not

<sup>55</sup> Vid. Seld. Spicil. ad Eadm. 216. 217

to trample on every consideration of justice, and to sport with the fortunes and happiness of his subjects. His system of continental policy involved him in enormous expenses: for money was the principal weapon with which he fought; and he had seldom recourse to arms, till he had tried the efficacy of bribes and promises. Hence he was constantly haunted with apprehensions of poverty; and his ministers were employed in devising the means to acquit his past, and to provide for his future engagements. The *danegelt*, at the rate of twelve pennies in the hide, was continued during the whole of his reign: an additional aid of three shillings per hide was required on occasion of the marriage of his daughter Matilda: and yearly complaints of new and excessive exactions may be read in almost every page of the Saxon annalist<sup>56</sup>. The science of taxation was then in its infancy. To ease, by equalizing the burthen, never entered into the thoughts of the financiers of the age: a certain sum of money was wanted by the king; it was wrung by the strong hand of power from the reluctant grasp of the subject. The collectors, says Eadmer, seemed to have no feelings of humanity or justice. If a man were without money he was cast into prison, or forced to flee from the country; while his goods were sold, the doors of his house carried away, and the slender remains of his property exposed to the mercy of every passenger. If a man had money, he was harassed with threats of prosecution for imaginary offences, till he had surrendered all that he possessed. For no one dared to enter into litigation with his sovereign, or by refusing to pay the present demand, subject himself to the immediate loss of his whole property. Yet, adds the historian, there are many, who will think little of

<sup>56</sup> Chron. Sax. 211, 212, 213, et seq. Hunt. 217, 218, 219. Brompt. 1001.

CHAP.  
X.

From eccle-  
siastical bene-  
fices.

such enormities : so much have we been habituated to them under the two last monarchs <sup>57</sup>.

The ecclesiastical history of this period furnishes numerous instances of royal rapacity. In the charter which the king had published at his accession, he had solemnly engaged neither to sell the vacant benefices, nor to apply their profits to his own use. 'This promise was violated as soon as it could be done with impunity. That the crown might enjoy the episcopal revenues, the bishoprics of Norwich and Ely were kept without prelates for three, those of Canterbury, Durham, and Hereford, for five, years. At his coronation he had promoted to the see of Winchester his chancellor, William Gifford. Soon afterwards he extorted from the new prelate the sum of eight hundred marks. He valued the revenue of Lichfield at three thousand marks, and compelled Roger the nephew of Geoffry Dedington, to pay that sum before he would name him to the bishopric. Gerold had been made abbot of Tewkesbury. Unable to satisfy the repeated demands of the king, he was necessitated to resign his abbey. Gilbert bishop of London had acquired the reputation of a careful and opulent prelate. At his death all his treasures were seized for the benefit of the crown <sup>58</sup>. From the manner in which these iniquitous proceedings are casually mentioned by the contemporary writers, we may reasonably infer that they were not of very rare occurrence.

Add the cano-  
nical trans-  
gressions of  
the clergy.

I will add another, and more singular instance. The reader has already noticed the attempt of archbishop Dunstan to restore, during the reign of Edgar, the ancient discipline of the

<sup>57</sup> Ead. 83. "God knows," says the Saxon chronicle, "how unjustly this miserable people is dealt with. First they are deprived of their property, and then they are put to death. If a man possesses any thing,

"it is taken from him : if he has nothing he is left to perish by famine." Chron. Sax. 228.

<sup>58</sup> Sim. Dunelm. 62. 256. Ang. Sac. i. 297. 304. 408. 609. ii. 698. Ead. 109.



celibacy of the clergy. The execution of the canons which he published on that subject, was suspended during the invasion of the Danes under Sweyn, and was afterwards neglected under Canute and his successors. When Lanfranc had been promoted to the see of Canterbury, he resolved to imitate the conduct of Dunstan, but at the same time was careful to temper his zeal with moderation. In a synod, which he convened at Winchester in 1075, the village curates, who were married, received permission to retain their wives; but the obligation of celibacy was imposed on the higher and conventual clergy, and a vow of continency was required from all future candidates for the orders of deacon and priest. At the distance of six-and-twenty years another synod was held at Westminster by archbishop Anselm. Here it was enacted that every priest and deacon should be obliged to observe the promise which he had made at his ordination, and that all future sub-deacons should be subjected to the same restraint<sup>59</sup>. To Henry it was suggested that this canon might be converted into a source of revenue. A commission was in consequence appointed, with orders to inquire into the conduct of the clergy, and to impose a heavy fine on every individual, who might be found to have transgressed the regulation of the synod. It was, however, soon discovered, that the number of offenders was too small to raise any considerable sum; when the king, that his expectations might not be defeated, ordered a certain fine to be levied on every parochial clergyman, without regard to his guilt or innocence. With its amount we are not acquainted; but the consequences prove that it must have been excessive. Some, through indignation at the injustice of the measure, refused, others, through poverty were

<sup>59</sup> Ead. 67.

CHAP.  
X.

---

unable, to pay. Both classes were imprisoned and tortured. Their brethren, who were still at liberty, appealed to the clemency of the king. To the number of two hundred, with their feet bare, and clad in the appropriate dress of their respective orders, they met him in one of the streets of London. He turned from them with expressions of insult. They next implored the intercession of the queen: but Matilda, with tears in her eyes, assured them that she did not dare to interfere<sup>60</sup>.

Dispute re-  
specting papal  
legates.

The most important controversy in which Henry was engaged with the court of Rome, regarded the admission of the papal legates. On the one side it was contended that the pope, in quality of universal pastor, had the right to inquire by confidential ministers into the state of the church in distant countries; and that the abuses which had arisen from the prevalence of simoniacal elections, imperiously required the exercise of that right. On the other it was alleged, that by the grants of former popes the archbishop of Canterbury was entitled to the authority of papal legate within the kingdom: and that no instance was known of such authority having been exercised by a foreign ecclesiastic, unless it were at the express request of the sovereign<sup>61</sup>. This answer was but partially correct. In the earliest ages of the Anglo-Saxon church we find the archbishop of Canterbury invested with the title of envoy of the apostolic see<sup>62</sup>: but the history of the same ages furnishes several instances of legates, who were sent from Rome to reform the English clergy, and who in virtue of the papal commission assembled councils and pro-

<sup>60</sup> Ead. 83, 84. Some years later he adopted a different plan. The bishops in a council at London, requested him to enforce the celibacy of the clergy by royal authority. He accepted the office, and abused their confidence. In order to raise money, he publicly

sold to any, who were willing to buy, the licence to transgress the canons. 11. v. 274. Hunt. 220. Chron. 234.

<sup>61</sup> Ead. 58. 118. 126.

<sup>62</sup> Edd. vit. Wilf. c. li.

mulgated laws of ecclesiastical discipline<sup>63</sup>. The question was debated during a great portion of Henry's reign. Some legates were induced by threats or promises to return without attempting to land. Others were received, and introduced to the king, who by gifts and remonstrances prevailed on them to wave the exercise of their authority. Perhaps they were unwilling to offend a prince, who loaded them with presents; perhaps they feared to compromise their character, by entering into a contest of doubtful issue. At length Paschal II. sent an earnest expostulation to the king and the prelates. He complained that without the royal licence neither his letters nor envoys were admitted into the kingdom: that no causes or appeals were carried before the apostolic see; and that in consequence men of worthless characters were promoted to benefices, and by their conduct encouraged the growth of those abuses, which it was their duty to extirpate<sup>64</sup>. This expostulation was followed by a legate of the name of Anselm. On his arrival in Normandy, the English bishops were hastily assembled: and by their advice Ralph, the metropolitan, undertook a journey to Rome, to plead in person the privileges of his church. After an absence of two years he returned. Sickness and the wars in Italy had prevented him from seeing the pontiff, and he brought with him no more than an evasive letter, in which, though the privileges of the church of Canterbury were confirmed, no mention was made of the real point in dispute<sup>65</sup>. If we may believe our national historians, the king was more successful than his archbishop: and in an interview with Calixtus, one of the successors of Paschal, at Gisors, obtained the confirmation of the privilege for which he contended<sup>66</sup>. There is, however, reason to doubt

1116.

1120.

<sup>63</sup> Bed. iv. 18. Wilk. Con. i. 146.<sup>64</sup> Ead. 112. 116.<sup>65</sup> Ead. 120.<sup>66</sup> Ead. 125, 126.



CHAP.  
X.

1122.

the accuracy of this statement: for after a short interval, the cardinal Peter, the son of a powerful Roman prince, arrived in France with the lofty title of legate of the apostolic see in the Gauls, in Britain, in Ireland, and in the Orkneys. Henry received him with much ceremony in London, but observed to him, that he would never surrender the rights of his crown: that were he inclined to do so, still it would be necessary to obtain the consent of the prelates, the barons, and the whole kingdom; and that it was impossible to convene such an assembly as long as the nation was engaged in hostilities with the Welsh. Peter assented to the reasons of the king; and on his return to the coast was attended by a numerous escort, and gratified with valuable presents<sup>67</sup>. Calixtus appears to have been dissatisfied with the conduct of this legate; and appointed the cardinal John of Crema to succeed him in the same capacity. His mission was delayed by the death of the pope; but on a renewal of the appointment by Honorius II. he advanced as far as Normandy, where he was detained by the orders of Henry.

1125.

After a long negotiation he obtained permission to proceed; traversed the kingdom in great pomp, and met the king of Scotland at Roxburgh. There he held a synod of Scottish bishops, to inquire into the controversy between them, and the archbishop of York, who claimed metropolitanical jurisdiction over their churches<sup>68</sup>. In his return he presided at Westminster in a

Sep. 8.

council of the English prelates, with forty abbots and most of the other dignitaries. Seventeen canons of discipline were enacted at his suggestion, the object of which was to enforce the celibacy of the clergy, and to abolish simoniacal elections and contracts<sup>69</sup>. William, archbishop of Canterbury, accompanied

<sup>67</sup> Ead. 137, 138.<sup>68</sup> Sim. 252,<sup>69</sup> The name of Crema has been rendered infamous by the pen of Huntingdon, who

Crema in his return to Rome: and, though he could not prevail on the pontiff to surrender his claim of sending envoys to the English church, obtained for himself a grant of the legatine authority both in England and Scotland<sup>70</sup>. Soon afterwards he convoked a national synod, and published several canons of discipline, similar in substance to those of Crema; but with some variations, that they might not appear to rest on the authority of that cardinal. When Honorius died, the succession to the papacy was disputed between two competitors, Innocent and Anaclet: and Henry, in opposition to the advice of his bishops, was persuaded by the celebrated St. Bernard, to espouse the cause of the former. He met Innocent at Chartres, fell at his feet, and promised him the obedience of a dutiful son<sup>71</sup>. This pontiff confirmed the grant of his predecessor to the archbishop of Canterbury, who, in quality of metropolitan and legate, continued to govern the English church during the remainder of the reign of Henry<sup>72</sup>.

1130.

maintains in the most positive terms, that on the very night of the dissolution of the council he was detected in the commission of the offence, which he had so severely condemned in others. *Cum meretrice interceptus est. Res apertissima negari non potuit.* Hunt. 219. The same story is told on the authority of Huntingdon by Hoveden (274), Brompton (1015), and Hemingford (276). It is, however, singular that he should be the only contemporary writer, who mentions the fact. It seems to have been unknown to the continuator of Florence, who relates in detail the acts of the synod (661); and to Simeon, who adds many other particulars of Crema's legation (252); and also to Gervase, whose enmity to the cardinal paints itself in the strongest colours (1663). The tales of the later writers, Westminster (240), and the monk of Winchester (Ang. Sac. i. 291), are too ridiculous to deserve mention.

<sup>70</sup> See the bull in Wharton (Ang. Sac. i.

792), though he supposes erroneously that it was prior to the legation of Crema.

<sup>71</sup> Bern. Bonæval. inter op. S. Bern. 1991. Suger, vit. Lud. Cras.

<sup>72</sup> Wharton (Ang. Sac. i. 792), is very severe on the memory of this prelate, whom he accuses of having, by the acceptance of the legatine authority, subverted the independence of his church, and enslaved it to that of Rome. Had William indeed believed, with Wharton, that the pope previously possessed no jurisdiction in England, he would have deserved this censure: but he professed, like his predecessors, to derive his own authority from the pope (See Malm. 112—116), and, if he objected to the admission of foreign legates in England, it was, not because the church of Canterbury was independent, but because the authority of legate had been previously granted by the popes to the archbishop of Canterbury. *Inauditum scilicet in Britannia cuncti scientes, quemlibet hominem supra*

CHAP.  
X.Death of duke  
Robert.

1134.

Death of  
Henry.  
1135.  
Nov. 27.

Dec. 2.

Robert, the unfortunate duke of Normandy, had now spent eight-and-thirty years in captivity. According to some historians he bore his confinement with impatience: and by an unsuccessful attempt to escape, provoked his brother to deprive him of sight<sup>73</sup>. For the honour of human nature we may hope that the latter part of the account is false: the more so, as it is not supported by contemporary authority. If Henry may be believed, the reader has already heard him boast of the splendour and comfort enjoyed by his captive: and Malmsbury (but Malmsbury wrote to the son of Henry, and therefore was disposed to panegyryze the father) seems to confirm this statement, when he assures us that the duke was allowed every indulgence compatible with his security<sup>74</sup>. Robert died at the age of eighty in the castle of Cardiff in Wales<sup>75</sup>.

Henry did not survive his brother more than a year. He had been hunting near St. Denis le Froment in Normandy, and at his return was seized with an acute fever. On the third day, despairing of his recovery, he sent for the archbishop of Rouen, from whom he received the sacraments of the eucharist and extreme unction. The earls of Gloucester, Surrey, and Leicester, and the rest of the nobility assembled round his bed: and in their presence he pronounced his last will. I bequeath, he said, all my lands on both sides the sea to my daughter Matilda and her heirs for ever: and I desire that, when my debts have been discharged, and the liveries and wages of my retainers have been paid, the remainder of my effects may be distributed to the poor. On the seventh day of his illness he expired. His bowels were deposited in the church of St. Mary at Rouen,

*se vices apostolicas gerere* nisi solum archiepiscopum Cantuariæ. Ead. 58. See the grants to the archbishops Tatwine, Plegmund, and Dunstan, in Malmsbury de Pont. ii. 116.

<sup>73</sup> Paris, 52.

<sup>74</sup> Malm. 87.

<sup>75</sup> Orderic, 893. 900.



which had been founded by his mother : his body was conveyed to England, and interred in the abbey of Reading<sup>76</sup>.

CHAP.  
X.

A contemporary writer has left us the character of Henry as it was differently drawn by his friends and enemies after his death. By the former he was ranked among the wisest, richest, and bravest of our monarchs : the latter loaded his memory with the reproach of cruelty, avarice, and incontinence<sup>77</sup>. To an indifferent observer at the present day his reign will offer little worthy of praise, unless it be the severity with which he punished offences. This was a real benefit to his people, as it not only contributed to extirpate the robbers by profession, but also checked the rapacity and violence of the barons. Still his merit will be very equivocal. As long as each conviction brought with it a fine or forfeiture to the royal exchequer, princes were stimulated to the execution of the laws by a sense of personal interest<sup>78</sup>. Henry, at the same time that he visited the injustice of others, scrupled not to commit injustice himself. Probably in both cases he had in view the same object, his own emolument.

His character.

His adminis-  
tration of  
justice.

The great aim of his ambition was to aggrandize his family by augmenting his possessions on the continent. His success in this favourite project obtained for him the reputation of political wisdom : but it was purchased at the expense of enormous sums wrung from a suffering and impoverished people. If, however, the English thus paid for acquisitions in which they had little interest, they derived from them one advantage, that attention

Policy.

<sup>76</sup> Malm. 100. Orderic, 901. Epist. Pet. vener. ad Adelard, apud Bouquet, xv. 632.

<sup>77</sup> Hunt. 221. Rex maximus cujus ad justitiam omnes fere principes invitantur exemplo, cujus in pauperes munificentiam, liberalitatem in omnes, cuncti reges mirari possunt potius

quam velint aut valeant imitari. Bouquet, xiv. 248.

<sup>78</sup> The reader will hereafter see this fully exemplified in the commission given to the king's justiciaries.

CHAP.  
X.

to foreign politics rendered the king anxious to preserve peace with his more immediate neighbours. He lived on the most friendly terms with Alexander and David, successively kings of Scotland. The former had married his natural daughter Sybilla; both were the brothers of his wife Matilda. It was more difficult to repress the active and predatory disposition of the Welsh: but as often as he prepared to chastise their presumption, they pacified his resentment by submission and presents. As a check to this restless people he planted among them a powerful colony of foreigners. Many natives of Flanders had found settlements in England under the protection of his mother Matilda: and the number was now doubled by a crowd of emigrants, who had been driven from their homes by an inundation of the Rhine. Henry placed them at first on the right bank of the Tweed: but afterwards collecting the old and new comers into one body, allotted to them for their residence the town of Haverfordwest with the district of Ross in Pembrokeshire. They were a martial and industrious people: by attention to the cultivation of the soil and the manufacture of cloth, they grew in numbers and opulence: and under the protection of the English kings, to whom they always remained faithful, defeated every attempt of the Welsh princes to root them out of the country<sup>79</sup>.

1109.

<sup>79</sup> Malms. 68, 89. Gerv. 1349. Brompt. 1003. Giral. Itin. Camb. 848. Henry on two occasions had entered Wales with an army: on both his presence alone was sufficient to subdue all opposition (Chron. Sax. 217. 223. Sim. 245). He carried the exercise of his sovereignty further than any of his predecessors, naming to the Welsh bishoprics, and compelling the new prelates to receive consecration from the archbishops of Canterbury. The bishops of St. David's, who had long exercised metropolitical jurisdiction over the greater part of Wales, submitted with

much reluctance. Sometimes, by appealing to the pope, they reclaimed their ancient rights, but were always defeated by the superior power of their adversaries. The present bishop of St. David's, Dr. Burgess, appears to have mistaken the nature of this controversy. He complains that Henry subjected the Welsh church to the church of Rome: but in the pleadings the Welsh bishops complain that the king had subjected their church to the church of Canterbury, whereas it had never before been subject to any church but that of Rome. *Usque ad Regem Henricum*

Henry was naturally suspicious: and this disposition had been greatly encouraged by his knowledge of the clandestine attempts of his enemies. On one occasion the keeper of his treasures was convicted of a design on his life: on another, while he was marching in the midst of his army towards Wales, an arrow from an unknown hand struck him on the breast, but was repelled by the temper of his cuirass<sup>80</sup>. Alarmed by these incidents, he always kept on his guard, frequently changed his apartments, and, when he retired to rest, ordered sentinels to be stationed at the door, and his sword and shield to be placed near his pillow<sup>81</sup>. Suspicious.

The suspicious are generally dissembling and revengeful. Revenge. Henry seldom forgot an injury, though he would disguise his enmity under the mask of friendship. Fraud, and treachery, and violence, were employed to insnare those who had greatly offended him; and their usual portion was death, or blindness, or perpetual imprisonment<sup>82</sup>. After his decease it was discovered that his cousin, the earl of Moretoil, whom he had long kept in confinement, had also been deprived of sight<sup>83</sup>. Luke de Barré, a poet, who had fought against him, was made prisoner at the close of the last war, and sentenced by the king to lose his eyes. Charles the good, earl of Flanders, was present, and remonstrated against so direful a punishment. It was not, he observed, the custom of civilized nations to inflict bodily punishment on knights who had drawn the sword in the service of their lord. "It is not," replied Henry, "the first time that he

qui ecclesiam Walensicam ecclesiæ Anglicæ supposuit, totam metropolitancam dignitatem præter usum pallii ecclesia Menevensis obtinuit, nulli ecclesiæ prorsus nisi Romanæ tantum, et illi immediate, sicut nec Scotica, subjectionem debens. Giral. de jure Menev. eccl. 541.

<sup>80</sup> Malm. 89. 91.

<sup>81</sup> Suger, vit. Lud. Gross. 112.

<sup>82</sup> Blandus odii dissimulator, sed pro tempore immodicus retributor. Malm. 88. Multos prodicione cepit, multos dolose interfecit. Hunt. in Ang. Sac. ii. 699.

<sup>83</sup> Hunt. 221.



CHAP.  
X.

---

“ has been in arms against me. But what is worse, he has made me the subject of satire, and in his poems has held me up to the derision of my enemies. From his example let other versifiers learn what they may expect, if they offend the king of England.” The cruel mandate was executed: and the troubadour, in a paroxysm of agony, bursting from the hands of the officers, dashed out his brains against the wall <sup>84</sup>.

Dissimula-  
tion.

His dissimulation was so well known that he was mistrusted even by his favourites. When Bloet, bishop of Lincoln, who had for many years been one of his principal justiciaries, was told that the king had spoken of him in terms of the highest commendation: “Then,” he replied, “I am undone: for I never knew him praise a man whom he did not intend to ruin.” The event justified his apprehensions. In an unguarded moment the prelate had boasted that the monastery, which he was building at Eynsham, should equal that which Henry had founded at Reading. The words were carried to the king, and the fall of the favourite was consummated. He was immediately deprived of the office of justiciary: vexatious prosecutions were commenced against him: by fines and extortions all his wealth was drawn to the royal exchequer: and the bishop would probably have been compelled to resign his dignity, had he not died by a sudden stroke of apoplexy, as he was speaking to Henry <sup>85</sup>.

1123.  
Jan. 10.

Incontinence.

Malmsbury has allotted to the king the praise of temperance and continency <sup>86</sup>. Perhaps his claim to the first, certainly his claim to the second, of these virtues, rests on no other ground than the partiality of his panegyrist. If, as many writers affirm, his death was occasioned by the excess with which he ate a dish of lampreys, we may fairly doubt of his temperance: nor

<sup>84</sup> Orderic, 880, 881.

<sup>85</sup> Hunt. Ang. Sac. 695. Pet. Bles. 127.

<sup>86</sup> Malm. 91.

can the continency of that man be much commended, who is known to have been attached to several mistresses, and of whose illegitimate children no fewer than seven sons, and eight daughters lived to the age of puberty<sup>87</sup>. Of the sons, Robert of Caen, earl of Gloucester, was chiefly distinguished by his father. He will claim the attention of the reader in the following reign.

The king's principal ministers were Roger, bishop of Salisbury, and Robert, earl of Mellent. Roger had constantly adhered to Henry in all the vicissitudes of fortune, which that prince experienced before his accession: it was natural that he should rise to eminence, when his patron became a rich and powerful monarch. By the chapter of Salisbury he was chosen for their bishop: by the king he was appointed grand justiciary of the kingdom. On the plea that the two offices were incompatible with each other, he declined the latter, till his scruples were removed by the joint authority of the pontiff and the metropolitan. To his episcopal duties he devoted the more early part of the day; the remainder was given to the affairs of state: and it is no weak argument of his merit, that though he was many years the minister of a rapacious monarch, he never incurred the hatred of the people. Whenever Henry left the kingdom, the bishop of Sarum was appointed regent; and in that capacity discharged the duties of government for years together, to the satisfaction of his sovereign<sup>88</sup>.

While the internal administration was confided to this prelate, the department of foreign politics exercised the abilities of the earl of Mellent. He attended the king in all his expeditions into Normandy, and acquired the reputation of being the first

<sup>87</sup> See their names in Speed (481), Duchesne (1072), and Sandford (Geneal. Hist. 30—33).

<sup>88</sup> Chron. Sax. 224. 5, 6. Malm. 91. Hunt. Ang. Sac. ii. 700.

CHAP.  
X.

statesman in Europe. Princes and pontiffs courted his friendship: Henry himself, though he perceived it not, was supposed to be governed by him: and his possessions in England, Normandy, and France, received daily augmentations by his violence and rapacity. Nor was his authority confined to the concerns of government: he had usurped the empire of taste; and every fashionable courtier imitated the dress and manners of the earl of Mellent. His last illness was induced or irritated by vexation of mind. He had resolved to augment his wealth by the marriage of an opulent heiress: his expectations were defeated by the superior address of a rival. On his death-bed he sent for the archbishop of Canterbury; but when that prelate exhorted him to prepare for a future life by repairing the injustices which he had committed in this, he hastily replied: "I will leave to my children, whatever I have acquired. Let them do justice to those whom I have injured." It is superfluous to add, that justice was never done<sup>89</sup>.

Henry's prejudices  
against the  
English.

These two ministers, as well as every other officer trusted by the king, were foreigners. He felt no gratitude for the services, and held in no estimation the abilities, of his native subjects. If in the hour of danger he appealed to their fidelity, during the time of prosperity he treated them with the most marked contempt. They were carefully excluded from every office of power or emolument, whether in church or state. The most slender recommendation was sufficient to qualify a stranger, were he Italian, French, or Norman; no services, no talents could expiate in an Englishman the original sin of his nativity<sup>90</sup>.

His riches,

Henry, if we consider the value of money at that period, was immensely rich. On occasions of ceremony, when he wore his

<sup>89</sup> Malms. 90. Hunt. Ang. Sac. ii. 698.

<sup>90</sup> Si Anglus erat, nulla virtus ut honore

aliquo dignus judicaretur, eum poterat adjuvare. Ead. 94. 110.



crown, he imitated the parade of the eastern monarchs: and before him on a table were displayed the most precious of his treasures, particularly two golden vases of extraordinary dimensions, and elegantly enchased with jewels<sup>91</sup>. After his death, his successor found in the exchequer, besides the plate and gems collected by himself and his two predecessors, one hundred thousand pounds of pennies, all of just weight, and of pure silver<sup>92</sup>. So much wealth had enabled him to indulge his taste for architecture: and while the castles, which he raised on the borders of Wales, contributed to the protection of the country, by repairing or rebuilding most of the royal palaces, he provided for the comfort and splendour of himself and his successors. At Woodstock he enclosed a spacious park for deer, and added a menagerie for wild beasts, among which Malmsbury mentions lions, leopards, lynxes, camels, and, what appears to have chiefly attracted the notice of the historian, a porcupine<sup>93</sup>. But his religious foundations principally displayed his magnificence. These were three monasteries, two for regular canons at Chichester and Dunstaple: and one for monks of the order of Clugni, situated at Reading, near the conflux of the Thames and the Kennet, where the great roads of the kingdom intersected each other. The wealth with which Henry endowed this establishment did not seduce the monks from the rigid observance of their rule. It was their custom to offer hospitality to all who passed by their convent: and it was believed that in the entertainment of strangers they annually expended a much larger sum than was devoted to their own maintenance<sup>94</sup>. and buildings.

<sup>91</sup> They afterwards fell into the hands of Theobald, earl of Blois. Bern. Bonæval. in Vit. S. Bern. 2011.

<sup>92</sup> Malms. Novel. 101.

<sup>93</sup> Malms. 91. Rad. Dic. 505.

<sup>94</sup> Malms. 92. Pet. Bles. 126. Joan. Hagul, 258. Chron. de Dunstap. 677.

CHAP.  
X.

State of learning.

Before I close the history of this prince, and proceed to the turbulent reign of Stephen, it will be proper to notice the rapid improvement of the nation in literary pursuits under the conqueror and his sons. Lanfranc and Anselm, the two archbishops of Canterbury, had proved themselves worthy of their exalted station. The superior knowledge of the former was universally admitted: the attainments of his successor were of a still higher class. Both in their more early years had exercised the profession of teachers: and their precepts and examples had awakened the curiosity of the clergy, and kindled an ardour for learning which can hardly be paralleled in the present age. Nor did this enthusiasm perish with its authors: it was kept alive by the honours which were so prodigally lavished on all, who could boast of literary acquirements. The sciences, which formed the usual course of education, were divided into two classes, which still retained the appellations of a more barbarous age, the trivium, comprising grammar, logic, and rhetoric, and the quadrivium, or music, arithmetic, geometry, and astronomy. It was from the works of the Latin writers, which had survived the wreck of the empire, that students sought to acquire the principal portion of their knowledge: but in the science of medicine, and the more abstruse investigations of the mathematics, the ancients were believed inferior to the mohammedan teachers: and many an Englishman, during the reign of Henry, wandered as far as the banks of the Ebro in Spain, that he might listen to the instructions, or translate the works, of the Arabian philosophers<sup>95</sup>.

The logic of the schools.

To the praise of the popes it must be said that, even in the

<sup>95</sup> See Ptt. Clun. ep. in Bibliotheca Cluniacensi, 1109, 1118, and Athelheardi quaestiones naturales perdificiles. MS. Galba, E. 4.

middle ages, they were generally attentive to the interests of learning. The first schools had been established in monasteries and cathedrals by the zeal of their respective prelates: that they were perpetuated and improved, was owing to the regulations issued by different pontiffs. But now the ancient seminaries began to be neglected for others opened by men, who sought for wealth and distinction by the public display of their abilities; and who established their schools wherever there was a prospect of attracting disciples. The new professors were soon animated with a spirit of competition, which while it sharpened their faculties, perverted the usefulness of their labours. There was no subject on which they would condescend to acknowledge their ignorance. Like their Arabian masters<sup>96</sup>, they discussed with equal warmth matters above their comprehension, or beneath their notice. As their schools were open to every hearer, they had to support their peculiar opinions against all the subtlety and eloquence of their rivals: and on many occasions were compelled to argue in despite of common sense, rather than allow themselves to be vanquished. Hence the art of reasoning came to be valued as the first of intellectual acquirements. The student applied assiduously to the logic of Aristotle, and the subtleties of his Arabian commentators: words were substituted in the place of ideas: multiplied and unmeaning distinctions bewildered the understanding: and a system of scholastic disputation was introduced, which the celebrated abbot of Clairvaux sarcastically defined to be “the art of always seeking, “ without ever finding, the truth.”

<sup>96</sup> Thus we learn from Athelheard, that if he had studied among the Moors the causes of earthquakes, eclipses, and tides, he had also been employed in investigating the reasons why plants cannot be produced in fire, why the nose is made to hang over the mouth,

why horns are not generated on the human forehead, whether the stars are animals, whether in that hypothesis they have any appetite, with many other questions equally singular and important. See Athelheard's *Quæstiones*, *ibid.*



CHAP.  
X.Course of  
studies.  
1110.

As the principal ecclesiastics in England were foreigners, they imported the foreign course of studies. Thus Joffrid abbot of Croyland, procured teachers from Orleans, where he had been educated, and established them at Cotenham, a manor belonging to his convent. His object was to open, with their assistance, a school in the neighbouring town of Cambridge. At first a large barn sufficed for their accommodation : in the second year their disciples were so numerous, that separate apartments were allotted to each master. Early in the morning the labours of the day were opened by brother Odo, who taught the children the rules of grammar according to Priscian : at six Terrie read lectures on the logic of Aristotle : nine was the hour allotted to brother William, the expounder of the rhetorical works of Cicero and Quintilian : and before twelve master Gilbert explained to the theological students the difficult passages of the Holy Scriptures. This account, if it be genuine, discloses the real origin of the university of Cambridge<sup>97</sup>.

Gallo-Nor-  
man poets.

There were few among the scholars of Henry's reign who did not occasionally practise the art of composing in Latin verse. A few of them may certainly claim the praise of taste and elegance ; but the majority seem to have aspired to no other excellence than that of adulterating the legitimate metre by the admixture of middle and final rhymes. Latin productions, however, were confined to the perusal and admiration of Latin scholars. The rich and the powerful, those who alone were able to reward the labours of the poet, were acquainted with no other language than their own, the Gallo-Norman, which since

<sup>97</sup> Pet. Bles, 114. From the mention of the Arabian Averroes, whose works were not then in existence, it has been suggested, that the whole passage is a forgery, designed to exalt the antiquity of Cambridge. I am, however,

inclined to think that for such a purpose an earlier date would have been chosen ; and that the name of Averroes may have originally been added in the margin, and thence have slipped into the text.

the conquest had been introduced into the court of the prince, and the hall of the baron, and was learned and spoken by every candidate for office and power. To amuse and delight these men arose a new race of versifiers, who neglected Latin composition for vernacular poetry. In their origin they were fostered by the patronage of the two queens of Henry, Matilda and Alice. Malmsbury assures us that every poet hastened to the court of Matilda at Westminster, to read his verses to that princess, and partake of her bounty: and the name of Alice is frequently mentioned with honour by the contemporary versifiers Gaimar, Beneoit, and Philippe de Thaun. The works of these writers are still extant in manuscript<sup>98</sup>: and shew that their authors knew little of the inspiration of poetry. The turgid metaphors, the abrupt transitions, and the rapid movements, so characteristic of the Anglo-Saxon muse, though conceived in bad taste, shewed at least indications of native genius: but the narratives of the Gallo-Norman poets are tame, prosaic, and interminable: and their authors seem to have known no beauty but the jingle of rhyme, and to have aimed at no excellence but that of spinning out their story to the greatest possible length. These poems, however, such as they were, delighted those for whom they were written, and, what was still better, brought wealth and popularity to their authors.

During the reign of Henry, Geoffry of Monmouth published his history of Britain, which he embellished with numerous tales respecting Arthur and his knights, Merlin and his prophecies, borrowed from the songs and traditions of the ancient Britons. This extraordinary work was accompanied by another of a similar description, the history of Charlemagne and his twelve

Origin of  
Romance.

<sup>98</sup> Cotton Lib. Nero, A. 5. Bib. Reg. 13. A. 21. MSS. Harl. 4482.

---

CHAP.  
X.

---

peers, supposed to be compiled by archbishop Turpin, from the songs of the French trouveres ; and about the same time the adventures of Alexander the great, by the pretended Dares Phrygius, and Dictys Cretensis, were brought by some of the crusaders into Europe. These three works supplied an inexhaustible store of matter for writers in verse and prose ; the gests of Alexander, and Arthur, and Charlemagne, were repeated and embellished in a thousand forms : spells and enchantments, giants, hypogriphs and dragons, ladies confined in durance by the power of necromancy, and delivered from confinement by the courage of their knights, captivated the imagination of our ancestors ; and a new species of writing was introduced, which retained its sway for centuries, and was known by the appellation of *Romance*, because it was originally written in the Gallic idiom, an idiom corrupted from the ancient language of *Rome* <sup>99</sup>.

<sup>99</sup> See the *Archæologia*, vol. xii. xiii.



## NOTE [A], Pages 233, 234, and 235.

THE object of the present note is to investigate the nature of some transactions in the reign of Edwy, which have been differently represented by different writers in later times. For this purpose I shall have recourse to the most ancient authorities, and shall transcribe such as are not of easy access.

1. Was Edwy married at the time of his coronation? This question has been decided in the negative by the anonymous biographer of archbishop Dunstan, who was contemporary with that prelate, and wrote about fifteen years after his death. The work is extant in manuscript in the British Museum, Cleop. B. 13, and has been published by the Bollandists, tom. 4. Maii, p. 344. This writer says: *Huic quædam, licet natione præcelsa, inepta tamen mulier, cum adulta filia per nefandum familiaritatis lenocinium sectando inhærebat: eotenus videlicet quo sese, vel etiam natam suam, sub conjugali titulo illi innectendo sociaret. Quas ille, ut aiunt, alternatim, quod jam pudet dicere turpi palpatu, et absque pudore utriusque libidinose tractavit.* MS. Cleop. 76. Act. SS. p. 353. The same is asserted by Eadmer, who wrote about the year 1100. Wharton has published one third of Eadmer's life of St. Dunstan, in the second tome of his *Anglia sacra*: the whole was published by Surius under the name of Osbert, *Coloniæ Agrippinæ*, 1618. The words of Eadmer are these. *Erat mulier quædam ex magna et alta progenie nata, filiam adultam habens . . . Hæ præfatæ regi Edvino assiduæ adherebant, suis blanditiis et nutibus illecebrosis pro viribus operam dantes, quatenus unam illarum sibi in conjugium copularet. Ad quas ille impudico illiciti amoris desiderio fervens indecenti amplexu nunc hanc nunc illam, neutrius adspectum in hoc erubescens, destringebat.* Eadmer, apud Sur. p. 236.

2. The transaction, which occurred on the day of the king's coronation, may be seen in Osbern, *Ang. Sac.* ii. 104. It is thus described by the contemporary biographer. *Cum tempore statuto ab universis Anglorum principibus communi electione ungeretur et consecraretur in regem, die eodem post regale sacræ institutionis unguentum repente prosiluit lascivus, linquens læta convivia et decibiles optimatum*

suorum consessiones ad prædictum scelus lenocinii (ad prædictum luparum palpa-mentum Act. SS. p. 353). After some debate, Dunstan and Kinsey were chosen, qui omnium jussis obtemperantes regem volentem vel nolentem reducerent ad relictam sedem. Ingressi juxta principum suorum præcepta invenerunt regiam coronam, quæ miro metallo auri et argenti, gemmarumque vario nitore conserta splendebat, procul a capite ad terram usque negligenter avulsam, ipsumque more maligno inter utrasque velut in vili suillorum volutabro creberrime volutantem. They requested him to return. At Dunstanus primum increpitans mulierum ineptias manu sua, dum nollet exsurgere, extraxit eum de mæchali ganearum accubitu, impositoque diademate duxit eum secum, licet vi a mulieribus raptum, ad regale consortium. Tunc eadem Æthelgiva, sic erat nomen ignominiosæ mulieris, inanes orbes oculorum contra venerandum abbatem ferventi furore retorsit, inquires hujusmodi hominem ultra modum esse magnanimum, qui regis in secretum temerarius intraret. MS. Cleop. 76. On comparing this account with those of Wallingford (p. 542), and Westminster (p. 195), it will be seen that they have done nothing more than abridge it, generally preserving the very same words.

The account by Eadmer is similar to the preceding. Die quo ipse Edvinus in regem est consecratus, a loco convivii in quo cum archiepiscopis, episcopis, abbatibus, totiusque regni principibus sedebat, jam pransus exilit, et relictis omnibus in cameram, ubi præfatæ feminae erant, solus secedit, capitique coronâ sublatâ, se inter illas in medium jecit. Quod optimates agnoscentes, oppido indignati sunt. They then chose Dunstan and Kinsey, qui ex præcepto summi pontificis et aliorum omnium ad regem ingressi, illum, ut dixi, in medio illarum duarum decubantem reppererunt. Tunc Dunstanus primo in ignominiosas mulieres asperæ increpationis verba vultu et voce contorquens, lascivias earum, sicut verum castitatis amatorem decuit, detestatus est. Deinde regem ut se tanti opprobrii exortem faceret monens, ad proceres cum redire, eosque sua præsentia exhilarare summissa voce precatus est. Qui animi sui furore simul et vultus sui rubore perfusus, dum se rediturum omnino negaret, Dunstanus manum illius arripuit, et a loco violenter abstractum, imposito capiti ejus diademate, ad convivantes introduxit. Quod mulieris ignominia nullatenus æquanimiter ferens, sævis verborum increpationibus in virum surrexit, et se eum confusioni perpetuæ traditurum garrula contestatione devovit. Eadmer, *ibid.*—Mr. Turner is unwilling to believe the indecent part of this history, because the MS. Cleop. introduces it with a suspicious “ut aiunt” (*Hist.* iii. 155. not. 7). But to me it is evident that the words “ut aiunt” refer to the conduct of Ethelgiva and her daughter on previous occasions, not on the day of the king’s coronation.

3. On what account, and at whose solicitation, was Dunstan driven into banishment? A writer in the *Edinburgh Review* for October, 1815, pretends, that according

to many respectable authors he was accused and convicted, probably unjustly, of having embezzled the royal treasures. In proof of this statement he quoted Florence, Simeon, Hoveden, and Wallingford. But the three former do not contain the remotest allusion to any such charge or conviction. The passage which he has transcribed from them, "*exilio pro justitia ascriptus, mare transiit*" is meant to praise his conduct, not to censure it. They copied it from the eulogium of the archbishop, composed by Adalard about twenty years after the decease of the prelate, and appointed to be read every year in the church of Canterbury on the anniversary of his death. It describes him as suffering persecution, not for peculation, but "for righteousness sake : *pro justitia.*" Adalard, Blandin. MS. Nero, c. 7. Lect. 7.

Neither does Wallingford any where say that the abbot of Glastonbury was accused or convicted of peculation. He only tells us that the king *all along* had entertained suspicions of Dunstan, because he had been intrusted with the custody of the royal treasures. *Suspectus enim erat Eadwino Dunstanus omni tempore, eo quod tempore Eadredi thesauros patrum suorum custodisset.* Walling. 542. But what was the real nature of these suspicions, he has not informed us. Edwy regarded all the friends of his uncle *invido oculo* (*ibid.*) : and it is not improbable that he blamed Dunstan for the loss of those sums which Edred had given to the poor and the church. But the obscure language of Wallingford cannot outweigh the positive testimony of all the more ancient historians.

Those historians unanimously attribute the exile of Dunstan to the resentment of Ethelgiva for his conduct on the day of the coronation : the modern writer mentioned above attributes it to the persuasions, not of Edwy's mistress, but of a lady whom he marries to the king, and calls Elgiva. The following extracts will decide the question. The contemporary biographer, after mentioning the answer of Ethelgiva on the day of the coronation, proceeds thus : *Hæc impudens virago ex hac die prædicta virum Dei Dunstanum consiliis inimicabilibus persequi non quievit, quousque pestiferam execrationis suæ voluntatem cum adaucta regis inimicitia adimpleret. Tunc illa ex prædicti regis consensu omnem illius ordinis honorem suppellectilisque suæ substantiam suis legibus subjugavit. Quin etiam urgente regis imperio ipsum ad incolatum calamitatis celeriter ire præscripsit.*—*Quicumque amicorum post hæc cum, injusto arbitrio criminantis femine ejectum, causa charitatis et compatiendi hospitio susceperunt, fremen-tem regis iram graviter incurrerunt, et propterea insanos fluctus turbidi æquoris periculoso navigio transire, et incerta Galliarum exilia adire coactus est. Et dum velis in altum extensis quasi tria milliaria maris ingressus fuisset, venerunt nuntii ab iniqua muliere, qui, ut ferunt, oculos illius, si in his maris littoribus inveniretur, eruendo dempsissent.* MS. Cleop. 77. Eadmer in like manner describes the resentment of Ethelgiva. Et hoc quidem detestabile votum (her threat on the day of coronation :



non tepescente malitia ejus, facto exercere sollicita postmodum fuit. Effecit namque apud regem, ut cuncta quæ in monasterio Dunstani habebantur, diripi, ac devastari, et ipsum a regno eliminatum tum in exilium pelli juberet . . . . Igitur adhuc *mulieris ira*, in immanem vesaniam acta, missis nuntiis ubi Dunstanus esset, perquiri fecit, et si comprehendi valeret, sine ullo respectu misericordiæ oculos ei erui præcepit. Eadmer, p. 237. Thus also Osbern attributes his exile to the same nefanda meretrix, and furens mulier. Ang. Sac. ii. 103, 104.

In opposition to these ancient testimonies the reviewer appeals to two more recent historians, Westminster and Wallingford. 1. But Westminster actually abridges the contemporary biographer of Dunstan. After relating the occurrence on the day of the coronation, he says: Tunc *meretrix illa* Algiva nuncupata (Algiva or Ethelgiva are the same name in the Saxon language) contra virum Dei ferventi furore consurgens dixit illum nimis fuisse temerarium, dum regis secreta non vocatus intravit—Algiva *supradicta*, mulierum nequissima, ex Eadwii regis consensu . . . . tandem ipsum a regno proscripsit. West. p. 196. 2. Wallingford also agrees with the writers before him. Invenerunt ipsum medium inter duos, Ethelgivam nomine et filiam—Algiva ut erat procacis linguæ Dunstano ex parte regis malevolenter illusit.—Non distulit *impudens illa mulier*, sed omne iræ suæ venenum in santum abbatem evomuit—*ipsa mulier impudens* licentiam a rege acceperat omnes facultates sancti proscribendi . . . . eousque rem deduxit, ut ipsum sanctum proscriptioni appelleret. Quid enim inter tot hostes faceret? Regis iram sensit erumpentem ab oculis, et *reginæ* manum exterius et aperte flagellantem. Though in the last line he gives her the title of queen, it is plain from the whole context that he meant the king's mistress. She was the same impudens illa mulier inter quam et filiam ejus invenerunt regem medium, &c. Wallingford, p. 542.—In conclusion it appears to me hardly possible that any person can read the preceding extracts, and still entertain a doubt as to the person who was the cause of Dunstan's exile.

4. From the preceding authorities it is evident that Edwy was not married at the time of his coronation, and from their silence, and the unbounded influence of Ethelgiva after that event, we may fairly infer that he remained unmarried till the banishment of Dunstan. There is in the British museum a manuscript life of St. Oswald, archbishop of York (Nero, E. 1.), written at the same time, probably by the same author, as the anonymous life of St. Dunstan. From this, however, we learn that Edwy had married before the revolt of the Mercians, that he at the same time kept a mistress in one of his villas, and that he had obtained possession of her by force. "Rex inique, "ut insolens juvenus solet vitam ducens, sub uxore propria alteram adamavit, quam et "rapuit, sacra decreta christianæ legis negligens, oblitus mente tribulationes Davidici "regis, quas pertulit patrato scelere." He then mentions her banishment by archbishop Odo. "Antistes autem Fineatico zelo (like that of Phineas, Numb. xxv. 7.)

"stimulatus, et ira Dei irritatus," repente cum sociis equum ascendit, et ad villam, qua mulier mansitabat, pervenit, eamque rapuit, et de regno perduxit, regemque "dulcibus ammonuit verbis, pariterque factis, ut ab impiis actibus custodiret se, ne periret de via justa." MS. Nero, E. fol. 1. b. But who was this woman? Eadmer in his life of archbishop Odo (published by mistake under the name of Osbern), informs us, that she was the very Ethelgiva, with whose character the reader is already acquainted. "Unam de præscriptis mulieribus, quam et amplior potentia, et obscurior impudentia dehonestabat, et notiozem hominibus fecerat." Ang. Sac. ii. 84. The præscriptæ mulieres were Ethelgiva and her daughter; and it will be readily admitted that the character which he here gives, must belong to the mother.

5. The reader has seen that on her return Ethelgiva was put to death at Gloucester. To whom should her death be attributed? Malmsbury (p. 114), and Gervase (1645), say in general terms that she was banished and hamstrung by the archbishop. Eadmer, in his life of Odo, says: "Ab hominibus servi dei comprehensa, et, ne meretricio more ulterius vaga discurreret, subnervata, post dies aliquot mala morte presenti vitæ sublata est." p. 84. Yet in his life of archbishop Dunstan, he attributes her death to the Mercian insurgents. Misertus Deus gentis Anglorum, excitavit quosque potentes a terminis magni fluminis Humbræ usque ad terminos fluminis Thamisiæ contra impietatem regis Edwini, et eum, quia talem se fecerat, qualem, uti diximus, regem neutiquam esse decebat, unanimiter persequi, et aut vita aut regno privare moliti sunt. Et ipsum quidem ultra Thamisiam fugaverunt: nefandam vero meretricem ejus juxta civitatem Glavorniensem mala morte, quod breviter et summatim dictum accipiat, perdiderunt. Ead. apud Sur. p. 237, 238. Osbern gives the same account. Ab Humbro fluvio usque ad fluvium Tamisim—omnes quasi in unum hominem translati—regem cum adultera fugitantem persequi non desistunt. Et ipsam quidem juxta Claudium civitatem repertam subnervavere, deinde qua digna fuerat morte, multavere. p. 106. Which of these different narratives may be the true one, it is perhaps impossible to decide. The latter wears the appearance of greater probability.

6. About ninety years after Eadmer, Senatus, prior of Worcester, wrote a life of St. Oswald. He copies Eadmer very closely, but by accidentally altering the position of a sentence, gives us to understand that when Dunstan incurred the hatred of Edwy and his mistress, the king was already married to another woman. The work of Senatus, which Wharton supposed to be lost, is in the library of the dean and chapter of Durham. I shall transcribe the passage. "Edwinus Rex . . . vaga fractus libidine, exarsit in quandam, quam sprete fide tori subintroductam habebat. Instabat antistes Odo regem revocare ab errore viæ suæ. Opportune, importune eos corripuit sed minime correxuit. Super eodem etiam dum corriperetur a beato Dunstano . . . sanctum virum e patria exulem fieri jussit. Quo audito venerabilis Odo turbatus spiritu, factusque tam nefariæ rei publicus hostis scandalum quod in gladio spiritus de regno Dei

"tollere non prevaluit, applicata manu militum attemptavit, infandamque mulierem a regali curia abstraxit, abstractamque in Hiberniam relegavit." I may here observe the alteration in the language of the writers after the conquest. In the Saxon writer (Nero, E. 1.) the archbishop took with him his *gesiths* (*cum sociis*), in Eadmer and Senatus he takes a body of knights (*manu militum*): in the former Edwy kept his mistress in one of the royal farms (*in villa regis*), in the latter he keeps her in the king's court (*in curia regis*).

7. Malmsbury comes next, and in some respect differs from all former writers. According to him Edwy's mistress is a near relation: the king is passionately in love with her, and takes her by force to make her his wife: Odo separates them at the instigation of Dunstan, and Edwy banishes Dunstan in consequence (Malm. 70. 114). This account is copied with the peculiarities of the language by the monk of Ramsey (Hist. Ram. 390). The latter part of it is evidently false, as the abbot of Glastonbury was banished before the separation.

8. On the whole I think it plain that Edwy was not married at the time of his coronation: that he banished Dunstan at the instigation of his mistress Ethelgiva: that after his marriage he took her by force from her friends, and kept her in one of the royal farms, and that she was afterwards carried from thence by force, and sent into Ireland by archbishop Odo.—Perhaps I should apologize for the length of this note. The subject has exercised the ingenuity of several modern writers, and I thought that the reader would be best enabled to inform his own judgment, by perusing the original passages, which were previously locked up in manuscripts, or in books which cannot readily be procured.

#### NOTE [B], Page 352.

In addition to what I have said respecting the Anglo-Saxon *gesiths*, I may be allowed to notice a passage in the laws of Athelstan, which appears to throw some light on the subject. We are there told (p. 71), that the *were* of an ordinary thane was 2000 *thrymsæ*—that if a *ceorl* improved so much in his circumstances as to possess five hides of land, and accompany the king to war, his *were* also became 2000 *thrymsæ*—but that if he had not the land, how well soever he might be armed, he was still to be considered no better than a *ceorl*. Should, however, his son or his grandson improve so as to possess the necessary quantity of land, he would become of the *gesith* rank, and his *were* would be 2000 *thrymsæ*. Hence it seems to me that the *gesith* was the same as the thane, and that he was a person having at least five hides of land, and bound to follow the king to war. From the last circumstance he probably was called *gesith*, or companion.

END OF VOL. I.











UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA AT LOS ANGELES  
THE UNIVERSITY LIBRARY  
This book is DUE on the last date stamped below

DEC 10 1962

Form L-9  
20m-1, '42 (6519)

UNIVERSITY of CALIFORNIA  
AT  
LOS ANGELES  
LIBRARY



D 000 142 915 8

DA  
\*30  
L64h  
1819  
v.1



